

THE  
**SACRED BOOKS OF THE HINDUS**

VOL. 17, PART 1

**AMS PRESS**  
**NEW YORK**

THE  
**SACRED BOOKS OF THE HINDUS**

Translated by various Sanskrit Scholars

EDITED BY  
MAJOR B D BASU, I M S

**VOLUME XVII — PART 1**  
THE MATSYA PURANAM  
CHAPTERS 1-128

PUBLISHED BY  
THE PĀNIṄI OFFICE, BHUVANESWARI ASRAMA, BAHDURGANJ,  
Allababad  
PRINTED BY APURVA KRISHNA BOSE, AT THE INDIAN PRESS,  
1916

**Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data**

**Puranas Matsyapurana English  
The Matsya puranam**

**Original ed issued as v 17, pts 1-2, of The Sacred  
books of the Hindus**

**"Most of the appendices are from the pen of my  
brother, Rai Bahadur Srīsa Chandra Vidyārṇava "**

**Includes some ślokas in Sanskrit**

**I A taluqdar of Oudh, tr II Vasu, Srīsa Chandra,  
rai bahadur, 1861-1918? III Title IV Series The**

**Sacred books of the Hindus, v 17, pts 1-2**

**BL1135 P773E5 1974 294 5'925 73-3808**

**ISBN 0-404-57817-9**

**Reprinted from the edition of 1916, Allahabad  
First AMS edition published, 1974  
Manufactured in the United States of America**

**International Standard Book Number  
Complete Set 0-404-57800-4  
Volume 17, pts 1-2 0-404-57817-9  
Volume 17, pt 1 0-404 57841-1**

**AMS Press, INC  
New York, N Y 10003**

THE  
**MATSYA PURANAM**

**PART 1**

TRANSLATED BY  
A TALUQDAR OF OUDH

PUBLISHED BY  
SUDHINDRA NÂTHA VASU  
FROM THE PÂNINI OFFICE, BHUVANESWARI ÂSRAMA, BARÂDURGANJ,  
**Allababad**  
PRINTED BY APURVA KRISHNA BOSE, AT THE INDIAN PRESS,  
1916

OM

To The Hon'ble Sir James Scorgie Weston,

K C S I , LL D , V D ,

LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR OF THE UNITED PROVINCES OF  
AGRA AND OUDH

IS RESPECTFULLY DEDICATED THIS TRANSLATION OF THE SACRED MATSYA PURANAM  
WITH HIS HONOUR'S KIND PERMISSION  
AS A TOKEN OF THE TRANSLATOR'S SINCERE ADMIRATION OF HIS HONOUR  
WHO BY HIS UNRIVALLED SYMPATHY  
FOR THE PEOPLE OF THESE PROVINCES  
WHOM PROVIDENCE HAS CALLED HIM TO RULE  
HAS ACQUIRED THEIR EVERLASTING GRATITUDE AND AFFECTION  
AND WHOSE BENEFICIAL ADMINISTRATION  
THEY WILL ALWAYS COMMEMORATE  
BY THE FOLLOWING SONG

इयं सौधे सग्रा जनहृदयमग्रादुमदलै ,  
समतादाकार्याकालितरुचिपूर्णा मुक्तरिण् ॥  
अये ज्येष्ठ स्यस्टन् खदिह गमनानन्दगिरितो,  
गलन्ती शोभाना सरिदिव बहन्ती विजयते ॥

## FOREWORD

---

Modern Sanskrit scholars have not bestowed that amount of attention on the study of the Purânas which they have done on that of the Vedas. This neglect of the study of the Purânas proceeds from more causes than one. Every one of the Purânas is a real *Encyclopaedia Indica* and so a very comprehensive knowledge of the whole range of Sanskrit literature is necessary to understand them. There are very few scholars who possess such a knowledge.

The present translation of the Matsya Purâna has been done by an esteemed Talukdâr of Oudh—well known for his scholarly attainments in Sanskrit and English.

The introduction has been written by Pandit Lalit Mohan Kai, who obtained the diploma of *Kâavyatîtha* from the Sanskrit College, the degree of M. A. in Sanskrit and Pali from the University of Calcutta and is professor of Sanskrit in the Ripon College.

Most of the appendices are from the pen of my brother, Rai Bahadur Sriâ Chandra Vidyâinava, whose profound knowledge of Sanskrit has enabled him to rightly interpret many difficult passages in this Purâna. It is hoped that the notes and appendices may be of use to scholars interested in the study of the Purânas.

The greater part of the present volume is taken up with a description of Vratas or fasts, followed by feasts and gifts to the Brâhmaṇas. They are of interest only to the Hindu public. To the non-Hindus they are of very slight importance.

According to its own statement in Chapter 53, this Purâna is 16th, in the order of precedence. This is according to the northern recension, where the Brahma Purâna stands first. According to the southern recension, the Matsya Purâna heads the list, showing thereby that this is *par excellence* the Purâna of the southern people. It probably owes its origin to the south.

To complete the dynastic records of the kings of the Kali age, the matter has been somewhat anticipated, and Chapters 271, 272 and 273 have been inserted in this volume. This part is complete in itself, and its second part, which will appear in future, will not break the continuity of the book.

EDITOR

## C O N T E N T S

---

	<b>Page</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1 - viii</b>
<b>Translation of the Matsya Purāṇam Chapters 1 - 128</b>	<b>1 - 360</b>
<b>Appendix I</b>	<b>1 - xii</b>
"    II	xiii - xxvi
"    III	xxvii - xlvi
"    IV	Table to face p. xlvi
"    V	"
"    VI	lxi - lxxiv
"    VII	lxxv - lxxxviii
"    VIII	lxxix - xcii
"    IX	xciv - ci
"    X	cii - cvi

## INTRODUCTION

---

The present war between the European Powers, the royal representatives of which, in many cases, stand to each other in the relation of cousins, brings forth, in the date of the Mahâbhârata War the brightest colours to the Indian mind, the long past glories of another great field where cousins had met to measure, their swords. The date of that war is still an open question like many other great events of the Indian tradition. Many, indeed, there have been who deny it the name of an historical event and like to look upon it, as merely a part of the fauzy tales which the Sanskrit Purânas, in their opinion, abound with. The details of that war are so familiar to every one of us that we have never questioned its occurrence, but as to its probable date we are merely content with believing it to be very very ancient. Many European scholars, in their over-eagerness to prove Indian civilization to be of a late growth, have assigned to the war a date not far beyond the birth of the Christian era. Leaving this tug of war regarding Indian dates to take care of itself, let us try to find out what internal evidence the Purânas can supply us to prove our case.

Custom, it is said, becomes law, when it is recognised by the state, and tradition, we may say on the same analogy, is accepted as history when borne out by evidence recognisable by critical and scientific intellects. Thanks to the indefatigable labours of scholars like Mr Pargiter, who started on a study of the Purânas with some faith in the realities of their accounts—with the requisite amount of Sraddha which the Vedântins enjoin—we are in a position to take the Mahâbhârata War from a realistic point of view.

Of late Babu Râmaprânâ Gupta, in the Âsvin issue of the Pravasi of the last year (Vol XV Pt I, 6th issue, pp 740 *et seq.*), has made an attempt to fix the date of the Mahâbhârata War, and has referred to two different theories, *viz.* (1) the 6th century B C, founded on astronomical observations and (2) 2450 B C, based on the Râjatarngini. He holds a third view, namely, that the War took place a thousand and a half years before Christ, and says that many great scholars, Indian and European, have accepted the same view.

NOTE.—Here I beg leave to point out an oversight of Babu Râmaprânâ Gupta. He says, at p 741 [first column, towards the bottom] (of which I give the translation) It is written in the 84th Sloka, Chap 24, Part IV, of the Viñnu that Parîkshit was appointed King 1200

years after the commencement of Kali, etc. And he finds it difficult to reconcile this passage with what follows in the Viṣṇu.

But evidently this interpretation is faulty. The verse of the Viṣṇu in question is —

ते तु पारीक्षिते काले मधास्वासन् द्विजोत्तम ।  
तदा प्रवृत्तश्च कलिः प्रादशाब्दशतात्मकः ॥

Viṣṇu IV, 24—84

The meaning of the second line is —

"At that time (the time of Parīkṣit) began the *Kaliyuga*, which comprises of 1,200 (divine) years." Cp the lines following in the Viṣṇu.

What Babu Rāmaprāṇa says, appears like an alternative theory, and may mislead readers. This arises, probably, out of the worthless vernacular translations, published by Indian press, bristling with mistakes, although purposed to have been done by the great Pandits.

Let us examine this view a little.

This theory has been built upon the interval of time that elapsed between the birth of Parīkṣit and the inauguration of Mahāpadma Nanda. The words of the different Purāṇas are quoted below —

(1) Brahmānanda—

महानन्दाभिषेकात् जन्म यावत् परीक्षितः ।  
एतद्वर्षपर्वसहस्रन्तु हेयं पञ्चदशतरम् ॥

III—LXXIV—227

(2) Viṣṇu—

यावत् परीक्षितो जन्म यावज्ञान्दाभिषेकनम् ।  
एतद्वर्षपर्वसहस्रन्तु हेयं पञ्चदशतरम् ॥

IV—XXIV—92

(3) Bhāgavata—

आरभ्य गवतो जन्म यावज्ञान्दाभिषेकनम् ।  
एतद्वर्षपर्वसहस्रन्तु शतं पञ्चदशतरम् ॥

XII, II—26

(4) Vāyu—

महावेषाभिषेकात् जन्म यावत् परीक्षितः ।  
एतद्वर्षपर्वसहस्रन्तु हेयं पञ्चदशतरम् ॥

Vol II, Chap XXXVII—409

All the Purāṇas have given the names of the Dynasties which ruled in India during this period. They are the Bāhradratha, the Pradyota and the Sisunāga, which last was overthrown by Mahāpadma Nanda. The Matsya, the Vāyu, and the Brahmaṇda mention the respective reigns of each king, while the others give only the names and the sum total of the different reigns.

According to the first set of Purânas, the kings and the duration of their rules (as suggested by a critical perusal of the different Purânas and their different versions) are as follows —

I — 22 Bâhradrathas —

	58 years
(1) Somâdhi	67 "
(2) Srutasarvâs	36 "
(3) Ayutâyus	40 "
(4) Niramitra	58 "
(5) Sukapatra	23 "
(6) Brhatkarmân	50 "
(7) Senajit	40 "
(8) Srutanjaya	28 "
(9) Vibhu	58 "
(10) Suchi	28 "
(11) Kâsma	64 "
(12) Suvrata	95 "
(13) Sunêtra I	58 "
(14) Nirvpti	38 "
(15) Suvarnasya	48 "
(16) Dridhasena	88 "
(17) Mahinêtra or (Sumati)	82 "
(18) Suchala	40 "
(19) Sunêtra II	88 "
(20) Satyajit	85 "
(21) Visvajit	50 "
(22) Rijupâjaya	Total      1,000 years *

Regarding this list, it is to be noticed, that wherever a parallel reading has been given by Mr Pargiter, there has been no difference in the name, except in the three following instances —

(1) Sunêtra I and Dharmânêtra, where the readings regarding the latter are rather confused, and hence less deserving of acceptance

(2) Mahinêtra and Sumati, where there would be no difference if the king be regarded as having two names, their period of rule being the same

(3) Trinêtra and Suvarnasya, where it appears as if both had an equal claim to be accepted as the correct name. But if both were to be accepted, the list would not be of 22 kings, but of 23, but this is impossible as the list is confined to 22 and 22 only †. Now, which name to reject?

\* पूर्ण वर्षसहस्रै तेषाम् राज्यं भविष्यति ।

Brahmânda—CXXIV, 121

† द्वाविंशत्पुरुषो ह्येते भवितारो बृहद्रथाः ।—

—Brahmânda—

III, cxxiv—121

The line devoted to Trinêtra reads as follows —

**चत्वारिंशत् समा राज्यं त्रिनेत्रो भोक्ष्यते ततः ।**

which, compared with the line celebrating Sunêtra (II)

**चत्वारिंशत् समा राज्यं सुनेत्रो भोक्ष्यते ततः ।**

presents a striking similarity (excepting of course in the number of years) This led me to suppose that it would be a repetition of the same thing if we accepted both these lines, and so I preferred to adopt the line for Sušramasya I find that I am, most fortunately, backed by other readings of the Matsya which actually have Sunêtra for Trinêtra, and the line for Sušramasya can, therefore, be safely accepted for the one for Trinêtra

It may be here remarked that long reigns, and almost absurdly long ones, are occasionally met with in Indian chronologies But it is to be remembered that the names are of memorable kings, and often the reigns of predecessors and successors of minor importance and less worthy of a separate remembrance, have been added on to those of these remarkable ones To give a familiar instance, can anybody, excepting a specialist, remember with correctness the two shorter periods of rule of George IV and William IV, while the long and memorable reigns of George III and of Victoria the Good, are remembered so exactly? If people were to write history after the lapse of a dozen centuries, these two shorter periods would be engulfed in either of the longer ones in the traditions of this long period

#### II — 5 Pradyotas —

(1) Pradyota	29	years
(2) Poulaka	24	"
(3) Visâkhañyûpa	50	"
(4) Ajaka	21	"
(5) Nandivardhana (the Pradyota)	20	"
Total	136	years

As there are no two opinions regarding the names, the reigns or the total period of these kings, the traditions regarding them seem to have been very well preserved

#### III — 10 Sisunâgas —

Sisunâga	50	years
Kâkavarna	36	"
Ksemadharma	38	"
Katranujâ	40	"
Vimbisâra	28	"
Ajatasatru	27	"
Dîravaka	25	"
Udayin	35	"
Nandivardhana (the Sisunâga)	42	"
Mahânandin	43	"
Total	360	"

This is exactly the total number of years as given by Matsya Purâna

The Viṣṇu gives 362 years as the total period of the Sisunâgas, but does not give the reigns against each king. So it is not verifiable. The above reigns have been taken from the maximum periods given in the Purânas, and this must be the correct reckoning, as it tallies exactly with the total periods given even by those Purânas which do not give the details. How to account for these 2 years of the Viṣṇu?

But a very strange result is obtained by adding together these different totals. They give the grand total of  $(1,000 + 138 + 360 =)$  1,498 years, or, according to the Viṣṇu  $(1,000 + 138 + 362 =)$  1,500 years, while they declare, as already observed, that the period between Parîksit's birth and Mahâpadma Nanda's inauguration covered 1015, 1050 or 1115 years.

This discrepancy was observed when working at the Matsya Purâna

The totalised interval thus coming far above the three different totals, as given by the different Purânas, the only possible explanation lay in this—When there are three divergent readings in the Purânas, depending, no doubt, on slight variations in the texts, could not there be a fourth and certainly more reasonable reading to say that the period was 1500 years?

Very happily this reading has been actually found, as given by Mr Pargiter, at p. 58 of his Dynasties of the Kali Age.

This clears up all doubts regarding the interval between Parîksit and Mahâpadma Nanda. It was a period of 1500 years.

If a comparative estimate be desired between the totals, as given by the different Purânas (viz., 1,015, 1050 and 1115 years), and the sum total found out by calculation of the details, the scale must turn in favour of the latter, as a corruption, or at least a variation, depends on the mutation of two or three letters of the alphabet, as is evident from there being those different versions of the total period, while the details are more definite.

It is worthy of note here that this contradiction had struck Śridhara Svâmi, the worthy commentator of the Bhâgavata, whose critical spirit is noticeable in another portion of his commentary, viz., where he discusses the length of the Jambûdvîpa. In his commentary on the 26th verse of the 2nd chapter of the 12th skandha, he remarks—

"In fact, the interval between Parîksit and Nanda is less than one and a half thousand years by two years."

\* "षस्तुतस्तु परीक्षित्वद्योरन्तरं द्वाभ्या न्यूनं वर्णाणां सार्व-सहस्रं भवति।"

The 2 years added to 360 by the Viṣṇu seems to have proceeded from the desire of making the sum total of the durations of the three dynasties (viz.,  $1,000 + 138 + 360$ ) come exactly to 1,500 years.

Now, Parīksit was a posthumous son of Abhimanyu, who died in the War, so that many months did not elapse between the War and his birth, which preceded Mahāpadma Nanda's inauguration by 1,500 years.

Mahāpadma Nanda ascended the throne in 422 B.C., as we come to know from Indian History. So from a retrospective calculation we arrive at 1922 B.C. as the date of the Great War fought on the field of the Kurus.

The astronomical data supplied by some of the Purāṇas seem to go against this date. The Viṣṇu and the Bhāgavata state that the Great Bear was in the Maghā in Parīksit's time. When it will go to Pūrvāśadha, it will be the time of Nanda, and the Kali age will begin to attain maturity. (There is no mention of the speed of the seven Rishis.)

The Vāyu adds the seven Rishis dwell in a Nakṣatra for a century.

So, as Pūrvāśadha is the 10th from Maghā the interval between the days of Parīksit and Nanda comes to ten centuries.

The Brāhmaṇa corroborates this. But the Matsya says 'The seven Rishis were then (on a line) with the towering, blazing Agni'\*; and that being the presiding deity of the Kṛittikā, we conclude that in Parīksit's time the seven Rishis (the Ursa Major or the Great Bear) were in the constellation Kṛittikā. From Kṛittikā to Pūrvāśadha are 19 Nakṣatras, and so, from Parīksit to Mahāpadma Nanda, there elapsed a period of 1900 years.

The statement in the other Purāṇas may be easily explained. In their anxiety to be consistent with the statement of 1015, 1050, or 1115 years—(and regardless of the totalised number of years)—they fixed on the tenth star from Pūrvāśadha (about which there are no two opinions), by backward calculation.

As the Matsya claims a superior place among the Purāṇas, the data it gives, verified by calculations which the other Purāṇas supply as well, and corroborated by backward and forward references, are throughout consistent, and hence the date arrived at from them are well worth accepting.

---

\* 'सप्तर्षयस्तदा प्रांशु प्रदीपेनाप्निना सम्म् ।'

We are thus in a position to say that the Kuruksetra War took place as many years on that side of the birth of the Giver of Peace as the present war has occurred on this side of it

ALLAHABAD

13th June, 1916

Lalit Mohan Kar



# THE MATSYA PURANAM

---

---

श्री गणेशाय नमः ॥

SALUTATION TO ŚRĪ GANEŚA

ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥

SALUTATION TO THE ADOORABLE VÂSUDEVA

*Note* —The sacred word "Om" is formed by the letters *a*, *u*, *m*. Of these, *a* represents *Vishnu*, *u*, *śiva*, *m*, *Brahmî*. *Pranava* is, therefore, the symbol of the sacred Trinity.

## CHAPTER I

May the lotus feet of Bhava who shook the *diggañas* at the time of His dance, disperse all obstacles —]

*Note* —Bhava is a name of the God *śiva*. *Tandava* is a particular kind of dance of which *śiva* is very fond. *Diggañas* It is laid down in the paurânic allegory that the universe lies balanced on the tusks of ten elephants— each elephant supporting a quarter

May the words of Lord *Vishnu*, embodied in the Vedas and uttered by His Matsya-avatâra, in which incarnation, at the time of His sallying forth from the region of the *pâtâla*, the blow of His tail caused the seven seas to intermingle with the high heavens and then to fall down, spattering the sphere of the earth, steal away all your evil! — 2

*Note* —*Brahmânda*, literally, means the Egg or the Creator, and the word, as it stands, applies to all the regions—both upper and lower. In the above *shloka* *Brahmânda* is coupled with the word *Urdhva*, which means upper. Here the complete word is *Urdhva Brahmananda* which means the upper regions. *Matsyavatâra* is the incarnation of Lord *Vishnu*, in the form of a fish. The Merciful manifests Himself in different forms, whenever He finds it necessary—(1) To educate the world in the performance of its manifold duties which, in spite of their being incorporated in the works of Divine revelation, very often remain incomprehensible, (2) To save the world from wilful neglect of duty.

Compare —

यदा यदाहि धर्मस्य ग्लानिर्भवति भारत ।

परम्युत्थानं मध्यर्मस्य तदात्मानं सूजान्यहम् ॥”

“धर्मं सस्थापनार्थाय सम्भवामि युगे युगे ॥”

(8) “ Old order changeth yielding place to now,

God fulfills Himself in many ways,

Lest one good custom should corrupt the world ”

To deal with the doubts that are very often raised on the theory of incarnation, it would be necessary to make copious references to Vedanta Upanisads and Nyaya, and to add exhaustive commentaries on those dogmatical aphorisms which would swell the bulk of the Purana. I will therefore confine myself to very brief notes on most important items. The necessity of Matsyavatara will later on become clear by going through this Purana. Bruti means the Vedas that are regarded by the Hindus to be the words of Divine revelation.

Matsyavatara which is the dispeller of all ignorance, should be read after saluting Narayana, Nara, Narottama, Devi Sarasvati — 3

Note — Narayana, Narottama, etc. are all analogous expressions and apply to the Supreme Being who is omniscient, omnipotent, omnipresent and omniscient. Words cannot describe His or His glory.

Comprise —

**“असितगिरि समं स्याकज्जलं सिंधुपात्रे सुरतरुवरशाला लेखनी पत्रमुर्वी ॥  
लिखति यदि गृहीत्वा शारदा सर्वकालं तदपि तत्र गुणानामीश पारं न याति ॥”**

I salute Lord Brahma who though unborn manifests Himself for the sake of creation, and is known under different epithets, viz — Narayana, Triguna — 4

Note — Trigunas are Satva, Rajas and Tamas. Maya is the resultant of Trigunas. When Maya combines with any particle of Omnipresent Parabrahma, that particle is known as Brahma. Triveda means the three Vedas i.e. Rig, Yajus and Sāman. The metre which is prosodical but cannot be chanted is called Rik and Rig Veda is full of such metres. The metre which is neither prosodical nor can be chanted is called Yagus and Yajurveda is full of such metres. The metres that can be chanted are known as Sāma and therefore the Veda containing such metres is called Shāma-Veda. Strictly speaking therefore, there are only three Vedas. The sage Veda strung collected several metres of the above mentioned three Vedas dealing with Ayurveda and Sāntikarma etc. and compiled the Atharva-Veda which now forms the fourth Ved. The Vedas are the works of Divine revelation and are held very sacred by the Hindus. Lord Brahma is the chief revealer of the sacred Vedas. Now, with the above verse ends the introductory verses, after which the subject matter of the Purana commences. Before proceeding further, something must be said about mangalachirana. Mangala is of three kinds viz — (1) Namaskārātmaṅga — mangala is that in which there is salutation to some Deity as in “Sree Ganesayna māḥ,” and ‘Om Namo Bhagavate Vāsudevaya’ which occur in the very beginning of the Purana & (2) Vastunirdeshtmaka — mangala is that in which there is some clue to the subject matter of the work following it. (3) Aśrividhātmaka — mangala is that in which some Deity is invoked to shower its blessings on somebody.

The couplet ‘Prichand Taplavātōpe, etc., contains a prayer to Lord Siva which shows that later on there will be something about the annihilation of the universe. Siva is Bānbākarta. The stanza Pāṭhalidvapattishwo, etc. contains a prayer to Lord Viṣṇu which shows that there will also be a description of the Shāstra Viṣṇu is Cāntikārtā. The above two stanzas are both Vastunirdeshtmaka and Aśrividhātmaka. The couplet, ajopi etc. contains salutations to Lord Sivayambhu i.e. Brahma which shows that the Purana contains a history of creation also. Brahma is Bṛstikārtā. This couplet is Namaskārātmaṅga as well as Vastuśāntikārtā.

Ganesa. The Lord of Siva's attendants. It is laid down in Siva Purana that God Siva was in the habit of going into His abode, even when His consort, the Goddess

Pârvati, would be having her bath. The Goddess did not like this, and in order to keep Sîva out at the time of Her bath she once upon a time made a figure of sand clay and put life into it. Afterwards, the goddess located Him at the door of the house, directing Him not to let any one enter. A little while after, Lord Sîva turned up, but the figure at the door drove Him away. Sîva got very angry and sent His attendants to subdue Him, but they were repulsed. Then the Lord sent a large army under the Devâs to subdue Him. They were also on the point of being routed. When Sîva himself appeared on the scene and overpowering Him by His large army, cut His head with His trident. The head was carried away by the nymphs. Afterwards, the sage Nârada appeared and related all this to Pârvati, who got very much vexed and determined to destroy everyone, which caused a great consternation, and all the Devâs began to pray. The Goddess was pleased with their prayer and devotion, and said that she would not give effect to Her determination, provided Her son was recalled to life and allowed the first place in all the ceremonies, which they all promised to do. But when a search for the head was made it was not found. They found the head of an elephant with only one tusk lying somewhere at a distance which they put on the body and then infused life into it. Gâneś thus came to have the head of an elephant on His shoulders. Afterwards, He was given the first place in all ceremonies and was made the Lord of Sîva's attendants. Owing to His having the first place in all ceremonies, He is always saluted at the beginning of Mangalâcharana in each work.

We understand from the Mangalâcharana that Matyâ Purâna mainly deals with the history of —

(1) The creation of the Universe by Krishna, the Creator !

(2) The annihilation of the Universe by Sîva, the destroyer !

(3) The preservation of the Universe from total annihilation by Visnu the saviour.

Brahmâ, Visnu and Sîva are the different manifestations of the one and the same Supreme Being.

Once upon a time, the inhabitants of Naimisâranya, at the close of a long sacrifice, began to relate to one another pious, charming stories from different Purânas. The great sage, Sûta, was present in that assembly. Saunaka and other sages who were also there on that occasion, after complimenting Sûta on his deep lore said —

"O sinless one, we wish to hear again the very same nectar-like stories of the Purânas which have been recited to us by you" — 5-6

*Note* — Naimisâranya is modern Nimkhâr-Mirikh in the Sitapur district, Oudh.

"Tell us please, how Brahmâ created the Universe, and for what reason Visnu adopted the form of a fish. We are also anxious to know why Sîva took the goblet of human skull, why He is called Pûjâri, and how Bhava, the cause of our prosperity, came to be known as Bhairava ? O, Sûta ! be gracious enough to relate all this exhaustively, for we never feel satiated with listening to your sweet narrations, as one is not with nectar" — 7-8

*Note* — Bhava means the giver of prosperity. This is a synonym of God Sîva.

'Bhairava means terrific or one who causes fear. This term applies to a form of God Sîva.

**Kapali** literally means one who carries a human skull. This expression also applies to Siva.

'Virabhadhvaja' means one who has a bull for his conveyance. Siva rides the bull, therefore, this term denotes Siva.

Suta said - 'I hear, now, O, Brahmanas, the sacred Matsyapurana which was revealed by Lord Visnu in the form of a fish'—9

**Note**—Now follows the narration of the Purana

In ancient times (Vaivasvata) Manu, the Merciful, the first king of the Solar dynasty, after making over his kingdom to his son, devoted himself to rigid asceticism. On a summit of the Malaya mountain, the devout austerities of that resolute hero, who was adorned with spiritual knowledge, and whose equilibrium of mind was just the same in adversity as in prosperity, were crowned with the attainment of transcendent yoga (that is, union with the Deity)—10 11

**Note**—'Ravinandan' means the Son of the Sun

Vaivasvata Manu was the offspring of the God sun from Sujñā the daughter of Lord Kuvera. He was the founder of the Solar race of Ksatriyas.

**Note**—Mala is a range of mountains in Southern India abounding in sandal trees. It is to the west of Malabar.

**Samaduhkhasukhavrī** means the hero who is neither overwhelmed by misfortunes nor is carried away by prosperity, but remains firm under all circumstances. Such a bent of mind is not common. Only those few who resign themselves to His will and concentrate their minds on the sacred object of their devotion, can remain so firm-minded. Devotion to God alone leads to such a bliss.

It points out to the soul the pitfalls of life and the mundane unrealities. It takes away the shroud of illusion and places the soul on the pinnacle of celestial glory where eternal peace and contentment reign. Bhakti or Yoga begets such knowledge.

The King Vaivasvata Manu, inspite of his worldly glories, was, not negligent of the life after death. Like many ancient kings, the first item of his duty was to acquire this jñāna, and he became Raja-Rishi. It is therefore no wonder that a Raja-Rishi, like the King Vaivasvata Manu should have been so sum.

After a period of a million of years of continued asceticism, Lord Brahma became pleased towards him, and told him to ask for a boon—12

**Note**—Kamilasa is another name of God Brahma. It literally means, one who has a lotus to sit upon. It is laid down in the pauranic allegory that at the time of creation, a lotus with Brahma sitting on it, springs from the navel of Visnu.

Having been thus addressed (by Brahma), the king, after saluting Him, said "Lord! I have only one boon to beg of you, which is above all other boons. May I have power sufficient for the protection of the whole creation, moveable and immoveable, when the hour of Pralaya will come"—13-14

**Note**—'Pitāmaha' means paternal grandfather.

Brahma is the Creator of the Universe. He is therefore called Pitāmaha.

**Note**—Pralaya is chiefly of two kinds, viz.—(1) Kbandha pralaya, in which there is a partial dissolution, and (2) Maha pralaya in which there is a total dissolution.

In this Purâna, there is a mention of Khandapralaya. Mark the boon sought by the illustrious sovereign of the Solar race. This shows how selfless, highly virtuous and righteous the kings in ancient times were.

Lord Brahmâ, the Soul of the Universe, after granting the prayer of the king (in the following words, "Be it so"), disappeared then and there, and the Devas profusely showered a rain of flowers from the ethereal regions — 15

*Note* — Puspavisti. The Devas showered flowers on the king to express Their unbounded pleasure and appreciation of his highest righteousness.

One day, in his hermitage, when the king was making a libation of water to the manes of his deceased ancestors, a carp (a small fish) fell into his hands along with the water — 16

*Note* — Tarpana is a libation of water to the manes of the deceased ancestors which a Hindu is in duty bound to perform regularly.

[Consult 'The Daily Practice of the Hindus' by Rai Bahadur Sris Chandra Vidyâranya.]  
Papita, i.e., fell from the king's vessel out of which he was pouring out water for libation.

Saphari is a very small variety of fish called carp. It is very tiny and always restless. Eastern poets very often employ it in their similes, in their description of the movements of beautiful eyes.

On seeing that tiny fish, the merciful king, out of compassion, wanted to preserve it and put it into his water jar. That tiny fish, in course of a day and night, grew into the form of a large fish, measuring sixteen fingers in length, and (feeling uncomfortable inside the water jar where it was placed by the king), cried for deliverance — 17-18

The king took it out of the water jar and put it in a large pitcher but there also, in course of a night, it grew three hands in length. "I am at your mercy, come to my succour." The king, again hearing these cries of the fish took it out of the pitcher and deposited it in a well. Later on, the well also proved insufficient. The king then accommodated it in a tank — 19-20

*Note* — Sahasrakiranâtmaja, the Son of the Sun, i.e., king Vaivasvata Manu. Sahasra-kirana means the Sun.

In the tank, again, the fish grew a *yojana* (eight miles) in length, and again appealed to the king, in a plaintive tone, to help it out of the tank. Then the king put the fish in the Ganges and, finding that it increased there too, he placed it in the ocean. The fish went on increasing and increasing in bulk, until it very nearly filled the vast expanse of the great ocean. The king, seeing this, was awe-stricken and said, "Are you the chief of the Asuras? Or are you Vâsudeva, who else has such an extraordinary power to assume such a tremendously big form extending to sixteen hundred miles?" — 22-25

*Note* — 'Asura' means a demon. 'Isvara' literally means master.

I have come to know you, O, Keśava ! You are puzzling me in the form of a fish I bow down to You, O, Hūsikēśa, Jagannātha, Jagaddhāma " [These are all different names of God ]—26

Being thus addressed, Bhagavānā Janārdana, in the form of a fish, complimented him, and said " O Spotless One, I have been truly known by you In a few days time, O King, the Universe shall be deluged with water, along with the mountains and forests The Devas have made this boat to rescue the creation from such a calamity, placing in it *avedajas, andajas, udbhijas* and *jarāyujas* O, King ! you take charge of this boat and help the distressed at the time of the impending danger When you find the boat in danger of being blown away by the strong gusts of wind, tie it to my horn By rescuing the afflicted from such an awful misfortune, you will be rendering a great paternal service to the creation And, O, blessed sovereign ! You shall reign for one *Manvantara*, from the beginning of the *Kṛitayuga*, and shall be venerated by the Devas "—27-33

*Note* — 'vedaja,' literally means, born of sweat , therefore insects clinging to one's person, such as bugs, lice, &c , 'andaja,' animals born of an egg , Udbhija, things that sprout , 'Jarāyuja,' born of womb, i.e , Mammals

*Note* — Kṛitayuga is the same as Satyayuga, the age of truth Manvantara is a period of 6,48,00,000 years

*Here ends the first Chapter dealing with the conversation between  
Manu-and Viṣṇu*

---

## CHAPTER II

Sūta, continuing his narration, said, that, on hearing such words of the Lord, the king begged Him to reveal to him in how many years the time of destruction was likely to come The king also entreated the Lord to point out to him the means of saving the creation from such a distress and to let him know when he would again be fortunate enough to meet Him face to face —1-2

The fish replied that from that day there would be no rain for a hundred years, and the universe would be overtaken by a dire famine After that, all the inferior beings of the universe would be scorched to death by the seven ordinary rays of the sun which shall become seven times more powerful — 3 4

*Note* — The seven rays of the sun, are —

(१) सुसून्दर, (२) हरिकेश, (३) विष्वकर्मा, (४) विश्वविभासा, (५) सत्यवत्,  
(६) उद्धवत् (७) शुराह—

In addition to all that, the subteranean fire would shoot out, Sesha, from his abode in the lower regions, would send forth venomous flames

from his thousand mouths, and a furious fire would emerge from the third eye of Siva —5

*Note* —It is said in the pauranic allegory that the universe rests on the head of a thousand-hooded serpent which is more popularly known as Sesha

The fire emitting from the third eye of Siva He has a third eye in the forehead which always remains shut The Lord opens that third eye only on occasions of anger, and necessarily at the time of destruction As soon as the third eye is opened, all objects falling within its range are reduced to ashes, as it sends forth a big flash of fire.

Thus the three worlds would be crumbled to ashes by the combined fury of all those various fires The sky, with all the stars and planets, would also be destroyed by the heat thus originated —6-7

Then the seven destructive clouds viz—Samvanta, Bhimanada, Drona, Chanda, Balahaka, Vidyut pataka and Sónâ, would spring up from the vapours arising out of such a heat, and would rain in torrents till all the seas become united into one great mass In fact the whole earth would be covered with one vast expanse of water, then get hold of that yonder boat and put the seed of creation and the sacred Vedas in it After that, fasten the boat to my horn by means of this rope that I give you, and then the contents of the barge will be saved by my glory " O, Pious One! when everything will be destroyed, your good-self, the moon, the sun myself, Brahmâ, the sacred river Narmadâ, the great sage Mârikandeya, the sacred Vedas, the Purânas, the God Siva, the various sciences, will alone be saved, and the reign of king Chakṣusa Manu shall terminate with the coming partial dissolution —8-14

At the beginning of the re-creation of the Universe which would follow the period of destruction, I shall propagate the Vedic knowledge" So saying, He suddenly vanished away —15

The king, till the time of dissolution, of which intimation was given to him by Lord Vâsudeva, engaged himself in the practice of Yoga —16.

At the commencement of dissolution, the Lord appeared again in the form of horned fish At the same time, Sesha, the Serpent King, appeared before the King Vaivasvata Manu in the shape of a rope, and the king, through his Yogic power, collected together all living beings and put them in the boat And, after fastening the boat to the horn of the fish, by means of the rope, the king saluted the Lord and got into it —17-19

Sûta said, "O sages! hear the history of creation, &c, which you have asked me to narrate I shall now proceed to relate it in the words of the Lord which were addressed to the King Vaivasvata Manu."—20-21

Manu entreated the Lord to relate to him, how the dissolution and the creation of the universe took place, how the generations of mankind came into being, the meaning of Manvantara, the biographies

of eminent men, the expanse of the universe, the ways of charity, the path of duty, the precepts of Śraddha, the divisions of Varna and Āśrama, the ways of sacrificial rites, the greatness of the Devas, etc —22-24

*Note*—Śraddha is an act of devotion to the pitris and manes which every Hindu has to perform by means of certain prescribed rites, after which food, etc., is distributed to the Brāhmaṇas

'Varna' means tribe, caste, 'Āśrama' the four kinds of religious order, viz., (1) Brahma-charyya or the student life, (2) Grahasta or the householder's life, (3) Vanaprastha or the anchorite's life, (4) Sanyasa or hermit's life

Matsya said that during the period of Great Dissolution the universe was enveloped in darkness and was in a state of trance, as it were, inconceivable, still, and undefinable. In that state of unimaginable and indescribable trance, appeared Lord Svayambhu, who is also known as Nāīayana, owing to His omnipresence in Sthūla-sarira, made His appearance to create the universe --25-27

*Note*—'Sthūla Sarira, is corporeal body, i.e., what is visible to the naked eye

Svayambhu, with the desire of creating the universe, first created water and planted the seed of creation in it. The seed of creation, i.e., chaitanya (consciousness) by coming into contact with water, produced a vast egg (i.e., the egg of Brahman), of golden hue, which, after one thousand years, became ten thousand times more luminous than the sun. After that, Svayambhu merged Himself into that tremendous Brahmanḍa, and owing, to His omnipresence in it He came to be known as Visnu --28-30

He (Svayambhu) then created the Sun by His glory, which owing to its first place in the creation, is known as Aditya —31

After dividing the huge Brahmanḍa into two parts, He (Svayambhu) made the Heaven and Earth, Akāśa and the quarters. The upper portion of the divided Brahmanḍa formed the heaven, the lower one the earth. The direction in which the Sun was located was termed, purva i.e., East, the direction on the right hand side of Brahma was named dakṣina, i.e., South, the direction to His left hand side was styled uttara, i.e., North, and the one falling at His back came to be known as pañchima, i.e., West —32

*Note*.—Purva means first, and the direction was so named, because proditya the first object of creation happened to be located that side

Pañchima means behind. This direction was named so, because it fell to the back of the Creator, who was standing faced to the East

Dakṣina means right. This direction fell to the right of Brahma

Uttara means subsequent

Afterwards, the principal mountains, like the Meru, clouds,

lightning, embryo, rivers, pitris, Manu and the seven oceans, full of various gems, were created — 33-34

*Note* — 'Pitarah' means manes of the dead, Forethers. The seven oceans are

**क्षीरोदः, लवणादः, दक्षुदः, घृतोदः, सुरोदः, रक्तुदः, स्वादुदः**

The above is the ancient division of oceans

Brahmā created the Brāhmaṇas and, owing to His desire of calling the Universe into being, He is also known as Prajāpati Mārtanda came into being by the glory of the Creator — 35

*Note* — Bhūdeva means the mundane Gods, i.e., the Brāhmaṇas. They were so named because they were inspired with Divine knowledge

Prajāpati means the father of progeny, i.e., the Creator

The Sun, owing to its flashing out of the Brahmāṇḍa at the time of its breaking, i.e., being divided into two parts, is known by the name of Mārtanda, and the image of the Creator, Brahmā, the four-headed Deity, who is full of the element of Rajoguna came to be called as Mahatman — 36

*Note* — Rajoguna is the constituent quality of all the material substances

The Creator Brahmā has four mouths that are visible, and that is why He is called so Mahatman in the phraseology of Sankhya, means Mahatsatva, i.e., the attribute of buddhi and when this attribute has more of rajoguna then it is called Brahmā

The same Common Cause of the Universe who created all the Devas, Demons, and mankind is known by the name of Brahmā, who is full of Rajoguna and who is also styled Mahat-satva (or Brahmā) — 37

*Here ends the second Chapter dealing with the destruction  
of Brahmāṇḍa*

### CHAPTER III

The king asked the Lord, how Brahmā created the universe and the reason of His having four heads — 1

The Lord Fish replied that first of all Brahmā practised devout austerities, whereby were revealed the sacred Vedas, together with their complements and supplements and the metres. The oldest of all Sāstras was first recollected by Brahmā—the eternal Brahma—in words, with its ten million elaborations. After that, Brahmā revealed the sacred Vedas and the sciences of Mīmānsa, Nyāya, &c, together with the eightfold proof. Inspired with the Vedic knowledge, Brahmā became conscious of His supreme potentiality and through His desire created the ten sages, who are known as the Mānasa sons of the Creator, viz., Marichi, Atri, Angira, Pulastyā, Pulaha, Kriatu, Pracheta, Bhrigu, Vasistha and Nārada.

In addition to the fore-mentioned ten sages, the following came into existence from the various limbs of His body, without having any mother from His right thumb appeared Prajāpati Dakṣe, from

His breast Dharma, from His heart Cupid, from His brows Anger, from His lips Greed, from His intellect Delusion, from His egoism Arrogance, from His throat Glee, from His eyes Death, from His hands the sage Bharata These are the nine sons O King and the tenth was a girl, called Abgaja —2-12

*Note.—'Abgaja' means originating from the body*

At this, the king Vaivasvata Manu said —

"Lord! I have understood that intellect begot Delusion and egoism begot arrogance, but what is intellect?"—13

The Lord replied that the presence of the three attributes, viz -- Satva, Rajas, Tamas, in equipoise, form the Prakrti. The same Prakrti is also known as Pradhana, Vyakta and Mâyâ. The Creation springs from this very Prakrti and ultimately disappears into it. By a disturbance in these attributes, the same one form manifested itself into three, as Brahma, Viñnu and Maheśwara. Similarly, the presence of the three attributes in unequal parts begets Mahatmatva, which is also known as intellect. Egoism sprang from the Mahatmatva, and the five organs of perception and other five organs of action, originated from Egoism —14-18

These are —The ears, the skin, the eyes, the tongue, the nose, the anus, the male and the female organs of generation, the hands, the feet, the speech —19

*Note.—The first five are the organs of perception, and the last five are the organs of action*

The five organs of perception produced words, touch, form, flavour, and smell, and the five organs of action brought forth emission, happiness, taking, walking and speech —20

The mind is reckoned to be the eleventh organ, as it helps the faculties of intellect and action in their respective operations. The minute molecules of all the organs form the substratum for the individual soul that lies enshrined in it, and it is for this reason that the flame within which lies the asylum of the individual soul is known by the name of subtle body. The individual soul by coming in contact with this atomic body is called corporeal. The mind, propelled by desire to create, starts the work of creation. The subtle element of sound brought ether into being. Sound is the only attribute of ether —21-23

*Note.—Lord Brahma first of all wished to create and then He threw His mind in the achievement of the work of His desire. Helped by His mind, He proceeded with the work of creation*

By a concussion in ether, came forth wind, possessing the qualities of sound and tangibility, and the subtle element of tangibility

produced brilliancy, which caused water attributed with sound, tangibility and form —24-25

The earth was produced by the potency of the subtle element of liquidity inherent in water, and it has the attributes akin to water and also of the subtle element of fragrance. The Mahātatva, which is formed by the five subtle and primary elements, is called the Vijnānmaya koṣa by the Vedāntins, *buddhi*, i.e intellect, is another name for the same. The man possessed of this twenty-fifth element enjoys and suffers —26-27

*Note*—Twenty-fifth (element), i.e (consciousness) God has laid down certain laws for mankind to follow. Any action against the established laws leads to wrong which always causes pain. We have been given the faculty to distinguish between right and wrong, and it is our own fault if we choose the latter. A man always reaps the fruits of his actions. He suffers if he deviates from the right path and does wrong, and enjoys as long as he continues to follow the right track and does good.

The body therefore comprises the twenty-six elements, and the individual soul, which is subordinate to the wishes of the Lord, closes the list of the elements that make up the human body —28

Lord Brahmā created the Universe by the help of the above enumerated elements, and Sankhya, which is one of the six systems of Hindu philosophy, is so called by Kapila, etc., because it enunciates these elements —29

Lord Brahmā, after creating His mānasa putras, was not quite satisfied with the work of His creation. He set about devising some plan which would carry on the work of creation and would relieve Him of the task. With this view, He began to invoke Gāyatri. After some time the goddess Gāyatri, known under different names, viz.—Satarūpā, Sāvitri, Sarasvati, Brahmāni, &c., appeared in the form of a girl from the half portion of Brahmā's body who at the first sight mistakenly took Her for His daughter. Afterwards, the Creator, seeing that form of exquisite beauty, was fired with love and repeatedly uttered, "What an enchanting form!"—30-33

At this, the Mānasa putras of Brahmā, i.e., Vasiṣṭha, &c., taking Sāvitri for their sister, began to express their feelings of seething indignation and contempt at the attitude of Their Father (Lord Brahmā), but He was so much absorbed in love that He did not heed anything in the least —34

Brahmā continued uttering, "Oh! what an enchanting form! oh! what an enchanting form!" in His love for the goddess Sāvitri, and the latter, after saluting Him, began to circumambulate Him in reverence. Brahmā fixed his gaze on Sāvitri and could not distract Himself

from Her As she was circumambulating Him, He felt shy of turning His head each time to Her direction, as His Mânas putras were standing close by He therefore created four heads, each pointed to a direction, in order that He may see Sâvitri undisturbed, without having to turn His head each time in course of Her circumambulations Seeing Brahmâ in such a condition, Satarûpâ went to heaven with the Mânas sons of the Creator, and as she was travelling towards heaven, Brahmâ put on a fifth head right on top which afterwards He covered with His long matted hair This is how Brahmâ came to have five heads After this, Brahmâ lost his powers that He had acquired by practising asceticism, owing to His not controlling His mind and falling into the snares of Cupid Then Brahmâ dispersed His sons, after directing them to carry on the work of Creation —35-41

The sons of Brahmâ, in obedience to His instructions, set themselves to complete the work of creation, and afterwards they took leave of Brahmâ with salutations —42

Brahmî, fired with passion in Her company, married Satarûpâ and began to pass His days in enjoyment inside a lotus He enjoyed the company of Sâvitri for hundred years, and after a long time Manu was born to them --43-44

Manu, thus born, was Svayambhu Manu, who, owing to his close affinity to Brahmâ, is also called Âdipurusa (the first man) The progeny of Svayambhu Manu multiplied considerably and the Vairâjas are among them —45-46

Svârochisa, &c, the seven Manus, and another set of seven Manus, Auttami, &c, altogether the fourteen Manus, belong to the family of Svayambhu Manu "O, King Varavastata Manu," said the Lord, "You are the seventh of the last set of Manus" —47

*Here ends the third Chapter dealing with primary creation*

#### CHAPTER IV

The king said, "O, Merciful! I feel awfully grieved to hear that Lord Brahma married Ahgajâ Pray, tell me why he was not regarded as having committed a fearful sin by having done so Remove my doubts, O, Master of the Universe! by graciously explaining to me why the offspring of Brahmâ were allowed to intermarry in their paternal circle without any regard for close-knit kinship" The Lord Fish replied "O King! such doubts only arise in the case of mankind, for men have

atomic bodies and beget children in a different way, while the primeval creation is celestial in which Rajoguna predominates. The Devas not have supersensuous bodies and they beget progeny in quite different ways. The celestial forms come into being in other ways, and it is very difficult for men having sensuous bodies to understand this great secret. Only supernatural intellect causes celestial creation, therefore those alone can understand its great secret who themselves are possessed with such an intellect, just as a serpent alone can trace the footprints of another serpent, and aerial tracks can only be discerned by birds and other beings that fly in the air. O, King! the question of any prescribed order on prohibition does not arise in the deeds of the Devas. Only Their desire is taken into consideration in whatever they do. Other beings reap the fruits of their karma (doings) which the Devas do not. No doubts should therefore be raised regarding the doings of the Devas, nor should the beings having sensuous bodies think of doing the same deed"—1-6

Besides this, as Lord, Brahmā is the governor of the Vedas, so is the goddess Gayatrī of the Brahmins (the sacred text, i.e., the Vedas). She is the better-half of the Lord, and that is why she appeared from His body. Brahmā and Gāyatrī are inseparables. Sometimes only one of the two puts on appearance and sometimes both do the same, but all the same both are always together. They never remain apart. As sunshine or light never lives devoid of its shadow, similarly Brahmā never lives apart from Gāyatrī. Brahmā is the master of the Vedas and Sāvitri (another name for Gāyatrī), is the governess of the same, Brahmā is therefore also the master of the latter, and consequently He committed no sin by marrying Her"—7-10

"In spite of all this, Lord Brahmā felt ashamed for not being able to suppress His passion in presence of His mānasa sons. He therefore got much vexed with the God of love and cursed Him after the departure of His (mānasa) sons"—11

"The object with which you made me the target of your arrows will ere long lead you to be reduced to ashes by Siva, when you similarly behave with Him," was the curse that Brahmā pronounced on Cupid"—12

"Hearing this curse of Brahmā, the God of love shuddered with fear and cried out in great dismay, 'O, Lord! You created me with

\* Professor Wilson writes —

"The Matsya Purana has a little allegory of its own, on the subject of Brahma's intercourse with Satarupa; for it explains the former to mean the Vedas, and the latter, the Sāvitri or holy prayer, which is their chief text, and in their co-habitation there is, therefore, no evil."

the object of captivating the minds of men and women and kindling amorous feelings within them You never instructed me to make any exception in Your case I only carried out Your mandate and have committed no sin for which I may be subjected to such a dreadful curse

-- 13

Therefore, be pleased with me and by Your clemency save me from the effects of Your curse and grant me the boon of assuming form again" —13-16

"Hearing such entreaties of Cupid, Lord Brahmā melted with compassion, and said 'In the reign of King Vaivasvata, Rāma the destroyer of many Rākṣasas and my compeer in power and prowess, will be born in the family of King Yadu When Rāma, the valiant prince, will fix Dwārikā as His headquarters, You will be born as a son of His brother, the God Kṛiṣṇa"—17-18

Note—Rāma here means Balarāma, the brother of Kṛiṣṇa, and not the king of Ayodhyā

"In that body (as the son of Kṛiṣṇa), you will have a series of enjoyments and afterwards you will be born as a son of Vatsa in the family of King Bharata After this, you will live till the time of dissolution that will close the reign of Vidyādharaś, and then you will again come back to me." —19-20

Note—Vidyādhara is a class of demi-gods

"The God of love took leave of Brahmā and departed with mingled feelings of joy and sadness—joy on account of the hope given by the Lord and sadness for fear of sufferings, as the effect of His curse" —21

After hearing this, the King Vaivasvata Manu again addressed the Lord thus "Lord! Be gracious enough to satisfy my curiosity by telling me who was King Yadu, in whose family the God of Love took His birth, how Lord Siva reduced Cupid to ashes, who was King Bharata and how the work of creation continued onwards"—22-23

The Fish-god replied "King! Gāyatrī that appeared from the body of Brahmā possessed of infinite forms and organs begot the following seven children—Svayambhu Manu, Rati (the wife of Cupid It also means desire of something) Tapas, Manas (mind), Dik Sambhrama (delusion), and Mahattatva"—24-25

"The Mānasa sons of Brahmā—Marichi, &c—who were born first, began to pass their days in the terrestrial globe in the practice of asceticism The Creator, marking the indifference of His Mānasa sons with regard to the work of creation, produced Vāmadeva, the wielder of the trident and also Sanatkumar, the first even of the first borns"—26-27

"From the mouth of Lord Vâmadeva came forth the Brâhmaṇas, from His arms the Kṣatriyas, from His thighs the Vaidyas, and from His feet the Sûdras"—28

"Afterwards came forth lightning, thunderbolt, clouds, rainbow, metres of various kinds, several varieties of medicines, eightyfour crores of Devâs, known as Sâdhyas, and who have three eyes and are immortals, without any fear of getting old"—29-30

"Lord Brahmâ, finding Sîva creating such a race of Immortals, said that it was advisable to create only such beings as would reap the fruit of their own karmas. Sîva, on hearing this, instantly stopped His propaganda"—31-32

*Note*—Sthânu, literally, the trunk of a tree. It means that Sîva instantly stopped the work of creation and became fixed like the trunk of a tree. In other words, He did not carry on the work of creation after Brahmâ offered Him His suggestions. From that day He is also known as Sthânu.

"Afterwards, Svayambhu Manu became the husband of Anantî, whom he obtained after great penances. "By this alliance, Svayambhu Manu was blessed with two sons, viz.—Priyavîta and Uttânapâda, and of these, the latter was married to Sünîtâ the daughter of Dhâima"—33-34

"Uttânapâda became the father of the following four children, viz.—Apasyatî, Apasyanta, Kirtimâna, and Dhruva (Pole Star)"—35

"In the bygone ages, Dhruva practised severe penances for a period of three thousand years and obtained from Brahmâ an abode in the eternal celestial regions. The Saptarisis, acknowledging him as their chief clustered themselves round him"—36-37

*Note*—The seven Rishis (sages), i.e., the Mânasas sons of Brahmâ. It means the constellation known as Ursa Major (the seven stars of which are said to be the seven sages, i.e., the Mânasas sons of Brahmâ).

"Dhruva begot a son, Sîsta, from Dhanyâ, the daughter of Svayambhu Manu, and Sîsta had five children, viz.—Kripa, Rîpuñjaya, Virita, Virika, and Virikatejasa, from Suchchhâyâ, the daughter of Agni. Rîpuñjaya became the father of Chakṣu from Virîni, the grand-daughter of Brahmâ. Chakṣu became the father of Châkusa Manu from the daughter of Virîni, and Châkusa Manu begot on the princess Nadvalâ ten valiant and enterprising sons, viz.—Urû, Purû, Satadyumna, Satyavâka, Havî, Agnîstut, Atirâtra, Sudyumna, Aparâjita, and Abhimanyu,"—38-42

"Urû had the following six sons, viz.—Agni, Sunian, Khyâti, Ritu, Agnîrâ, and Gayâ, from his consort, Agneyi"—43

"Agnîrâ became the father of Vêna, from Sunithâ, the daughter of Pitri. The sages rubbed Vêna to death, owing to his tyranny, and, as

they were rubbing him, King Prithu appeared from his hand. The great King Prithu was the father of Antardhâna and Havirdhâna"—44

"Mâricha was the son of Antardhâna from Sikhandînt, and Havirdhâna had six sons, viz — Prâchînvarhiṣa, Sâṅga, Yama, Sukia, Vâla and Subba, from Dhîṣnâ, the daughter of Agni"—45

"Prâchînvarhiṣa begot many children belonging to the Havirdhan clan. He had ten stalwart sons, well versed in archery, who are known as Prâchetas, from Savarnâ, the daughter of Samudia. They all devoted themselves to asceticism, and the trees that they grew to form a small jungle where they could practise their austerities, in process of time developed into a thick forest of vast latitudes which was ultimately burnt down by the fire at the commands of Indra (the God of Rain)"—46-48

"The ten Prâchetas had Mânis, the daughter of Chandramâ, for their wife, from whom they begot the Prajâpati Daksa"—49

"After giving birth to Prajâpati Daksha the daughter of the moon brought forth the trees, the herbs, and the river Chandravati"—50

"Now hear the tale of the multiplication of the eighty crores of Daksa's sons"—51

"Daksa became the progenitor of a most queer race. Among his children some were bipeds, some had more feet, some had long ears and some broad ones, some had features resembling those of the horse, the bear, the lion, the dog, the boar, or the camel. On seeing such a vast multitude of his progeny, Daksa created a large number of women"—52-53

"Out of the girls he created, he gave ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kasyapa, and twenty-seven to the moon that form a certain galaxy of stars. These very same daughters of Daksa produced the further race of Devas, Râksasas, mankind and the other beings inhabiting the extensive universe"—54-55

## CHAPTER V

The sages, after hearing this, requested the Sage Sâta to relate to them how Devas, Dânavas, Gandharvas, serpents and Râksasas were born.—1

Sâta said that in the days gone by, the work of creation was originated by desire, perception and touch. Later on, Daksa started the work of creation by the conjunction of men and women.—2

"Hear, O sages! I shall now relate to you how Daksa introduced a new system of creation at the injunction of Brahma"—3

Dakṣa begot thousands of issues from his wife, Pāñchajani, when he saw that the Devas, the Rishis, and the serpents, etc., created from the mind of the Creator, had not the same faculty to help the growth of creation —4

Nārada, on seeing the progress of Dakṣa in the field of creation, said —5

"O, ye Rishis, who are sons of Dakṣa! first reconnoitie the extent of the universe and then set yourselves to the work of creation" —6

"On hearing the above words of the Sage Nārada, the sons of Dakṣa started to survey the length and breadth of the universe, and ultimately lost themselves, as the rivers do when they fall into the ocean. They have not returned unto this day" —7

The lost sons of Dakṣa were known by the name of Haiyadva, and the former giving them up for lost, created one thousand Brāhmaṇas known as Śavala —8

On finding the Śavala carrying on the work of creation, the Sage Nārada went to them and said —"First examine the extent of the universe and try to reclaim your lost brothers, then carry on the work of creation" —9-10

"Taking to the words of the sage, they started to reclaim their lost brothers, but met with the same fate, and it is for this reason that no one dares to repeat the same experiment unto this day" —11

On losing the latter batch of his sons, Dakṣa begot sixty daughters from Pāñchajani, the daughter of Vuani. Out of those girls, he gave ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa, twentyseven to Chandramā and four to Arīstanemi. He also gave two to the son of Bhṛigu, another two to Kūḍāśva, and two to Āṅgirā. Their names will be related hereafter —12-14

Marutvati, Vasu, Yāmi, Lambī, Bhānu, Arundhati, Saṅkalpa, Muḥūrtā, Sādhyā, Viśvā, who were given to Dharma, were the mothers of the Devas —15-16

Viśvadeva was born of Viśvā, Sādhyaguna from Sādhyā, Marutvanta-gan from Marutvati, Vāsava from Vasu, Bhānava from Bhānu, Muḥūrtaka from Muḥūrtā, Ghosa from Lambī, Nagulīthi from Yāmi, the dweller in pātāla from Arundhati, Saṅkalpa from Saṅkalpa —17-19

The most powerful of the Devas that pervade the universe are known by the name of Vasus, who are eight in number, viz.—Āpa, Dbruva, Soma, Dhara, Anila, Anala, Pratyūṣa and Prahbāsa —20-21

The four sons of Āpa are Sānta, Danda, Sāmva, and Manivakra. They became the protectors of sacrificial rites —22

Dhruva became the father of Kâla, Sôni of Vaichâ, Dhara of Dravina and Havyavâha Dravina and Havyavâha were born of Kalyânî, and Manoharâ, the daughter of Hanû, was the mother of Prâna, Ramana, Sisra —23-24

Anila became the father of the two powerful sons, viz —Manojava and Avijñatgati from Sîvâ —25

Anala perchance cast his seed in a heap of reeds, whence sprang up Kumâra, Sîkha, Viśâkha and Naigameya They were fostered by the Pleiades, and that is why they are known as Kîrtikêya, and the great Rishi Devala was begotten by Piatyûsa —26-27

*Note* — Krittika, the third of the 27 lunar mansions or asterisms, consisting of six stars The six stars are represented as nymphs acting as nurses to Kartikeya, the God of war

Prabhâsa begot the renowned architect and builder—the great Visvakarmâ to make mansions, pleasure gardens, statues, ornaments, tanks, wells, etc —28

Vâmadevas, i.e., Rudras, the creators of the Immortals, are eleven in number, viz Ajâikapâda, Ahirbudhnya, Virûpâksha, Raivata, Hara, Bahurûpa, Tiyamvaka, Sâvitâ, Jayanta, Pinâki, Aparâjita The eleven Rudras were created by the mind of Brahmâ each holding a trident in his hand An account of them having created a race of Immortals, numbering 84 crores, has been given before The Rudras pervade and protect the universe and have begotten many children from the womb of Surabhi —29-32

*Here ends the fifth Chapter, dealing with the progenies of Vasus and Rudras*

## CHAPTER VI

Sûta, addressing the sages who were listening to his narrations with wriapt attention at Naimisâranya, said —“O, sages! I shall now enumerate to you the names of Kashyapa's sons that he had from his 13 wives Aditi, Diti, Danu, Anûṣa, Sursâ, Surabhi, Vinatâ, Tâmrâ, Krodhavâsî, Irâ, Kadru, Viśva and Muni were the thirteen wives of Kashyapa —1-2

Devas called Tuṣita who flourished in the reign of Châkṣusa Manu, came to be known as Âdityas (Suns), owing to them having been born as the sons of Devas called glorious Kashyapa from his wife, Aditi, during the reign of King Vaivasvata Manu They were twelve in number, viz , Indra, Dhâtâ, Bhaga, Tvastâ, Mitra, Varuna, Yama, Vîvasvâna, Savitâ, Puṣa, Ansumâna, and Viśnu These were the 12 Âdityas—the centre of rays —3-5

The Devaprahaṇas the sons of Krisâsva Rishi, and the twelve Âdityas appear at the beginning of every Manvantara and Kalpa and vanish at their termination Diti, the second wife of Kashyapa, gave birth to two sons,

*viz.*, Hiranyakasipu and Hiranyakâksa. Hiranyakasipu had four sons, *viz.* Prahlâda, Anuhlâda, Samhlâda and Hlâda. Prahlâda had the following sons — Ayushmâna, Shivi, Bîskala, and Vnochana. Bali was the son of Vnochana, and the former had one hundred sons, the oldest of whom was Bâna — 6-10

The notable brothers of Bâna were — Dhritarastra, Sûrya, Chandra, Chandramutsûpana, Nîkumbhanâbha, Gurbaksa, Kukshibhima, and Vibhîṣâna — 11

These were the most notable of Bana's brothers. Bana had one thousand arms, and each arm was bedecked with a different kind of weapon. Vâna was an ardent devotee of Lord Sîva, and had won over the latter by his deep devotions. In fact, he was such an earnest devotee that he had almost unified himself with the Lord. His realm was guarded by Sîva Himself, the wielder of the trident — 12-13

Ulûka, Sakuni, Bhûta-samtlâpana, and Mahânâbha were the sons of Hiranyâksa. The four sons of Hiranyâksa begot an invincible band of demons, numbering 77 crores, who had mighty limbs, various kinds of faces, and were most hardy — 14-15

Danu, the third wife of Kashyapa, brought forth one hundred mighty demons, the principal one of whom was Vîpiachitti — 16

Dvîmûrdhâ, Sakumî, Sankusundhâra, Ayomukha, Sambara, Kapida, Vâmanâ, Marichi, Meghavâna, Irâ, Garbhastirâ, Vidiabana, Ketu, Ketuvirya, Sathrida, Indrajit, Saptajit, Vajranâbha, Ekachakria, Mahâbâhu, Vajrâksa, Târaka, Asiloma, Puloma, Vindu, Buna, Svarbhânu, Viśaparvâ were chiefly the noteworthy brothers of Viprachit — 17-20

Svarbhânu gave birth to a daughter, named Piabha. Puloma gave birth to Sachî, Maya to Updânavi, Mandodari and Kuhû, Viśaparvâ to Sarmisthâ, Sundâri and Chandrâ, and Vaîsvânara to Puloma and Kâlikâ — 21-22

Puloma and Kâlikâ were married to the demon King, Marichi, who begot another formidable batch of Rakshasas, numbering 60 thousand from them — 23

The Paulomas and the Kâlikêyas, *i.e.*, the demon progeny of Puloma and Kâlikâ, after being made invulnerable even against the Devas, began to live in Hiranyakapura. Lord Viśnu killed the Paulomas and Kâlikêyas, who had become most haughty after they were made invulnerable by Bishma. Only Viprachit survived, and he produced another race of thirteen demons, known as Saîhimkêya from the womb of Sîmhika the sister of Hiranyakasipu — 24-25

*Note.—The Paulomas and the Kālikēyas were only made invulnerable by Brahma, and only the minor Gods could not kill them, but Lord Viṣṇu is the Supreme God*

Vyamsa, Kalpa, Nala, Vātāpi, Ilvala, Namuchi, Svasripa, Ajana, Naraka, Kālanābha, Sarnāna, Kālavirya, Potarana were among the Sathimkēya class of demons Samhilāda, the son of Hilanyakasīpu, produced the race of Nivātakavacha demons—26 28

*Note—Potarana, the thirteenth demon of the Sathimkēya class, is not mentioned in the text, but the number thirteen is laid down in the text To complete the list, therefore, I have included the name of Potarana, on the authority of Hari Vānapurāna*

This class of Nivātakavacha demons that was made invulnerable to the Devas, demons and serpents, was ultimately destroyed by Ajiṇu—a hero of Māhābhāratā—by the grace of Śiva—29

Kaśyapa had the following six daughters, from his wife, Tāmrā—  
Sukī, Senī, Bhāsi, Sugrīvi, Grīdhrikā, Suchī—30

Sukī became the mother of Suka and Ulūka, Senī of Syena, Bhāsi of Kuvara, Grīdhri of Grīdhra and Kapōta, Suchī of Hamsa, Sārasā and Vaka, &c—32

*Note—Sūka=Parrot Ulūka=Owl Syena=Hawk Kurara=Osprey Grīdhra=Vulture Kapōta=Pigeon Hamsa=Swan Sārasā=Crane Vaka=Duck*

Sugrīvi gave birth to goat, horse, ram, camel, mule, &c

From his wife Vinitā, Kaśyapa begot Garuda, the lord of birds, the Aruna, and a daughter, named Saudāmīni (Lightning)—33-34

Sampāti and Jatāyuh were the sons of Aruna, and Vabhrū and Sighraghā were the sons of Sampāti—35

Jatāyuh was the father of Kainikāra, Satagāmī, Sārasā, Rajjuvāla and Bherunda—36

The above-mentioned sons of Jatāyuh became the ancestors of different species of birds, and Surasā, one of the wives of Kaśyapa, became the mother of serpents—37

Kadiū—a wife of Kaśyapa—gave birth to several thousand-hooded serpents, the principal ones of whom are—Sesa, Vāsuki, Karkoṭa, Saṅkha, Airāvata, Kambala, Dhanañjaya, Mahānila, Padina, Asvatara (mule), Takṣaka, Elāpatra, Mahāpadma, Dhūtarāstīra, Balāhaka, Saṅkhapāla, Mahāsankha, Puśpadatīra, Subhananā, Saṅkuromā, Bahula, Vāmanā Pāṇīna, Kapila Durmukha, and Patañjali—38-41

The above-named sons of Kadiū and Kaśyapa were the fore-fathers of different classes of serpents, most of whom were consumed in the great sacrifice of Jañmejaya--42

*Note—Jañmejaya was the son of King Pariksita. The latter was bitten by a serpent and died in consequence. Jañmejaya, therefore, to avenge his father's death, performed a great sacrifice to consume all the serpents in which a large number of them was destroyed*

From his wife, Krodhvadâ, Kashyapa had a race of Krodbavasâ demons, numbering a million who were ultimately killed by Bhîrasena—a hero of Mahâbhârata—43

Suabhi, one of the wives of Kashyapa, gave birth to the attendants of Rudras, cows, buffaloes, &c—44

*Note—Rudras are a group of Gods, eleven in number, supposed to be the manifestations of Siva, who is said to be the head of the group*

Muni and Arishâ, other two wives of Kashyapa, gave birth to the class of Munis and Apsaiâs and the race of Kinnaras and Gandharvas, respectively—45

From Ila, Kashyapa begot reeds, trees, creepers, &c, and from his wife Visvâ, he produced a race of numerous Yaksas and demons—46

Diti—a wife of Kashyapa—gave birth to 49 maruts (Gods of wind), who were the beloved of the Devas

*Here ends the sixth Chapter dealing with the progeny of Kashyapa*

## CHAPTER VII

The Rsis said —How did Diti again beget the Maruts and how did the latter become the friends of the Devas?—1

Sûta said —In the days gone by, when Lord Visnu destroyed the offspring of Diti in the great war between the Devas and Asuras, Diti repaired to Syamantapañchaka—a holy place—on the banks of the Sarasvati, and devoted herself to the worship of her husband and practised severe penances for a considerable length of time—2-3

*Note—A true Hindu wife always regards her husband as her supreme Lord. She has the same devotion for her as one has for God. Her salvation lies through her husband*

After a little more than a century, Diti, the mother of demons, who had practised hard penances like a Rishi and had become emaciated and aged owing to her living on phalâhâra and regularly keeping up Chândriayana and other fasts, asked Vasishtha and other sages—4-5

*Note—Phalâhâra The Hindus in course of their fasts do not take cooked food. They only take light things and particularly fruits. Phalâhâra literally means a repast of fruits*

Chândriyana is a particular fast, the chief feature of which is that one has to regulate his morsels of phalâhâra to the phases of the moon, i.e., on the new-moon day he has to take only one morsel which he goes on increasing one by one each day, for a fortnight, when the fast terminates

"Sages! Tell me some such vrata that would free me from the crushing grief of my son's destruction and make me feel happy in this world as well as in the next"—6

**Note.—**Vrata means fast Any self-imposed religious observance, Restriction, Vow, Precept, Penance

In this world as well as in the next The Hindus believe in the transmigration of soul According to this idea, there is a life after death until the soul becomes totally unified with Brahma, which is Nirvâna or final rest The next world here, therefore, refers to the re-birth after transmigration of soul

The sage Vasistha advised Diti to observe the Madana-Dvâdashi fast, by keeping which Diti became the mother of the Maruts and was liberated from her pangs of grief —7

The Rishis said —“O, Pious Sage, Sûta! we are very anxious to know something of the Madana-Dvâdashi fast, by the observance of which Diti begot forty-nine sons again (after her progeny was destroyed by Visnu)”—8

Sûta said —“Hear, O Rishis! what the Sage Vasistha said to Diti about the fast in question I shall repeat to you the same in detail” —9

“The fast begins in the month of Chaitra, on the 12th day of the bright fortnight One who observes this fast should place a jar of gold, silver, copper, brass or earth—according to his means—on an earthen platform, after filling it with different fruits, pieces of sugarcane, and white rice Before placing the jar on the platform, it should also be painted with white sandal and covered with two pieces of white cloth After this, a small plate of copper containing some fruits, gold and raw sugar should be placed on the top of the jar Above it should be placed a plantain leaf, bearing an image of Cupid, and to the left of it should be placed the image of Rati made of sugar After this, the worship of Cupid and Rati should be performed in the following manner — The images should first be bathed with incense and water, then white flowers, rice, and sesamum should be offered Afterwards, the Angapûjâ (body worship) should follow, as indicated below —After pronouncing *Om Kâmâya*, worship the feet After pronouncing *Om Saubhâgyadâya*, worship the legs After pronouncing *Om Smardâya*, worship the thighs After pronouncing *Om Manmathâya*, worship the waist After pronouncing *Om Svaschodârâya*, worship the stomach After pronouncing *Om Anangâya*, worship the breast After pronouncing *Om Padmamukhâya*, worship the mouth After pronouncing *Om Panchâsarâya*, worship the hands After pronouncing *Om Sarvâtmâne*, worship the head On the completion of this worship, sandal and incense should be offered, and then prayers should be sung accompanied by music In case there be no one to sing prayers and play on the music, then the glories of Kâma and Keshava

should be narrated and listened to On the following morning, the jar should be given to a Brâhmaṇa —10-18

Note—In the text, only Kâmâya, Saubhâgyadîya, &c., are given But all those expressions should be prefixed by (Om) and suffixed by (Naṁah), before being pronounced at the time of worship Kâmâya, thus prefixed and suffixed, becomes, Om Kâmâya naṁah, which means "I salute Kâma, the God of love Similarly all the expressions are simply meant to convey the salutations of the worshipper to the Lord of love—expressive of the former's devotion and reverence to the latter All the expressions are only adjectival that ultimately apply to Cupid, viz.—Kâma-God of Love, Cupid

Ananga, literally, means without a body Cupid was destroyed by Sîva and became bodiless He is therefore known as ananga also

Saubhâgyada, literally means the giver of good luck, and here applies to the God of Love who brings good luck

Smara literally, means remembrance Because Cupid appears and begins to exercise His influence merely by thinking of Him, the term itself has become a name of Cupid

Padmamukha literally, means the mouth of a lotus or (ii) one who has a face as beautiful as a lotus This expression is often employed by Indian poets to describe a beautiful face As the face of Cupid is as aromatic, as delicate, as soft and as healthy looking as a lotus, He is known by this name also

Pâñchâśra literally, means one who holds five arrows Cupid is armed with the following five arrows —

अरविंदमरोक्षं च चूतं च नवमलिका । नीलोत्पलं च पञ्चते पञ्चवारस्य साथकाः ॥

The same five arrows are also differently named as —

सन्मेहनोन्माइनै च शोषणस्ताय मत्तथा । स्तम्भनश्चेति कामस्य पञ्चवाणाः प्रकीर्तिः ॥

He is therefore known as Pâñchâśra also

Sarvâtmân means the whole soul and applies to Cupid

After making over the jar to a deserving Brâhmaṇa, the worshipper should feast a number of Brâhmaṇas with devotion, and afterwards he should have his own meal devoid of salt Then, the invited Brâhmaṇas should be dismissed with presents, and the following prayer should be uttered before giving them presents —19

"O, Lord Janârdana, in the form of Cupid! Who bring bliss to every soul, be pleased with thy devotee"—20

The same routine of worship should be observed each month, on the twelfth day of the bright fortnight, and continued on for a whole year The worshipper should observe a fast on the 13th day of the bright fortnight and worship Viṣṇu On the 12th day of every bright fortnight, he should live only on fruits and sleep on the floor At the beginning of the 13th month, he is to finally complete his cycle of fasts by performing worship as mentioned before, and on its completion he should worship the golden image of Cupid Afterwards, white sesamum, mixed with clarified butter, should be poured into fire and at the time of each sacrificial offering the various names of Cupid, already

mentioned, prefixed with *om* and suffixed with *Svâhâ*, should be pronounced. At the close of the sacrifice, the worshipper should also worship the officiating priest and his consort, and then dismiss all his Brâhmaṇa guests after feasting, garlanding, and giving them presents of clarified butter, cows, decently-arranged beds, clothes, ornaments, sugarcane. The golden image of Cupid should be given to the officiating priest along with other presents mentioned above, according to the means of the worshipper — 21-26

One who observes the Madana Dvâdashi fast in this way, becomes liberated from evils and begets worthy children and, finally, passes away in peace, for Visnu and Sîrâ are the same — 27-28

*Note* — Liberated from all evils or sins, or vices. In other words Madan-dvâdasi fast, by exercising its influence on the body and mind, improves the man both physically and morally. Later on, by being blessed with children, he passes away in peace and attains rest, for he feels that his worthy children would discharge their duties unto God, their deceased ancestors, and mankind. It is for the fulfilment of these duties that a Brâdu is always so anxious to beget worthy sons

The worship of Kâma fulfils the desires of the worshipper. Hearing the advantages of the Madana Dvâdashi fast, Diti observed it devoutly — 29

Kâsyapa chanced to meet his wife Diti, and through his powers (of asceticism) made her young again. On being questioned by Kâsyapa, Diti said that she wanted to be mother of such a progeny as would kill Lord Indra and conquer all the Devas. Kâsyapa promised to beget such a child from her womb when the sage Âpastamba performed a putresti sacrifice. The sage Âpastamba eventually began to perform the sacrifice — 30-34

*Note*.—Putresti is a special sacrifice which is performed to beget an offspring.

At the time of performing the sacrifice, the sage Âpastamba began to recite *Indra Satrurvardha svâhâ*, at which the Devas became pleased and the demons were overpowerd with grief — 35

*Note* — *Indra Satrurvardha svâhâ* and *Svâhâ Indra Satrurvardha svâhâ* mean the same thing, but, strictly speaking, the latter expression was applied by the sage Âpastamba. It has been put in a modified form to suit the metre. It is a compound word, and can be expounded in two ways, viz., (the enemy of Indra) and (Indra is whose enemy). Âpastamba, through a coincidence, began to pronounce the expression with such accent and emphasis as would admit the latter way of expounding the compound word which entirely reversed the object of Diti and, consequently, the Devas were pleased and the demons were overtaken with grief. It is therefore said —

At the conclusion of the sacrifice, Kâsyapa performed the purificatory ceremonies to facilitate conception, and began to counsel his wife how a pregnant woman should live. — 36

He advised Diti to remain in that hermitage for a century and not to take any meals in the morning and evening. Continuing his advice he said that a pregnant woman should not often go and sit at the root of a tree, nor should she sit on a broom-stick or a pestle. She should not enter or plunge herself in deep waters, and should also avoid living in a solitary house, sitting upon an ant-hill, and also depression of mind. She should not write by her nails, charcoal or ashes, on the floor, and should avoid much sleeping and labour. She should also abstain from sitting in a place covered with coal, chaff and bones, as well as from quarreling and yawning. She should not keep her hair unkempt, nor her person unclean, nor should she sleep with her head towards the north. She should never doff her garments, and should not allow her mind to be afflicted or her feet to remain wet. She should avoid much laughing and the use of inauspicious words. She should serve her preceptor, do pious deeds, and bathe in lukewarm medicated water. She should take great care of herself in every way, should wear fine ornaments, worship Vāstu (household deity), keep herself pleased, and devotedly serve her husband. She should give alms to the poor and worship Gauri (the wife of Śiva) on the 3rd day of a bright fortnight. A woman and, particularly one who is in the family way, if she follow such a course, begets amiable, valiant, and long-lived children, otherwise there is always a danger of miscarriage. "Therefore O beloved! follow the directions just explained to you. May you be blessed. I am now going to practise penances" — 37-48

After thus, Kasynpa vanished then and there, and Diti followed the instructions of her lord to the letter — 49

Indra came to know all this, and became fearfully alarmed. In his consternation, he left His kingdom of Heaven and going to Diti began to serve her. He, putting on a bright appearance, patiently and craftily began to pry into the daily life of Diti, in the hope that she might give Him an opportunity of causing an abortion, by some way neglecting or omitting to follow closely the precautions suggested by her husband. — 50-51

Diti, not knowing the foul intentions of Indra, did not entertain any suspicion, and she went on following the injunctions of her husband very closely, till there remained only three days to complete the century. She was so much surcharged with joy that she failed to observe the precautions, and one day she did not wash her feet, kept her hair unkempt and went to sleep like that. — 52-53.

In her recklessness, she slept in course of the day, with her head towards the north. All those irregularities afforded a good opportunity to Indra to enter into her womb in His subtle body, and by His weapon divided the child in the womb into seven parts. To His great surprise and dismay each part developed into a child. They all began to cry in the womb, then Indra divided each one into seven parts. Indra thus divided the child in the womb into forty-nine parts, but each part became a child, and they all began to cry. On seeing this, He was awfully astonished, and asked them not to cry —54—58

*Note*—Marodista= “do not weep or cry,” said Indra to the crying children in the womb, and that is why they were named “Marut” afterwards

Indra came to know, through His Yogic powers, that it was on account of Diti’s observance of the Dvâdaśî fast and worship of Kâma that His weapon could not destroy her child in the womb. His own thoughts began to oppress Him. He said to Himself that, instead of one, they multiplied into forty-nine. Devas could not destroy them. It would be safer to make them Devas —59-61

After this, Indra appeared before Diti and besought her to forgive Him for His base action. He said that He did that, because statesmanship dictates that a wise man should always endeavour to put an end to his enemies. They would, from that day forward, be known as the “Marut” and would rank among the Devas and would be entitled to a share in the sacrificial offerings, like other Devas —62-63

In this way, Indra, after making the “Maruts” into Devas and, taking Diti with Him in His vimâna, returned to Heaven —64

*Note*—Vimâna the conveyance of the Devas, something like the flying machine of the present times

Since then, the Maruts are classed among the Devas. They receive their share of sacrificial offerings, and after leaving the demons their kith and kin, they have closely identified themselves with the Devas —65

*Here ends the seventh Chapter dealing with Madana Dvâdaśî Vrata*

---

### CHAPTER VIII

The Rishi said —O Sûta! We have heard with concentrated attention what you have been pleased to relate to us, now we feel desirous to know the lives of the kings that flourished at each order of creation —1

The Sage Sûta said —At the time when King Prithu was anointed and made lord of the world, Chandramâ was made the king of medicinal herbs, sacrifices, fasts, penances, stars, planets, Brâmanas, trees, thickets, creepers, Varuna of waters, Kuvera of wealth and (other) kings, the Sun of the twelve Âdityas, Agni of Vasus, Daksa of Prajâpatis,

Indra of gods, Prahlâda of demons, Yama of pitris, Siva of demons and Yakshas, the Himalayas of the mountains, the Ocean of the waters, Chitraratha of Gandharvâs and Kûmaras, Vâsuki of powerful serpents, Takshaka of other snakes, Airavata of the Diggajas and other elephants; the peacock of birds, Uchchaišravâ of horses, the lion of the animals living in jungles, the bull of the cows, the trees of the herbs —2-8

Similarly, Lord Brahmâ made the Devas Sudharma, Sankhapada, Ketumâna, Hiranyakoinâ, the kings of East, South, West and North respectively and They protect the universe by destroying its enemies, unto this day —9-10

The various kings named above, collected together and took part in the coronation of king Prithu, and recognised him as the sovereign of the world King Prithu reigned till the end of Châkusa Manvantara, when he was succeeded by King Vaivasvata Manu of the solar dynasty —11-12

*Here ends the eighth Chapter dealing with the coronation of Kings*

### CHAPTER IX

The Sage Sûta said "After hearing that, King Manu again requested the Fish God to narrate to him the career of the Manus who flourished in bygone ages" —1

The Fish God said "O King! listen I shall relate to you briefly the lives of the Manus of yore, and shall give you a short history of Manvantaras and their times —2

"O Son of Mârtanda, hear attentively In the bygone ages, at the close of the reign of Svâyambhuva Manu there was a group of Devas, known as Yâmas In all Manvantaras, classes, such as Marichi, &c, are recorded to have appeared Svâyambhuva Manu had ten sons, viz -- Agnîghra, Agnivâhu, Rishphpha, Savala, Jyotimâna, Dyutimâna, Havya, Medhâ, Mâdhâtithi, Vasu They having established a code of law and morality departed to felicity This has been narrated as the Svâyambhuva Manvantara —3-6

The Svârochîsha-manvantara followed it There were of Svârochîsha Manu four sons, viz , Nabha, Nabhasya, Prasiti, Bhâvana Of this Manvantara, the following are recorded as seven Risis viz , Datta, Nischaya, Vâ nastamba, Prana, Kadâya, Aurva, and Brihaspati" The seven Devas of this Manvantara were sons of Vasistha, known as Tusita, Hastinâdra, Sukrita, Mûti, Apa, Jyoti, and Ayasmaya —7-10

In the third or Auttamiya Manvantara, Manu named Auttamî had ten sons, viz , "Iśa, Uija, Tarja, Suchi, Šukra, Madhu, Mâdhava, Nabhasya, Nabhâ, and Saha" (who was most illustrious) The group of Devas in this

Manvantara was known by the name of hâvana. The following were the seven Risis in this Manvantara who were also known by the name of Uija — Kaukundi, Dâlbhya, Sankha, Pravabana, Sîva, Sita, Sasmita —11-14

In the fourth Manvantara which was called Tâmasa, the seven Risis were — Kavi, Pithu, Agni, Akapi, Kapî, Jalpa, and Dhimâna, and the group of Devas were known by the name of Sadhya" —15-16

The King Tâmasa Manu had ten sons, viz —Akalmasa, Dhanvi, Tapomûla, Tapodhana, Taporati, Tapasya, Tapodyuti, Parantapa, Tapobhogi and Tapoyogi —17-18

In the [fifth] Raivat Manvantara, Devabâhu, Subâhu, Parjanya, Somapa, Hiranya-Româ, Saptâsva were the seven Risis, and Abhûtarajas was the group of Devâs Aruna, Tatvadarshî, Vittavân, Havayapa, Kapî, Yukta, Niutsuka, Satva, Niimoha and Prakâsaka were the ten pious and illustrious sons of Raivata Manu —19—22

In the sixth or Chikusa Manvantara, Bhîgu, Sudhâma, Vîmajâ, Sahisnu, Nîda, Vivasvâna and Atinâna were the seven Risis. The group of five Devâs was, Lekhâs, Ribhûs, Ribhâs, Bâumâlas and Divaukasas in this Manvantara Chikusa Manu had ten sons such as Uju, &c, as has been already mentioned by me in the genealogy of "Svâyambhuva Manu in chapter IV" —23-25

After the Chikusa Manvantara, as narrated by me, shall occur the seventh Manvantara, which is called Vaivasvata —26

In the Vaivasvata Manvantara, Atu, Vasîtha, Gautama, Kasyapa, Bharadvaja, the powerful Yogi, Viśwâmitra, Jamdagni, are the seven Risis. The seven Risis, after establishing a code of law and morality depart to felicity Sâdhyâs, Viśâs, Rudrâs, Maruts, Vasus, Aśvanikumârâs, Âdityâs are the classes of Devâs in Vaivasvata Manvantara. The King Vaivasvata Manu had ten renowned sons, viz —Iksvâku, &c. In every Manvantara there are seven Risis who, after establishing a code of law and morality, depart to felicity —27-31

Now I shall explain to you something about the Sâvâinya Manvantara Aśvathâmâ, Śradhvâna, Kausika, Gîlava, Satânanda, Kâsyapa, Râma, are the seven Risis in this Manvantara Dhriti, Vaiyâna, Yâsasa, Suvarna, Vîru, Charîshu, Idya, Sumati, Vasu, Sukra are the ten valiant sons of the Manu Sâvâni" —32-33

Rauchaya &c, shall be another six Manus after Sâvâni

From Prajâpati Ruchi there shall be Rauchya Manu, from Prajâpati Bhûtya there shall be Bhautya Manu and from Brahmâ there shall be Merusâvaranya, Rita, Ritadhâmâ, Visvakeśna Manus

"I have explained to you something about the past and future Manus, O, King! Similarly, commencing from the age of Devás, in the 994th age, the afore-mentioned fourteen Manus rule in succession. In their time, they play their part in the creation of the moveable and immoveable objects, and afterwards attain final rest with Brâhma, at the end of the age. They (the Manus), after 1,000 ages, shall be absorbed in Brâhma and be joined to Visnu" —34

*Here ends the ninth Chapter dealing with Manvantaras*

## CHAPTER X

The sages said that in ancient times the kings came to be called Pâithiva, on account of their sway all over the land, but how did the earth come to be known as Prithvi? O Sûta! tell us also why the earth came to be called "Gau?" — 1 2

Sûta said that Prajapati Anga, in the family of Svâyambhuva Manu, was born who was married to the vile daughter of Mityu, named Sanithâ the shrew, who gave birth to Vêna. King Vêna was valiant, but oppressive and sinful. The sages, seeing the sinful deeds of the king, who used to forcibly seize the wealth and the women of others, approached him with the object of bringing about law and order by giving him good advice — 3 5. But when the king did not listen to the good advice of the sages, they killed him by their curse. After that being afraid of anarchy, the sinless Brâhmanas began to churn the dead body of the king from which first came out the races of Mlechhas — 6-7

*Note—Mlechhas has been defined by Baudhayana as meaning "Non-Aryan, a foreigner, sinner, outcast, barbarian"*

Black as soot the barbarian race that came out of Vênu was the outcome of the evil qualities of his mother, and from the portion of the good qualities of his pious father, appeared from the right hand of the dead king, a most brilliant figure, wearing an armour, studded with precious stones, and armed with bow and arrow in one hand and holding a club in the other. The illustrious figure thus produced, after so much difficulty, was named Prithu. King Prithu was anointed by the Brâhmanas, but even then he practised severe austerities — 8-10

Lord Vi-nu, greatly moved by the profound devotion of the King Prithu, showered His blessings upon him. The king, after being thus blessed by the Lord, became most powerful and illustrious. On seeing the earth devoid of Vedic rites, he was filled with righteous indignation, and prepared himself to destroy it with his never-failing arrow. The earth, trembling with fear, assumed the form of a cow and took to flight — 11-12.

**Note**—This expresses a beautiful allegory. The righteous king saw that the people had given up the practice of the Vedic rites and were drifting towards sin by leaps and bounds. Yathā Rājā tathā Prajā—no wonder, therefore, that the people should have become so much demoralised during the sway of his predecessor—the wicked Vena. Prithu, the pious, could not possibly tolerate such a chaos, and in his rage he made up his mind to destroy the sinners, when suddenly a thought flashed through his mind that law and order could be evolved even without resorting to such an extreme measure. The land appeared to him like a cow that could give sweet milk, if properly milked. He therefore applied himself to uplift the degenerated and to take good care of the new generation.

Of—

राजा दुघुक्षसि यदि क्षितिधेनुमेता  
तेनाद्य वत्समिव लोकममुः पुचाण ।  
तस्मिंश्च सम्यगनिशं परितुष्यमाणे  
मानाफलैः फलति कर्त्तव्यसेव भूमिः ॥

Besides this, the cow is the most important of all animals in India. She plays a great part in the agricultural prosperity of the country by bringing forth oxen. She nourishes the nation with her sweet milk and ghee. She is a very docile and harmless creature. Her hide supplies shoes to the people. She takes motherly care of the nation, and that is why she is held so sacred by the Aryans who are the original inhabitants of Bharatavarsha. Even now a man, to seek forgiveness or shelter, puts in a blade of grass in his mouth and addresses a real Aryan, "I am your cow, forgive me or save me." The moment such a man approaches a true Aryan, he is rendered all possible assistance at every risk and stake by the Aryan.

Similarly, when that thought crossed the mind of Prithu, he compared the land to the cow, and then he could not destroy it.

Thirdly, it is the poetic way of saying that, when the earth became so terribly afraid of the power of the king, it appealed for mercy by appearing before him and telling him that it was his cow.

Fourthly, the sinners, trembling with fear, craved the forgiveness of the sovereign by calling themselves his cow and promising to turn over a new leaf—which will be clear further on.

The earth went on running, and the king continued the chase. After getting overpowered, she stopped and craved forgiveness and asked what to do—13

**Note**.—The allegory is continued. The king is portrayed as chasing the race of sinners who, to save their lives, are depicted to be running away and calling themselves cows, so that the king may not shoot his arrow at them. The sinners in their consternation have no courage to face their righteous sovereign, until they are deadbeat and can proceed no further. The sovereign would not let them run away, for he is anxious to reclaim and uplift them. He would therefore simply put his arrow on his bow to guard them from evils and also to stop them from running away to any out-of-the-way place.

A cow, when she runs away like this from her master, is similarly chased by the latter with a stick in hand. The master does not mean to kill the cow with his stick. He carries it with him for his own safety as well as for hers. He also uses his stick in directing

the footsteps of the animal The bow and the arrow were similarly carried by the king in his pursuit of the earth that was running away from him in the form of a cow

At this, the king addressed the earth and asked her to quickly minister to the needs of all beings, whether moving or fixed The land promised to obey the behests of the king Then the king, after making Svâyambhuva Manu as the calf, milked the earth in the form of the cow with his own hands The earth then produced the different kinds of grain, which support mankind, after which the sages, using the moon as the calf and Brihaspati as the milk-man, milked the (earth) cow and extracted the milk of virtue in the pot of the Vedas Then the Devâs, after making the God Indra the calf and the God Mitra as the milkman, milked the (earth) cow They drew out the milk of elixii-vitæ in the pot of gold The Pitrîs also milked the same thing in the pot of silver — 14-18 — 14-18

Note — The allegory goes on The quality and richness of the milk depend on the care and feeding of the cow The earth is a cow that will give any kind of milk, provided due care is taken of it, and people milking it know how to do it

Then Antaka, after making the God of death the calf, milked the (earth) cow and took out Svalhâ from it Similarly, the Nâgas, after making Taksaka the calf and Dhritarâstra as the milkman, got out poison in a gourd, and the Asurâs, making Virochana the calf and Dvimûrdhâ as milkman, pressed out Mâyâ into a pot of iron The Yakshas pressed out in an earthen pot the knowledge of making themselves invisible after making Kuverâ the calf -- 19-22

Note — Vaisravana is same as Kuvera, the God of wealth

The Pietâs and Râksasas, making Sumati the calf and Raupya the milkman, drew out the stream of blood The Gandharvas and Apsaras made Chaîtrarath the calf and Varanuchi the milkman and got out on a lotus-leaf various kinds of fragrance, and the mountains obtained several kinds of precious gems and medicinal herbs which they extracted in the foot of hill ranges, after making the Mount Himalaya the calf and the Mount Sumeru the milkman The trees also in their turn took out the power of regenerating even after being lopped, in a leaf of Palâsa (*Butea frondosa*), after making Shâla (*Shorea robusta*) the milkman and the figtree the calf In the same way, every one who milked the earth got the "fruit" he wished for.

In the reign of King Prithu, people were long lived, wealthy, had peaceful relations with their neighbours None was wicked, poor or sick In the glorious reign of Prithu, there was no phenomenon foreboding evil that would have caused consternation to his subjects Every one passed his days in perfect peace and contentment, without getting overcome by grief or pain Prithu, the Great, by the power of his bow,

made many a part of his extensive Empire habitable and culturable. During the time of that valiant monarch, there was no need of a fortress, it was not necessary for the people to arm themselves, the science of political economy was not in vogue. It was simply lying unhonoured. All the people performed their duties and prescribed rites "I have explained to you, O King! how they milked the earth and got out of it what they wished, from which it must be understood that at the time of performing sacrificial rites, the thing that each got out of the earth should be offered to him." The learned also call the land Prithvi because it was milked by the old King Prithu, the righteous —23-35

*Note.—It is called Gō, because it appeared in the form of a cow when Prithu took up his bow and arrow to destroy it*

*Here ends the tenth Chapter dealing with the story of Venâ*

## CHAPTER XI

The sages said, "O Sûta! be pleased to relate to us the history of the solar and the lunar races"

Sûta said that in the days gone by Kasyapa begot from his wife, Aditi, a progeny named the Sun, and the latter had three wives, viz — Samjnâ, Râjñî and Piabhbâ. Râjñî, the daughter of Raivata, brought forth Revata, Piabhbâ gave birth to Piabhbâta and Samjnâ, the daughter of Visvakarmâ, became the mother of King (Vaivasvata) Manu —2-3

Samjnâ also gave birth to Yama and a girl called, Yamunâ, who were twins. When Samjnâ could not bear the power of the Sun, she produced from her body a lady known as Chhâyâ (shadow). Seeing Chhâyâ standing face to face, Samjnâ directed her to serve her master and also to take motherly care of her progeny. On Chhâyâ's agreeing to carry out her injunctions, Samjnâ went away somewhere —4-7

The Sun mistaking Chhâyâ for Samjnâ begot from her Sâvarni Manu so called because he is of the same Varna as Vaivasvata Manu and Šani, and also the two girls, named Tapati and Visti. When Chhâyâ herself became the mother of these children, she began to devote more attention to her own offspring than to the progeny of Samjnâ. Manu did not mind this, but Yama took it seriously, and one day he lifted his right leg to kick Chhâyâ. Chhâyâ also, getting in a fit of rage, cursed Yama, and said that his leg would be eaten by worms and would always discharge pus and blood —8-12

Hearing such a dreadful curse, Yama went to his father and told him that he had been cursed for no fault of his by his mother. In a childish freak, he lifted up his foot at her, at which in spite of the

entreaties of Manu, she pronounced that curse upon him Yama, continuing, said that such an attitude of Chhāyā showed that she was not their mother The Sun said, what could he do Who does not get into trouble by committing an act of folly? What to say of others, even the omnipotent Lord Śiva had to reap the fruits of His actions But, in spite of all that, he would give him a cock that would destroy all the worms of his foot and would also remove the blood and pus flowing from it —13-17

On getting no redress from his father, Yama went to Gokarna tirtha, and began to practise severe penances by merely living on fruits, leaves and air After practising penances for one hundred thousand years, Lord Śiva appeared and asked him to seek a boon —18-19

Yama asked the Lord for the power of protecting the world, the Kingdom of Pitrīs, and the faculty of distinguishing virtue from vice The Lord granted him the boon he asked for, and then disappeared —20 21

The Sun, causing fear to Chhāyā, discovered that Samjñā, after leaving her behind, had gone to live with her father At this, he got very angry and went to Kuvera, and asked him to send Samjñā back along with him Hearing the above words of the Sun, Viśvakarmā said that Samjñā, not being able to bear his power, ran away in the form of a mare after leaving Chhāyā behind On reaching home, she was very severely taken to task for running away like that, and was denied admittance into the house —22-25

Note —Vadavārūpa means in the form of a mare—which implies that she ran at a great speed from the house of her Lord, the Sun, so that she might not be overtaken by him in the way.

Consequently, she repaired to Maru desa, where she was roaming about in the form of a mare —26

Note — This implies that even in Maru desa, Samjñā was running about here and there at a tremendous pace, in order to find out for herself a good shelter where she could hide herself

Viśvakarmā, continuing his speech, said that, under the circumstances, he would like to diminish his power, provided the Sun would willingly accord him permission to do so He suggested that he would reduce his power by means of a special instrument, after which he would become agreeably strong to every one, to which the Sun agreed, and Viśvakarmā by his instrument, Bhrami, sliced away some portions of the Sun's unbearable power Viśvakarmā then made a quoit (Chakra) for Viśnu, a trident for Śiva and a Vajra (thunderbolt) for Indra to destroy the Daityas and Dānavas out of the particles of power that he took away from

the Sun The Sun after that, became fairly agreeable, but as he did not allow any power to be reduced from his feet, they continued to be very dazzling —27-30

*Note — The feet of the Sun mean the rays*

Nobody could stand the dazzle of his feet, and consequently let no one ever make the feet of the Sun in his image, for the purpose of worship even One who makes the feet of the Sun in his image, goes to hell and suffers from leprosy Let, therefore, no one, who is anxious for his own welfare, make the feet of the Sun, even in pictures or temples — 31-33

The sun, after thus getting his power modified by Viśvakarmā, went out in the form of a horse and enjoyed himself in the company of Samjñā, who, not recognising him and taking him for another person, became terrified, but was helpless, she consequently ejected the semen vile through her nostrils, out of which Asvinikumāras, called otherwise Nāsatyas and Dasras, were born They are called Nāsatyas, because they were born from the nose (nāsa), and Dasras, because they were born as Sons Afterwards, Samjñā recognised her Lord and became pleased, and went with her Lord in a vimāna to heaven — 34-37

*Note — 'Asvarupena' means in the form of a horse—which implies that the Sun being overpowered with passion ran with the speed of a horse to enjoy himself in the company of Samjñā*

'Mannasāksobham' = was agitated in mind, because she could not recognise her Lord at the first sight She met the Sun after a long time, and quite unexpectedly, and then there was a great difference in his features, as his power was moderated by Viśvakarmā The Sun of course recognised Samjñā, and mixed with her in the usual way Samjñā, being overpowered, became helpless, but was very much agitated in mind

Sāvanya Manu is still living and practising penances unto this day on Mount Meru, and Sani, by means of his asceticism, brought about domestic concord (between the sons of Chhāya and Samjñā) Yamunā and Tapati became rivers, and Visti obtained dark blue colour and was located in time (Hell) — 38-39

Vaivasvata Manu had ten powerful sons, the eldest of whom was Ila, who was born by the performance of putresti sacrifice His brothers were — Ikswāku, Kuśanābha, Arista, Dhūrīta, Naṇsyanta, Karusa, Sāryāti, Piṇḍadhra and Nābhāga, who were all very valiant and illustrious Manu, after anointing his son Ila and putting the reins of the Government into his hands, went to practise asceticism in the forest called Mahendriavana — 40-42

After sometime, Ila started on an expedition of conquest and visited several countries Following the horse, he happened to enter Saravapa,

the pleasure-garden of Siva which was blooming with various kinds of trees, creepers and perennial foliage —43-44

Note—'Digjaya' means conquest

'Aswâkrishnâ' means led by the horse. The ancient practice of conquest was that the sovereign wishing to conquer the world used to let loose a horse and follow it with his army. The monarchs through whose dominions the horse passed would either let it pass on without resistance, which implied their accepting the master of it as their sovereign lord, or would capture and tie it up. In the latter case there used to be a fight between the master of the horse and the monarch tying the animal. If the sovereign led by his horse returned to his kingdom after thus subduing the monarchs offering resistance or being acknowledged as their sovereign lord, then he used to perform the Râjasûya sacrifice, in which all the monarchs were invited to take part, at the conclusion of which the sovereign performing the sacrifice used to be declared and accepted as the sovereign lord of all the kings present.

At that time, Siva and Pârvati were enjoying themselves in their Saravana, and they had willed it that any male being, coming within a radius of ten yojanas of their forest, would be transformed into a female being — 45-46

The King Ilâ entering the Saravana, without knowing the will of Siva and Pârvati, was instantly transformed into a woman, and his horse was also transformed into a mare. The king, thus deprived of manhood, was very much amazed to find himself in the form of a woman. He was named Ilâ and had breasts like women. His thighs became stouter and his face became like the moon—which made him look more enchanting in that female form. Who would not be enamoured by the glances of such a beautiful form? His arms were long, his black tresses of hair were kissing his feet, there were no hair on his body, his teeth were well-shaped, and his voice was exquisitely sonorous — 47-50

His complexion was a happy admixture of dark and white, his strut was graceful like that of herâsa (crane) and elephant, his brows were like the bow and his nails were fine and red — 51

Ilâ, of such unsurpassing beauty, began to roam about in that forest, and was thinking as to who and where were her father, brother and mother. She also thought as to who and where was her lord and how long would she have to remain in the world. As she was lost in that reverie, the son of the moon appeared before her. On seeing Ilâ, of matchless beauty, Budha—the son of the moon—was fired with passion and began to devise plans for marrying her — 52-54

One day Budha, with a mace, a water-pot and a book in his hand, and accompanied by a train of Brahmanachâris, each holding a bamboo mace and wearing ear-rings, set out in quest of kusa and sacrificial

fuel He passed close to that forest where Ilâ was roaming Seeing Ilâ, Budha stopped behind a tree, at a distance from the forest, and from there beckoned Ilâ to come to him — 55-57

Note—Brahmachârî means a student In olden days, students were made to lead the life of perfect celibacy They carried a bamboo mace and wore ear-rings

Budha was careful enough not to get within the forbidden limits of the pleasure-garden, for fear of being transformed into a woman

When Ilâ approached Budha, the latter said, "Dear! This is not the proper time for you to roam about in the forest Why did you come away leaving me at home and neglecting the arrangements of agnihotra? Come, come, why are you looking perplexed? This is the time when you should have put the house in order by washing the floor and decorating it with flowers It is now dusk, and not the time for you to be sauntering about here"—58-60

Hearing those words of Budha, Ilâ said, "Lord! I know not why I forgot to do what you have just said I am really in a peculiar fit of forgetfulness at present, so much so that I am not able to recognise either myself or yourself Tell me where you live, O Pious one!"—61

Budha replied that her name was Ilâ and that he was Kâmuka, who, owing to his versatile genius and deep lore, was known as Budha (a learned scholar) He was born in an illustrious family His father was the lord of Brâhmaṇas Hearing those words of Budha, Ilâ accompanied him to his residence She was overjoyed to see the house of Budha with its golden pillars studded with precious stones and erected through divine magic, and greatly admired the character, the appearance, the riches and the family of her husband Ilâ, for a long time, thus enjoyed herself in the house of Budha that looked to her like the house of Indra — 62-66

*Here ends the eleventh Chapter called meeting with Budha*

## CHAPTER XII

Sûta said that sometime after Ikswaku, &c., the brothers of Ilâ, set out in quest of him In their wanderings they chanced to pass by the Saravana, where they came across the mare, on which was the saddle, glittering with jewels On seeing the mare with that jewelled saddle, they all recognised it to be Chandraprabhâ, the famous charger of the Monarch Ilâ They were highly astonished to find the charger transformed into a mare, and questioned the priest Maitrâ-Varuna (Vasiṣṭha) about it The sage began to explain to them the mystery, through his powers of Yoga The sage Vasiṣṭha said that Sîva and Parvati had determined that

any one entering the limits of their pleasure-garden would instantly be transformed into a female figure. Unfortunately, both the king and the horse happened to do so and they were transformed accordingly. The brothers of the transformed monarch then besought the great sage to devise some means by which Ila could be restored to manhood —1-7

Vasistha said that, by devoutly worshipping Siva, the monarch could be restored to manhood. Hearing that, the brothers of Ila (Sons of Manu) repaired to the abode of Siva, where they pleased Him by their devotion. The God then said that He could not go against His determination, but that if Iksvâku performed the *advamedha* sacrifice, then Ila would become a Kimpuruṣa (Mongolian type ?), though it would be impossible for him to assume his previous (Aryan ?) form. After that, the brothers of Ila performed the *advamedha* sacrifice, and the latter became a Kimpurusa —8-11

On becoming a Kimpurusa, Ila used to remain in the form of a man for one month and the next month he used to become a woman again. Ila, in the form of Ilâ, conceived in the house of Budha, and gave birth to a notable son Budha, after the birth of that son, went to heaven —12-13

That region where this happened, came to be known as Ilâvritavarsa (Mongolia ?), and Ila in that way appeared at the inception of the Solar and the Lunar races, in other words, Purûravâ, the son of Budha, from Ila, was the founder of the lunar race, and Iksvâku of the solar clan —14-15

Ila, after becoming Kimpurusa, came to be known as Sudyumna. Sudyumna became the father of Utkal, Gaya, Haritâśva. Utkal became the king of Utkala, Gaya of Gayâ, Haritâśva of Pûrvakuru country. Purûravâ became the monarch of Pratîsthâna and Iksvâku of Madhyadesa —16-19

Note.—Utkala is modern Orissa. Pratîsthâna, the country situated opposite to Allahabad, the modern Jhusi. Madhyadesa, the country lying between the Himalaya and Vindhya mountains. Kuru, about the site of modern Delhi.

Nârisyanta was the father of Sucha, Nâbhaga of Ambarisa,\* Dhritiṣṭa of 3 sons, named Dhritaketu, Chitrânâtha and Ranadhrîṣṭra, Saryâti of Anarta and of a good girl, named Dârikâ —20-21

Rochamâna was the son of Anarta. He was very valiant, and was the sovereign of Anarta country which had Kushasthalî for its capital —22

Note.—Anartadesa is the same as Dwârikâ, Kushasthalî is the country situated in the defiles of the Vindhya.

Rochamâna was the father of Reva, who became the father of a hundred children, the eldest of whom was Raivata, also named

\* Professor H. H. Wilson considered it "not improbably, a gratuitous perversion" of a passage in the *Harivamsha* (See his translation of *Vishnu Purâpa* Vol III p 239, Second Edition.)

Kakudmi He had also a daughter, named Revati, who was the wife of Balarama Karusa begot innumerable progeny, who were known by the name of Karusa Puradbra became Sudra by the curse of his preceptor for killing a cow —23-24

Rishi! now listen, I am going to relate to you the family of Iksvaku —

Of the hundred sons of Iksvaku, Vikukshi was the eldest whose fifteen sons reigned in the country to the north of Mount Meru, and one hundred and fourteen to the south of it. The eldest of the Kings who reigned south of Meru was Kakutsu, whose son was Suyodhana, the father of Prithu. The latter was the father of Visvaga, Visvaga of Indu and Indu of Yuvanâsva.

Sravasta, the son of Yuvanâsva was the founder of the town of Sravasti, in the country of Gauda —25-30

*Note*—Sravasti, a town in northern Kosala, where Lava reigned. It is also called Sravati in Raghuvamsa. It is identified with Sahet Mahet, north of Ayodhya. Gouda =Gour in Northern Bengal.

Sravasta was the father of Bishadaśva, and the latter of Kuvalâsva, who was also called Dhundhumâra, on account of his having killed [a demon named] Dhundhu. The valiant Dhundhumâra had three sons, viz.—Dridhâsva, Danda and Kapilâsva —31-32

Dridhâsva was the father of Piromôda, the latter of Haryâsva, Haryâsva of Nikumbha and Nikumbha of Samhatâsva —33

Samhatâsva had two sons, Akritâsva and Ranâsva. Ranâsva was the father of Yuvanaśva, and the latter of Mândhâtâ —34

Mândhâtâ's sons were—Purukutsa, Dharmasena, Muchakunda and Satrujit —35

Purukutsa who had a son, named Vasuda, was the lord of Narmada. Vasuda became the father of Sambhûti, and the latter of Tridhanvâ. Tridhanvâ was the father of Trayâruna, the latter of Satyavrata and Satyaratha was the son of Satyavrata. Satyaratha was the father of Hanîchandra, the latter of Rôhita, Rôhita of Vrika and Vrika of Bâhu. Sagara was the son of Bâhu, and Prabhâ and Bhânumatî were the two wives of Sagara the pious —36-39

Both the queens of Sagara, desirous of [begetting] sons, propitiated the sage, Aûîva Agni, who became pleased and said that he would bless one to beget sixty thousand sons and the other he would bless to beget only one son, who would continue the line of the Solar race. They were welcome to make a choice for themselves. Prabhâ wished to be the mother of sixty thousand sons —39-41

Bhanumati begot a son, named Asamañjasa, and Prabhâ of the family of Yadu, became the mother of sixty thousand sons —42

Once upon a time, the sixty thousand sons of Prabhâ were reduced to ashes by the Sage Kapila—an incarnation of Viñu—while they were digging the earth in search of the Aśvamedha horse. The wife of Asamañjasa gave birth to Amâsu Dilipa was the son of Amâsu, and Bhagiratha, who brought the mother Ganges to the earth after practising great penances, was the son of Dilipa --43-44

The queen of Bhagiratha gave birth to Nâbhâga and the latter was the father of Ambarisa Ambarisa became the father of Sindhudvipa Sindhudvipa was the father of Ayutâyu, the latter of Rituparna Kalmaṣhpâda was the son of Rituparna and the father of Sarvakarmâ Sarvakarmâ was the father of Anaranya, and the latter of Nighna Nighna became the father of Anamitîa and Raghu —45 47

Anamitîa went to the forest to practise penances, and Raghu became the father of Dilipa, and the latter of Aja —48

Dîghabâhu was the son of Aja, Ajapâla of Dîghabâhu and Dadaratha of Ajapâla Dadaratha became the father of four sons, who were the incarnations of Nârâyana, and Râma, who killed Râvana, was the eldest, and whose biography was written by the great poet Vâlmîki Râma was the father of Lava and Kuśa —49-51

Kusa was the father of Atithi whose son was Nisadha, the latter was father of Nala, and Nala was the father of Nabhiâ Pundarîka was the son of Nabhiâ and father of Ksêmadhanvâ Ksêmadhanvâ was the father of Devânîka Devânîka was the father Ahinagu, and the latter of Sahasrâśva Chandrîvalôka was the son of Sahasrâśva and father of Târâpida Chandragûru was the son of Târâpida and father of Bhânuchandâ The latter was the father of Siutayn, who was killed in the great war of Bhârata In the family of Kâsyapa there were two Nalas, viz — one, the son of Virasena and the other of Nisadha

Sûta said “I have related to you the names of the chief kings of in the dynasty of Vaivasvata and of Ikshvâku race”—57

*Here ends the twelfth Chapter, describing the Solar race*

### CHAPTER XIII

Manu said “Lord! I am very eager to hear something about the important family of the Pitris of the Sun and the Moon”—(1)

The God Fish replied that, out of the seven groups of the Pitris residing in Heaven, the Pitris belonging to three particular groups are

without form, (that is composed of intellectual, not elemental, substance), while the Pitrīs of the remaining four groups have form (*i.e.*, corporeal) The formless ones are the Pitrīs of Prajāpati Vairāja —(2-3)

The celebrated Vairāja devas, disturbed in their yoga practices having attained to ancient regions, worship there —(4)

These Brahmavādins are re-born at the end of Brahma's day, and by their previous practice of yoga, they acquire the memory of their past lives and the knowledge of Sāṅkhyā Yoga, which begets in them supernatural faculties and enables them to attain to Nivrāna. It is therefore very fruitful to feed the yogis at the time of performing a funeral ceremony in honour of the departed spirits —(5-6)

Menā, the queen of Himalayas was the manas a daughter of the Pitrīs She was the mother of Menakā and Kīrañcha of whom the latter was the elder. The continent, surrounded by the ghṛita ocean and adorned with the range of Krauñcha hills, came to be known as Krauñcha continent. Menā also became the mother of the following three daughters — Umā, Ekaparnā, and Aparnā, who were devoted to the practices of yoga and rigorous penances. Himalaya gave Umā to Śiva, Ekaparnā to Sīta, and Aparnā to Jaigīsavya. All these were given to performances of great penances —(7-9)

The Rishi said "O Sage Sūta! tell us why Sati, the daughter of Dakṣa, consumed herself, and how again she took birth as the daughter of Himalaya. "Also tell us in detail, O Sūta, what Dakṣa, the son of Brahma, told her, the mother of Lokas, at the time of her consuming her body" —(10 11)

Sūta said that when Dakṣa invited all the Devas to take part in the great sacrifice that he performed, Sati asked him the reason of his having excluded her husband, Śiva. Dakṣa answered that Śiva was not invited, because he was not considered worthy, since he always remained besmeared with the ashes of the funeral pyre and armed with his trident. He, being the destroyer of the universe also, it would have been utterly inauspicious to invite Śiva on the occasion of that big sacrifice. Hearing those words of Dakṣa, Sati was enraged, and said she would give up the body begotten of him. Sati continuing, added that, in the course of the performance of his sacrifice, Dakṣa would be killed by Her Lord—Mahādeva—and he would again have to take birth as the son of the ten Pitrīs. After that, Sati produced a blazing fire by Her yogic power in the sacrificial pool, and began to consume Herself into it, seeing which all the Devas, Asuras, Kinnaras and Gandharvās present there,

asked what was it due to? Dakṣa became very sad and saluting, said —12-17.

"Devi! Thou art the mother of the universe and the giver of happiness to all. Only through sheer kindness thou tookest birth as my daughter. None of the moveables and immoveables can thrive in the universe without thee, be pleased, do not forsake me, O pious one!"—18-19

Hearing the above words of Dakṣa, Satī said "I shall accomplish what I wish. Heav! you should practise penances after your sacrifice is destroyed by Śiva, and then you will be born of the ten Prajāpatis; you shall then have sixty daughters, and I shall give you yoga after becoming pleased with your austerities"—20-22

Dakṣa then asked the Devi to tell him in which sacred places he would find her abode and under what epithets he should worship her in course of his penances —23

Satī replied that she was to be found at every time, in every region, in every being. There was nothing in the universe in which she was not to be found. She was omnipresent. Even then she would name the particular places where penances should be practised to obtain his desires early —24-25

She was known under the following different names, at the following different places, where by practising penances one would attain the fruits of his austerities early —

Viśalākṣī in Kāśī, Lingadhārī in Naimiṣāranya, Lalitā in Prayāga; Kāmākṣī in the Gandhamādana hills, Kumudā at the Mānasa lake; Viśvākāyā in Ambara, Gōmatī in Gōmanta, Kāmacharī at the Mandar hills, Madōtkatā in the Chaitraratha forest, Jayantī in Hastināpura; Gaurī in Kānyakubja, Rambhā on the Mount Malaya, Kṛtiwati in Ekāmbhaka, Viśvā in Viśvedvara, Purūhutā in Puskara, Mārgadāyī in Kedār, Nandā in the Himalayas, Bhadrakarnikā in Gokarna, Bhavāni in Sthāneśvara, Bilvapatrīkā in Bilval, Mādhavī in Śrisaila, Bhadrā in Bhadresvara, Jayā in Varṣhakṣetra, Kamalā in Kamalālaya; Rudrāṇī in Rudrākṣotī, Kāli in Kalanjar hills, Kapilā in Mahāliṅga, Mukuteśvari in Markotā, Mahādevī on the banks of the Śalagṛhī river, Jalapriyā in Śivalinga, Kumāri in Mayāpuri, Lalitā in Santāna, Utpalākṣī in Sahasrākṣa, Mahātpalā in Kamalākṣa, Mangalā in Gangātīrtha, Vimalā in Puruṣottama, Amoghākṣī on the banks of the Vipāḍī river; Pātalā in Pundvardhana; Nārayantī in Supārśva, Bhadrasundari in Vīkūṭa; Vipulā in Vipula, Kalyāṇī in Malayāchala, Kōtavī in Kōti tīrtha, Sugandhī in Mādhabavāna, Trisandhyā in Gōdāśrama, Ratipriyā

in Gangôtri , Sivânanda in Sîvakunda , Nandini on the banks of the Devîka river , Rukmîni in Dwârikâ ; Râdhâ in Vîndavâna , Devaktî in Mathura , Paramesvai in Pâtâla , Sîtâ in Chitrakûta , Vînduvâsinî in Vîndhyâchala , Ekavirâ in Sahyâdri , Chandikâ in Harischandra , Ramana in Râma tirtha , Mrigâvatî on the banks of the river yamunâ , Mahâlakshmi in Karavira , Umâdevî in Vinâyaka ; Arogâ in Vaidyanâtha , Maheśvari in Mahâkâla , Abhayâ in Uṣnatirtha , Amîtâ in the caves of Vîndhyachala , Mândavi in Mândvaya , Svâhâ in Mâhesvara , Prachandâ in Châgalânda , Chandikâ in Amarakantaka , Varârôhâ in Someśvara , Puṣkarâvati in Prabhâsa , Devamîtâ on the banks of Pârvâra of the Sarasvatî river , Mahâbhâgâ in Mahâlaya , Pingalêśvari in Payôsnî , Sînhikâ in Krita Saucha , Yasaskari in Kârtikêya , Lolâ in Utpalâvarta , Subhadrâ at the confluence of the Ganges and the Sone , Mâtâ in Siddhapura , Laksmiranganâ in Bharatâśrama , Viśvamukhi in Jâlandhara , Târâ in Kiskindhâ , Puṣti in Devadâruvana , Mêlhâ in Kîshmî , Bhîmâ in Hîmâlaya , Puṣti in Viśveśvai , Sudhi in Kapâlamôchana , Mâtâ in Kâyavarôhana , Dhvani in Sankhôdhâi , Dhriti in Piudâraka , Kâlâ on the banks of the river Chandiabâgâ , Sîvakumîni on the Achôdaka tank , Amîtâ in Veuâ , Urvasî in Badarînârayana , Ausadhi in Uttarakuru , Kuśodaka in Kuśadvipa , Manmathâ in Hemkûta , Satyavâdinî in Mukuta , Vandaniyâ in Aśvatha , Nidhi in the town of Kuvera , Gâyatî in the Vedas , Pârvati in Kailâsa , Indrâni in Devaloka , Sarasvati in the mouth of Brahmâ , Prabhâ in the disc of the Sun , Vaisnavi in the Mâtriksetra , Aiundhatî among the Pativrâtâs , Tilottamâ among women , and Brahmalâ in the mind , and Sakti in all bodies —26-53

*Note - Malayâchala, one of the seven principal chains of mountains in India. It is most probably to be identified with the southern portion of the ghâts running from the south of Mysore, and forming the eastern boundary of Travancore.*

Hastinâpura=Delhi Kanyakubja=Kanauj Puskara=Ajmer Sômâsvâra=In Kathiawar Devadâru-vana=In Almora near Yôgesvara Uttara-kuru=Tibet Madhvavâna=In Muttra Karavira=Karur Mâhakâla=In Ujjain Mândavya=In Mândvi Kapâla-Môchan=In Gaya Hewkûta=Between Meru and Himalaya Ambara=Amber in Jaipur Gôkarna=In Almora Bilvabala=In Almora Rûdrakotî=In Koteivar (Almora) Sâlgâmi-nadi=Gandaki river

"The above are the hundred and eight chief names, under which I am usually known. I have also enumerated to you the names of the principal holy places which I have for my abode. One who hears or reads the names mentioned above or bathes in the tirthas and then worships me there, is liberated from all sins and goes to Sivaloka, where he remains for one Kalpa. One who resides in the sacred places mentioned above, attains Nirvâna. One who recites the hundred and eight

names before Śiva, on Tritiyâ and Aṣṭamî, is blessed with many children. One who repeats these names at the time of giving away a cow in charity, or on the occasion of performing a funeral ceremony in honour of the departed spirits, or at the time of worship, goes to Brahmâ." After uttering these words, the goddess Sati consumed herself —54-59

Again, after sometime, Dakṣa was born as the son of Prachetâ, and Pârvatî after being born as the daughter of Hûmâlaya, became the better-half of Śiva. Arundhatî, after worshipping Pârvatî, the daughter of Menâ, obtained the highest yoga. By worshipping the same Pârvatî, Purusavâ became Râjarshi, Yayâti begot progeny and Parâdurâma obtained wealth. Similarly, many Devas, Daityas, Brâhmaṇas, Ksattriyas, Vaishyas and Sûdras obtained supernatural faculties. Wherever there is a book containing the names of Pârvatî which is worshipped along with the Gods, no calamity befalls there —60-64

*Here ends the thirteenth Chapter dealing with the genealogy of the  
Pitrîs and the 108 names of Gauri*

#### CHAPTER XIV

Sûta said The group of Marichinandana Pitrîs, whom the Devas, constantly meditate upon, live in Somapatha regions. Those known as Agnisvâtta pitrîs (because they performed great sacrifices to fire, i.e., Agni), reside there where these sacrificers dwell, and the river Achchhadâ is their Mânaśa daughter. In days of yore, the stream Achchhadâ was brought into existence by Pitrîs. Achchhadâ practised penance for one thousand years.—1-3

After which, the young and handsome Pitrîs, wearing beautiful garlands and having sweet scents on their person, appeared before Achchhadâ to grant her a boon. She was overcome with passion and expressed the desire of marrying Amâvasu Pitrî, on account of which sinful desire she lost the power she had obtained from practising asceticism.—4-6

She used to live in heaven, owing to her supernatural powers, but the moment she had such a base desire she fell to the earth. The date on which she expressed such a desire and Amâvasu Pitrî did not give way to passion, came to be known as Amâvâsyâ Tithi. Amâvâsyâ is, consequently, very dear to the Pitrîs, and offerings made to them on that Tithi are very heartily accepted by them —7-8

NOTE — See R. H. Wilson's translation of the Viṣṇu Purâna, Vol II p. 301 for other etymologies of Amâvâsyâ.

Achchhodâ, after losing the powers acquired by penances, became ashamed and crest-fallen She cast her head down and besought the Pitris for her salvation —9

The Pitris, seeing her weeping, pondered over the destiny and the work of the future Devas, and addressed her very gently —10

"In heaven, a celestial being has to reap the fruit of his deeds, in the same celestial form Celestial beings instantly reap the harvest of their actions, only the beings residing on the earth reap the fruits of some of their actions in other forms after death Daughter ! on account of your ignoble wish, you will be born from the womb of a fish in the 28th Dwâpara, and will become the daughter of Vasu After that, you will return to your region In an island covered with a number of jujube trees (Badarikâśrama) you will beget, through Parâśara, a son, named Bâdarâyanâ, who will be a particle of Visnu and will divide the Veda into several parts You will beget two sons, Chitrângada and Vichitravîrya, by becoming the queen of king Sântanu a portion of sea, and having begotten these two Ksetraja sons to that wise one, you will again return to the region of the Pitris, in the form of Praushta astakâ You will be known as Satyavati on earth, and as Astakâ in Pitriloka You will be the giver of longevity, of health and fruits of all desires After some time, you will become the holy and celebrated Achchhodâ river in the world" —11-20

NOTE—Dwâpara is the third age of the world

After addressing her thus, the Pitris vanished, and Achchhodâ also began to reap the harvest of her actions, as told by the Pitris —21

*Here ends the fourteenth Chapter describing the dynasty of Agnîsvattha  
Pitris and birth of the river Achchhodâ*

## CHAPTER XV

Sûta said "In heaven, there are other illustrious regions called Vibharâjas where dwell the pious Barhiṣada pitris so named because their Vimânas are carried by peacocks (barhi) and where people making offerings to the manes of their deceased ancestors go and find happiness These Pitris are venerated by the Devas, Asuras, Apsarâs, Gandharvas, Râkshasas and Yakṣas The Barhiṣada Pitris, possessed of great Yogic powers, are the sons of the sage Pulastya They are the givers of safety and freedom from fear to their devotees These very Barhiṣada Pitris had a mânasa daughter, named Pivari She was well versed in, and mother of, Yoga and practised severe penances for a long time, when Lord Visnu pleased with her devotion appeared before her and directed her to ask for a boon ; she

prayed for a husband who would be beautiful, possessed of Yogic powers and able to curb his passions. The Lord, in granting her that boon, said : "Thou shalt be the wife of Śuka the teacher of Yoga, the son of Vyāsa. And thou shalt be blessed with a daughter, named Kṛitvī, who will be well versed in Yoga and will be married to the manly Rajah of Panchāla. Kṛitvī, after practising Yoga, will also be known as Gō, and she will beget a son, named Brahmadatta" —1-10

"Thou shalt also become the mother of Kṛiṣṇa Gaura Prabhu, and Sambhu, who will be great Mahātmās and will ultimately depart to felicity. Thou shalt also attain Mokṣa, after giving birth to such illustrious sons" —11

Note—Mahātmā-magnanimous

Sūta said "The group of Mānasa Pitṛis, who are most handsome and virtuous and known as Sumūrtimantas (Vasiṣṭha's sons,) reside in the region called Jyotiḥrohās where stars and planets light up their surroundings by their rays. This region is a high one where people making offerings to the manes of their deceased ancestors go and have various enjoyments. Even the Sādṛas performing Śrāddha go to that region in a vimāna, what to say of a Brāhmaṇa who performs Śrāddha devoutly. Gō was the mānasa daughter of those Pitṛis, and was married to Śukra and who enhanced the reputation of Sādhyās" —12-15

"In the Solar world, there are regions called Marichigarbhas, where Havismāna Pitṛis, the sons of Amṛīrā, reside. Kṣatriyas performing Śrāddha in a holy place go to the same region, and that is why Havismāna Pitṛis are worshipped by Kṣatriyas. Yaśoda was the mānasa daughter of Havismāna Pitṛis. She was married to King Amṛsumāna and was the daughter-in-law of Pañchajāṇī, mother of Dilipa, and grandmother of Bhagiratha" —16-19

"There are other regions known as Kāmadughas, where reside the pious Pitṛis, called Susvada as well as Ājyapā in the region of Prajāpati Kardarma. They are the sons of Pulaha and are worshipped by the Vaidyas. The worshippers of these Pitṛis, by performing Śrāddha, go to the same region where they see the manes of their deceased ancestors, mother, father, sister, friends, relations, etc." Virajā was the mānasa daughter of Ājyapā Pitṛis and was the queen of King Nahusa and the mother of Yayāti. She was afterwards known as Ekaṣṭakā in Brahmaloka —20-24

Something has been said about the three groups of pitṛis who are worshipped by men and have forms, now follows the description of the fourth set of Pitṛis —25

There is a mânasa region in the upper Brahmanâ which is the abode of Sômapa Pitris They are eternal, the very incarnation of Dharma, and are as venerable as Brahmâ They are born of Swadhâ, and having attained Brahmahood, by their power of yoga, they carried on the work of past creations and now rest in Mânasa regions Narmadâ, which flows in the southern part, is the mânasa daughter of the Sômapa Pitris that purifies the people by her sacred waters —26-28

The Manus have sprung from these Pitris, and their progeny perform srâddha even when there is an absence of Dharma in the world It was they who at the beginning of the Creation started the system of srâddha, after acquiring yoga and begetting children —29-30

The Pitris mentioned above, like vessels of silver or of any metal having some admixture of silver By performing srâddha in such vessels and by giving them away to a deserving priest one makes them feel very happy —31

Offerings should be made to the Pitris in the name of Agnîsoma, and Yama Where fire is not available, then they should be made in water or in the hand of a Brâhmaṇa It is excellent to make offerings in the ear of a goat or a horse , and, similarly, it is very nice to perform srâddha near the place where cows are kept or near a good stream of water Pitris live in heaven, and offerings should also be made to them by facing towards the south —32-33

At the time of making offerings, one should put his sacred thread on his right shoulder and offer, water, sesamum, kusa grass, flesh, Pâthina, cow's milk, sweet things, the flesh of rhinoceros, honey, Syâmâka, rice, barley, wild rice, kidney-bean, sugarcane, white flowers, clarified butter 34-35

*Note.—Pâthina is a kind of fish. Madhu-sweets, honey, nectar of flowers, wine, water, sômajuice, milk, vernal season Syâmâka is a kind of corn*

The things mentioned already are appreciable to the Pitris and should be offered to them , the things not liked by them and which should be discarded at the time of srâddha are enumerated now, viz — Masûr, hemp, ripe black mustard, mâsa, safflower, lotus, wood-apple, sunflower, the white thorn-apple, the fruit of Nîma tree, the fruit of Adhatoda vasika, the milk of she-goat, kodava, split chick pea, liquorice, linseed, should never be offered in srâddha to the Pitris by one who wishes to win their favour One who pleases the Pitris by devotion, is blessed by them in return —36-39

Pitris, when they are pleased, give robust health, heaven, and children to their devotees The worship of Pitris is more important than that of the Gods The Pitris should be satisfied first They are soon

pleased and are devoid of anger. They are harmless and of steady affection. They are of peaceful soul, lovers of purity, always soft speaking, and givers of happiness and prosperity to their devotees. The Sun is their Lord. I have narrated to you the family of Pitris by listening to which one gains life and virtue, therefore everyone should read and listen to it —40-43

*Here ends the fifteenth Chapter describing the birth and dynasties of the Pitris*

The following important note on Pitris is reproduced from Wilson's *Viṣṇu Purāṇa* edited by Fitzedward Hall

We may here take the opportunity of inquiring who are meant by the Pitris and, generally speaking, they may be called a race of divine beings, inhabiting celestial regions of their own, and receiving into their society the spirits of those mortals for whom the rite of fellowship in obsequial cakes with them, the Sapindikarana, has been duly performed. The Pitris collectively, therefore, include a man's ancestors; but the principal members of this order of beings are of a different origin. The Vāyu, Matsya, and Padma Purāṇas, and Hari Vamsa, profess to give an account of the original Pitris. The account is much the same, and, for the most part, in the same words, in all. They agree in distinguishing the Pitris into seven classes, three of which are without form Amūrtayah or composed of intellectual, not elementary, substance, and assuming what forms they please, and four are corporeal Samūrtayah. When they come to the enumeration of the particular classes, they somewhat differ, and the accounts, in all the works, are singularly imperfect. According to a legend given by the Vāyu and the Hari Vamsa, the first Pitris were the sons of the gods. The gods, having offended Brahmā, by neglecting to worship him, were cursed, by him, to become fools, but, upon their repentance, he directed them to apply to their sons, for instruction. Being taught, accordingly, the rites of expiation and penance, by their sons, they addressed them as fathers, whence the sons of the gods were the first Pitris.

ते तु आनन्दभीता जटासंज्ञा विवैकसः ।  
यूय वै पितरोऽस्माक यैवं प्रतिबोधिताः ॥

So the Matsya has

मन्महसरेणु जापन्ते पितरो देष्टुनवः ।

'The Pitris are born, in the Manwantaras, as the sons of the gods.' The Hari Vamsa makes the sons assume the character of fathers, addressing them, 'Depart, children.'

गम्भर्ता पुत्रका एव पुत्रैरुक्ताम् ते तदा ।

Again, the Vāyu Purāṇa declares the seven orders of Pitris to have been, originally, the first gods, the Vairājas, whom Brahmā, with the eye of Yoga, beheld in the eternal spheres, and who are the gods of the gods.

सोऽकाः सान्तानिका नाम यत्र तिष्ठन्ति मास्तराः ।  
ते वैराजा हृति स्थाता देवानां दिवि देवताः ॥  
आदिवेषा हृति स्थाता महासत्त्वा महौजसः ।  
तेषां सप्त समाक्षयाता गणास्ते चोक्तृजिताः ।  
अमूर्तंप्रसरतेषां चत्वारस्तु समृतयः ॥

Again, in the same work, we have the incorporeal Pitris called Vairájas, from being the sons of the Prajápati Virája

अमृतंयः पितृगच्छाः पुत्रास्ते वै प्रजापतेः ।  
विराजस्य द्विजा भेदा वैराजा हृति विष्णुता ॥

The Matsya agrees with this latter statement, and adds, that the gods worship them

अमृतंय पितृगच्छा विराजस्य प्रजापतेः ।  
प्रजापिता यन्त्रेगच्छा वैराजा हृति विष्णुता ॥

The Hari Vamsa has the same statement, but more precisely distinguishes the Vairájas as one class only of the incorporeal Pitris. The commentator states the same, calling the three incorporeal Pitris, Vairájas, Agnighwáttas, and Barhishads, and the four corporeal orders, Sukálás Angírasas, Suswadhas, and Somapas. The Vairájas are described as the fathers of Mená, the mother of Umá. Their abode is variously termed the Sántánsa, Sanátana, and Soma loka. As the posterity of Virája, they are the Somasads of Manu. The other classes of Pitris the three Puráṇas agree with Manu in representing as the sons of the patriarchs, and, in general, assign to them the same offices and posterity. They are the following —

Agnighwáttas—sons of Marichi, and Pitris of the gods (Manu, Matsya, Padma) living in Soma loka and parents of Achchhadá (Matsya, Padma, Hari Vamsa). The Váyu makes them residents of Viraja-loka, sons of Pulastyá, Pitris of the demigods and demons, and parents of Pívarí, omitting the next order of Pitris, to whom these circumstances more accurately refer. The commentator on the Hari Vamsa derives the name from Agniśhu 'in or by oblations to fire,' and Átta 'obtained,' 'invoked.'

Barhishads—sons of Atri, and Pitris of the demons (Manu) sons of Pulastyá, Pitris of the demons, residents in Vaibhava, fathers of Pívarí (Matsya, Padma, Hari Vamsa).

These three are the formless or incorporeal Pitris.

Somapas,—descendants of Brígu, or sons of Kaví by Swadhá, the daughter of Agni; and Pitris of the Brahmans (Manu and Váyu Puráṇa). The Padma calls them Ushmapas. The Hari Vamsa calls the Somapas—to whom it ascribes the same descent as the Váyu,—the Pitris of the Śúdras, and the Sukálás, the Pitris of the Brahmans.

Havishmata—in the solar sphere, sons of Anguras, and Pitris of the Kshattriyas.

Ājyapás—sons of Kardama, Pitris of the Vaisýas, in the Kámaduha-loka (Manu, &c.), but the lawgiver calls them the sons of Pulastyá. The Pitris of the Vaisýas are called Kávyas, in the Nandi Upapuráṇa, and, in the Hari Vamsa and its comment, they are termed Suswadhas, sons of Kardama, descended from Pulaha.

Sukálins—sons of Vasiṣṭha, and Pitris of the Śudras (Manu and Váyu Puráṇa). They are not mentioned in the Padma. The Matsya inserts the name and descent, but specifies them as amongst the incorporeal Pitris.

अमृतंमन्यः पितृसो वसिहृष्य मुकुरिनः ।  
नामा तु मानसा सर्वे सद ते चमृतंय ॥

It may be suspected that the passage is corrupt. The Hari Vamsa makes the Sukálins sons of Vasiṣṭha, the Pitris of the Brahmans, and gives the title of Somapas to the Pitris of the Sudras. In general, this work follows the Váyu, but with omissions and transpositions, as if it had carelessly mutilated its original.

The Matsya-puráṇa, by evident corruption, gives the Sukálins—as it calls them—the synonym Mánasas

Besides these Pitris or progenitors, other heavenly beings are, sometimes, made to adopt a similar character. Thus, Manu says "The wise call our fathers Vasus, our paternal grandfathers, Rudras, our paternal great grandfathers, Aditya, agreeably to a text of the Vedas that is these divine beings are to be meditated upon, along with, and is not distinct from, progenitors. Hemâdi quotes the Nândi Upapurâna for a different practice, and directs Vishnu to be identified with the father, Brahmâ, with the grandfather, and Siva, with the great grandfather. This, however, is Saiva innovation. The Vrushnavas direct Aniruddha to be regarded as one's-self, and Pradyumna, Sankarshana, and Vâsudeva, as the three ancestors. Again, they are identified with Varuna, Prâjapati, and Agni, or, again, with months, seasons, and years. Nirnaya Sindhu, p. 284. It may be doubted how far any of those correctly represent the original notions inculcated by the texts of the Vedas, from which, in the most essential particulars, they are derived.

## CHAPTER XVI

Sûta said, after hearing that, King Manu again enquired from the Lord Keshava, about the periods for the performance of Srâddhas, the different kinds of Srâddhas, the twice-born worthy of being fed on that occasion and those who ought to be discarded from the feast, the time of the day when Srâddha should be performed, the vessels that should be used in performing the ceremony, the ways of performing the rite and the mode of giving satisfaction to the Pitris — 1-3

The Lord replied that Srâddha should be performed daily and the Pitris should be satisfied by offering any of the following things — Grain, water, milk, roots, fruits — 4

The Srâddhas are of three kinds, viz — Nitya (Daily), Naimittika (Occasional), Kâmya (Optional). In performing Nitya Srâddha, no oblation (arghya), invocation or Viśadeva worship is necessary. Naimittika Srâddha is that which is performed on the fourth and the eighth day of each half-month and on the days of the full and the new moon (Pârvana days). Pârvanas are of three different kinds, hear it O Lord of the world. First, it should be noted what class of people ought to be invited to the feast of Naimittika (Pârvana) Srâddha. One who is acquainted with the doctrine of the five mystic fires (Pañchâgni) a Snâtaka Brahmacârî, one who is well versed in the Vedas with their six angas, the Srotrolya Brâhmaṇa, the son of such a Srotrolya Brâhmaṇa, one highly proficient in the rules of Vidhi (or Laws), one who is thoroughly acquainted with the sacred hymns, the minister, one who belongs to a wellknown family, one who has a sound knowledge of the Purânas, one who knows the dharma, a regular reader of the Vedas, and performer of japa, a devotee of Siva, Pitri, Sun, Visnu, and Brahmâ, a Yogi, one who is peaceful, one who can control his passions, one who is virtuous, especially a daughter's son, a

friend, a preceptor, a typical sanyasi, or the head of the Vaidyas, a maternal uncle, a member of the community (kinsman), a Ritvija priest, a teacher, a Soma-sacrificer, a grammarian, a knower of the Mimansa doctrine about Sacrifices, one who performs Vedic sacrifices, one who knows the Sâma-veda and how to chant it, one who is so learned, respectable or eminent that his very presence may be considered to elevate and purify the people who sit to feast with him in the same row, the chanter of the Sâma-veda, a Brahmachâri, a professor of Vedas, one who knows Brahma, are the sort of people worthy of being invited to the Srâddha feast. Where such people are feasted, the Srâddha is real and earnest —5-13

*Note—Dwija means twice-born. Everyone is born as a Sûdra and becomes twice born on being invested with the sacred thread.*

Now it should be noted what class of people are to be discredited from such a feast

The fallen, the cursed, eunuchs, backbiters, those deformed by disease, those having deformed nails, those having yellow teeth, bastards, bastards of widows, horse-tamers, offspring of a younger brother married before an elder brother, those who offer themselves for service, those addicted to drunkenness, mad men, the hard hearted, cheats, swindlers, the conceited, temple priests, the ungrateful, the atheist, inhabitants of a Mlechha country (Non aryans), Trîsankus, of Barbaia, and of Dravavita, Dravida, of Kokkana, and the Lingis (having prominent sectarian marks), should, under no circumstances, be invited to Srâddha feast —14-17

The guests to the Srâddha feast should be courteously invited the same day or a day previous to the feast. The Pitris accompany the invited twice-born, in the form of air, and sit along with them at the time of the feast. The host should go and invite his twice-born guest by touching his right knee and address him thus "thou hast been invited by me, accept my invitation". After thus addressing, he should remind the guest as well as his paternal kinsmen in these words —" You should be without anger, observe purity and rules of continence the whole of this day, and I the performer of Srâddha would also observe the same along with you" —18-20

One who maintains the sacrificial fire, should perform the Srâddha after offering oblations of water called Tarpana to the Pitris, as well as after offering of pindas to them, on every Amavasyâ —21

Srâddha should be performed near a cow-pen or by a pool of water, after plastering the floor, which should be sloping towards the south, with cowdung. One who consecrates and maintains the sacred fire, should

cook rice (charu), and after offering with equal handfuls and saying ("I am offering to the Pitris,") should place everything toward the south —22-23

Then he should sprinkle with ghee in front of the three *nirvîpa* plates They should be of the same size, that is four fingers broad, and place on them balls of rice —24

Three silver-mounted, smooth ladles, of *acacia catechu*, measuring one hand in length with closed fist, and having the form of the palm of hand at the end, should be made After putting the sacred thread over the right shoulder, the person performing *Siaddha* should put a water goblet, and a vessel of bell-metal, and *mekṣana* (name of a sacrificial vessel), sacrificial wood, *Kusa*, sesamum, leaf plates, sandal, new cloth and scent, incense, and sandal paste towards the south After thus putting together the articles for worship, the worshipper should draw a circle by the urine of cow on the floor plastered with cowdung, and there he should worship the circle with unhusked rice and flowers The worshipper should then wash the feet of his Brâhmaṇa guests with great respect and courtesy, and after offering them water for rinsing their mouth, should seat them on the *kusa* mattings —25-29

Two Brâhmaṇas should be fed at the time of offering oblations to Gods and three at the time of Pitri worship, or one Brâhmaṇa may be fed on each occasion —30

Even the rich man should not feast more than this number on this occasion Water should first be offered to the Brâhmaṇa invited to take part in the rite of offering oblations to the Devas, and his feet should be washed first —31

By the permission of the Brâhmaṇas, the worshipper, according to the rules of his *Grihya Sûtras*, should take the boiled rice (*Charu*), in a vessel of bell-metal and offer it to fire, the Moon, and Yama, in the *Daksinâgnî*, or *Ekâgnî* if he does not keep all the fires He should perform *Paryukṣana* with the sacred thread on the left shoulder, and one who knows all the rites should perform it with the sacred thread thrown on the right shoulder —32—34

*Note*—*Paryukṣana*=sprinkling round water silently and without uttering any ritual formulæ

After that, six balls should be made of the remaining boiled rice and water mixed with sesamum, and offered with the left hand Then the worshipper should sit on his left knee, with concentrated attention, and draw a line on the sacrificial altar with *kusa* blade, and turning his face towards the south he should sprinkle water on the *darbha* grass with a ladle

After that, he should offer the balls of rice by putting a kusa on the line drawn on the altar and by uttering the name and clan of the ancestor! Then he should wipe his hands with the kusa and thus satisfy the *Lepabhhagis* (A paternal ancestor in the 4th, 5th and 6th degree) —35—38

Then water should again be sprinkled on the darbba grass and the six Pitris should be saluted and worshipped with incense, &c —39

After thus invoking them by Vedic hymns, one, who is *Ekagni*, should offer only one ball of rice with a ladle —40

*Note* —*Ekagni*=one who performs agnihotra

After satisfying the male ancestors, offerings should be made to the female ancestors by means of the kusa grass, who should also be invoked and dismissed in the same way —41

Then he should take a little out of the balls of rice and offer it to the invited guests, according to precedence, making the first offer to the Brâhmaṇas —42

Because the twice born eat the particles from the rice-balls on the occasion of the Amâvasyâ feast, it is called *Anvâhâya* —43

First of all, the twice-born invited to the feast, should be given rings of kusa grass to wear on their ring fingers, and then a portion of the ball of rice should be presented to them, after putting a little water and sesamum in their hand by uttering *Swadhaiṣāmstu* —44

*Note* —*Swadhaiṣāmstu*=Here is the food to the manes personified

At the time of feasting the invited guests, the host should enquire whether they relish the food He should on no account be in angry mood He should concentrate his mind on Nârâyana Hari —45

After the invited (Brâhmaṇa) guests are satisfied, the host should, on unsanctified earth, place food with water and rice for the acceptance of all classes This is called *Vikira* (scattering) —46

After the invited guests have washed their hands and mouths, the host should place water, flowers and unhusked rice in their hands, and ask them to sprinkle it on the balls of rice offered to the Pitris, pronouncing *Swastu* (Be comfortable) —47

The Gods should also be satisfied on the occasion of the performance of *Siaddha*, for otherwise *Siaddha* is not complete The Brâhmaṇa guests invited, should be circumambulated before being respectfully dismissed 48

Facing south, the following boon should be sought from the Pitris

"You may continue to be our donors. The Vedas may exist, and our progeny may prosper. Let our devotion not diminish, we may have ample wealth to give to the needy, we may have plenty of grain, we may be visited by many guests. People may ask for help from us, we may not have to seek anything from others." This is the Anvâhârya Srâddha, which is also called Pârvana —49—51

The Kâmya or the third kind of Srâddha should be performed also in the same manner as the Pârvana Srâddha described above. It should be performed on Amâvasyâ. The balls of rice should afterwards be given to cows, goats, Brâhmaṇas, or should be thrown into fire or water, or they should be made over to birds —52—53

The ball of rice in the middle should be given to the wife of the host (this is the peculiarity in this Srâddha). It begets progeny. She should eat the ball of rice after pronouncing the following words "Adhatta pitaro gaibhamatva santâna raiðhanam" (Pitris grant to me progeny that would continue the line of the house). The host should remain standing till the Brâhmaṇas depart. He should then perform the remaining rites —54

After the Srâddha rites are over, the host should make an offering to Vârsadevas by presenting oblations to fire, and then he should enjoy a hearty repast in company of his friends, concentrating his mind on the Pitris —55

That day one who performs Srâddha, as well as those who partake in the Srâddha feast, should not take their food twice. They should not go out of the village when the Srâddha is performed. They should neither use any conveyance nor approach their wives —56

The Veda should not be read on that day, the worshipper should not quarrel with anyone, nor should he sleep in course of the day. This is how Srâddha should be performed —57

In this way, an Agnihotri should perform Srâddha in the dark fortnights of the months when the sun is in the sign of Virgo, Aquarius, and Taurus. Whenever the Sapindî kârana Srâddha is to be performed, there also the above ceremonial should be observed by one who keeps the sacred fire —58

*Here ends the sixteenth Chapter dealing with the ritual of sraddhas  
in the case of those who maintain the sacred fire*

#### NOTE

The following note on Srâddhas is from Professor Wilson's Vishnu Purana

The offerings of the Hindus to the Pitris partake of the character of those of the

Romans to the lares and manes, but bear a more conspicuous part in their ritual. They are said, indeed, by Manu (III, 203), in words repeated in the Vâyu and Matsya Purânas, and Harî Vamsa, to be of more moment than the worship of the gods

देवकार्यवपि सदा पितृकार्यं विशिष्टते ।

These ceremonies are not to be regarded as merely obsequial, for, independently of the rites addressed to a recently deceased relative,—and, in connection with him, to remote ancestors, and to the progenitors of all beings,—which are of a strictly obsequial or funeral description, offerings to deceased ancestors, and the Pitrîs in general, form an essential ceremony, on a great variety of festive and domestic occasions. The Nirnaya Sindhu, in a passage referred to by Mr Colebrooke (Asiatic Researches, Vol VII) specifies the following Srâddhas 1 The Nitya, or perpetual, daily offerings to ancestors in general 2 The Naimittika, or occasional, as the Ekoddisha, or obsequial offerings on account of a kinsman recently deceased 3 The Kamya, voluntary, performed for the accomplishment of a special desire, such as for the birth of a son 4 The Vridhî, performed on occasions of rejoicing or prosperity 5 The Sapindala, offerings to all individual and to general ancestors 6 The Parvâna Srâddha, offerings to the manes, on certain lunar days called Parvanas, or day of full moon and new moon, and the eighth and fourteenth days of the lunar fortnight 7 The Goshthi for the advantage of a number of learned persons, or of an assembly of Brahmins, invited for the purpose 8 The Sudhi, one performed to purify a person from some deliction,—an expiatory Srâddha 9 The Karmanga, one forming part of the initiatory ceremonies, or Simskarâ observed at conception, birth, tonsure, &c 10 The Daivika, to which the gods are invited 11 The Yâtrâ Srâddha, held by a person going a journey and, 12 The Pushti Srâddha, one performed to promote health and wealth Of these, the four which are considered the most solemn are the rite performed for a parent, or near relative, lately deceased, that which is performed for kindred, collectively, that observed on certain lunar days, and that celebrated on occasions of rejoicing

Nirnaya Sindhu, p. 172

## CHAPTER XVII

Sûta said I shall now relate to you what Lord Visnu said about the general ritual of Srâddha (applicable to all whether they keep sacred fire or not), that gives prosperity and emancipation —

Summer solstice, winter solstice the period when the sun is in the equinoctial points, the period when the sun passes from one zodiacal sign into another, the period when any planetary body passes from one zodiacal sign into another, on the Amâvâsyâ and the âstakâ of the dark fortnight and on the fifteenth day of the moon, the period of the (Ardrâ) ninth, the (Maghâ) tenth and the (Robini) fourth lunarmansions, the presence of materials and Brahmanas, the time of a *gajachchhâdyâ*, the day of full moon on a Monday, the days called *Vistis* and *Vaidhritis*, the third day of the bright fortnight of the month *Vaisâkha* which is the anniversary day of the *Satya Yuga*, the 9th day of the bright fortnight the month *Kartîka* the anniversary day of the 'Tieta Yuga', the 15th day (full moon) of *Mâgha*, the anniversary day of the *Kali Yuga*, the thirteenth day of

the dark fortnight of the month Bhâdرا, corresponding to August-September, which is the anniversary day of the Dvapara Yuga, are the periods and occasions when, by performing Srâddha, one gets bliss and exhaustless merits. So also on the anniversary days of the beginning of a Manvantara, as detailed below --2-5

The ninth day of the bright fortnight of the month Âśvin, the twelfth tithi of the month Kârtika, the third lunar day of the month Chaitra, the third lunar tithi of Bhâdرا, the Amâvasya of the month Phâlguna, the 11th lunar tithi of the month Pausa, the 10th lunar tithi of the month Âśadha, the 7th tithi of the month Mâgha, the 8th of dark fortnight in the month Srâvana, the full moon days of the months Âśadha, the full moon days of the months Kartika, Phâlguna, Chaitra and Jyestha, these fourteen days are anniversary days of the beginning of fourteen Manvantaras respectively. These are the periods in which, if the Srâddha is performed, it gives unbounded satisfaction to the Pitris and brings exhaustless merit to the worshipper —6-8

The seventh day of the month of Mâgha is called Rathâ Saptami day, named after the Sun's ascending the chariot already mentioned above as the anniversary day of the beginning of a Manvantara —9

The Pitris say that one who offers them a libation of even water and sesamum on the Rathâ-Saptami day, gets the same benefit as he would by performing Srâddha regularly for a thousand years —10

Srâddha should be performed on the full moon day, in the month of Vaiśâkha, at the time of an eclipse, on the occasion of the sacred-thread ceremony and Mahâlava festival, in a holy city (tîrtha), near a place where cows are kept, in gardens illuminated with lamps and in villas after plastering the floor with cowdung, and the Brâhmaṇa guests should be invited to the feast the same day or a day previous in the manner mentioned before —11-12

The Brâhmaṇas invited to the feast should be well behaved, of good deeds and habits, young and good-looking. Two Brâhmaṇas should be invited at Daiva-Srâddha and three at the Pitrîya Srâddha feast, or only one may be invited on each occasion --13

A large number need not be invited, even if the host has great resources at his command. First, the Brâhmaṇa invited to Daiva-Srâddha should be attended. He should be seated and offered barley and flowers —14

Two vessels should be placed with kusa rings, and water should be poured in one, after uttering, "Om Šannô Devî," etc., and barley should

be put in the other, after uttering, "Om yuva si" etc. Flower and sandal should also be put in the vessels offered to the Vaishva devas with the mantra, "Om Virvedeśā," etc., who should be thus invoked and barley should be thrown. After offering flowers and sandal, the host should offer Aighava water to them with the mantra "Yādu ya" &c. When the Visvadeva worship is finished, the Pitrī worship should be commenced —15-17

First, three kusa should be placed for the Pitris to take their seats on, and then kusa rings should be placed in three vessels in which water should be poured after reciting, "Om Śanno Dēvi" etc. Sesamum should be offered by reciting, "Om Tilo si," etc. after which sandal and flowers should be offered. The vessels for the Pitris should be made of any of the following materials, viz.—Lotus leaves, wood, conch-shell, gold and silver —18-20

If a silver vessel may not be available, then the worshipper may give away a little silver, if he cannot afford that, then he may simply look at it or merely mention its name. By devoutly offering even water, out of silver or vessels made of alloyed silver, the worshipper gains everlasting bliss. The silver vessels are the best to be used at the time of offering libation and of prutas and of food to the pitris of water. Silver has come out of the eyes of Siva, and consequently it is so much appreciated by the Pitris, but it should not be employed at the time of Deva worship, for it is inauspicious there —21-23

According to his means the worshipper should give away the vessels, and perform Satkalpa by taking a kusa in his hand and by reciting, "Om Yādīrya," etc. and the name, etc. of his father and gotra —24

Then the worshipper should say, "Pitrināvāhaisyami," [I shall now invoke the pitris] when the assembled priests [Brāhmaṇas] permit him by saying "Kuru". Afterwards, the worshipper should say, "Usantastvā," "Ayentuvah Pitarah," and thus invoke the Pitris with these two Rig Verses —25

After saying, "Vā dīryā" etc., the worshipper should offer *agnya*, that is, some water in a pot, along with flowers and sandal, and should put kusa rings in the dishes and pour on them the offered water out of the pot, and, after saying "Pitribhya sthānamasi," should place the pot downwards, to the left of the Pitrī's seat —26-27

Afterwards the homa "Āgni Karana" rite should be performed, as explained before, and then the worshipper should fetch the pot of food with both hands and put it in the dishes. At the time of putting the

food in the dishes, kusa should be held in the hand with serene mind Several kinds of pulses, vegetables, and other victuals should also be arranged in the dishes In offering food, curds, milk, clarified butter of cow's milk and sugar should also be put in the dishes Pitris are exceedingly fond of flesh, so Lord Kësava has said —28-30

The Pitris say that the offering of fish keeps them satisfied for two months, the flesh of deer for three months, mutton for four months, the flesh of birds for five months, goat's flesh for six months, Pârsat's flesh for seven months, ena's flesh for eight months, ham and buffaloe's flesh for ten months, hare and turtle's flesh for eleven months, cow's flesh ? and) \* milk and rice cooked in cow's milk for a year, the flesh of Ruru for 15 months, lion's flesh for twelve years, Kâlusa (pot herb) and flesh of the rhinoceros for a great number of years, the cow's milk mixed with honey and rice cooked in cow's milk, clarified butter made of cow's milk offered even, in a small measure satisfies the Pitris —the Pûrvadevatas to an extreme degree —31-36

*Note* — Pârsat, Ruru, Ena = species of deer

The worshipper should read some of the following —the Vedic mantras relating to Pitrimedha, Purânas of all kinds, Brahma Sûkta, Visnu Sûkta, Surya Sûkta, Rudra Sûkta, Indra Sûkta, Agni Sûkta, Soma Sûkta, Pâvanâmi Sûkta, according to one's capacity, as well as Viñhadra-thantar Sâma, Jyestha Sâma, Raubina Sâma, Santikâdhyâya, Madhu Brâhmaṇa, Mandala Brâhmaṇa any other thing that may appeal to the worshipper and the Brâhmaṇas —37-39

When the Brâhmaṇas are about to finish their meal, then Vikna rite should be performed for all the classes The food should be put in one plate and scattered in front of the Brâhmaṇas along with some water —40-41

At the time of performing Vikna rite, the following mantras should be read These mean — Those beings that have been burnt in the fire,

\* Professor H H Wilson writes —

"The expression *ganya* implies all that is derived from a cow , but, in the text it is associated with 'flesh', and, as the commentator observes some consider the flesh of the cow to be here intended But this, he adds, relates to other ages In the Kali or present age, it implies milk and preparations of milk The Sacrifice of a cow or calf formed part of the ancient vrâddha It then became typical, or, as a bull was turned loose instead of being slaughtered, and this is still practised, on some occasions In Manu, the term *Ganya* is coupled with others, which limit its application —

सर्वत्येष तु गव्येन प्रवक्षा याप्यस्मै च ।

'A whole year with the milk of cows, and food made of that milk'"

(Viñnu Purâna Vol III p 193)

those beings that have not been cremated in my family, may feel satisfied by the Vikna rite and attain emancipation Those who have no father or mother, no brother, no clansman to offer them food, may feel satisfied with the food offered in the Vikna rite and attain peace Those who were not invested with the sacred thread, those women discarded by their kinsmen, may feel satisfied with the food offered in Vikna —42-41

When the Brâhmanas have finished their meal and are satisfied, then water should be poured out on their hands and on the floor plastered with cowdung Kusa should be strewn towards the south, and on them the balls of various eatables should be offered —45-46

The balls should be offered after sprinkling water and reciting the name and the gotra of the worshipper as mentioned before in *aranyagna* rite, then incense, sandal, &c., should be offered, and then water should be sprinkled again This sprinkling is called *pratyavaranayana* By putting the left knee down on the floor and by holding water along with kuśa in the left hand, the Pitris should be invoked and circumambulated —47-48

Similarly, sandal and dipa should also be offered After the Brâhmanas have washed their hands and mouth, the worshipper should himself rinse his mouth with water and offer water to his guests —49

**Note —Dipa = waving a light before the object of worship**

Then flowers, rice (unhusked), sesamum, should be offered to the Brâhmanas, after which they should be given some Daksinâ, according to the means of the worshipper, who should offer it to each Brâhmana by calling out his name and lineage —50

**Note —Daksinâ is money offered to Brâhmanas**

The worshipper should give away cows, land, gold, clothes liked by the Brâhmanas, appreciated by the Pitris and appealing to the worshipper's own fancy —51

There should be no niggardliness in the giving of Daksinâ, and to please the Pitris the worshipper should ask the Brâhmanas to do Swadhâ-Vachana Water should be put in the hands of the Brâhmanas after vîsha deva ceremony and the worshipper should receive the blessings of the Brâhmanas by facing himself towards the East He should first say "Aghôrah Pitarah Santu," ("let the pitris be auspicious"), in reply to which the Brâhmanas should say "Santu" ("let it be so") —52-53

The host should again say, "Gotram tathâ Vaidhatâmnah," to which the Brâhmanas should reply, "Vaidhatâm (let similarly our clan be increased)", the worshipper should say, "Dâtârônâbhivardhantâm (let

the giver of presents increase in our family,") the Brâhmaṇas should say, "Vardhantum (may they increase)" the worshipper "Etahsatyatsvah santu (let these blessings be true)," the Brâhmaṇas "Sanu (may it be so)." After finishing svâdhâvâchana like this, the worshipper should perform "uchchâhasana" at the time of dismissing his invited guests, and, after, that he should perform "griha bali"—54-55

Uchchâhasana=is defined below

Grihabali=domestic oblation Offering of the remnants of meal to all creatures, such as animals, supernatural beings and particularly household Deities

"Uchchâhesana" is to leave some food scattered on the floor, for the acceptance of the attendants of the Pitris known as Âstika and Akutla. The Pitris themselves started this rite for the satisfaction of their attendants which should be performed by all—those who have children and those who are childless—56-58

Afterwards, the worshipper should stand before the Brâhmaṇas, made of kusa, with a pot of water, and after reciting "Vâjâ, Vâjâ," etc should dismiss them with the kusa end. The worshipper should then move eight steps out of the house, and along with his wife, son and kinmen should complete the rite of strâddha—59-60

Then he should, after sprinkling water silently round the fire, without uttering any ritual formulae, perform Vaishvadeva and Nityabali—61

Note.—Vaishvadeva=an offering to all the Deities (made by presenting oblations to fire before meals) Nityabali=daily offering

After the Vaishvadeva ceremony he may partake of the food with his servants, sons, kith and kin and other guests—62

This form of Sâdharanâ Shâddha can be performed even by those, who have not been invested with the sacred thread, those who are in a foreign country and have not their wives with them. The Sâdhus may also perform it without reciting any sacred- formulae — 63-64

The third strâddha is called Âbhyudâlakam, which is also known as Vriddhi Shâddha. It is performed on auspicious occasions such as a big sacrifice, marriage, &c—65

In Vriddhi Shâddha, offerings are made in the following order—Mother, grandmother, great-grandmother, father, grandfather, great-grandfather, maternal-grandfather, maternal great-grandfather, maternal-great-great-grandfather, Vaishvadeva —66

The worshipper should, after circumambulating, turn his face towards the East and should then remove the balls made of curds, uncooked rice, fruits, water, and laden with kusa and dûrvâ grass—67

The Brâhmaṇas should be offered water (*aighya*) twice, with the words, 'Sampannam, (accomplished)' and should be worshipped and offered clothes, gold, &c., by the twice-born — 68

Barley should be offered in lieu of sesamum, this is also called Nândimukha śrâddha, and propitious mantras in performing it should be uttered — 69

A Sûdra can also perform the ordinary as well as the Vridhi śrâddha with uncooked grain, by uttering the formula of namah instead of Vedic mantras — 70

For thus said the Lord Bhagavân — Charity is the best thing for a Sûdra, by performing which he gains all his ends — 71

*Here ends the seventeenth chapter describing the Sâdhârana and Abhyudaya Śrâddhas*

### CHAPTER XVIII

Sûta said I shall now relate to you the Ekoddista śrâddha, as explained by the Lord, and will also tell you for what period a son should consider himself defiled after the death of his father. By the death of a kinsman (*Sapinda*), a Brâhmaṇa remains defiled for ten days, a Kṣatîya for 12 days, a Vaishya for 15 days, a Sûdra for a month. By the demise of one whose tonsure ceremony was not performed, one remains defiled for 3 nights. Similarly, people of all classes are defiled for a period when there is a child-birth in the house. At the time of a death till the corpse is burnt and the ashes are collected, the person in whose family the death occurs should not be considered contaminated. Commencing from the day of the demise of the person, a lump of food should be offered to the departed spirit, for a period of twelve days. That offering is *Patheya* (that is viaticum) and is consequently most agreeable.—1-5

In case of offering *Pinda* to the deceased on the 12th day after his death, the attendants of Yama do not carry the spirit to the city of the God of Death, and during this period the departed spirit sees his sons, wife or any other member of the family, and observes whether they provide it with something for its comfort on its long journey or not. It is for this reason that a pitcher full of water is suspended from a tree, for a period of ten days. Its water soothes the heat of cremation and also refreshes the spirit when it gets weary on the great journey — 6-7

A Brâhmaṇa on the 11th day after death should feast 11 Brâhmaṇas and Ksatriyas, &c., should feast an uneven number of Brâhmaṇas. On the

day following the completion of the period of defilement, one should perform the Ekoddîsta Śrâddha in which all the ceremonies previously described, barring invocation and homa ceremony of Viśvadeva, should be performed. In this Śrâddha, only one kuṣa ring should be put on, and only one offering of water (aghya) and ball of food (pinda) should be made. After reciting "*Upatiṣṭhatām*," sesamum and a handful of water should be offered - 8-10

*Note* — *Upatiṣṭhatām* = It is offered to thee

*Svahitām* should be recited at the time of performing the Viśvadeva rite, and *Abhivamyatām* should be uttered at the time of dismissing the departed spirit. The rest of the rite should be performed, as explained before. Similarly, Śrâddha should be performed each month, and, on the second day of the completion of the period of defilement, a well-bedecked bed should be given away. At the same time, an image made of gold and well dressed, should also be given away and the Brâhmaṇa as well as his consort should be worshipped, after being well dressed and made to wear good ornaments. A bull should be set free, and a really good cow and a pitcher full of water, along with nice eatables, should also be given away. The pitcher should be filled with sesamum along with water. After a year, the Sapindi-karana Śrâddha should be performed. After the performance of Sapindi-karana Śrâddha the deceased (pieta) becomes entitled to receive a share out of the Pârvana Śrâddha and become legible for worship at Vriddhi Śrâddha, and the householder also becomes entitled to perform Nindumukha Śrâddha, &c. Viśvadeva rite is performed in sapindi-karana Śrâddha, and the ancestors and the fresh departed spirits are offered separate seats. Water, mixed with sandal and sesamum, should be put in four different vessels for offering. The vessels meant for the Pitris and the departed spirit should be mixed together — 11-18

Similarly, four balls of food should be offered, and, after reciting *yē sumānīh samansh*, the balls meant for the departed spirit should be divided into three parts and mixed with the balls of food meant for the Pitris. Excepting in Sapindi-karana Śrâddha, there is no separate rite for the deceased in any other ceremony. The departed spirit becomes delighted by the performance of sapindi-karana, for it then joins the Pitris (and ceases to be a pieta). The departed spirit joins the *Agnisvâdita* group of Pitris and drinks with them nectar, and it is for this reason that no Pindidâna is performed for the departed spirit after the sapindi-karana. The ball of food (pinda) should only be offered to those who join the group of Pitris. After sapindi-karana, three balls are offered on the occasion of an

eclipse or when the sun or any planetary body passes from one zodiacal sign into another , and on the date of demise only one ball is offered If on the date of death one leaves the Ekoddista śrāddha and performs the Pārvana, he commits a sin equal to that of murder of father, mothers and brother, and goes to hell —19-25

The deceased, after living with the Pretas (spirts) for a long time, begins to feel uncomfortable It is therefore necessary that Ekoddista should be performed every year One who, being devoid of jealousy, gives away a jai full of water along with grain for one full year, for the benefit of the departed spirit, has the same reward as is obtained by performing the Asvamedha sacrifice —25-26

When a śrāddha is performed with uncooked grain, then Agni-karana and Pindadāna should also be performed with the same By the performance of sapindi-karana, the deceased soul joins the first three groups of Pitris, and then it finds emancipation in process of time Even after attaining emancipation they get their share of (lepa) śrāddha by the hands being wiped with a kuśa From the 4th to the 6th generation, the forefathers get their share of śrāddha from the Kuśa wiping (lepa) and not pindas, and three generations, father, grandfather and great grandfather, they are entitled to the ball of food (pinda), the seventh being the giver of the Pinda These seven are known as sapindas for the sapinda hood includes these seven counting the performer of the sacrifice —27-29

*Here ends the eighteenth chapter dealing with the ceremony of sapindi-karana*

---

### CHAPTER XIX

The Risis asked --How the offerings to the ancestors and the Devas are to be made here by men They also requested him to explain to them in what way the offerings made in this world reach the Pitris in the Pitri-loka and who is the medium between the Pitris and the man who makes offerings We see that men eat and offerings are made in the fire, how do they then reach the deceased ?--1-2

Sūta said --It is written in the Veda that the eight Vasus are the Pitris, the eleven Rudras are the Pitāmahas, and the twelve Ādityas are the Piapitāmahas The recitation of name and clan of the Pitris by means of the sacred formula with devotion, carries the offerings made to the Pitris —3-4

Agni, vatta, &c , are appointed as rulers of deceased ancestors They transport the offerings made to the ancestors even though they have been

reborn in the meanwhile under another name, clan, place and time. The Pitris carry the ball of food offered in the form of nectar if the deceased ancestor has become a Deva through his good karma. If he is reborn as a Daitya, the offering reaches him in the form of worldly enjoyment. If taking birth as a beast, he gets it in the form of grass, those in the body of serpents get it in the form of am, those in form of Yakṣa get it as wine, those in the body of the Rākṣasa get it in the form of flesh, those in the body of dānavas get it in the form of māyā (delusion or glamour), those in the form of ghosts get it as blood and water, and those who are born as human beings get it in the form of grain and water and other multifarious objects of enjoyments —5-9

The faculty of sensuous enjoyment, beautiful women, delicious victuals and the power of enjoying them, wealth, the power of charity, handsome form, health are the flowers offered in Śiḍḍha performed with devotion. The attainment of Brahma, good age, sons, wealth, knowledge, heaven, bliss of emancipation are the fruits offered in Śiḍḍha —10—11

The Pitris confer kingdoms on their devotees when they are pleased and it is also said that the sons of Kauśika Risi attained Nirvāṇa through the glory of the Pitris, in their fifth cycle of birth —12

*Here ends the nineteenth chapter dealing with the ritual of Śiḍḍha*

## CHAPTER XX

The Risis asked the sage Sūta to relate to them how the sons of Kauśika in their fifth cycle of birth, putting an end to their desires, attained emancipation by their power of Yoga —1

Sūta said, once upon a time there lived in Kuruksēṭra a virtuous Risi named Kauśika. He had seven sons. Every one of whom did the deeds as connoted by their respective names. They were —Svasripa, Krodhana, Himsa, Pisuna, Kavi, Vāgduṣṭa, Pitṛivartī. They were pupils of Gaṅga —2-3

Note —Svasripa=Moving at pleasure or will Krodhana=Irascible Himsa=Savage Pisuna=Backbiter Kavi=Poet Vāgduṣṭa=Scurrilous Pitṛivartī=Devotee of the Pitris

After the death of their father the land was visited with a terrible famine when a large number of people were ruined owing to the cessation of rain and many died of starvation. In those days the seven sons of Kauśika used to look after the cow of Gaṅga and were residing in a forest. One day not getting anything to eat they felt fearfully oppressed with the pangs of hunger. In those circumstances they resolved saying

we shall eat the cow to appease our hunger. At that stage the youngest of them all, said to his brothers —“If this cow must be killed, let us sacrifice her to our pitris in Srâddha for the cow sacrificed with that view would decidedly save us from all sin.” “Do so” said the other brothers to Pitriyarti. The cow was sacrificed and Pitriyarti performed the Srâddha with great devotion. Two brothers officiated for the Brâhmaṇas invited to Viśvedeva rite, the rest three similarly officiated for the Brâhmaṇas, invited to take part in the Pitri-karma and the seventh one represented the Atithi. In this way they all after performing the Srâddha with due Mantras and Meditating on Pitris feasted on the sacrificed cow — 4-9

**Note—Atithi=guest According to Manu**

After that they repaired to their preceptor—Garga and delivering the calf to him said “Guru! the cow has been devoured by the lion, this calf was saved, which take back”— 10

In that way the seven ascetics committed fearlessly a cruel act on the strength of the Vedic injunction and ate the cow — 11

In process of time they were all gathered to their fathers and were re-born in the house of a hunter, but as they performed the Srâddha with great devotion they had a recollection of their previous life through the glory of the Pitris. They were however born in the family of a hunter on account of their having committed a cruel deed, but as they had a recollection of their previous life, they in a fit of asceticism spurned at all mundane luxuries and put an end to their existence by fasting — 12-14

Afterwards they were re-born as deer on the Kâlañjara hill and through the glory of the Pitris maintained their recollection of their previous lives. They then devoted themselves to the Pitris and the God Siva — 15.

They again gave up the ghost by carrying on the penance of fasting, and were re-born in the form of Chukravâka bird on the banks of the Mâna Sarovara lake, under the following names —Sumanâ, Kumuda, Sudddha, Chhîdradarâ, Sunetraka, Sunetra, and Amâsumân. They were endowed with the attributes connoted by their respective names and did similar deeds — 16-18

**Note.—**Sumanâ=Pleasing to the mind Beautiful Kumuda=lotus Sudddha=Pure Chhîdradarâ=Captious, Critic Sunetraka=Having good eyes Sunetra=Having beautiful eyes Amâsumân=Illustrous

Out of those seven, the three fallen from yoga began to roam about hither and thither. One day they came across Vibhrâja the valiant king

of Pāñchala who was enjoying himself in his pleasure garden and had a large retinue of followers and conveyances —19-20

Pitṛavatī the youngest of all the brothers and who had performed the Śāddha, became desirous of becoming a king , the other two brothers wished to become the courtiers of a king , the remaining four did not cherish any wish and they were consequently born as Brāhmaṇas One of them (Pitṛivatī) was born as Brāhmaṇadatta, the son of King Vibhrāja, two brothers were born as Kandarika and Subalaka the sons of the king's minister , and sometime after that, Brāhmaṇadatta was anointed and proclaimed as king —21-24

Brāhmaṇadatta was the most illustrious sovereign of Pāñchāla He ruled the country with great piety and even-handed justice He was well-versed in all the śāstas, yoga and understood the languages of all animals --25

The cow that was sacrificed and feasted upon by them as the sons of Kauśika was born as Sannati the daughter of Devala and was eventually married to Brāhmaṇadatta Because she had served as an offering of the Pitṛis, she became learned in the Brāhmaṇa lore, and the king ruled the country to the satisfaction and prosperity of his subjects in conjunction with his noble consort Sanati —26-27

On one occasion the king in company of his queen in his pleasure garden saw an ant attempting to please his better-half Being over-powered with the arrows of Cupid, the ant crawled behind its help-mate and said " Ah! my love! I have not seen a prettier and sweeter form than thine in any of the three regions See how delicate thy waist is? Both thy thighs resemble the plantain trunk, thy swelling breasts, thy strut of an elephant, thy golden complexion, thy melodious voice resembling that of the cuckoo, thy enchanting smile, thy eyes like lotus, thy tongue that loves the taste of pure sugar, are indeed matchless Thou art an ardent devotee of thy husband so much so that thou wilt never breakfast before me, thou wilt always bathe after me, thou art always gloomy during my absence, thou always shiverest when I am in an angry mood, what is the reason of thy turning your face away from me in anger to-day?" Hearing such a speech of the ant his wife said " Do not talk like that, you are false to me I know all thy tricks, yesterday thou feasted another with the particles of sweet" 28-34.

The ant said " Dear ! I mistook her for you as she resembled you so minutely and through this oversight I feasted her with sweets This is however my first fault which you should forget and forgive I shall never

repeat such a blunder, I promise this sincerely, be pleased, I fall at your feet"—35-36

Sûta said that on hearing the flattering words of her lord, the ant dismissed all her rage and offered herself to him—37

The King Brahmadatta who knew the language of all creatures by the grace of Viñu, was highly astonished to hear what transpired in the couple—38

*Here ends the twentieth chapter dealing with the derision of the she-*

### CHAPTER XXI

The Rishi asked —How did the King Brahmadatta acquire the faculty of understanding the language of all creatures and in what family were the other four cranes born?—1

Sûta replied —They were born in the family of a poor and old Brâhmaṇa in the kingdom of Brahmadatta and they had a recollection of their previous lives —2

Dhritimâna, Tattvadarshi, Vidyâchanda and Tapotsuka were the four sons of the poor Brâhmaṇa—Sudaridha—and they all had the attributes connoted by their respective names —3

Note —Dhritimân=Steadfast Tattvadarshi=Philosopher Vidyâchanda=Very learned Tapotsuka=eager to practise asceticism

They all determined to acquire emancipation by practising asceticism —4

Sudaridha felt very miserable when he came to know of the resolution of his sons and in a very plaintive tone asked them the reason of their doing so. He tried his best to dissuade his sons from doing that and said that to repair to forest leaving an aged father behind in a helpless condition was no virtue, and what would be their fate for doing that act Hearing those words of their old and infirm father they said that he should not stand in their way and that God had made ample provision for his subsistence By reading the following sloka before his king he would get plenty of money and villages —5-8

"The seven sons of the Brâhmaṇa in Kuiujâṅgala were re-born as the sons of a hunter in Dâsapura, again they were re-born as deer on the Kâlinjar hills and then again as cranes on the banks of the Mânasa lake, we are those very same who have now attained final beatitude"—9

Thus addressing their father they departed from him to practise penances in the forest The father crawled towards the King's palace in order to get some money from him —10

Anagha, the son of Vibhûrîja the valiant sovereign of Pâñchâla adored the God Visnu with the object of getting an heir. Sometime after, the Lord being pleased with the king's devotion appeared before him and asked him to seek a boon. On hearing those words of the Lord, the King brought the following boon —11-13

"O, grant me a son who may be powerful, illustrious, dutiful, very much versed in all the sâstrâs and yoga, and who may be conversant with the languages of all the creatures." The Lord said "Be it so" and vanished then and there. Consequently his son Brahmadatta was so illustrious. He was sympathetic, valiant, conversant in the languages of all the creatures, the ruler of all the beings —14-17

Brahmadatta understanding what transpired between the ant and his helpmate, laughed —18

The Queen Sannati seeing his lord laughing apparently without any rhyme or reason asked him the cause of his doing so. She said "Sir, why are you laughing without any reason, will you please explain it to me?" 19-20

Sûta said that after hearing those words of his consort the king said that the conversation between the ant and his better half made him laugh so much and so suddenly. There was no other reason for his doing so. The queen said that the explanation was not true, and that he laughed at her. She would give up her life. How could a mortal understand the language of lower beings without being a God? —21-23

"What more disgrace can there be than this?" Hearing those words of the queen the king became speechless. In order to please the queen the king observed a penance and began to worship Lord Visnu without tasting any food for a week. The God appeared to him in a dream and said "you will come across an old Brâhmaṇa to-morrow in course of your rambles in the town and you must acquaint yourself with everything from him". Saying that the Lord vanished —24-26

In the morning the king in the company of his queen and courtiers came across the old Brâhmaṇa in the suburbs of the town. The Brâhmaṇa recited the same sloka which his sons had taught him at the time of their departure to the forest —27 28

The king along with two of his ministers instantly got the recollection of their previous lives on hearing the sloka and the sovereign fainted and fell on the ground. Subâlaka the son of Vabhrû and the author of the erotic science and the scholar of all the sâstrâs, Kandarîka the propagator

of the *vedâs*, getting a recollection of their previous lives fell on the ground in a swoon —29-31

Recovering from their fainting fit, they all three repented of their fate and said "Oh! we have become devoid of Yoga by falling into the snares of desires"—32

Afterwards they extolled the blessings of *sraddha* and dismissed the Brâhmaṇa with presents of money and villages —33

On the departure of the Brâhmaṇa, the king handed over the reins of the Government to his son Visvaksena and afterwards left the empire along with his two ministers. They all seven joined one another at the Manasa lake —34-35

Brahmadatta and his brothers the great devotee of the Pitrîs were very pleased, but Sannati was very sad on the idea of her being the cause of her husband's abdication and said "Dear! It is owing to me that you have abandoned your mundane empire"—36-37

The king said "Darling! Indeed it is through thee that we all have liberated ourselves from the bonds of the world." Thus praising the queen they all after practising yoga attained final beatitude after letting the Jiva-ātma escape from their body through the Brahmarandhra —38-39

*Note*—Brahmarandhra an aperture in the crown of the head through which the soul is said to escape on its leaving the body See the Sacred Books of the Hindus—Vol XV—The Yoga Sâstra

The Pitrîs on becoming pleased thus bestow on their devotees, long life, knowledge, heaven, emancipation, comfort, and empire —40

One who relates, reads or listens to the history of the Pitrîs and king Brahmadatta enjoys pleasures for ages and ages in the Brahmaloka —41

*Here ends the twenty-first chapter narrating the story of Brahmadatta and the power of Pitrîs*

## CHAPTER XXII

The Risis said—"When does that *sraddha* give everlasting benefit? In what parts of the day and at what sacred places should it be performed?"—1

Sûta said—Charity performed a little after midday in the third part of the day in Abhijit or Rohini gives everlasting benefit I shall enumerate to you in a nutshell the chief holy places that are dear to the Pitrîs —2-3

*Note*—Abhijit is the name of asterism

Gaya is the principal Pitrîpitha Lord Brahma Himself resides

there and the Pitris anxious for a share in the offerings have sung this story there --4-5

It is well to wish for a number of sons, but if even one son goes and performs Shâddha there at Gayâ, or performs the Asvamedha sacrifice or sets free a black bull, it is more than ample for the satisfaction of the Pitris. The sacred Vârânasi (Benares) which is the abode of Vimaleśvar the giver of Prosperity and Emancipation, is also dear to the Pitris —6-7

Prayâga is another Pitritirtha that fulfills the desires of the worshipper. It is the abode of Vatesvar who was located there by Visnu and Lord Keshava always is lost there in His reveries of yogi —8-9

Dashâsvamedha, Gangâdvâra, Nandâ, Lalitâ, Mayâpuri, Mitrâpada, Kedâra, Gangâ-sâgara, are also the sacred places where Shâddha should be performed —10-11

So is Brahmasara a pool in the Sataśau river and Naumisâ the trysting place of all the tirthas, are also very dear to the Pitris —12

Gangodbheda, in the Gomati, Varâha-ksetra which is the abode of Mahadeva and the eighteen handed Siva, the place where the quoit (chakra) of Visnu fell is Namisârianya which is the most sacred of all the tirthas and where Lord Varâha is worshipped are all sacred places. One who goes there is liberated from all his sins and attains emancipation —13-16

Ikṣumatî tirtha where resides the God Nrisinha is held very dear to the Pitris, it is on the confluence of the Ganges —17

Kuruksetra is another most sacred place where all the Pitris are always present —18

The river Sarayû venerated by all the Devas is holy and so is the sacred Irawati, the rivers Yamunâ, Devikâ, Kâli, Chandrabhâgî, Drishadvati, Venumati, Vetrawati are sacred and dear to the Pitris, and Shâddha performed on their banks confers great benefits on the worshipper —19-20

Jambûmârga whence the path of the Pitris is visible is a Pitritirtha unto this day. The pitritirtha Nilakunda, Rudrasarovara, Mânsarovara, Mandâkini, Achchihodâ, Vipâsha, Sarasvatî are also sacred tirthas —21-23

Pûrvamitrapada, Vaidyanâtha, the river Kâsprâ, Mahâkâla, Kâlinjara-hill are also very sacred places —24

Vansodbheda, Harodbheda, Gangodbheda, are among the sacred places and so are Bhadresvara, Vișnupada, Narmadâdhwara Offering Pinda there is equivalent to offering it in Gayâ. These are the Pitritirthas that wash off all the sins of man —25-26

The mere recollection of these sacred places gives great benefit, what to say of those who perform Srâddha there Omkâra, Kâveî, Kapilodaka, the confluence of the river Chandavegâ, Amarkantaka are also sacred places where by bathing one gets hundred times more benefit than by bathing at Kuruksetra Šukratirtha, Pindâî, Someśvar are the sacred places that dispel all impediments and it is very pious to perform Srâddha or give charity there Kâvâravâhana, Châmanvatî river, Gomati, Varanâ, ausanas, Bhairavakestra, Bhrigutunga, Gauritirtha, are also holy places Vainîyaka, Bhadresvara are the holy places that release one from sins and so also Tapti river is sacred Mûlatâpi, Payosni, and her confluence Mahâbodhi, Pâtalâ, Nâgatirtha, Avanti, Mahâgâla, river Venâ, Mahâudra, Mahâlinga, river Dasârnâ, Sataludiâ, Satalivâ river, Viśvapada, the river Niṅgâvâshikâ, Sona river, Ghâgharâ river, Kâlikâ river, Vitastâ river, Droni river, Vâta river, Dhârâ, Ksîra river, are also the places where Srâddha being performed gives great satisfaction to the Pitris Gokarna, Gajakâra, Purusottama, Dwârîka, Arvuda, Sarasvatî river are among the holy places The rivers Manimati, Gîrkarnikâ, Dhutapâpan, the southern ocean, Meghakara tirtha which is the abode of Janârdana and Viśnu, Mandodari tirtha, the river Champâ, Sâmalnâtha, Mahâsal river, Chakravâka, Châmakota tirtha, Janmeśvara, Ajunaksetra, Tripuratirtha, Sidhesvara, Sruśaila Narasinha, are also the places fit for performing Srâddha for the satisfaction of the Pitris Mahendra, Srirangâ are the places where Srâddha should be performed. They are so sacred as to free one from sins merely by going there The rivers Tungabhadra and Bhîmarathî, Bhîmesvar, Kuśinâ Venâ, the rivers Kâveî, Kudmalâ and Godâvari, Tisandhyâ tirtha, Traiyamvakâ the abode of Siva and which is universally venerated, are very holy places A mere recollection of these holy places dispels all sins and the performance of Srâddha there gives unbounded satisfaction to the Pitris

27-48

The rivers Srîpânti and Tâmaparṇi, Jayâtirtha, the sacred river Matsya, Sivadhâr tirtha, Bhadria, the river Pampâ, Râmeśvara, Elâpura, Alampura, Atgâblâuta, Anandâkamalâ, Budhâ, Amâtâkesvara, Ekâmbhakâ, Govardhanâ, Harischandia, Kripuchandra, Prithudakâ, Sahasiâksha, Hiranyâksha, the river Kadalî the abode of Râma, Saumitri Saṅgama, Indrakila Mahânâda, Elakksetra, are very sacred places owing to the abode of gods and Srâddha performed there highly satisfies the Pitris The sacred Bâhu river, Sidhavana, Paśupata, the river Pârvatikâ, are the places where the performance of Srâddha is many times more beneficial Pitpitirtha near the Godâvari river which teems with

myriads of images of Siva is an exceedingly sacred place. It is also known as Jāmadāgni tīrtha. It is there that the river Godāvarī has become ruptured through the fear of Pratika Risi. It is both Deva as well as Pitṛi tīrtha and is also known under the name of Apsaroyuga. There the performance of śrāddha, Agnihotra and charity is held millions of times more sacred. Sahasralinga, Rāghavēśvara the river Indiaphenā where India had His downfall and where He after destroying the demon Namuchi went to Heaven by the practice of penances, are the places where the performance of śrāddha by men bears everlasting fruit. Puskarā, Sáligrama, so also Somapāna, the home of Vaiśwānara are Sacred tīrthas —49-61

Sarasvata, Swāmī, the river Malandarā, Jālandhara, Mount Lohadanda, Kauśiki river, the river Chandrikā, the river Vaidarbhā, Vairā, the river Payosnī, Piṅgmukhā river, the Kāverī, Chitrakūta, Vindhya-chala, Kubjābhra, the banks of the Uīvāśi river, Samsāramochana, Rinamochana, Attahāsa Gautameśvara, Vasistha, Hīnta, Brahmāvara, Kuśavarta, Haya, Pindāraka, Saṅkhodhāra, Ghaoteśvara, Vilvakesvara, Nilkeśvara, Dhāraṇidhara, Rāmītītha, Aśva, Vedaśira, Aughavati river, Vasuprada, Chāglānda, Budāti, Gana, Jayant, Vijayāśakra tīrtha, Śīpati, Raivata, Sāradā, Bhadiakaleśvara, Vaikuntha, Bhīmeśvara, Mahādeva, Mātrīgraha, Karavīrapura, Kuśesaya, Gauriśikhāra, Nekulesa, Kardamāla, Dindi, Pundarikapura, Godāvari the abode of Tīrthesvara, are the places where by performing śrāddha one gives complete satisfaction to the Pitris and paves the way for the attainment of final beatitude —62-78

I have enumerated to you the names of the Tīrthas very briefly. Even Bṛihaspati cannot adequately describe their glory what to say of a man —79

Satya tīrtha (observance of truth), Dayā tīrtha (performance of charity), Indriyanigraha (control of passions) should be considered as tīrthas even by those who cannot leave their homes for purposes of pilgrimage —80

Śrāddha performed at these place is millions of times more sacred. One should therefore perform śrāddha with devotion and according to the rules laid down, at these holy places —81

The three morning muhūrtas are called satgava, the three muhūrtas in the midday and afternoon are uttama, the evening muhūrta which should be avoided, or śrāddha is Rākṣasi. There are fifteen muhūrtas in the day and the 8th of them is called the kutupa —82-84

*Note—Muhurta—A period of 48 minutes*

In the noon the movement of the sun becomes slow therefore it is best to perform Srâddha at that time —85

The hour of midday, a vessel of rhinoceros horn, a Nepal blanket, silver, Darbhâ grass, sesamum, lime, and a daughter's son, are the eight essentials of a Srâddha. Kutsit is another synonym of Pâpa (sin) and the eight things enumerated above consume (tâpa) all sin (ku), therefore they are known as kutupâs —86-87

The nine muhûrtas after the kutupa muhûrta are known as Svadhâ —88

Kusa and black sesamum were produced from the body of Visnu, that is why they are necessarily employed in the performance of Srâddha. The devas have also said that a handful of water mixed with sesamum and offered by the residents of a sacred place by holding kusa in one hand, is also a kind of Srâddha —89-90

Srâddha should be performed with one hand only but Taipana with both hands —91

Sûta said that the performance of Srâddha in a holy place gives long life and washes off all sins, this has been said by the Lord Matsya —92

One should recite it at the time of Srâddha one who reads it or hears it becomes wealthy, consequently the residents of a holy place should recite it to dispel all their sins —93

This Srâddha mahâtmya is the dispeller of all sins and it is venerated by Siva, Brahmâ and the God sun —94

*Here ends the twenty-second chapter enumerating the Sacred truths for Srâddhas*

---

### CHAPTER XXIII

The Risis said —How did the moon O' scholar of all the Sûstras, become the sovereign of the Pitris and how did the Râjâs of the lunar dynasty become so illustrious? —1

Sûta said —At the time of the first creation, the sage Atri as desired by Brahmâ practised austerities for the purpose of creation —2

The Blissful Brahmâ, the dispeller of all troubles of the world and who is enshrined within Visnu, Siva, and the sun Rudra and who is supersensuous and is the giver of all peace and who is enthroned in the eyes of peaceful beings, the same Brahmâ becoming pleased with the austerities of Atri was the cause of his happiness, in other words, He

caused the moon to be produced from the eyes of Atri At that time Lord Siva with His Consort the goddess Parvati became highly pleased to see the moon and decorated His head with It , and the power produced from the water and emitted from the eyes of Atri illuminated the universe with Its lustre —3-6

All the directions anxious to beget progeny absorbed that lustre in the form of damsels and then it remained in their womb for three hundred years After that period the directions could not bear the power in their womb and so they ejected it Brahmâ collected it together and created an illustrious Being bedecked with all the arms He then gave him vedic powers and seated Him on a chariot drawn by a thousand horses and thus took Him to His region where seeing Him all the Brâhma-Risis acknowledged Him as their Sovereign Lord —7-10

Afterwards the Pitrîs, Devas, Gandharvas, herbs along with the God India began to adore Brahmâ by reciting the Somedeva mantras —11

Then by the Yogic glory of the Lord Brahmâ, that, became still more illustrious and merged into the moon By Its lustre the herbs in the world profusely thrived and the moon became much more radiant in the night and consequently it (the moon) came to be the sovereign of the herbs and the Brâhmaṇas —12-13

This disc of the moon is the resort of the Vedas and the nectar It waxes in the bright fortnight and wanes in the dark fortnight —14

In the days gone by Daksa Piñjâpati son of Prachetas gave his twenty seven beautiful daughters to the moon The moon to please Lord Viñšu practised austerities for a considerable length of time The Lord became pleased with his devotion and directed Him to ask for a boon The moon wished, that he might conquer the realm of Indra, the Devas might go to His region and officiate as Brâhmaṇas in His Râjasûya sacrifice, and Lord Siva might protect it (sacrifice,) with his trident standing at his door —15-19

On Viñšu's granting this boon, the moon performed the Râjasûya sacrifice in which the sage Atri became the Hota priest, Bhṛigu officiated as Adhvaryu, Brahmâ was the Udgâta, Lord Hari officiated as Brâhmaṇa priest, and the Sages Saunaka, &c were the Sadasyas in that Râjasuya sacrifice —20-21

**Note**—Adhvaryu—An officiating priest whose duty is to measure the ground, build the altar, prepare sacrificial vessels, fetch wood and water, light the fire, bring the animal and immolate it and while doing this to repeat the Yajurveda

Udgâta—one of the priests at the sacrifice who chants the Shâmañveda

Hota's function was to recite Rigveda and he was also the Chief priest, while Brahma priest superintended the others and was in charge of the Atharvaveda

The ten Visvadevas officiated as chamasâ-adhvaryu In that sacrifice the moon gave the three lokas as Dakṣinâ to the sacrificial priests — 22

*Note* — Chamasâ — A vessel used at sacrifices for drinking the Soma juice

On the conclusion of that sacrificial bath, the nine goddesses fired with love went to have a look at the moon — 23

Lakṣmî went after leaving Nârâyana, Siniâli went after leaving Kardama, Dyutî went after forsaking Vibhâvanî, Tustî went after leaving Dhâtara, Piabbâ went after leaving the Sun, Kuhû went after leaving Havismân, Kîtu went after leaving Jayanti, Vasu went after leaving Mâinchî Kashyapa, Dhritî went after leaving her husband Nandi All those goddesses went and adorned the Moon The Moon also looked upon them as His own wives Then Lords even seeing them go astray like that did not use their missile of curse against the Moon The luminous Moon shed its light on all directions and became the sole Monarch of the seven worlds owing to His Yogic powers, even after attaining such a store of happiness which is envied by sages — 24-28

Once upon a time the Moon came across Târâ, the wife of Brihaspati whilst she was roaming in the garden On seeing Târâ adorned with flowers, having projected breasts and too delicate to pull a flower even, the Moon was fired with passion He approached that figure of exquisite beauty whose eyes were so lovely, and caught her by the hand Târâ also seeing the enchanting form of the moon was fired with passion and enjoyed herself in his company The Moon enjoyed in her company for a very long time and then took her to his realm The Moon became so enamoured of her that he did not feel sufficiently satisfied even after enjoying himself in her company for such a long time Brihaspati was pining away for Târâ during her absence He came to know all about her through meditation, but could not overcome the Moon by curses, incantations, arms, fire, poison Then Brihaspati burning with passion went to the Moon and very humbly besought him to restore him his wife The Moon who was much attached to Târâ refused to do so — 29-34

Afterwards the moon refused the similar request even of Śiva, Brahmâ, Sâdhyâ Devas, the Mauts, &c., which threw Lord Śiva in a fearful rage and befriending Brihaspati, Vâmadeva armed with His Ajgava bow and followed by His attendants and the Bhûtesvai Siddhâs, started to fight with the Moon At that time Śiva emitting fire from His third eye looked awfully fearful by the reflection of the dazzle cast on Him by the Moon — 35-37

Seeing Siva going out on a fight, His other attendants Ganesa, &c, armed with various weapons, and Kuvera also with His innumerable army followed Him —38

Seeing his foe marching against him, the Moon, scathing with wrath, started along with his vast retinue of Vetalas, Yaksas, Serpents, and a train of a million and a half of chariots, to measure swords with Him —39

When the Moon in his martial array surrounded by his followers—the demons, stars, planets Saturn, Mars, &c, appeared before Siva to meet Him in fight, the seven worlds became terrified and the Earth with the ocean and mountains began to tremble -- 40

Siva approached His adversary armed to the teeth, glittering like fire A dreadful battle ensued between the two armies Various kinds of weapons were used and the onslaught was so terrible that both the armies were destroyed - 41-42

Afterwards the mightiest of the glittering and barbed arms that consume the heaven, the earth and the lower regions were employed which made Siva still more furious and He hurled His formidable Brahmagâstra at the Moon and the latter made use of his fearful Somâstra — 43

By the clash and fall of those two mighty weapons the heaven and the earth shivered with consternation Finding the universe in peril Lord Brahmâ realized the gravity of the situation Somehow or other He put Himself between the two dreadful missiles and saved the Moon along with other Devas from that impending calamity Afterwards He thus addressed the Moon —" You have indulged yourself in this goy onslaught for such an ignoble object on account of which even after ceasing to carry on the warfare, you will become a planet of malignant aspect at the end of the white fortnight Give away the wife of Brihaspati, there is no disgrace in retiring from war which is conducted for the retention of illgotten booty "—44-46

Sûta said that on being thus reprimanded by Brahmâ, the Moon retired from the battle and Brihaspati also returned home completely satisfied in the company of his wife Tâlâ —47

*Note*—May it not mean that the terrestrial Moon went out of its orbit and attracted one of the Moons of the Jupiter and thus disturbed the solar Equilibrium which was brought to harmony again by the birth of Mercury (Budha)? Moon must have had a bigger mass in those pre terrestrial day

*Here ends the twenty-third chapter of dealing with the war between the Devas and Soma for the return of the wife of Brihaspati*

## CHAPTER XXIV

Sûta said —After a year a handsome cherub-boy shining like the twelve suns, wearing yellow raiments and resembling the Moon, was born from the womb of Târâ. He was a master of all the Sâstras and was the author of a treatise on elephants. He was known as Rajputra, the doctor of elephants, and was afterwards named Budha owing to his being the son of the Moon —1-3

He conquered all the powers since the time of his birth. Brahmâ and other deities in company with the sages assembled at the house of Bîhaspati to take part in the ceremony in connection with the birth of the child Budha, and asked Târâ from whom the babe was born —4-5

Hearing that Târâ at first held her peace out of shyness, but on being questioned repeatedly she said bashfully after a long silence that the child was born from the Moon, hearing which the latter accepted him as his son and naming him Budha (Mercury) gave him a region below the Earth —6-7

Then Brahmâ along with the Brahmarisis anointed him as a Planetary Lord and placed him on a par with other planets. Afterwards He vanished from the sight of the Devas then and there, and Budha begot his pious son from his wife llâ —8-9

That progeny performed many arâsvamedha sacrifice by his glory and was universally venerated under the name of Pururavî who afterwards became the sovereign Lord of the seven worlds by practising asceticism on the glorious snowclad peaks of the Hinalayas —10

It was he who annihilated the demons Kesi, &c., and whose wife the celestial nymph Urvasi became on being enamoured of him. It was he who ruled the seven worlds with even-handed justice and sympathy and thus benefited his empire —11-13

Above all that, he attained divine fame and through the grace of Viñnu, India used to offer him a seat by His side. He guarded Dharma, Artha and Kâma dutifully. All the three, i.e., Dharma, Artha and Kâma went to that King to see whether the latter viewed them with equality. The king seeing them come accorded them greetings and offered them argha and pâdya —14-16

*Note* —Dharma, Duty. Artha, Riches. Kâma, Desire. Argha respectful offering to venerable men consisting of Dûrva grass, &c., with or without water. Pâdya, water for washing the feet of revered persons

Then he seated them on three different golden seats and worshipped

them devoutly, but maintained greater devotion for Dharma. At that Kâma and Artha became displeased with the King and Artha cursed him to get destroyed by avarice. Kâma cursed him to the effect that he would turn mad from the separation of Urvâsti in the Kumâravâna on the Gandhamâdana hill. On hearing the curses of the two, Dhârma blessed him with long life and said that he would have his lineage till the sun and the moon exist. He would flourish thousands of years and his progeny would never become extinct. Saying so, they all three disappeared instantly and the king afterwards occupied himself with the affairs of the state — 17-21.

That king used to go to see the god Indra every day. One day seated in his Dakshinâmbarachâtri chariot he was on his way to the realm of Indra, when he accidentally saw the Daitya Kesî carrying away Chitrakekhâ and Urvâsti forcibly — 22-23.

Seeing that the king, anxious for his glory, made use of several weapons, and then ultimately subdued him by Vâyavastra by which he had overpowered Indra. After thus subjugating the demon, the king delivered the rescued Urvâsti to Indra and became his fast friend. Indra thus becoming his friend and getting highly pleased with him, made him most valiant, heroic, illustrious, wealthy, and famous in all the worlds, and that nymph also becoming highly delighted sang the glories of the Purûrava family — 24-27.

The celestial dramatist Bharata had composed a drama, called the svayamvara of Laksmi to which he had asked Menakâ, Rambhâ and Urvâsti to play several parts — 28.

*Note—Syayamvara—self election by the bride of her husband, self marriage.*

Then Urvâsti who was playing the part of Laksmi and was dancing and singing melodiously in unison with the music, saw Purûrava and being fired with passion forgot the part which Bharata had taught her. Bharata in a rage cursed Urvâsti saying that she would become a subtle creeper on the earth for 55 years on account of the separation from Purûrava and the latter would lapse into a Pisâcha — 29-31.

After that Urvâsti made Purûrava her lord and on the conclusion of the effects of curses she brought forth the following eight valiant sons — Ayu, Dridhâyû, Aśvâyu, Dhanâyu, Dhritimân, Vasu, Suchi Vidyâ, and Satâyu. Ayu the eldest of them all became the father of Nahusa, Vipiddha, Sarinâ, Raji, Dambha and Vipâpinâ. These five were all heroes — 32-34.

Raji became the father of one hundred children who came to be known as Râjeya. He devoutly practised penances and was granted a boon by Visnu, on account of which he was powerful enough to conquer the Devas, demons and men — 35-36.

Once upon a time a pitched battle ensued between the Devas and the Asuras for three centuries, in which there was a tremendous fight between Pahlāda and India. The battle was indecisive. At that both the Devas and the Asuras asked Brahmā, as to who was likely to bear away the palm of victory. Brahmā said that the party headed by Rājī would be victorious. Hearing that the Devas eager for their victory requested the King Rājī to take their part in the great war — 37-39

The Asuras also approached him with a similar request, but Rājī had accepted the invitation of the Devas so he refused the proposal of the Asuras. The Devas then entreated him to lead their army and destroy the Asuras. The king then killed those Asuras who could not be conquered even by India — 40-41

Indra was highly delighted at that valourous feat of the king, so much so that he took birth as his son. When Indra was born as his son, the king making over the charge of his vast dominions to him went to devote himself to contemplation and meditation — 42

The other valiant sons of Rājī forcibly dethroned India and usurped all the kingdom and share of sacrifices from him. India thus bereft of his position went and laid himself at the mercy of Brihaspati. He said to Brihaspati that he had been deprived of his realm as well as of the right of a share in sacrifices and appealed to him to advise him to get back his kingdom — 43-44

Brihaspati then restored India to power by performing a rite called Graha Santi or pacifying the malignant influence of the planets — 45-46

Brihaspati then went and deluded the other sons of Rājī with false philosophy and established the Jina religion opposed to the vedas, though himself a knower of the Vedas and India on finding the sons of Brihaspati propagating a religion different from the Vedas based on a show of reason only killed them with his mighty thunderbolt — 47-49

Now hear something about the seven pious sons of Nahusa. They were — Yati, Yayāti, Samyati, Udbhava, Pāchi, Saīyāti, Meghayāti — 50

Yati turned an anchorite since his very early days and Yayāti began to rule his kingdom with piety — 51

Yayāti had two queens, viz., Devayāni the daughter of Sukra and Sarmiṣṭhā the daughter of Vrisaparvata — 52

Yayāti had five sons, Yadu and Tuīvasu from Devayāni, and three sons Druhya, Anu and Puru from Sarmiṣṭhā. Of them Yadu and Puru were the promoters of the dynasty. King Yayāti was the protector of the realm

with truth and heroism and was also the performer of many sacrifices He was a great lover of sacrifices and worshipped the Pitris with great devotion He won over his subjects and protected them dutifully —53-56

Once upon a time the king grew aged and was deprived of the vigour of youth Finding himself infirm, he summoned his sons Yadu, Anu, Tuvasu, Dhanya, and Puru and said to them, "Sons! I wish to become young again and carry on amorous frolics with damsels, you come to my succour"—57-59

Hearing those words of the king, Yadu the eldest son from Devayani said "In what way can I help you with my youth?"—60

Then Yayati asked his sons to exchange their youth with his old age and thus make him fit for carnal enjoyments—61

"Sons! after performing great many sacrifices, I have become old by the curse of Sukha, but my thirst for enjoyments has not yet been quenched You, therefore, give me your vigour, and thus enable me to fulfil my desires"—62-63

Yadu and his three brothers did not agree to the proposal of his father which enraged the latter and he cursed them saying that none from their family would ever succeed to the throne —64

Then the younger Puru said "Sire! give me your old age and take my vigour and satisfy yourself With your permission I will succeed you as an old monarch"—65

Then Yayati transferred his old age to him and taking his vigour became young again —66

Puru began to rule the vast empire with the old age of the king —67

The king not satisfied with his mundane pleasures, even after a period of a thousand years, addressed his son Puru thus—"You are the promoter of my dynasty, by your having a son, I am not heirless, in this world my dynasty will be named Paurava, after you"—68-69

Afterwards Yayati got Puru anointed and then sometime afterwards died —70

Now something will be related about that dynasty of Puru in which Kings Bharata, &c., the promoters of the Bharata dynasty were born Hear, O! Sages, this relation with attention —71

*Here ends the twenty fourth chapter dealing with the history of Yayati of the solar race*

## CHAPTER XXV

The Rishis asked —Why Paurava dynasty became so illustrious and why Yâdhu the eldest of Yayati's sons became the founder of an inferior and poor dynasty Besides this O ! Sûta, relate to us at length other things connected with the history of Yayâti, because his virtue which is the giver of long life is held in high esteem even by the Devas —1-2

Sûta said —Rishis, the same question was put by Satînika who asked Saunaka about the sacred history of Yayâti —3

Satînika asked —“Saunaka, how my ancestor Yayâti who was tenth in descent from Prajâpati married the daughter of Sukra O , Sage ! I am anxious to hear about it I am still more anxious to hear the history of the Paurava kings serially Be gracious enough to relate all that in detail ”—4-5

Saunaka answered —King Yayâti was as handsome as Indra and was blessed both by Sukra and Viñśaparvâna I shall relate to you all about that and will also explain to you how Yayâti the son of Nahuṣa married Devayâni ”—6-7

Once upon a time the Devas and the Asuras fell out with each other for the kingdom of the three worlds Then the Devas anxious to have the best of the contest made Brihaspati their sacrificial priest and similarly the Asuras made Sukra their priest Both the sages—Brihaspati and Sukra—were at daggers drawn with each other Sukra by his lore brought into life all the Asuras that were killed by the devas and they again appeared to face them on the battle field Brihaspati could not similarly restore to life the Devas killed by the Asuras, because he did not possess the same knowledge, at which the Devas were greatly dismayed The Devas getting fearfully alarmed went to the son of Brihaspati named Kacha —8-14

The Devas said —“Kacha, we are at your mercy, do come to our rescue We beseech you to somehow acquire the sañjivani (Resuscitation) knowledge from Sukra, by doing that you will become entitled to receive a share out of the offerings made to us You should try to meet Sukra in the court of Vrisaparvan Who guards the Asuras and not the Devas You alone can propitiate him none else can do it None excepting you can also please Devayâni the daughter of Sukra By pleasing her with tact, shrewdness, and sweetness you will be able to acquire that wonderful sañjivani knowledge ”—15-19

With those words the Devas after worshipping Kacha sent him to

Vriaparvan Kacha, after being worshipped by the Devas went straight to Sukra and after saluting him said —20-21

"O, Preceptor, accept me named Kacha, the grandson of Angirasa and son of Bṛhaspati as your pupil. Preceptor, I shall lead a typical disciple's life, keep me as your pupil for thousands of years"—22-23.

Sukra said —"Kacha, you are welcome and so also your words You are worthy of being adored and so also Bṛhaspati"—24

Saunaka said that afterwards Kacha followed all the injunctions of Sukra and observed the fasts at the proper periods according to the prescribed rules, and began to serve Sukra and Devayāni —25-26

He pleased Devayāni who had attained puberty by singing, dancing playing music and offering of flowers and other presents — 27-28

Devayāni also interested herself in that pious Brāhmaṇa and took every care of him —29

In that way Kacha went on for a period of five hundred years. The Asuras, knowing the piety of Kacha and out of their spite for Bṛhaspati, took him to a seclude place in the forest where he was grazing the cows, and slaughtered him for the sake of their own protection. After that they divided his corpse into many parts and then got it devoured by wolves and jackals. Then the cows bereft of their keeper returned to their abode —30-32

Devayāni seeing the cows returning home without Kacha addressed Sukra thus —

"Sir, you have finished your Agnihotra, the sun has descended below the horizon, these cows are without their keeper, and Kacha is nowhere visible to day. Undoubtedly Kacha has been either killed or captured and if this be the case I say truly I cannot live without him"—33-35

Sukra said —"I am just going to recall Kacha," so he called Kacha back to life by means of his Sañjivani knowledge —36

Then the murdered Kacha came running to Sukra and saluted him from a distance and told him all about his being killed by the Asuras —37

Once again Kacha went reciting the Vedas to fetch flowers for Devayāni from the forest. The demons seeing him gathering flowers in the forest powdered him to death and mingling his remains in the wine gave it to Sukra to drink 38-39

Devayāni on not seeing Kacha return again spoke to her father "He was sent by me to gather flowers for me but he has not returned. Assuredly

he has been killed again and I tell you honestly that I cannot live without him"—40-41

Sukra said —' Devayānti, that son of Brihaspati was restored to life after being murdered, what can I do when he has been killed again? You should not lament. It does not behove persons like you to mourn in this world. You, who through my power of asceticism are being courted by Brahmā, Aśvānikumārs, Indra and other Gods, and Asuras, aye, every one in the universe, should by no means mourn like this. The Brāhmaṇa who has been killed again after being restored to life once is beyond my power to be recalled to life again"—42-44

Devayānti said —"The grandson of Angirasa, the son of Brihaspati, Kacha, who is a scion of such an illustrious family, who is so clever and chaste is very dear to me. Why shall I not weep for him? I shall not take my meals and will set out in quest of him"—46

Sannaka said —Hearing those words of Devayānti, Kāvya Šukra said in his mind that "undoubtedly, the Asurās hate me, because they constantly destroy my disciples. The Asurās perhaps wish to annihilate the Brāhmaṇas. I am worshipped by the Dānavas as their preceptor in vain, for the Bhīmāgnī can destroy Indra even, who then can escape the consequences of the foul deed perpetrated by them in killing the Brāhmaṇa Kacha." Sukra again revived Kacha by means of his sañjivani knowledge. At that Kacha began to speak slowly in the stomach of Šukra. Then Šukra asked him —"By whom killed, thou art inside my stomach, tell me that, O child"—47-49

Kacha said —"Through your grace I remember everything. Under these circumstances, I am not losing my power of asceticism, but I feel a great discomfort. The Asurās after powdering me to death mixed my remains with the wine and made you drink it, but through the glory of your Bhīmānism I am not oppressed by the diabolical freaks of the Asurās"—50-51

Šukra said —"Devayānti, how am I to satisfy you? It seems difficult to save Kacha whilst I am living, because how can he come out without tearing my stomach"—52

Devayānti said —"The double pains that I am undergoing are consuming me like fire, i.e., the destruction of Kacha and the prospect of your not living in the event of his escaping death. I can have no comfort on the death of Kacha nor can I live if you are destroyed"—53.

Šukra said —"O, son of Brihaspati! who is prized by Devayānti,

become a seer and acquire my sañjivani knowledge for I am assured now that you are not Indra in the disguise of Kacha. Because none excepting a Brâhmaṇa can live in my stomach, and Indra being a Kṣatriya would have been digested by me. Therefore learn this science from me. Come out of my stomach as my son, i.e., first acquire the sañjivani knowledge and then come out of my stomach after ripping it open and restore me to life and then satisfy the expectation of this dutiful daughter of mine, after having mastered this science from me, thy guru " 54-56

Saunaka said that the Brâhmaṇa then acquired that knowledge from his preceptor, and, after opening the stomach of Sukra, emerged from it as does the full moon at the approach of night by bursting open through the eastern horizon —57

On finding his preceptor lying dead, Kacha by means of that sañjivani knowledge recalled him to life, and then addressed him thus — "Worthy one, you are bounteous like an ocean and the most generous among the givers of boons. Those who do not show due regard to such a preceptor, are sinners doomed to hell after being wrecked" —58-59

Saunaka said that Sukra (Uśâni), who was deluded through drinking, on getting back his lost disciple, and seeing his graceful form and powers of asceticism, desirous of doing a good turn to the Brâhmaṇas, taking the wine, uttered the following words against drinking and its evil consequences —61

"Henceforth the foolish Brâhmaṇa who drinks wine shall become devoid of Dharma and commit the sin of murdering a Brâhmaṇa and he despised in this world as well as in the next. I have laid down this Law for the Brâhmaṇas in the whole universe, and let the pious Brâhmaṇas know the injunctions of the preceptor and let the Devas and Daityas also listen to these words" —62-63

Saunaka said that the illustrious seer Sukra, after saying that, called all the Dânavas of clouded intellect and said —"Hear, you foolish Dânavas! My disciple, Kacha, after acquiring sañjivani knowledge from me, has become equally powerful like myself, and has become a true Brâhmaṇa and one with Brahma" 64-65

Saunaka said that Kacha, after residing with his preceptor for another century, took leave of him to go to heaven" —66

*Here ends the twenty-fifth chapter relating the story of Kacha  
and Devayâns*

## CHAPTER XXVI

Saunakas said —On the fulfilment of his vow when Kacha after taking leave of Śukra, was about to start for heaven, Devayāni addressed the following words to him —1

Devayāni said —“O, grandson of Athgirā! You shine on account of your wealth, family status, learning, pious conduct, asceticism, and sobriety As the sage Athgirā, of great renown, is respected by my father, so is Brihaspati respected and revered by me Knowing this, O seer! consider what I say unto you You know how I behaved towards you, while you were observing the vow with its restrictions Your learning is now accomplished You should not forsake me, who am devoted to you, therefore accept my hand in marriage according to due rites and Mantras ”—2-5

Kacha said —“Your father, being my preceptor, is just like my own father and commands my respect and honour Similarly you, too, being the daughter of my preceptor and the beloved of Bhīrgava (Śukra), are worthy of being venerated and adored by me Your father, the sage Śukra, is my venerable preceptor, consequently it does not behove you to make any such proposal to me because you are to be honored as a daughter of my guru and therefore should be honored as my guru ” 6-8

Devayāni said —“You are the son of Brihaspati and not of my father, and consequently you are worthy of being respected and honored by me You must recall to your mind my unceasing warm love for you ever since you were killed by the Asuras again and again Is not this a sufficient proof of my unbounded love, attachment and devotion towards you I, therefore, O You, who know the law, your devotee, do not deserve being discarded by you ”—9-11

Kacha said —“O, Pious one! You ask me to enter into an engagement which is so improper You are greater even than the preceptor Be pleased, O moon-faced! I have also lived in the stomach of Śukra where you had also lived, in this way you are lawfully my sister I passed my days in comfort here I have committed no fault, am not angry with you at your illegal proposal Now I take leave of you, wish me a happy journey You may think of me in connection with anything which may be in conformity with Dharma You should always adore my preceptor with constant attention ”—12-16

Devayāni said —“I rescued you, with the idea of making you my husband, when you were killed by the Asuras Now as you are abandoning

me who makes a lawful request, you will not be able to successfully apply this sañjivani knowledge"—17

Kacha said—"Why are you pronouncing such a curse on me? I am going away with the permission of my preceptor and have not accepted you, on account of your being the daughter of my preceptor, and not in consideration of there being any fault in you Devayāni! You ought not to curse me who has only expounded the Law of the Rishis to you [for according to that Law, our marriage would be illegal] Because you have cursed me, you will never be able to gain your desire No son of a Rishi will ever accept you as his wife My sañjivani knowledge will, of course, not be fruitful to me on account of your curse, but it will most decidedly bear fruit to one to whom I shall impart it"—18-21

Saunaka said—Kacha, after thus addressing Devayāni, instantly went to heaven, where Indra and other Devas finding him returned said to him—

"Kicha! You have done a great deed for our sake, consequently your fame will never diminish, it will diffuse all round"—22-24

*Here ends the twenty-sixth chapter describing the curses of Devayāni and Kacha*

### CHAPTER XXVII

Saunaka said—The Devas, on seeing Kacha back with sañjivani knowledge, accorded him a most cordial welcome, and after acquiring that supreme knowledge from him, became highly satisfied, and then having approached India, said thus—"To-day is the time to show valor, kill thy enemies, O Purandara" Accepting the request of the Devas, the Maghavan, along with them, set out on his mission and, in the way, He came across a group of women in the forest He saw those damsels bathing and enjoying themselves, as they do in the pleasure-garden of Kuvera Then India, in the form of a gust of wind, blew away and mixed up their garments—1-4.

At that, all the maidens, hastily coming out of water, dressed themselves with the clothes as they found them In that hury-scurry, Sarmistha, the daughter of Vrisaparvan put on the clothes of Devayāni through oversight, at which, there ensued a quarrel between the two—Sarmistha and Devayāni—5 6

Devayāni, in a fit of rage, said "O daughter of an Asura! You being my father's disciple, how dare you put on my garments You will never prosper on account of your ignorance of laws of good conduct"—7

Sarmiṣṭha said "Your father sits and sleeps at the command of my father, he praises him and asks and answers questions put by my father from his throne, while your father sits humbly on a lower seat. You are the daughter of a father who always begs, sings panegyrics and receives gifts from my father, whilst I am the daughter of one who is always praised, is the giver of gifts, but accept no gifts from any one. You beggar! I do not care a straw for you. How dare you unarmed, show your wrath to me who is armed?"—8-11

Śaunaka said —Saying so, Sarmiṣṭha put on her garments. Afterwards she threw the astonished and bewildered Devayāṇī into a well and then returned to her palace —12

Thus Śarmiṣṭhā, after committing such a sinful act and taking Devayāṇī to be killed, and not waiting for her, returned home full of wrath —13

After that, Yayāti, the son of Nahusa, getting tired and thirsty in course of his shoot, went to drink water at the same well. As soon as that thirsty monarch peeped into the well, he saw a beauty, gleaming like the flame of fire, inside it. On seeing that girl of Divine form and consoling her, that best of kings, said in words full of sweetness —' O young beauty, adorned with ornaments, how and for what reason, have you fallen into this well covered with grass? Whose daughter are you? Tell me all this"—14-18

Devayāṇī replied "I am the daughter of that Śukra who, through his science, restores the Daityas to life, when they are killed by the Gods. You do not know me full well King! Catch hold of my right hand with its fingers decked with copper coloured nails and pull me out of this well, I know you are of noble birth. I know you to be self-controlled, strong, and illustrious, therefore I know you are capable of delivering me from this well"—19-21

Śaunaka said —King Yayāti, knowing her to be of the Brāhmaṇa caste and also a woman, caught hold of her right hand, and by his force pulled her out of the well. After that, the king saluted and welcomed Devayāṇī and returned to his metropolis —22-23

Devayāṇī, thus abused and full of sorrow, commanded her maid, Ghurnikā, who had returned in search of her, thus —"go quickly, O Ghurnikā, and acquaint my father with all that has happened, and also tell him that I have made up my mind not to enter the King Vṛiṣaparvan's city"—24-25

Saunaka said — Ghurukā instantly repaired to the palace of the Asura and seeing the high priest Sukra there, said to him trembling and confusedly —

" Sage ! Šarmiṣṭhā, the daughter of King Vṛisaparvan, has injured Devayāṇī " — 26-27

Sukra on getting the ill tidings of her daughter being injured at the hands of Šarmiṣṭhā, was overwhelmed with grief and immediately started in quest of Devayāṇī in the forest — 28

On meeting Devayāṇī face to face in that forest, Sukra embraced her with open arms and sorrowfully said " Every being reaps the harvest of pain and pleasure in this world, according to his actions, consequently, I look upon this affair, as Šarmiṣṭhā taking revenge upon you for some evil deed of yours " — 29-30

Devayāṇī said " There may or may not have been a revenge, but listen to what the daughter of Vṛisaparvan said — 31

Is it true, that I am merely a singer in the palace of the Daityas, for Šarmiṣṭhā, the daughter of Vṛisaparvan tells me so She, with harsh and sharp words and eyes red with anger, spoke — ' I am the daughter of a king, who is praised by thy father and who gives gifts to him, but accepts nothing from any body and whilst thou art the daughter of him who sings the praises of my father and begs and accepts gifts from him ' Thus said Šarmiṣṭhā, the daughter Vṛisaparvan, with eyes red with anger and face flushed with pride Father, I then said to Šarmiṣṭhā that if I were the daughter of a panegyrist, and a beggar, I would also please her similarly " — 31-35

Sukra said, " O child ! thou art not the daughter of a panegyrist or of a beggar, on the other hand, thou art the daughter of one who is always praised by others, O Devayāṇī King Vṛisaparvan knows that my pure, matchless and inconceivable spirituality is my power, so also know Indra and King Yayāti — 36-37

*Here ends the twenty-seventh chapter describing the history of King Yayāti*

### CHAPTER XXVIII

Sukra said — " Devayāṇī ! hear, one who calmly and patiently endures the hard speech of others, conquers all One, who curbs his rising anger, like a fiery steed, is called the real driver by the wise, and not he who merely holds the reins One who conquers another's arising anger

by not getting angry himself, conquers the universe. Know this, O Devayâni! One who throws aside the outbursting of his wrath by forgiveness, as a serpent discards its worn out skin, is said to be truly a man. One who hankers after virtue, always shows forbearance to all, and does not cause pain to others even after suffering great pain, is the receptacle of high and sublime merits. Between the one who performs many Aśvamedha sacrifices each month for hundreds of years, and the other who does not get angry with any one, the latter is decidedly superior. As in childhood, boys and girls, through their folly become enemies, not do so the sensible, and after considering their power and the weakness of their foes, never entertain any feeling of enmity" —1-7

Devayâni said — "Father! In spite of my girlhood, I know the causes and consequences of actions in the matter of anger, reproof and relative strength or weakness of acts. A sensible man should not tolerate an unbecoming action of his disciple. I have therefore no desire to live among people whose conscience is loaded with vice. A person desirous of his welfare and prosperity should not live among those vicious men who are not well spoken of, by men of character and position. People who are considered high, by men of character and position, are worthy of company. Consequently, the harsh words of Vriçaparvan's daughter are rubbing against my mind like Añani (the two pieces of wood used in kindling the sacred fire). Father! I do not think there is anything baser in the world than the adoration of an enemy, howsoever majestic he may be, by one who is in the humbler walk of life and is devoid of riches" —8-13

*Here ends the tenth-eighth chapter describing the history of the King Yayati and the dialogue of Devayâni and Śukra*

### CHAPTER XXIX

Saunaka said — On hearing those words of Devayâni, Sukra the best of the Bhṛigus also got angry and going to the King Vriçaparvan who was sitting on his throne spoke to him without caring for the consequences.

"King! a sinful act does not instantly fructify, but is like a cow which does not give birth at once after (conception). A sin is sure to produce its fruit, just like a heavy meal to produce colic in the stomach, not at once but after sometime. In process of time it entirely roots out the sinner. He who overlooks his own faults or those of his sons, and grandsons, etc., loses his Trivarga, the three objects of worldly existence, viz., Artha (riches or worldly prosperity), Dharma (religion), Kâma

(enjoyments) You are sure to reap the fruit of your sin of killing the grandson of Aṅgirasa and son of Br̥haspati, and then causing his remains to be deposited in my stomach by mixing them with my wine. King! on account of your having killed my disciple, who was sinless, chaste, submissive and unworthy of being slain, as well as for the injury done to my daughter, I leave you along with your kinsmen. I do not consider it proper to stay in your empire any more. As you do not heed the actions of your vicious and proud daughter, I consider you from today a Daitya who talks much but does not think of keeping his promises, thou thinkest me, O Daitya! censurable and a talker of falsehoods"—1-6

Vṛiṣaparvan said —“ Bhārgava! I do not consider you as censurable or a talker of falsehood because I am so well aware of your truth and asceticism, therefore be pleased with me. Excepting you, none can protect me, and if you are going to leave me today, I will drown myself in the ocean, for there is no other refuge for me”—7-9

Sukra said —“ You may either drown yourself in the ocean or roam about in the world, my daughter is very dear to me, and I cannot make her feel hurt. You should please Devayāṇī. I shall settle down with her wherever she goes. If you will please her, I shall guard you as Br̥haspati does Indra and other Devas”—10-11

Vṛiṣaparvan said —“ Bhārgava! you are the master of elephants, chariots, horses and all the riches of the Asuras, and, similarly, you are the master of all my wealth and belongings”—12

Sukra said —“ King of Asuras! I will consider myself the master of the Daityas then only when you please Devayāṇī and not otherwise”—13

Saunaka said —Hearing that, Sukra went to Devayāṇī along with Vṛiṣaparvana and said to her —“ Now thy words are realized, for I am considered as lord of all”—14

Devayāṇī said —“ If, O Father! thou art the lord of the king's wealth then I will believe it if the king himself says so to me”—15

Vṛiṣaparvan said —“ Devayāṇī! I shall fulfil your desires, however difficult they may be”—16

Devayāṇī said —“ When you promise to fulfil my desires, I wish Sarmiṣṭha to be my maid, with a thousand damsels, and she should go with me wherever my father may please to marry me”—17

Vṛiṣaparvan said —“ O Nurse, get up, go and bring Sarmiṣṭha at once in my presence. I shall do exactly as Devayāṇī desires”—18

**Saunaka** said —On being thus commanded by the king, the nurse at once went to Śarmiṣṭhā and told her O Śarmiṣṭhā! get up and save your kinsmen from impending calamity , because incited by his daughter, Śukra is forsaking his disciples and the fulfilment of Devayāni's desires rests on you You have become the maid of Devayāni."—19-20

**Sarmiṣṭhā** said —"I shall do what she wants, let Śukra not go away in a fit of anger nor Devayāni get offended at what I have done"—21

**Saunaka** said —Then at the behest of her father Śarmiṣṭhā in a palanquin went to Devayāni along with a thousand maids , and said, "Devayāni! I have come with a thousand maids to serve you and shall accompany you wherever you go, after being married by your father"—22-23

**Devayāni** said —"I am the daughter of a panegyrist, one who begs and receives, how then do you, who are the daughter of one praised, serve me as my maid?" — 24

**Śarmiṣṭhā** said —"It is my bounden duty to do that which may bring relief to my distressed kinsmen , consequently I shall follow you as your maid, and will also accompany you after your marriage wherever your father may wed you"—25

**Saunaka** said —"After the daughter of Viṣaparvan made up her mind to serve Devayāni as her maid, the latter said to her father —

"Father ! I am satisfied Indeed, the power of thy knowledge and wisdom is infallible and fruitful I shall now enter the city"—26-27

Hearing those words of his daughter, Śukra, worshipped by the Dānavas, cheerfully entered the town —28

*Here ends the twenty-ninth chapter in the history of Yayāti dealing with the pacification of Devayāni*

#### CHAPTER XXX

**Saunaka** said —O king ! Long after that, Devayāni again went to amuse herself in the same forest in the company of Śarmiṣṭhā and a thousand maids Whilst she, along with her companions was thus amusing herself there by drinking wine and eating various victuals and fruits, King Yayāti, also chanced to visit the same forest with the object of enjoying a shoot, and, feeling thirsty whilst he was in search of water, he saw Devayāni and Śarmiṣṭhā along with other women folk drinking . Among them he marked Devayāni, the beautiful, who, wearing lovely ornaments, was sitting, attended by Sarmiṣṭhā and other maids Then

King Yayāti said "Two of you are charming beauties horizoned by two thousand women I request you to please tell me your names and clan"—1-8

Devayānī replied—"King! Hear what I say I am the daughter of the Sage Śukra who is preceptor of the Asuras and she is my maid-in-chief, Sarmiṣṭhā, the daughter of Vṛisaparvan, the mighty king of the Dānavas She always accompanies me wherever I go"—9-10

Yayāti, who was astonished to hear that, enquired how that daughter of the king of the Asuras came to be her maid-in-chief—11

Devayānī said—"Do not be astonished All this has been ordained by Brahmā You look like a king from your bearing and sweet and dignified speech. Tell me your name and parentage"—12-13

Yayāti said—"I have studied all the Vedas after leading a student's life, and I am King Yayāti, the son of King Nahuṣa"—14

Devayānī said—"King! What for have you come here—to drink water or to enjoy a shoot?"—15

Yayāti said—"In course of my shoot I have happened to come to this spot to satisfy my thirst and am ready to obey your commands"—16

Devayānī said—"Friend! I am at your disposal with Sarmiṣṭhā and my retinue of maids, be my lord"—17

Yayāti said—"Lady! You are the daughter of Śukra, who is a Brāhmaṇa, and consequently you cannot be wedded by a Kṣatriya sovereign"—18

Devayānī said—"King! the race of the Kṣatriyas has been created by Brahmā and is supported by him O, son of Nahuṣa! you are a sage, and also the son of a sage, by all means marry me"—19

Yayāti said—"O, Lady! Though all the four castes have sprung from one and the same body of Brahmā, yet their duties and rules of life are entirely different from one another, and a Brāhmaṇa is superior to all"—20

Devayānī said—"O, son of Nahuṣa! this hand of mine has not been touched by any other person and you have once grasped it I therefore choose you to be my partner in life Who else can take my hand? You took me by the hand, because you are the son of a sage or because you are a sage yourself"—21-22

Yayāti said—"The sages of hoary lore have said that a Brāhmaṇa is more formidable than the mouth of an angry venomous serpent and the raging fire"—23.

Devayānī said —“O, Blessed one! How do you describe a Brāhmaṇa to be more formidable than an angry venomous snake and the raging fire?”—24

Yayāti said —“By the bite of a poisonous serpent and by the blow of a weapon only one life is lost, but by the anger of a Brāhmaṇa the whole realm and country is devastated, this is my reason for having described a Brāhmaṇa as such, and I therefore cannot accept you in marriage without your father's consent”—25-26

Devayānī said —“King! When my father gives me away to you of his own accord, you will then accept me as yours. You cannot beg, I know, and consequently I have accepted you as my lord, now there is no question of receiving on your part”—27

Saunaka said —After that, the nurse, deputed by Devayānī, went and explained all that to Śukra. Śukra on hearing that went to the king, and both of them were pleased to meet each other—28-29

The king, seeing Śukra, saluted him with folded hands, and the latter also spoke to him mildly and sweetly—30

Devayānī said to her father that the King Yayāti had once grasped her hand, when she was in great difficulty and he should, therefore, dedicate her to him, and that she would marry no one excepting him—31

Śukra then said to Yayāti, that he had been chosen by her daughter before, whom he should accept as his queen after being willingly made over to him by her father—32

Yayāti said —“Bhārgava! By such deeds, I fear, I will commit a sin, I therefore beseech you to partly off the sin of creating a confusion of castes by such intermarriage”—33

Śukra Said —“I shall free you from all sins. Accept this gift chosen by her. You will become laudable by this marriage, I free you from the future sin, marry this amiable Devayānī, according to law and have every enjoyment in her company, this Sarinisthā, the daughter of Vṛiṣaparvan, will attend on you, and you should never invite her to your bed”—34-36

Saunaka said —On hearing those words of the Seer Śukra that king circumambulated the latter, and with his permission entered his city with great rejoicings—37

*Here ends the thirtieth chapter describing the marriage of Yayāti with Devayānī*

## CHAPTER XXXI

Saunaka said —Yayāti entered his capital, which was as beautiful as the city of India. He then ushered Devayānī into his palace and, according to the advice of the queen, located Sarmisthā, the daughter of King Viśaparvan, in a separate house in Aśokavana. Thus Sarmisthā, along with her retinue of a thousand maids, was separated after being provided with clothes, provisions, and ornaments. Then that son of King Nahusa enjoyed himself like the Devas, in the company of Devayānī, for a great number of years. In the fullness of time Devayānī conceived, and after ten months gave birth to a child --1-5.

After a thousand years, Sarmisthā, the daughter of Viśaparvan, when she was in her full bloom of youth, felt very sad on not having a husband. She said in her mind “What will be meet for me to do? How am I to get happiness? Devayānī has given birth to a son, but my youth is declining for nothing. I will also make the king my husband, as she has done. I will request the king to give me a similar fruit in the shape of a son.” With these thoughts, she longed to see the king privately. Now, at that time the King, coming out at pleasure, was astonished to meet Sarmisthā, outside the Aśokavana. Sarmisthā meeting the king in private, addressed him with folded hands --

“King! Even Soma, Indra, Varuna and the wind are incapable of seeing the women in your palace. You know me to be a beauty, full of modesty and coming of good parents, I beseech you to enjoy my company” —6-13

Yayāti replied —“I know all thy qualifications. I know thou art the chaste daughter of the valiant king of the Daityas. Thou art modest, but I cannot look at thee with any feeling of lust, because at the time of Devayānī’s marriage Sukra enjoined on me not to invite thee to my bed” —14-15

Sarmisthā said —“King! there is no sin in speaking untruth at the time of indulging in sexual pleasures, on the occasion of marriage, when life is in danger, wealth is at stake, and in joke. Lying on these five occasions is venal. It is only a sin to speak an untruth at the time of being summoned as a witness, or when one is entrusted to dispose of a thing, or when one is asked his advice on any point” —16-17

Yayāti said —“A king, being the authority for his people, should abstain from untruth, even at the time of danger” —18

Sarmisthā said —“One’s own husband and the husband of her com-

panion are equal , and as you are the lord of my companion, you must also take me as wedded to you "—19

**Yayāti** said —“One should give away according to one's means to one's supplicants , and it is also my vow not to have any matrimonial connections with you , now you yourself tell me what am I to do of these two things ”—20

**Sarmiṣṭhā** said —“King ! Save me from immorality by your righteousness I shall lead the life of highest virtue after getting a child through you King ! a woman, a servant and a son—all these three have been said to be poor , for the wealth acquired by them belongs to their master I also take my meals with Devayāṇī and live as a maid, dependant on her , therefore receive me also I am worthy of your support ”—21-23

**Saunaka** said —Hearing those words of **Sarmiṣṭhā**, the king accepted her and guarded her virtue They then enjoyed themselves in each other's company and were immensely pleased Through that conjunction, the daughter of Vṛisaparvan, conceived and gave birth to illustrious sons gleaming with the radiance of the sun —24-27

*Here ends the thirty-first chapter describing the secret marriage of  
Yayāti with Sarmiṣṭha*

### CHAPTER XXXII

**Saunaka** said —On hearing the news of **Sarmiṣṭhā** giving birth to a child, Devayāṇī became deeply afflicted and went and asked her, why she committed that sin by being a slave to Cupid —1-2

**Sarmiṣṭhā** said —“A seer, well-versed in the Vedas, came to me whom I pleased, taking him as my lord , and this son has been born of him O blessed one ! I have not basefully been a slave to passions This child has been born of a Rishi , believe this without doubt ”—3-4.

**Devayāṇī** said —“**Sarmiṣṭhā** ! If this is true, I am no more angry with you, but how can it be made certain that you have got this progeny from a high class Brāhmaṇa ? I wish to know his clan and lineage ”—5-6

**Sarmiṣṭhā** said —“Lady ! I felt myself overpowered by his glory He was so valiant and illustrious, I could not therefore ask him anything ”—7

Saunaka said — After that mutual conversation, Devayāṇī believed what Sarmiṣṭhā told her, and then she returned to her mansion —8

Then King Yayāti begot two sons—Yadu and Turvasu—as glorious as Indra and Visu, from Devayāṇī —9

Druhya, Anu and Puru, those three sons were born from Sarmiṣṭhā. After that, Devayāṇī went with King Yayāti to the Harit forest —10-11

There she saw the three boys of divine elegance, as beautiful as Sanat Kumāras, playing, at which she amazingly said —“King! whose sons these boys of divine lusture, and bearing such a close affinity to you are?”—12-13

After putting that question to the king, she then approached the boys and asked them to tell her frankly and sincerely whose sons they were and what was their clan. The boys in reply to her query pointed with their finger to Yayāti as their father and Sarmiṣṭhā as their mother. Saunaka said, that, on ascertaining that from the boys, she, along with the boys, hurried back to the king. The king, afraid of the presence of Devayāṇī, did not fondle those boys, as usual, at which they went weeping to Sarmiṣṭhā —14-17

Devayāṇī, knowing them to be the sons of the king, went and spoke to Sarmiṣṭhā —“You liar! why do you incur my displeasure, in spite of being my dependent? Do you not fear me, and dare you continue to follow your Asurik ways?”—18-19

Sarmiṣṭhā said —“O Sweet smiling lady! What I told you before about the Rish is truth and nothing but truth. I am leading a life, as dictated by religion and morality. Why should then I be afraid of you? O Beautiful one! the moment you made this king your husband, he became my lord as well, on account of his being the husband of my companion. You are honored by me on account of being a Brāhmaṇī and my elder in age, and consequently this Rājarṣi, who is your husband, is worthy of being shown more honor and respect by me. Do you not know it?”—20-22

Saunaka said — On hearing those words of Sarmiṣṭhā, Devayāṇī said to the king that she would no longer stay with him, because he had done what was extremely hateful to her. Saying that, she went to her father, the sage Śukra, with her eyes full of tears —23-24

The king also followed her and did his best to pacify her, but Devayāṇī, whose eyes were red with anger, did not heed him, and shedding tears and mumbling something to the king, she hastened to her father. The king also followed her there —25-26

After taking a little pause, Devayâni saluted her father and Yayâti also showed his reverence to the sage — 27

Then Devayâni said — “Father! righteousness has been conquered by unrighteousness, because this king has begotten three sons from Sarmisthâ, that discarded daughter of Viśaparvan, whilst he has begotten only two from my unfortunate self Father! this king is called righteous, but he is the transgressor of the bounds of virtue” — 28-30

Sukra said — “King! as you have committed a sin, in spite of your being virtuous, you will be visited soon with invincible old age” — 31

Yayâti said — “O Brâhman! One who does not satisfy the desire of a damsel, after the termination of her menstruation, commits the sin of slaying a Brâhmaṇa, and one who does not grant the desire of a damsel, even on her making such a request, he is said to commit a sin equal to the sin of slaughtering a great Brâhmaṇa O Preceptor! for fear of such sins, I tremblingly offered myself to Sarmisthâ” — 32-34

Sukra said — “King! you depend on me, you ought to have taken my advice, therefore, your doing such an act without my permission, even on the score of righteousness, is nothing short of theft” — 35

Saunaka said — Then the King Yayâti, after being thus cursed by the wrathful sage Sukra, instantly turned old — 36

Yayâti then said to the sage that he had not had enough of enjoyment with the young Devayani therefore he might mercifully ward off his old age from him — 37

Sukra said — “King! My words cannot prove false You are therefore bound to be old, but you can exchange it with the youth of some young man” — 38

Yayâti said — “Brâhmaṇan! Be pleased to grant this favour that one who exchanges his youth with my old age will inherit my kingdom and will get fame and honor” — 39

Sukra said — “By my favour, O King! You will exchange your old age with youth without committing any sin, and any of your sons, willingly giving you his youth in exchange for your old age, will certainly be blessed with many children and will be illustrious and long-lived” — 40-41

*Here ends the thirty-second chapter dealing with the curse of Sukra on Yayâti*

## CHAPTER XXXIII

Saunaka said — On being visited with old age, King Yayāti went to his capital and said to his eldest son, Yadu, that owing to the curse of Śukra he had become old, though he had not had ample satisfaction of his desires in his youth, that he might therefore exchange his youth with his old age and thus enable him to satisfy his cravings, and that after a thousand years he would return his youth to him and take back his old age — 1-4

Yadu refused to exchange his youth with the old age of the king, who, on account of it, looked lean, decrepit and furrowed and incapable of indulging in enjoyments, and said that the king had other sons dearer than him to whom he might transfer his old age — 5-7

At that Yayāti got vexed and cursed Yadu that, as he being his son, refused to give him his youth, his sons would be wicked like his maternal uncle, and afterwards he made a similar request to his son Turvasu, making the same promise to him of restoring back to him his youth after a thousand years. Turvasu also refused to accept the proposal of the king, saying that he would not accept the old age which made one devoid of potency, power, enjoyment, beauty, intellect and honour — 8-11

Yayāti cursed him for his refusing to accommodate his father with his youth, and said that his clan would become extinct, and that he would be the king of the vilest of the Mlechchha races who would be thieves, the doers of unnatural deeds, flesh-eaters, indulging in immoralities with the wife of their preceptor and lower animals — 12-14

After cursing them thus, he asked his son, Druhya, from Śarmiṣṭhā, to accede to his wishes on the same condition of getting back his youth after one thousand years. Druhya also refused to do that, and said that he did not feel inclined to put himself in the old age in which he would be incapable of enjoying his kingdom, chariot drive, riding, the company of women and feeling love. Yayāti cursed him, and said that in consequence of his refusal to meet with his wishes, inspite of his being his son, he would never enjoy the things he wished for. Thou and thy children will go to that place where there will be no enjoyment of kingdom, nor enjoyment of beauty and youth — 15-20

The king then put the same proposition before his son, Anu, who also, like his other brothers, discarded it, saying that he could not force the old age upon him, in course, of which a man, like an infant, takes his meals in spite of his remaining defiled all the time, and is not able to

perform a sacrifice at any moment. The king pronounced a curse on him, as well, saying, that being his son, he did not accede to his proposal and that he would, also sooner or later, be visited with the old age, which he decried and his progeny, born in his youth, would not survive —21-24.

Yayâti then put the same proposal to his son, Puru, and said that by carrying it out he would be the dearest of all his sons. He had been visited with that untimely and formidable old age, and had not been able to satisfy his desires. He would therefore restore him his bloom of youth after ten centuries —25-27

Hearing that, Puru said that he would do exactly what his father wished and asked him to do. Let him satisfy all his cravings, and that he would, most willingly, accept his old age and would do what appeared to him best —28-30

*Note — This chapter has not been translated literally*

*Here ends the thirty-third chapter dealing with the acceptance by Puru of the old age of Yayati*

#### CHAPTER XXXIV

Saunaka said —On hearing those words of the prince Puru, king Yayâti, after mentally reciting the name of Sukra, transferred his old age to his son, and then king Yayâti, the son of Nahusa, cheerfully indulged himself in the enjoyment of pleasures. He, however, did not do that at the sacrifice of his royal duties, for, according to the times, with earnestness, and in conjunction with the prescribed rules, he performed the libations to the Deities, and the manes of the ancestors, was regular in the performance of Sâradha and sacrifices, was merciful to the poor and satisfied the wishes of the Brâhmaṇas, entertained his guests by ministering to them comforts and supported the Vârsyas by protecting them, was not cruel to the Sudras and kept thieves down by inflicting proper punishment on them. In that way, the king was alert in his duties and was thus supplied all the wants of his subjects, like the God Indra. That king, valiant like the lion, never deviating from the path of virtue and continuing his pursuits of enjoyment, led a life of sublime comfort and happiness —1-7

On getting satisfied, after enjoying himself for a thousand years, he recalled to his mind the bygone days, and, finding that his cherished days were complete, he spoke to his son, the prince Puru —

"Son! a man never feels satisfied with pleasures, the lust for

pleasures waxes by daily indulgence, as the fire flames all the more by ghee being poured into it I have become sober, on the consideration that the mundane boons in the form of grain, gold, domestic animals, (horses, cattle, etc) women, are not meant for any single individual Son ! I have had enough of pleasures according to my potency by acquiring your vigour of youth , I am consequently very much pleased with you, now you take back your bloom of youth from me and also receive charge of this vast realm You are my dearest son "—8-13

**Saunaka** —After that, king Yayâti turned old, and Puru became young again —14

Then the king appointed a day for Puru being anointed and proclaimed king, when the Brâhmaṇas and others assembled, said —

" King ! how do you confer this vast kingdom on Puru, overlooking prince Yadu, who is the grandson of Sukra and the eldest son from the queen Devayâni ! Yadu is your eldest son, next to him is Turvasu, your third son is Druhya from the Queen Sarmistha, younger to him is Anu, whilst Puru is the youngest of all How then are you making Puru a king, overlooking the claims of his elder brothers ? O king ! you should not forsake justice "—15-18

**Yayâti** —' Brâhmaṇas and others ! Hearken My eldest son did not obey my commands I therefore do not give him the empire , for a disobedient son ought not to be recognised This is what the great men have said , and Turvasu, Druhya and Anu also disobeyed me Puru stood firm and obeyed my behests , therefore, he alone is entitled to my monarchy It is he who exchanged his full flourish of youth with my infirmity, and it is through him that I have fulfilled all my desires The sage Sukra had also blessed that one who would carry out my orders would be the Emperor For these reasons, you should all consider Puru to be fit for the Empire "—19-25

Then the Commons (Prâkṛiti) all assembled there cried out in a chorus " Indeed, the son, endowed with all the good qualities and who obeys the mandates of his parents, deserves being proclaimed a sovereign, in spite of his being the youngest O king ! Puru, who has done you a good turn, appropriately deserves the kingdom and the sage Sukra has also said so therefore nothing need now be said about this "—26-27.

**Saunaka** —When the assemblage pronounced that verdict, the king seated the prince Puru on the throne, after which he quitted the metropolis and went to the forest in company of many Brâhmaṇas and ascetics.—28-29

Yadu begot Yadavas, Turvasu begot Yavanas, Druhya begot Bhojas and Apu became the father of the Mlechchhas —30

Puru became the founder of the Paurava dynasty in which you are born a king, which afterwards came to be known as the Kuru clan and in which the kingdom is to last for one-thousand years —31

*Here ends the thirty-four chapter of the Purâna dealing with the coronation of Puru*

### CHAPTER XXXV

**Saunaka** — Thus King Yayâti, making over his Empire to his son, Puru, turned an anchorite, and living on fruits, passed a number of days in that forest and afterwards went to heaven, where he began to pass his days in happiness. Sometime after, Indra hurled him to the earth, but he managed to gain his footing on the celestial soil and again rose to heaven owing to his being in touch with the Kings, Astaka, &c. It is said that Yayâti returned to heaven from the firmament in company of the Kings Astaka, Sibi Vasumat and Pratardana —1·5

**Satânika** — "Sage ! tell us in detail how Yayâti was hurled down to the earth and how he again went to heaven. King Yayâti was powerful like Indra, radiant like the Sun, and was the promoter of the Kuru clan. O Sage ! I am eager to hear the story of his celestial and mundane glory" —6·9

**Saunaka** — "Hear you all the sacred history of Yayâti which is the dispeller of all sins. Hear it with attention, I am going to relate it to you" —10

King Yayâti, after putting his son on the throne, went to the forest as an anchorite, in other words, he made over his vast dominions to Puru and put his other sons, Yadu, &c., to discharge the various offices of the state, after doing which he passed a great number of days in the forest, living on fruits and herbs. By subduing his mind and conquering his anger he regularly performed agnihotra and offered libations to the Deities and the manes of ancestors, according to the rules prescribed for anchorites. He entertained his guests by offering them the jungle fruits and ate what he could get by picking up gleanings of harvest (Siloñchha-vritti). Thus he passed a thousand years. Then he lived only on water for three years and kept up his vow of silence. Afterwards he warmed himself with the

heat of fire around him, and for six months he practised penance by standing on one leg only. The glory of the king's asceticism went up to heaven from the earth —11-17

*Here ends the thirty-fifth chapter, dealing with the forest life of Yayâti*

### CHAPTER XXXVI

**Saunaka** —That king, on reaching heaven, was venerated by Sâdhyas, Marutganâs, Vasus and the Devas. Afterwards, on account of his virtue, he went to Brahmaloka, where he resided for a long number of years. Once upon a time that sacred King Yayâti chanced to go to the region of Indra, when the latter asked him —1-3

Indra —“King! tell me plainly what you said to your son, Puru (who taking your old age roamed about the world), at the time of his coronation?”—4

**Yayâti** —“After making over charge of my realm, with the approval and advice of my ministers, and the people (Prakriti) to Puru, I told him ‘You will be the sovereign of the country lying between the Ganges and the Yamunâ. Your other brothers will be under you and ruling over the lands bordering on your kingdom.’ At the same time, the following piece of advice was also given to him —“Man devoid of anger is superior to one full of it, man with forbearance is superior to one who is bereft of it, as man is superior to non-human beings, so a learned man is superior to an illiterate fool. One who shows forgiveness to another who abuses him in anger, consumes that angry being, and gets all his virtue. One should not utter such a harsh word as may cause pain to another. One should not accept anything from a low caste man. One should not use a speech that would grieve others. A harsh speaker, whose words pierce others like nails, should be considered a low creature, who goes to hell. A man should always win the admiration of high class people, and should always be defended by them at his back, should bear their criticism, obey their advice, and lead a good life. Harsh words penetrate a man like arrows and cause grief, they should therefore be avoided by sensible men. In the three worlds there is nothing superior to friendship, charity and sweet speech, consequently one should always be gentle in his speech and should show obedience to high class men and not curse any one”—5-13

*Here ends the thirty-sixth chapter, dealing with the advice given by Yayâti to his son Puru at the latter's coronation*

## CHAPTER XXXVII

Indra —“ King ! I ask you to please tell me, how you practised austeries after renouncing your kingdom and repairing to the forest as an anchorite ”—1

Yayâti —“ I do not consider the austerties of the Devas, men, Gandharvas and Mahârisis as equal to my own ”—2

Indra —“ King ! you do not know the glory of high souls and you decry other beings who are as good, or, better, than you , consequently, you are not fit to reside in these regions, because by this sin, you have lost your virtue and the privilege of living here . You must fall to-day, O King ”—3

Yayâti —Indra ! If I have lost my virtue and the privilege of living here by running down the glory of the Devas, Risis, Gandharvas, and men, I wish to fall from this Heaven, among good people —4

Indra —“ You will fall now among good people, where you will regain your lost position . From this experience, you should no more despise those who are your equal or better than you ”—5

Saunaka —After that, Yayâti was thrown from the heaven Aṣṭaka, residing in the central region and knower of the highest virtue, seeing him fall, said —

Aṣṭaka —“ O, young soul, beautiful like Indra shining like fire, and brilliant like the sun among the planets ! Who are you ? O, being, shining like the fire and the sun and falling from the path of the sun, on seeing you going down, we are confused and are in doubt whether the time has not come for all of us to fall . We have come to make enquiries about you, but we are bewildered by your power . You do not seem to heed us and make enquiries about us , consequently, we make ourselves bold to ask you the reason of your fall from the heavens . O Soul, beautiful like Indra, cast away your fears, grief and delusion . Nobody can view you with disrespect when you are standing face to face with high souls . The good ones are empowered to support the fallen . Here are the good, the lord of the moveable and the immoveable creations, and you are now in this holy company . Fire is lord in imparting heat, the Earth is lord with regard to those things which fecundate, the Sun is lord of all objects that shine, so a guest is lord to all good men ”—6-13

*Here ends the thirty-seventh chapter, describing the fall of Yayâti  
and his meeting with Aṣṭaka*

## CHAPTER XXXVIII

**Yayāti**—“I am King Yayāti, son of Nahusa and father of Puru  
India has hurled me down from the world of Sūras and Siddhās for despising all creatures, and, now devoid of virtue, I am falling. I do not salute you, for I am your senior in age, because among the twice-born, one who is greater in learning, or, asceticism or senior in age, is a respected”—1-2

**Aṣṭaka**—“King! You say you are senior in age which is also a degree of superiority, but among the twice-born, one, who is greater in wisdom and asceticism, is alone reckoned superior, and not one who is merely senior in age”—3

**Yayāti**—“They say, it is a sin to act against the rules of courtesy, and the doer of such a thing goes to the region of sinners, consequently, the good never follow the example of the wicked, when the latter speak against the rules of courtesy. I had vast riches which I had earned by my exertions,—considering this, who devotes himself to the good of the self, that man is truly wise. A wise man should take everything in the world to be subordinate to Fate, but taking the dominance of his fate into consideration, he should not give way to despair under adverse circumstances. One should always look upon prosperity and adversity to be subordinate to the Supreme Being, and should never consider them to be within his own power. Taking, therefore, fate to be predominant, one should not be influenced by grief or happiness. Aṣṭaka, thus taking fate to be all powerful, I am never overcome with delusion in fear, and never keep my mind loaded with grief. I believe that I shall go wherever my fate may take me. Andaja, Svedaja, Jalāyuja, Udbhija, snakes, reptiles, fish, stones, grass, wood, &c., assume their forms through fate. Aṣṭaka! Regarding prosperity and adversity to be trial, I do not worry myself about them. In other words, what was I? what I have become? what I shall do?—I never bother myself with thoughts like these”—4-11

**Saunaka**—Then that Aṣṭaka, on hearing those words of his maternal grandfather—Yayāti—asked him again—12

**Aṣṭaka**—“King! Tell me all about the chief regions where you have been to, because you lecture on Dharma like a learned man”—13

**Yayāti**—“First, I became a king of an extensive Empire, afterwards, through my virtue, I lived in the region of Mahat, for a thousand years, and from that place I passed to higher spheres where I lived for another ten centuries in the enchanting realm of Indra, which is four hundred

kośa in extent and has a thousand gateways, whence I went to still higher regions. Then I passed one thousand years in the divine and ageless realm of Prajāpati, which is inaccessible [even to the Devas and Lokapālas]. Afterwards, according to the will of the God of Gods and conquering several spheres, I lived there, according to my choice, venerated by the handsome and illustrious Devas equal in glory and lustre to the gods, after which, I went and spent ten thousand years in the pleasure-garden called Nandana the Kāma-rūpi, where I enjoyed the bloom of the flowers along with the captivating faces of the Gandharvas and the nymphs. Thus I enjoyed there for a considerable length of time, until a ferocious attendant of the God, came and said loudly, 'Throw him down, throw him down.' At that very instant, I fell from the heaven, but as I fell from Nandana, I heard the voice of the Devas who said, 'This pious king Yayāti is falling with the loss of his virtue,' at which I requested them to show their clemency by letting me fall amongst the good on a sacred soil, and in this way, I have come to this land of sacrifices of yours, guided thereto by the smell of incense and of the offerings made to the fire"—14-22

*Here ends the thirty-eighth chapter describing the dialogue between  
Yayāti and Astaka*

---

### CHAPTER XXXIX

Astaka—"After spending ten thousand years in the pleasure garden called Nandana Kāma-rūpa, how did you happen to come to this Earth again?"—1

Yayāti—"As a penniless man is forsaken by his companions and relations, so the man deprived of virtues is deserted by the Devas in heaven"—2

Astaka—"In that region how do the people become bereft of virtue, and then to which regions do they go? Do remove my doubts"—3

Yayāti—"King! Most of them fall to the earth and many of them fall so low that they are ultimately feasted upon by vultures and jackals. Consequently, it is meet for kings to always keep themselves aloof from forbidden things. I have explained all this to you, what more do you wish to enquire about?"—4-5

Astaka—"King! I now wish you to please explain to me what pain do they suffer when they are eaten by vultures and jackals, and what is the way of saving themselves from that hell torture? Also tell me all about the hell on earth and the means to save one from it"—6

**Yayāti** —“The people who are not conscious of their duty in course of their existence on earth, and whose corporeal actions are not lofty, go to the mundane hell First, they hover about in the sky in the form of air, for a period of sixty thousand and eighty terrible years, and then at the time of their fall, they are devoured by terrestrial Râksasas who have formidable fangs” —7-8

**Aṣṭaka** —“How do they escape the torture inflicted upon them by ferocious, terrestrial Râksasas with formidable fangs and how are they born on the earth?” —9

**Yayāti** —“The menstrual flow of a woman suddenly develops conception as soon as itmingles itself with the semen virile of man, through the sap of the flowers of herbs —10

*Note* —*Puṣprasānuyuktam* —lit., endowed with the juice of flowers. It means semen virile, purified and made potent by the properties of the juice of medicinal herbs

“Medicinal herbs, full of vigour, go to the human and animal embryo, after getting into water, earth, air and the sky” —11

*Note* —*Apovāyum prithvīm chāntrikṣam* —lit.,—water, air, earth and the sky It is said that the body is made of those elements It therefore means that the vigour of medicinal herbs gets into the womb through the semen-virile, after first getting into the corporeal system

**Aṣṭaka** —“Does this soul present itself in the womb with the help of other bodies, or of its own accord? Pray remove this doubt Also explain, O king! how the body is developed and how the organs like the eyes, ears, etc., are formed I regard you to be endowed with the supreme wisdom, and I therefore venture to request you to remove all these doubts” —12-13

**Yayāti** —“At the time of menstruation, the air draws the semen virile up, from the inside, after which it magnifies itself there, and then it develops into the embryo and assumes human or animal form (according to the kind of the womb where such development occurs), it then hears the sounds through the ears, sees things through the eyes, smells with the nose, tastes with the tongue, feels perception with the skin, meditates with the mind Similarly, all the limbs are gradually formed” —14-16

**Aṣṭaka** —“The body which is consumed in fire, buried or eaten away by the lower animals, how does it again enshrine the soul within it?” —17

**Yayāti** —“Just as a sleeping animal maintains life, similarly the soul after vacating the corpse, enters another body according to its virtue or sin A virtuous soul is reborn (as a sequence of its good actions), in the form

of a pious being, and similarly a vicious soul takes its birth as a reptile or insect. It is not, for me, to enumerate the sins, the commitment of which leads the soul to be born as a reptile or an insect. Astaka! I have explained to you, briefly, the reasons of the soul becoming a quadruped, lower animal and man. Now tell me what more do you wish to ask me?"—18-20

Astaka—"Sire! Through what knowledge or which form of asceticism, does a man attain high name, and through what deeds, does he achieve high regions, please answer these questions"—21

Yayâti—"For a man, the following seven things are the gates to heaven, viz.—asceticism, charity, self-control, restraint, modesty, honesty, and kindness to all living creatures. Sages also say that even ascetics are ruined by conceit and tamoguna. A student who, thinking too much of his learning, employs his knowledge to belittle others, loses his privilege of finding a place in the higher regions, and that wisdom does not bear him fruit. The following four things, viz., the performance of agnihotra, the observance of the vow of silence, the acquirement of knowledge and the performance of sacrifices, in spite of their being good deeds, are marred by indulgence in danks and conceit. It is worthy of a large-minded man not to become elated on being praised by others and not to get angry at their calumnies. High minded men worship the good, and the wicked never get supreme knowledge in the world. To give alms and to study the Vedas, according to the ways prescribed, should be considered to be the best of all, and the vices mentioned above, should always be discarded, which would enable the learned to go closer to Brahma, through constant contemplation, and then attain final beatitude"—22-28

*Here ends the thirty-ninth chapter describing the dialogue between  
Yayâti and Astaka*

---

#### CHAPTER XL

Astaka—"O King! Be good enough, to tell me how does a householder go to the Devas in the Heaven world, and how do a Sanyâsi and a Brahmacârî reach them? Similarly how does a Vânaprastha attain the heavens?"—1

Yayâti—"A student [Brahmachârî] attains his end by diligently studying when called by his teacher to do so, by showing reverence and obedience to his preceptor, by getting up ahead of his preceptor, and by going to bed after him, by being mild, by controlling his passions, by keeping himself steady and not fickle, and by applying himself to his

studies A householder, [Grishastha], is said to be ideal when he earns an honest living, performs sacrifices, entertains his guests, gives alms to the poor, and does not beg from others, nor accepts anything unless given unasked, and constantly studies Upanisads and Puranas An anchorite, [Vanaprastha], should live in the forest on his daily-earned subsistence, is said to reach his goal when he earns his subsistence by self-perseverance, keeps himself quite aloof from sins, is entertaining and of good cheer to others, and does not cause injury to any one Such a muni attains perfection, being regular in his diet and activities The Sannyasi should subsist on begging, and should not resort to any craft, should have no house of his own to live in, who check his passions, keep himself devoid of all company, sleep under a tree, having limited ambitions, travelling in various countries, and having one suit of clothes He is said to be a true Bhikshuka At night time, when the rest of the world is indulging in sensual pleasures by being a slave to Cupid, the learned hermit should, peacefully, pass his time in the forest because the man who fixes his abode in the forest after weaning himself from the world, leads his twenty-one generations, including himself, viz,—ten ancestors and an equal number of his successors, including himself, to the path of virtue"—2-7

Aṣṭaka—"King ! I wish to hear who are to be classed among sages who keep the vow of silence (munis), and among observers of the vow of silence how many kinds of vows of silence (Mauna) are there?"—8

Yayāti—"One who dwells in the woods and turns his back upon habitations, and also one who lives in town having his back turned upon the forest, are both high-minded munis"—9

Aṣṭaka—"How one dwelling in the woods has his back turned on habitation, and how one residing in town, has his back turned on the forest"—10

Yayāti—"The muni who, fixing his dwelling in the forest, spurns at all the provisions of the town, and lives only on the produce of the woods, is said to turn his back on habitation The sage (muni) who has passed the stage of performing agnihotra and has no house of his own, and has transcended the limitations of gotras (clan), and Chāraṇas (Vedic Schools), puts on only a *kaupīna* or wears cast off garments, eats only to keep his body and soul together, is the ascetic (muni) living in the village with his back turned towards the forest"—11-13

*Note.—Kaupīna*—A strip of cloth worn as cover

The seer (muni) who, after forsaking all, curbs his passions and observes the vow of silence, accomplishes his object in the world —14.

A seer (muni), howsoever shabby he may be, ought to be adored by even such a man, who keeps his teeth clean, pure, white, always trims his finger nails, bathes every day, wears ornaments on his body, and leads a chaste life —15

*Note* —It means that a seer (muni), howsoever dirty and shabby he may be, is worthy of being venerated and adored without demur even by a good man whose person is comparatively most clean. The latter should, on no account, feel disgusted by the former's ugly appearance

One whose plethora of flesh and blood has disappeared by his severe penances and who has thereby become reduced to a mere skeleton, showing all his decayed bones, and devoid of the feeling of prosperity or adversity, sticks to his meditation, is said to be firm in his vow of silence (muni). When such a sage chews his morsel like a cow, and remains silent like the latter, he wins both the worlds and paves his way for the final bliss —16-17

*Here ends the fortieth chapter describing the duties of the four stages of life*

#### CHAPTER XL

Astaka —“ King ! Who between the two (orders), viz., the Sanyâsi or the Vânaprastha attains to the region of the Devas first ? Both of them are striving after Devahood in the heavenly path like the sun and the moon ”—1

Yayâti —“ A Sanyasi, though living in the village and amongst grihastas, but having no house of his own and control over his desires, goes first to Devahood and is better than one living in the forest ”—2

“ One who, getting the body of man obtained with difficulty, commits sins, must repent sincerely for them and then practise rigid penances in forest to wash them off. Whatever is cruel, is said by the wise to be unwholesome, the follower of the path of unrighteousness is foolish, and, as an unrighteous man is aimless. Similarly, O King ! holy man is truly simple, who is always in meditation, and is really noble ”—2-4

Astaka —“ How have you chanced to come here ? You are young, adorned with a beautiful garland (of flowers), and full of lustre. In which direction do you live, and where have you come from ”?—5

Yayâti —“ Losing my virtue, and consequently falling from the heaven, I have come here. I shall, after telling you all my experience of the heaven, go to the hell on earth, whilst all of you and these Brâhmaṇas

will go to heaven It is through the clemency of Indra that I have had the pleasure of meeting you good men, the lofty and the learned folks of this region "—6-7

Astaka —“King! I reckon you to be pious, and I therefore venture to ask you, whilst you are falling, whether there are any regions for me also in the heaven”—8

Yayati —“Take it for certain, that there are as many regions for you in the heaven, as there are forests in your worldly realm, full of cows, horses, birds, &c”—9

Astaka —“King! I dedicate all those regions of mine in the heaven (Deva plane), as well as in the astral plane, to you, on account of your fall May you reach there ere long”—10

Yayati —“King! A Non-Brâhmaṇa, versed in the Vedas like myself, cannot accept any charity I have also given away alms in my former days, as is always given to Brâhmaṇas daily Excepting a Brâhmaṇa, no one of any other caste, howsoever poor he may be, can accept the offerings of charity Even, the wife of a Brâhmaṇa, having a valiant husband, does not accept alms On these considerations, how can I persuade myself to do a thing which I never did before, and accept your gift”—11-12

*Note* —Mark the magnanimity of Astaka and the firm righteousness of Yayati. The ideal of that high civilization is also remarkable

King Pratardana —“O beautiful one! I am King Pratardana Have you also heard anything about there being any regions for me in the Deva or the astral world? I put this question to you, because I consider you to be so holy”—13

Yayati —“King! There are many regions for you, on account of your having poured a stream of ghee and honey, into the fire for full seven hundred days All these of your regions are devoid of grief and every day incessantly, leaks with honey for seven hundred days at a time They are, however, measurable”—14

Pratardana —“King! I also dedicate my regions whether in the Devaloka or in the astral plane to you who are falling, and may you instantly attain them in the heaven”—15

Yayati —“King! an equally valiant king does not accept help and support from his compeer A king, even getting into trouble through accident, should never do anything undignified The thinker of Dharma, the knower of Dharma and fame, the learned like myself should never

do such a thing as you wish me to do. What has not been done before, I can never do now"—16 17

Then King Vasumān addressed Yayāti who was talking like that —18

*Here ends the forty-first chapter describing the offers of Astaka  
and Prataidana to Yayāti*

### CHAPTER XLII

Vasumān -- O ruler of men ! I, King Vasumān, known as **Ausadhaśvī** ask you about that world of mine, whether it is in Heaven or in the middle region, for I consider thee to know the duties pertaining to that world —1

Yayāti —“King ! Like the lustre of your world wide fame, your regions in the heaven glitter like the sun and are awaiting for you ”—2

Vasumān —“I bestow all those regions on you who are falling, and O King ! if you cannot accept them as a present, then be good enough to buy them from me after making a nominal payment ”—3

Yayāti —“King ! I have never gone in for such a sham purchase even in my boyhood A conscientious man never resorts to such methods ”—4

Vasumān —“King, if you are not willing to accept them on payment of something nominal, then take them as a gift from me I will not go there, may they be yours ”—5

Sibi —“Sire ! I Sibi, descendant of Usinara, and knowing you to be pious, I also wish to enquire whether there are any quarters for me in the heaven and the middle region ”—6

Yayāti --“King ! You have never decided or defamed any one either in your mind or by your words, consequently, you have many regions in the heaven that shine like lightning and always resound with music, and are wide stretching ”—7

Sibi —“King ! Be pleased to accept those regions after paying me something for them if you do not feel disposed to accept them as a present I shall not go to those regions , you take them for yourself ”—8

Yayāti —“Your regions are as illustrious as yourself, who are as glorious as Indra, but I do not feel inclined to go to the regions conferred on me by others, nor do I approve those words of yours ”—9

Astaka —“King ! Thou dost not accept individually any one of our regions given separately nor do you approve our words, we will all

therefore prefer collectively to go to hell, after conferring all our respective worlds on you "—10

Yayâti —“ You being the speaker of truth, and noble, should utter proper words I do not accept the fruit of the deeds not done by me in my past life, not because you have expressed your wish like this to one who does not banker after anything, but the words with which you offered them to me will give you manifold benefit for having done so ”—11-12

Astaka —“ To whom do these five chariots, visible at a distance and shining like gold and luminous like the flame of blazing fire, belong ? ”—13

Yayâti —“ These chariots, glittering like gold, are meant for you and myself You are worthy of going to heaven after getting yourself seated in them along with me ”—14

Astaka —“ King ! You get yourself seated in the chariot and go to heaven through the sky We shall also go there when our turn comes ”—15

Yayâti —“ All of you are even now worthy of going to heaven, because you have won it This seems to be your spotless road to heaven ”—16

Saunaka —At the time of their ascending to heaven, seated in those chariots, they looked as majestic as Heaven and Earth covered by Dharma —17

Astaka —“ Indra is my companion , and I had thought that I should go the best way , but how is this King Sibi going now, seated in the chariot, drawn by the swiftest of horses ? ”—18

Yayâti —“ King Sibi has given away all in charity for the sake of going to heaven, consequently, Sibi, the son of Uśinara, is superior to all of you O King ! Sibi is charitable, pure, truthful, harmless, modest, wealthy, enduring, gentle, and views every one with equality It is for this reason that he is going in that finest chariot ”—19-20

Saunaka —Astaka again asked his maternal grandfather, who was like Indra, through curiosity, to tell him who he was, how and whence he went there, because there was no other Brâhmaṇa or Kṣatriya who had pursued high actions like him —21

Yayâti —“ I am King Yayâti, the world Emperor, the son of Nahuṣa and the father of Puru, and your maternal grandfather I never speak untruth before any one I conquered all the world and dedicated it to Brâhmaṇas, and also conferred on them many a beautiful steed The Devas seeing me doing such noble deeds acknowledged my virtue After giving away the land, flourishing with all kinds of produce, to the

Bāmanas, I also bestowed on them innumerable cows, horses, elephants, and a vast quantity of gold On account of truthfulness, my glory shines before men and the Devas on Earth and in the Heaven respectively I have not said anything untrue, because it is only truth that is admired by the high-minded O Astaka! I am speaking the truth to you and to Piatardhana, Vasumān and Sibi My conviction is that all the Devas, sages and regions deserve being worshipped and venerated only on account of truth Any one who, after having conquered the Heaven, offers ungrudgingly and without envy to the best of the twice born, will attain the same regions where we are going"—22-27

Śaunaka—"King! That high-souled Yayāti in this way, through his magnanimous daughter's sons, was saved from fall, and after leaving the earth, that doer of great charitable deeds rose to Heaven, filling the Earth with his renown This history of King Yayāti I have narrated to you in detail It is in his dynasty, which is famous by the name of Kauravayas, that you have been born, O, Son of Manu, illustrious like Indra"—28-29

*Here ends the forty-second chapter dealing with the story of Yayāti born in the Lunar dynasty*

### CHAPTER XLIII

Sūta—King Satānika was amazed to hear all that from Śaunaka and glowed, like the full moon, with delight Afterwards, he presented jewels, cows, gold and several kinds of clothes to Śaunaka Śaunaka also disappeared then and there, after distributing to the Brāhmaṇas all that he had obtained from the king —1-3

The Risi—"Sūta! Now we are anxious to hear in detail about the sons of King Yayāti, and the dynasty which was established in the world by the sons of Yadu and others—4

Sūta—"Hearken, O Risi! I am now going to narrate to you at full length about the family of Yadu, the eldest son of Yayāti Yadu had five sons of mighty chariots and great bows who looked like the Devas They were named, Sahasraji, Kiosthu, Nila, Antika, Laghu The eldest—Sahasraji—was the father of Sataji—5-7

Haihaya, Haya and Venu-haya were the three famous heirs of Sataji.—8

Dharmanetra was the son of Haihaya and the father of Kunti Kunti was the father of Saṃphata and Saṃphata was the father of Mahiṣmān Mahiṣmān begot an illustrious son, Rudrasrenya —9-10

Rudrasrenya was afterwards the famous king of Kâśî and became the father of Durdama —11

Kanaka, the intelligent and powerful, was the son of Durdama. Of Kanaka, there were four famous sons, viz., Kritavîrya, Kritâgnî, Krita-varmâ, Kritojâ —12

Arjuna, who was the Lord of seven continents through his thousand arms, and the son of Kritavîrya, practised difficult penances for ten centuries and worshipped Datta, the son of Atri, who, becoming pleased, granted him four boons —13-15

Arjuna sought and got the boons of having a thousand arms, of the power of protecting the virtuous against the doers of evil deeds, the power of ruling the world righteously after conquering it, and his destruction in war at the hands of an adversary more valiant than himself. After thus getting those four boons by his valour, he conquered this world of seven continents by righteous war, conducted, according to the Ksatra rules, together with the oceans and mountains. At his mere wish he got a thousand arms, and it is also said that, similarly, chariots and banners were also called into being. He performed ten thousand sacrifices and had access to every nook and corner of the universe. He gave enormous presents to the Brâhmanas at those sacrifices. On the occasion of those sacrifices, the pillars and the sacrificial altar were made of gold, and the Devas, seated in their Vimânas, the Gandharvas, men and Apsarâs took part in them —16-22

Seeing the glory of that sovereign, the sage Nârada, the Gandharvas, and the Apsarâs began to sing the praises of his sacrifices. There was no other Ksatriya king who could rival him in the performance of sacrifices, in the giving of alms, in the practice of asceticism, in prowess and in the learning of the Sâstras. That monarch always toured about his extensive state, and punished the thieves, and the wicked with his sword, quoit, and arrows —23-25

He ruled the Earth for eightyfive thousand years. He was world Emperor and had a treasury full of gems. He was the protector of cattle of fields, he was the giver of rain like thunder-cloud and the defender of the faith, and through his asceticism became illustrious. He looked as beautiful as the thousand-rayed autumnal sun, at the time of his twanging his bow with his thousands arms. He founded the city of Mâhismatî, after conquering the Nîga King, son of Kaikotaka. That city was laved by the waves of the ocean during the rains wherein the king played in the waves, as it ebbed and flowed in the beach —26-30

When he agitated the waters of the river in his gambols, the Narmadâ, trembling with fear at his sight and becoming highly astonished, surrendered herself to him. He alone, with his thousand arms, swelled it by putting the water of the sea into it and increased it, as it increases in the monsoon, and the ocean being thus agitated by his thousand arms became subdued by him, and he extended his sea power, so that the residents in Pâtala (antipodes) became inoffensive and quiet —31-33

When he would break the surges and powder the sharks and the fish, &c, by his thousand arms, and remove the foam arising out by contact of the wind, he really looked as if he was annihilating the very ocean. At that time, by the tremor of the Mandara Mount, the mighty serpents clustering round it, trembled with fear, thinking that they might again be employed in the churning of the ocean to get out nectar, they were quiet like the plantain leaf that does not shiver in the evening when there is no wind to shake it —34-36

That king once tied up the valiant Râvana and stunned him with his five arrows in his own kingdom, Lanka. After conquering him he brought and confined Râvana in his capital—Mâhismatîpuri when Pulastya went and solicited Arjuna to release his son Râvana which he did —37-39

The sound of his thousand arms resembled the echo of clouds that arise at the close of Yuga, but it is very strange, that his thundering arms were cut down by Parasurâma, the descendant of Bhṛigu —39-40

Ajuna, who had a thousand arms, that looked like golden palm trees, had burnt the forest of the sage Âpava, at which the latter becoming enraged cursed him that Parasurâma would humble his pride and deprive him of his thousand arms, and that the same powerful ascetic, after cutting down his thousand arms, would also kill him —41-43

Sûta said —On account of that curse of Âpava, that thousand-armed king was killed by Parasurâma. He had also himself sought the boon of being killed in battle by some valiant adversary superior to him in prowess —44

That thousand-armed monarch had one hundred sons, and out of them, five were the most righteous, valiant and illustrious. The first valiant son among them was Sûrasena, next the powerful Suia, then Krostu, then Jayadhvaja of diverse deeds, and lastly Avanti —45-46

Talajangha was the powerful son of Jayadhvaja who had one hundred sons under the name of Talajanghas —47

Afterwards, those sovereigns of the Haihaya clan had these five illustrious clans, viz —Vitihotras, Sâryâtas, Bhojas, Âvantis and Kundikeras. Vitihotras begot the powerful Ânarta, who became the father of Durjeya, the conqueror of all enemies —48-49

That Kartavirya Arjuna, of thousand arms, was renowned for his prowess, righteousness and protection of his subjects --50

He conquered the earth up to the sea with his bow and arrow. One who recites the name of the thousand-armed king in the morning, never loses his wealth, on the other hand, he gets back his lost riches. One who would relate the birth of Kârîtvirya with a clear conscience will go to heaven —51-52

*Here ends the forty-third chapter dealing with the history of Soma dynasty in the family of Yayâti and of Kârtavirya Arjuna*

#### CHAPTER XLIV

The Rishi said —Sûta! Why did the thousand-armed King Kârtavirya, burn the forest of the Sage Âpava? Please tell us fully the reason of his having done so. We have been given to understand that that royal sage was the protector of his subjects, how then did he burn the forest of that ascetic —1-2

Sûta answered —Once upon a time, the Sun went to the king in the form of a Brâhmaṇa, and said, 'O Lord of men, I am Âditya, grant me one satisfaction' —3

The King said —O Lord, the Day-maker, what will satisfy you? What shall I offer you for your repast? Hearing which I shall make the arrangement for the same —4

The Sun —'O the best giver amongst all persons' give me all stationary objects (trees, &c) to feast upon, and that would satisfy me' —5

The King —O God! I have not the power with all my energy or strength to cook the entire stable objects of the world as thy food, so I bow down to thee —6

The Sun —"King! I am pleased with you, and I present you with the exhaustless quiver of arrows that would have their effect in all directions. These arrows will be endowed with my potency, and the moment you discharge them on the trees they would be consumed. These arrows endowed with my potency will dry up the trees and reduce them to ashes afterwards, and thus I shall get satisfaction, O Lord of men" —7-8,

Sūta --Afterwards, the Sun presented him with the arrows, and the latter burnt all the trees with them. He burnt up the villages, hermitages, the population of herdsmen, big cities, forests of ascetics and orchards. In that way, when he consumed the eastern direction it became treeless, grassless, and the land was destroyed along with the south, by that terrible heat --9-11

The Sage Āpava, who was practising penances standing in water for ten thousand years, found on his return that his forest had been burnt down by the king—at which he became enraged and cursed him, as stated before. Now listen to the history of the glorious dynasty of King Kroṣṭu —12-14

It was in the family of this very King Kroṣṭu that the God Viṣṇu incarnated Himself as Kṛiṣṇa, who afterwards promoted the Vīśvī clan, which I am going to relate to you in due order. Kroṣṭu begot Vṛiṣṇivāna, and the latter became the father of the powerful Svalīha, and Kuṣāṅgu was the son of Svalīha --15-16

Sāṇīya was the son of Kuṣāṅgu and the father of Chitra and Chitraratha --17

Sāśavindu was the son of Chitraratha, who was renowned for his charity, and became World Emperor -18

Afterwards, the family of Sāśavindu became of worldwide fame. He begot one hundred sons who also begot the same number of sons —19

Out of the hundred grandsons of Sāśavindu, the following six were the most illustrious, clever, handsome, wealthy, powerful, and all having the title of Pṛithu viz.,—Pṛithuśiava, Pṛithuyāśi, Pṛithudharmā, Pṛithuñjaya, Pṛithukṛiti and Pṛithumanā. Out of them, the learned in Purāṇas speak very highly of Pṛithuśiava who performed many sacrifices. He was the father of Suyajña —20-22

Suyajña became the father of Uṣanā, who was the protector of the world and the performer of one hundred ṛvamedha sacrifices —23

Titikuś the destroyer of enemies, was the son of Uṣanā and the father of Marutta, best of all royal sages —24

Marutta begot Kambalbarhisa, the father of the learned Rukmākavacha, who also conquered his enemies and performed ṛvamedha sacrifices and gave many presents to the Brāhmaṇas, when out of the sacrificial fire emerged five valiant sons, armed with bows and arrows. They were —Rukmesu, Pṛithuṇukma, Jyūmagha, Pañigha, Hari —25-28

Parigha and Hau were given to rule the Videha country by their father, while Rukmesu succeeded to the throne [of his father] and was a ruler of a protectorate under him —29

Jyāmagha was turned out by his other brothers, and in disgust he took to Sannyāsa, and was taught by a Brāhmaṇa, and so became of serene mind and again entered the order of house-holders —30

After that, he armed himself with bow and arrows and seating himself in a chariot with a streaming banner over it, started all by himself to seek his fortune in other lands. He went to some place on the banks of the Narmadā, whence he went to the Riksavanta hills and settled there along with others. There he married a noble lady, named Chaitrā. He did not marry any other lady, in spite of his not getting any children from his wife Chaitrā. Sometime after, the King Jyāmagha brought a beautiful damsel as a booty of his victory in a war, and said to the queen, through fear of her, that she was a daughter-in law, whereupon the queen, amazingly enquired whose son's wife she was —31-34

The king replied, "She shall be the wife of the son born to thee in the future." Hearing which, through the virtue of great austeries of that girl, Chaitrā begot a son, named Vidaṛbha

He, Vidaṛbha, begot out of that princess Kīatha, Kāśika and Loma-pāda, who were heroes and well-versed in the art of war —35-36

Lompada's son was Manu, whose son was Jñāti —37

Kāśika was the father of Chidi, who was the founder of Chāidya dynasty of kings, Kīatha, the third son of Vidaṛbha, was the father of Kuntī and the latter of Dhṛistī, who was renowned as most valiant and righteous. Dhṛistī became the father of Nirvīti, the valiant and virtuous —38-39

Nirvīti was the father of Vidiūratha, and the latter of Dasāha, the father of Vyoma. The son of Vyoma was Jimūta —40

Vimala was the son of Jimūta and the father of Bhīmaratha, who begot Navaratha —41

Navaratha begot Dridharatha, the father of Śakuni, who begot Kājambha, the father of Devarāta. Devarāta was the father of the very famous Devaksatra, the father of Madhu, the rejoicer of Devanakshatra and born as if a Deva. He was father of Puravasas, who begot Purudvān, of Vidaṛbha clan, the father of Jantu from his wife Bhadrāsenī, daughter of Vidaṛbha clan. Jantu bore from his wife, the lady of the Ikṣvāku clan, Sātvata who diffused the name and fame of the Sātvatas Yādavas) through his sattvaguna. One who hears the narration of the lunar race of Jyāmagha is blessed with children —42-46

The lady, named Kauśilya, begot the progeny known by the epithet of Sātvata, the righteous. The Sātvata kings were Bhajin, Bhajamāna, Devāvṛidha, Andhaka, Mahābhoja, Vriṣṇi and Yaduandana, under four different sub-divisions, which is going to be narrated in detail — 47-48

King Śrīñjayi had two daughters, both of whom became the wives of Bhajamāna. They were Śrīñjayi and Vāhyakā. Then progeny is known under the epithet of Vāhyakās. These two sisters, his wives, begot many sons, viz., Nūmi, Kṛumila, and Vriṣṇi, the conqueror of enemy's town — 49-50

Devāvṛidha improved the relations with his kinsmen, but was issueless, and with the intention of having a son he practised devout austerities. With that view, he touched the holy waters of the Parnāḍā at which that river brooded over the desires of Devāvṛidha. She decided in her mind that Devāvṛidha should beget a handsome child like herself, but could not hit upon any lady who would bear him such an offspring. Therefore, she determined in her mind that she herself, having the power of manifesting herself in thousands of ways, would give birth to a child like that, for him. With that resolution, she appeared before the king in the form of a young beauty and attracted the ascetic king towards her, after which they became enamoured of each other and enjoyed themselves. Nine months after, she gave birth to Vabhrū — 51-56.

The learned in the Purāṇas sing the praises of that virtuous king, Devāvṛidha, as follows — "As we heard his praises from a distance, so we find them true when seeing him from near. Vabhrū is best amongst men and equal to Devas and his father, Devāvṛidha. By the glory of Vabhrū, the son of Devāvṛidha, 70,060 of his ancestors were liberated and attained final bliss. That King Vabhrū was the performer of great sacrifices, the giver of alms, valiant, steady observer of religious rites, handsome, most illustrious, ambitious and fond of listening to the Sāstras" — 57-60.

His queen, the daughter of the King Kanka, gave birth to four sons, viz., Kukura, Bhajmāna, Saṭṭi, Kambal Varhiṣa — 61.

Vriṣṇi was the son of Kukura and the father of Dhriti, who begot Kapotromā, the father of Taittiri. Taittiri was the father of the learned Nala, and is known as Nandanodaradundubhi of worldwide fame — 62-63.

He performed ṛvamedha sacrifice with the desire of getting a son. At the end of Atriātra ceremony, his son, named Punarvasu, arose in the

midst of the assembly from the sacrificial pool. Therefore, he was learned, renowned for his love of sacrifices, charities, &c —64-65

Pūnāvāsu begot a twin, named Āhuka and Āhukī. The following Slokas are recited about Āhuka 66

"He always lived equipped with an army of armoured chariots, with banners flying over them. His army consisted of ten thousand chariots thundering like the clouds. He was never untruthful, never lustreless, never remained without performing sacrifices and never gave less than a thousand in charity. He was never impure, never ignorant of learning. Such was Āhuka, born in the Bhoja family, and after him Āhuka and other clans came to be known" —67-69

He married his sister, Āhukī, to Avanti, and begot from his queen, the daughter of Kātya, the two sons, viz., Devaka and Ugrasena, who were born like the Devas. Devaka also begot four sons and seven daughters, viz., Devavāna, Upadeva, Sudeva and Devarakṣita. Their seven sisters were Devaki, Śrutadevi, Mitradevi, Yaśodharā, Sridevi, Satyadevi, and Sutāpi, the seventh, who were married to Vasudeva —70-73

Ugrasena was father of nine sons. Amongst them, Kāmpsa was the eldest. The others were Nyagrodha, Sunāmā, Kāṅka, Saṅku, Ajabhū, Rāṣṭrapāla, Yudhamusti, Sumusti. Their sisters were five, viz., Kāmpsā, Kāmpsavati, Sutantū, Rāṣṭrapāli and Kāṅka. Ugrasena and his descendants all belonged to the Kukūra clan —74-76

Bhoja was the father of the famous Vidūratha, who begot the valiant Rājādhīdeva —77

Rājādhīdeva begot two deva-like, virtuous sons, named Śonāsva and Svetavāhana —78

Śonāsva had five sons, all heroic and well-versed in war. They were —Śamī, Vedaśarmā, Nikunta, Śukra and Śatrujīta —79

Śamī was the father of Pratikṣatra, who begot Pratikṣetra, the father of Bhoja, who became the father of Hridika —80

Hridika had ten valiant sons —Kṛitavarmā, was the eldest amongst them. Śatadhanvā was the second. The others were Devārha, Nābha, Bhīṣma, Mahābala, Ajāta, Vanajāta, Kaniyaka, and Karambhaka. Devārha was the father of the learned Kambalavaihīśa, who begot Asāmañjā, the father of Ta-Mojā —81-83

Ajāta begot the following three illustrious sons, who were known under the name of Andhakas —Sudanayṣṭra, Sunābha, Kṛiṣṇa —84

One who daily recites the family of the Andhakas obtains a large family —85

*Here ends the forty-fourth chapter describing the Soma dynasty*

---

### CHAPTER XLV

Suta — Gāndhārī and Mādī were the wives of Vriṣṇi, and Sumitra, the rejoicer of his friends, was born from Gāndhārī. Mādī begot five sons, named Yudhājīta, Devamīdhusa, Anamītīa, Śibi, Kṛitalakṣmaṇa —1-2

Anamītīa became the father of Nighva, who begot two sons, viz., the most powerful Prasena and Śaktivēna also known as Satrājīta —3

Prasena possessed Syamantaka, which was the best of all gems on the earth, and was known as the king of all gems. Prasena used always to wear his beautiful Syamantaka jewel on his breast and Kṛiṣṇa more than once expressed a desire to have it, but was refused by Prasena, and even though Kṛiṣṇa was powerful to take it by force, he did not like to do that —4-5

Once upon a time, Prasena wearing his Syamantaka gem went out for a hunt, when hearing the voices of some wild beasts in a cave he entered it and found a bear inside, and they looked at each other. He fought with the animal, but was killed by the latter. After that, the bear took the matchless jewel from the person of the dead king and retired into the deeper cavities of the cave. In the meantime the news of Prasena's death became public —6-8

Knowing him to be dead, Śrīkṛiṣṇa was dismayed. Some one gave currency to the rumour that Prasena was murdered by Kṛiṣṇa for the sake of the Syamantaka gem. It was insinuated that Prasena went out wearing his priceless Syamantaka gem and was decidedly killed by Kṛiṣṇa, who usurped the jewel from him. Satrājīta, the brother of the deceased, also thought the same —9-11

Sometime after Śrīkṛiṣṇa, also went out to hunt in the forest and approached the very cave of the bear, when the beast seeing him began to groan and growl, at which he entered the cave with sword in hand. He found the bear to be Jāmbavanta, the King of all bears. He then hastily, with great valour, made Jāmbavanta a captive and then turned his eyes full of wrath towards him. The King of the bears then pleased Lord Śrīkṛiṣṇa, the manifestation of Viṣṇu, with his devotion —12-15

Kṛiṣṇa becoming pleased wanted to grant him some boon. Jāmbavānta said —I wish that I may be killed by Thee, O Lord, through the striking

of Sudarśana Chakra, and this auspicious daughter of mine be accepted by Thee as Thy wife. This gem which I had obtained, O Lord, by killing Prasena, be accepted by Thee —16-17

After that, Kṛiṣṇa killed Jāmbavanta by his Sudarśana Chakra and then returned with the Syamantaka and the daughter of the King of bears, named Jāmbavatī —18

Then Kṛiṣṇa presented Syamantaka to Satrājīta in the assemblage of the Sātvatas, and told them how much aggrieved he was by the false accusation levelled by them against him —19-20

Then all the Yādavas thus spoke to Vāsudeva —“Our idea was that Prasena was killed by Thee” —21

King Kaikaya had ten daughters, who all were married to Satrājīta. The sons born of them were one hundred and one, of worldwide fame and the eldest of them was Bhaṅgakāra. Then Bhaṅgakāra begot from his wife Vratavatī three graceful and lotus-eyed daughters named, Satyabhāmā the best amongst women, and Vratīni, of strong vows, and Padmavatī. All three of them were the most virtuous of all women. Satrājīta, to please Kṛiṣṇa, gave them all in marriage to him —22-24

Anāmitra, the youngest of the sons of Vṛiṣṇi, was the father of Śini, whose son was Satyaka, whose son was Sātyaka. Yuyudhāna, the truthful, was the grandson of Śini and was powerful. Asaṅga was the son of Yuyudhāna and the father of Dyumna. Yugandhara was the son of Dyumna. This is how the family of Śini has been described —25-26

The family of Anāmitra belonging to the Vṛiṣṇi clan, has been thus described. Anāmitra was the father of Yudhājīta, the brave, whose brothers were Vṛiṣabha and Kṣatra, both great heroes. Vṛiṣabha was married to the daughter of the King of Kāśī. His wife, Jayanti, bore him Jayanta who performed many sacrifices and was renowned for his prowess and hospitality —27-29

Jayanta was the father of Akrūra, who was also famous for the performance of sacrifices and giving of many presents. He was married to Ratnā, the daughter of Saivya from whom he begot eleven sons, viz.— Upalambha, Sadālambha, Vrikala, Virya, Śini (Savītara), Mahāpakṣa, (Sadapakṣa), Satrughna, Vārīmejaya, Dharmabhiit, Dharmavarmā and Dhṛistamāna. Those sons of Ratnā were all very pious —31-33

Akrūra was also the father of two sons, named Devavāna and Upadeva, from his other wife, Ugrasenā. Both of them were handsome like the Devas —34

Besides them, Akrūra had the following sons from his wife, Aśvini — Prīthu, Viprīthu, Aśvathāmā, Subābu, Supārāva, Gavessana, Vṛistinemi, Sudharmas, Saryāti, Abhūmi, Vajrabhūmi, Sramiṣṭha and Sravana —35-36

Śrikṛiṣṇa saved Himself from the calumny of stealing the Syamantaka jewel, by killing Jāmbavāna One who hears or recites to others this piece, will never be liable to be falsely defamed a thief —37

*Here ends the forty-fifth chapter describing the Vṛiṣṇi branch of the Lunar dynasty*

#### CHAPTER XLVI

Sūta said —Aiksvākī, the daughter of King Ikṣvāku bore Śūra, a heroic son, named and renowned as Adblutamidhusam, to her lord, Puruṣa Śūra, the son of Puruṣa, begot from Bhojā ten sons, named, the famous and mighty-armed Vasudevā, known also as Ānakadundubhi, Devamārga, Devaśravā, Anādhīṣṭi, Śini, Nanda, Sriñjaya, Śyāma, Śamika, Samyūpa, and the following five daughters, viz —Śrutakīrti, Prithā, Śrutadevī, Śrutasravā, Rājādhīdevī All these five girls were mothers of heroes —1-4

Kṛita begot from Śrutadevī his son, Sugrīva , Kaikaya begot Anuvrata from Śrutakīrti , the King Chaidya became the father of Sunitha, from his wife, Śrutasravā, who was the conqueror of his enemies and the observer of all religious rites in the year —5-6

After that Śūra, out of friendship, gave his daughter, Prithā, for being adopted by Kuntibhoja, who was very old, and for that reason she also came to be known as Kunti, the sister of Vasudeva Vasudeva gave in marriage his sister, Kunthi, to King Pāndu, for whom he bore several brave sons, through Devas —7-8

Kunti gave birth to Yudhiṣṭhīra, through Dharma, Bhīmasena through Vāyu, Arjuna, as powerful as Śakīa, through Indra Mādrī gave birth to Nakula and Sahadeva, through the glory of the Aśvini Kumāras Both of the brothers were brave, modest and handsome —9-10

Rohini, of the Puru family, the wife of Vasudeva known as Ānakadundubhi, gave birth to the eldest son, Balarāma, and to his brothers, Sāraṇa, Durduma, Damana, Subhru, Piḍāraka, and Mahāhanu She also gave birth to two beautiful daughters, named Chitrā and Aksī —11-12

Vasudeva begot from his other wife, Devakī —Susena, Kīrtimāna, Udāst, Bhadrāsena, Rishivāsa, and Bhadravideha the sixth, who were all killed by the King Kamsa, as soon as they were born —13

Lord Kṛṣṇa was born on the first Amāvāsyā of the year, in the month of Vaiśākha —14

(It is so stated in the Purāṇas, owing to the difference in Kalpa other wise it is laid down in the Bhāgavata that Kṛṣṇa was born in the month of Bhādra, on the 8th of the dark fortnight) The sweet-speaking Subhadra, the beautiful sister of Kṛṣṇa, was born after him Both Kṛṣṇa and Subhadra were born of Devakī —15

Vasudeva begot from his wife, Tāmrā, Sabadeva, after whom Upāsatīgadhabra and his sister were born She was also killed by Kāṁsa —16

Vasudeva begot from Upadevī —Rochmāna, Vaidehamāna, Devala, and from Vṛikadevī he begot —Mahātmā, Avagāha, and Nandaka —17-19

Afterwards, Vasudeva begot Madana, the seventh son of Devakī, and from Śraddhādevī he begot Gavesana Formerly, he had begotten Kauśika from his wife of the Vaiśya clan —20

*Note* —This is an instance of an intermarriage between a Kṣatriya and a Vaisya

Pandra and Kapila were born from the wives of Vasudeva, Sutanu and Ratharājī, respectively —21

Of whom, the first came to be known as a great archer among the Nisādha clan, known as Jorā After him, Saubhadra and Bhava were born of his wife, of the Vaiśya caste —22

Uddhava was the son of Devamārga, who is known to be a man of great learning —23

Anādhristi became the father of Satrughna from Iksvākū, who also begot Śrāddha —24

King Karusa, who had no issue, was given in adoption a powerful son, named Suchandra, by Śrī Kṛṣṇa —25

Kṛṣṇa begot Chārudesna and Sāmba from his wife, Jāmbavatī —26

Tantipāla and Tanti were the sons of Nandana Śamīka begot four powerful sons, named Virāja, Dhanu, Syamya and Śrīñjaya —27

Syamya had no issue, and Śamīka despising all pleasures went to the forest, where he attained to Rājarshihood —28

One who daily hears or recites the birth and family history of Lord Śrī Kṛṣṇa, will become liberated from all his sins and go to heaven —29

*Here ends the forty-sixth chapter dealing with the dynasty of the Vṛiṣṇis*

## CHAPTER XLVII

Sûta said —The Lord of all, the Protector of the universe, manifested Himself as Śrîkrishna for the purpose of His pastime. Through the asceticism of Vasudeva, Śrîkrishna was born in the womb of Devakî. His eyes were like lotus. He had four arms, and His Divine form was of unsurpassing splendour. When He was born like that in His glory, wearing the Śrivatsa jewel, Vasudeva besought Him with folded hands, saying "Hide that form O Lord, I make this request to you, on account of my fear of Kâmpa, who has killed my powerful sons, thy elder brothers"—1-4

In compliance with those words of Vasudeva, Lord Krîṣṇa hid His form of Divine glory and asked Him to send him to the house of Nanda. Accordingly, Vasudeva took him to the house of Nanda, and requested the latter to look after the Divine babe, like his own child, and added that the celestial infant would bring prosperity to the Yâdavas, and this child, born of the womb of Devakî, will kill Kâmpa —5-6

The Sages said —Sûta! Who were Vasudeva and Devakî, to whom the manifestation of Lord Viṣṇu was born as a son and called them His parents, and who were Nanda and Yaśodâ, who saw the childish freaks of that Divine babe?—7-8

Sûta said —Kaśyapa became man and had Aditi for his wife. The former was born by the glory of the Creator and the latter was created from a particle of the Earth —9

*Note.—It means that Kaśyapa was a partial incarnation of the Creator, whilst his wife, Aditi, was that of the goddess of earth*

Afterwards Devakî in the form of Aditi, was granted all the fulfilment of her desires by Viṣṇu —10

*Note.—It means that Aditi was afterwards born as Devakî, through the process of transmigration of the soul, in which life her desires were fulfilled by the pleasure of Viṣṇu*

Lord Viṣṇu manifested Himself in the human form and deluded the world by His Yogic powers. Its history is that, when the earth became deprived of righteousness and the Asuras swelled the world, Lord Viṣṇu, in order to re-establish righteousness, incarnated Himself in the human form in the Vṛiṣṇi family —11-12

Sri Krîṣṇa had sixteen thousand wives, of whom Rukmîni, Satyabhâmâ, Satyâ, Nâguñîti, Subhâmâ, Saivyâ, Gândhâri, Lakshmanâ, Mitravindâ, Kâlinî, Jâmba-Vati, Susilâ, Madri, Kaudalyâ, Vijayâ were the principal ones —13-14

Rukmīnī gave birth to the following sons, proficient in the art of war, viz., Chārudeṣṇa, Pradyumna, Suchāru, Bhadrachāru, Sudeṣṇa, Bhadra, Parāśu, Chārugupta, Chāṇḍrabhadra, Suchāruka, Chāruhāsa, and a girl named Chārumati —15-16

Sri Kṛiṣṇa, the beautiful-eyed, begot from Satyabhāmā four sons, named Rohita, Diptamāna, Tāmra Chakria, and Jalandhama, who had four younger sisters also —17-18

Jāmbavatī gave birth to Sāmba, who was an ornament to all assemblages Mitravindā became the mother of Mitivāna and Mitravinda Sunītha and Mitia Bāhu were born from Nāgnajitī —18-19

Beginning with these, there were thousands and, according to some, hundreds of thousands, and according to others eighty thousand sons born to Vāsudeva While others say that he had a hundred thousand sons —20-21

Upāsanga had two sons, named Vajra and Saṅkṣipta, and Bhūrīndrasena and Bhūsi were the two sons of Gaveṣana —22

Pradyumna begot from his wife, the daughter of the King of Viḍarbha (Modern Berar) named, Aniruddha, who was most brave and steady in battle That is why he came to be known as Aniruddha He begot Mṛigaketana —23

Sāmba begot five valiant and truthful sons from his wife, Kāḍyā, the daughter of King Supārśva —24

The valiant Yādavas multiplied themselves into a race of three crores, out of whom 60000 powerful ones were born as incarnations of Devas on this earth The incarnations of Asuras who were killed in the war between Devas and Asuras, were born on earth as obstructors of all human progress, and in order to destroy whom Sri Kṛiṣṇa was born in the clan of the Yādavas —15-27

The Yādavas, among whom Lord Kṛiṣṇa was born, had one hundred different families, all of which were supported by Viṣṇu, and it was for that reason that the Yādava clan went on prospering All the Yādavas were the companions of Lord Kṛiṣṇa —28-29

The Rishi said—Sūta! How did Viṣṇu, the prime cause of the universe, come to be born on this earth, along with the seven Rishis, Kuvera, Yakṣa, the sages Minichara, Sālaki and Nārada, Siddha, Dhārvantari? How many manifestations have there been of Viṣṇu, and how many of them will be in future? Why does the Lord Viṣṇu incarnate Himself exclusively among the tranquil Brāhmaṇas, and the Kṣatriyas? O Sūta!

pray tell us the object of Viṣṇu's incarnating Himself in the family of Viśṛṣṭi, Andhaka, &c., and also the cause of manifesting Himself again and again in human form —30-33

Sūta said —At the end of a Yuga, and when morals of the time becomes lax, owing to the loss of righteousness in the universe, Lord Viṣṇu casts off His Divine form and assumes that of a man, or, when the Devas and the Asuras combine to oppress the world, then the Lord Hari incarnates Himself. Thus he incarnated when, in the days gone by, the Daitya Hiranya Kāshyapu was ruling the three worlds. Similarly, He incarnated when Bali of yore ruled the three worlds. In the reigns of these two rulers there was great friendship between the Devas and the Asuras —34-36

But all the same, the world was agitated by the presence of the Asuras, for it was an age of Asuras, the Devas being in minority. The Devas and the demons residing under the sway of Hiranyakashyapu and Bali were on equal footing. In other words, the Devas and the Asuras under their sway enjoyed equal rights and privileges. At the same time, on account of the curse of Bṛigu, there was a destructive warfare between the Devas and the Asuras to cause pain to Bali, when Lord Viṣṇu manifested Himself in the human form to re-establish righteousness, for the sake of the Devas and the Asuras —37-39

The Rishi said -- Sūta ! Why did Lord Viṣṇu interest Himself personally in the affairs of the Devas and the Asuras ? How did this conflict arise of itself between the Devas and the Asuras, who were living on friendly terms before ? Pray tell us all that —40

Sūta said —There were twelve hard fought battles between the Devas and the Asuras on account of getting their heritage, beginning from the Varsha (Boar) incarnation and ending with Sandā and Marka times, and there were incarnations on the occasion of each war. The first was that of Man-lion (Nṛsiṁha), the second that of Vāmana, third that of Varāha, the fourth incarnation was on the occasion of the churning of the ocean for the nectar, the fifth took place at Tārakāmaya war, the sixth was called the Ādīvaka war, the seventh was the Traipura war, the eighth was the Andhaka war, the war for the destruction of Vṛitrāsura was the ninth, the Dhātṛi war was the tenth, the Hālāhala war was the eleventh and the twelfth was the terrific war, named Kolāhala —41-45

Nṛsiṁha killed the Daitya king, Hiranyakashyapu, Vāmana made the Daitya king Bali a captive, by measuring the three regions. Varāha killed

the Daitya Hiranyaksa with His tusks and divided the ocean into two —  
46-47

At the time of churning the ocean for nectar, Indra conquered Prahlāda, and then He killed Virochana, the son of Prahalāda, in the Tārakāmaya war, for the latter was always after the life of Indra and never was friendly to the deeds of the Devas —48-49

At the time of Ādīvaka war, Lord Siva killed the Daitya Tripuia, along with other Dānavas, besides those that He killed in the Andhaka war —50

In the Vṛitra-nāśaka wā, Indra, by the help of Viṣṇu, killed Vṛitrásura, who was sided with by men, Pitrīs and Devas and then He also killed most fearful Dānavas in the Dhātṛi and Hālahala wars. He killed the Daitya Viprachit in the Kolahala wā, which was an offshoot of the Sandā Marka wars that ensued between the Devas and the Daityas over the night of Avabhrītha bath, when Viprachit was hiding himself with the army of Dānavas under his banner —51-53

**Note —Avabhṛītha=Bathing at the end of a principal sacrifice, for purification**

In that way, there were a dozen battles between the Devas and the Asuras in which the military classes of Devas and Asuras were killed, but it was good for the general populace —54

Hiranyakasyapa ruled the land with all the mundane glory at his command, for a period of one hundred million seventy eight crores and eighty thousand years, after whom Bali ruled for 20,080,000 years and Prahlāda also ruled for a similar period with other Asuras —55-57

All three of them were the most powerful Daitya Kings, and known as Indras of Daityas. This world was under the sway of the Daityas for ten yugas. After which, Indra ruled over the three regions with marvellous tact and statesmanship —58-59

Indra ruled, since the close of the sway of Prahlāda, when the seer, Sukra, deserted the Daityas and joined the Devas —60

Once the sage Sukra happened to go to the sacrifice of the Devas, when the Daityas called him and asked him how he did that during their loss of kingdom. The Daityas said that they could no longer stay in that region and would repair to Rasātala—which grieved the seer, who said that they need not fear, he would sustain them by his power, for it was he alone who had spells, medicines, nectar, and the best of things, in his possession to the full. The Devas had only one-fourth of them. He would give every thing to them, for he had preserved them with him for their sake —61-65

The Devas on seeing the Daityas clustering around the sage Śukra (Kāvya), held a council of their own to devise means to acquire all those boons from the sage. They all discussed among themselves that the sage was forcibly usurping their dues, and so before he conferred them on the Daityas they would all go and manage to let the Daityas go to Pātāla by their stubbornness. With that resolution, the Devas went and caused trouble to the Dānavas —67-68

At that, the Daityas, overpowered with affliction, went and sought the succour of Śukra and were rescued by him instantly. Afterwards they started their operations against the Devas who, defying the support of Śukra, began to annihilate them —69-70

Then the sage, thinking of the past, addressed the Daityas for their well-being —“Vāmana has deprived you of all your realm by measuring it with his three strides, and has made Bali a captive. Besides, He has killed Jambhāsura and Virochana. In course of the twelve battles, the Devas have killed most of your powerful members, by their various stratagems. Very few of you are left now, therefore follow my advice and cease fighting for sometime. I shall teach you a useful contrivance. I will go to acquire the spell of victory from Śiva, and, after acquiring those powerful charms from him, shall make you victorious in your fight with the Devas” —71-75

Hearing those words of their Preceptor, the Asuras spoke to the Devas, “O Devas! We are without arms, our armours are broken, we have no chariots, consequently, we will now go and practise austerities in the forest after covering ourselves with the bark of trees.” Hearing those words of the Asuras and believing the utterances of Piabalāda to be true, the Devas cast off their wrath and cheerfully stopped fighting with the defenceless Asuras —76-78

Sometime afterwards, the seer Śukra said to his disciples —“For the accomplishment of your desires, keep yourselves engaged in your penances, and, O Daityas! go and reside in my father's house and await my return there.” Giving that piece of advice to the Dānavas, Śukra went to Mahādeva —79-80

Śukra said —“O, Mahādeva! I wish to acquire the spells, that are not possessed by Brihaspati even, for the defeat of the Devas and the victory of the Asuras” —81

Mahādeva said —“Bhārgava! You shall acquire those spells after practising austerities with your head suspended down and imbibing the smoke of chaff for a thousand years. If thou succeedest in this, thou shalt obtain the mantras.” —82.

Then Śukra, accepting the injunctions of the Lord Śiva, touched His feet and said, "Sire! In obedience to your will, I start to observe the penances dictated by you"—83

Afterwards, the sage, to acquire the spells for the well-being of the Asuras, went to practise asceticism by the side of the altar from which smoke emitted fire—84

The Devas, understanding the treacherous policy of the Asuras, tried to turn them out of the region where they were residing—85

The Asuras, on seeing the Devas unexpectedly advancing towards them well-armed, in company of their Preceptor Brihaspati, became grieved and said—86 87

"We have disarmed ourselves at your request on giving us the assurance of safety, and our preceptor is engaged in the observance of his vow. How have you come to fight us after giving us an assurance of peace? O Devas, we have not our preceptor by us and are living peacefully without weapons, and we are dressed in deer skin and tree barks and without any occupation or possessions. O Devas! We are not in a position to fight with you. We will go and seek shelter from the mother of our preceptor without offering you any resistance. We will live with her in peace and safety till the return of the sage, after which we will fight with you"—88-91

All the terrified Asuras afterwards went and took shelter with the mother of the sage who gave them assurance of safety—92

She said, "Dānavas, do not be afraid of anything, drive away all your fears from your mind. Nothing will happen to you in course of your stay with me"—93

Then the Devas, without any regard for their comparative strength, went for the Asuras, who had placed themselves at the mercy of Śukra's mother, seeing which the mother of their preceptor very angrily said that she would make them Indraless—94-95

After saying that, she, mustering all her will-force, advanced towards Indra and made him helpless and spell-bound by her great power of yoga and austerities. The Devas, seeing Indra thus spell-bound and helpless like a dumb person by the mother of Śukra, took to flight—96-97

After the retreat of the Devas, Lord Viṣṇu said—"Indra! You enter yourself within me and I shall carry you away from this place"—98

Hearing those words of Viṣṇu, Indra Purandara instantly entered himself within Him, when the mother of the sage seeing him thus protected by Viṣṇu said in anger—99

"Indra! I have such powers of asceticism that I shall reduce you to ashes along with Viṣṇu, in presence of all creatures"—100

At that, both Indra and Viṣṇu were overcome with fear and began to contrive some means of escape. Viṣṇu said to Indra—"How shall we escape from her?" Indra replied—"Lord! kill her before she consumes me. I am solely protected by you, destroy her soon without delay." Viṣṇu thought over the great sin of killing a woman, but, in spite of that, he took up his Sudarśana Chakra to free Himself from that impending calamity—101-103

Trembling with fear, on thinking over the consequences of her anger and being afraid of the consequences of His own wrath, He severed her head with His Chakra—104

The sage Bṛigu then cursed Viṣṇu for killing his wife—105

He said—"Viṣṇu! You will be born seven times among men for the sin of killing a woman, knowing that a woman under no circumstances is to be killed"—106

Since then, owing to that curse of the sage, Viṣṇu manifests Himself among men for the good of mankind, whenever there is a decay in righteousness—107

Afterwards, the seer Bṛigu at once picked up the severed head of his wife and joined it to the trunk, saying—"Devi! You have been killed by Lord Viṣṇu, and now I recall you to life again." Saying that, he joined the head and the trunk together, and said "Abhijīva," ("Be revived"), if I have fulfilled all the rules of law and acted righteously, and if I have always spoken the truth, then through that truth you come back to life. I say so truthfully—108-110

After that, he sprinkled cold water and again pronounced the spell, "Abhijīva," and the lady at once came back to life—111

On seeing her thus coming to life, as if rising from her slumber, everyone present there repeatedly expressed his delight by saying, "Well done," "Well done"—112

Thus that lady was revived by Bṛigu, in the presence of the astonished Devatās, and the whole thing was considered a miracle—113

Indra seeing the sage Bṛigu quietly bringing back his wife to life, became terribly afraid and had no peace. He said to his daughter, Jayanti—"Daughter! This seer Śukra is practising rigid and devout asceticism for the sake of my foes, which is causing me deep pain, so you should go to him and please him by your service and conduct. Do just what he

wishes, and serve him with all diligence Do exactly what would please him Go, I have dedicated you to him Worship him and try all that lies in you to serve my end"—114-117

Hearing those words of her father, Jayanti went to the spot where the sage was engaged in his rigid austerities —118

There she saw the sage suspended with his head downwards and imbibing the smoke of the chaff, while a Yakṣa had just thrown him down the side of the Kunda She found him all absorbed in his austerities, looking very lean and having all his body covered with ashes Seeing the sage like that, she set herself to serve him according to the injunctions of her father In other words, she began to serve the sage by shampooing his legs and winning his pleasure by her sweet and flattering speech , and, adapting herself to suit his pleasure, she practised penances along with him for many a year On the lapse of a thousand years of practising this row of smoke, the God Śiva, becoming satisfied, appeared to grant boons to Śukra and said —“Śukra! You alone have undergone this penance, none other has done so, consequently, you alone will have the glory of conquering all the Devas by your asceticism, intellect, knowledge of the Sūtras, splendour, and power , and O, Bṛigunandana ! in addition to all these, you will achieve all the rest of your desires Do not say so before any one, but you alone will accomplish everything”—119-125

The Lord Śiva, after granting all those boons to Śukra, also made him master of mankind and riches as well as invulnerable —126

On getting all those boons, Śukra (Kāvya) had such an unbounded pleasure that all the hair of his body were thrilled with joy After that, the sage pleased the Lord by standing curved and singing the hymn of praises to the God of blue red color —127

Śukra said —“I salute Thee, O Śiva! designated as Śīti Kanṭha (blue-necked), Kaniṣṭha (short-statured), Suvaṁchas (full of splendour), Lelihāna (eats much), Kāvya (omniscient), Vatśara and lord of Andhasa, Kapardīn (whose hair is matted), Karāla (whose form is formidable), Har-yakṣa, Vaiḍadā (who is propitious), Saṁstuta (well praised), Sutirtha (most sacred), the Lord of all the Deities, Rāmaś (full of impetus), whose eyes are threatening, who wears a crown on His head, whose face is handsome, who is the Creator, whose forms are infinite, who is the seed of the universe, fountain-head of asceticism, whose size is short, hair is unkempt, is the leader of forces, whose eyes are adorable, who is full of velocity, is worthy of being worshipped, whose complexion is red, whose body is like

a sandal wood tree for the enjoyment of serpents, who has a thousand heads and eyes, is bountiful, beautiful, ever omnipresent, white, the soul of the universe, reposes on mountains, is worshipful, whose body is covered with wrinkles, the Supreme God, capable of being pleased easily, well-dressed, armed with bow, who is known under the epithet Bhāgava, wearer of a quiver, full of radiance, known as svakṣa and kṣapana, a typical ascetic, copper-complexioned, fearful, of mighty form, of peaceful disposition (Śiva), the greatest of the Gods (Mahādeva), the annihilator of the universe (Saiva), the soul of the universe, the great benefactor, known also as Hiranya, (Hiranya literally means gold), the pre-eminent the highest, the central, Vāstospatti, armed with a bow, the exclusive giver of the final emancipation, the punisher of the wicked, the dexterous, the steady (Sthānu), the cause of speech, many-eyed, the foremost, the three-eyed, the master of all (Iśvara), the carrier of the goblet of human skull (Kapālin), the brave, the destructor, the three-eyed (Tryambaka), having capacious body, of tawny colour, red colour, armed with bow and arrow, of wonderful form, also known under the name of Dundubhi (a kettle-drum), the only footpath of a man leading to the gates of heaven, existing from all eternity, the giver of intellect, the dweller in the forest, householder, the controller of passions, the celibate (Brahmachāri), the great discriminator (Sāṅkhyā), the giver of absolution to the soul by uniting it to the supreme self (Yoga), omnipresent, the great Initiate, Ineffable, the great destructor, the lord of the universe, the great restrainer, the high bank of final beatitude, one who is known under the epithet of Chekitāna, the pious, the greatest of the seers, the revealer of the Vedas, the pure, the protector of all, the expeditious in movements, having a tuft of hair on the head, mighty, having large teeth, the creator of the universe, the resplendent, the well-known, the illustrious, the sharp-witted, the terrible in form, the grim, the giver of prosperity to all, the simple, the chief, the righteous, the propitious, the invulnerable, the imperishable, the everlasting, the perpetual, the busy, the most eminent, the supporter, the Supreme Being, the forgive, the forbearer, the truth, the imperishable, the Common Cause, the bearer of the battle-axe, the wielder of the trident, having the Divine Vision, the quaffer of the Soma, the inhaler of the smoke, the sacred, the great director of the universe, the prompt in making appearance whenever needed, the annihilator, the master of flesh-eaters, the giver of rain in the form of clouds, the lightning, the all-penetrating, the all-superior, the great nourisher and the supporter of all, the destructor of the demon Tripura, the sacred, having the curly hair and sharp-pointed weapons, the great source of communication, the giver of supernatural powers with ease, the

one known under the epithet of Pulasti, the shining, the impetuous, the giver of prosperity, the rider of the bull, the all and ever-abiding, the uniter of the soul with the Supreme Spirit, the holy, the observer of celibacy, the annihilator of demons, the conqueror of self and of death, the worthy of being offered sacrifice, blazing like fire and known under the epithet of Prachetas, the pure, the destructor of the evil spirits and beasts, free from all impediments, the very soul, the intoxicated owing to the quaffing of the poison, the annihilator of all, the most unfathomable, whose neck is dark blue, owing to the drinking of the poison, (cf. कृष्ण पत्त्वा विराजते हि गरजं), who is known under the epithet of Jayanta, the Lord of all the realms, the independent, the Creator, the regulator of equality, whose hands are as white as silver, all-pervading, the omnipresent, the holy, the forcible, the sovereign Lord, the far-seeing, the possessor of high class arrows and horses, the benefactor, the giver of emancipation, whose complexion is reddish (Kapila), the Lord of Deities, the most learned and intellectual, of the mighty form, the illustrious, known under the epithet of Rodana, the patron of all, the renowned archer, the wearer of the armour, the great charioteer (Rathin), the guardian of all, the Lord of Bhrigu, the radiant, the dweller in the cavity of the heart, the creator, the unfailing, the serene, the wise, the best, the glorious, the soul of the universe, the wearer of the deer-skin, the Lord of animals and ghosts, the Sacred Symbol (प्रणव), the soul of the Rik, Yajus and Sâma (Vedas), as well as of the oblations made to the Gods and the Manes of ancestors, and the Deities, the creative power, the chief agent, the great ocular evidence, the Vedic knowledge, the Master of the past and the future of the universe, the soul of actions, who manifests Himself as Vasu, Sâdhyâ, Rudra, Âditya, Sura, Visa, Mâruta, Devâtmâ, the knower of the ceremony of bringing out Agni and Soma, the supreme soul, the sacred text, the Lord of medicaments, who calls Himself into being at His will (Swayambhu), who is not born (in the ordinary course), the magnificent, the Prime, the father of creation, the soul of Brahamâ, the Master of soul, the Master of all, the infinite, the omnipresent among all the purified souls, devoid of the properties belonging to all created things, the most excellent, the manifest, the immortal, the great nameless, the universal friend, the deliverer of the soul from the fetters of the phenomenal creation by conveying a correct knowledge of the other tattvas, the life of the seven worlds viz., the earth, the astral plane, the heaven-world, the space, the sky, and of the regions Mahâ, Jana, Tapa and Satya, the unmanifest (Prakriti), the Mahattatva, the elements, the senses, the Atman, the subtle element called Vibesa, salutation to Thee, O Soul of all Thou art the

eternal, the subtle, the gross, the enlightened, the supreme, the giver of final bliss, the omnipresent in the three regions and existing beyond these three, the pervader in the four higher realms, viz.—Mahâ, Jana, Tapa and Satya —128-167

O Lord Siva! if in course of this hymn of devotion, I have failed to describe Thee adequately, forgive me in consideration of my being your staunch adherent, for Thou art always a friend to a Brâhmaṇa —168

Sûta said --The sage, after thus saluting Mahâdeva, stood quietly, with folded hands, before Him. Then the Lord became still more pleased with Śukra, and, after placing His Divine hand on the seer, vanished instantly. After that, the sage addressed Jayanti, who was standing close by him. He said, "Who art Thou, and why art thou sorrowing for me, on account of my penances? Why art thou serving me with so much devotion and austerity? O Beautiful one! I am very much pleased with thy devotion and affection. What dost thou wish? Tell that to me. I shall certainly do anything for thy sake, howsoever difficult it may be —169-174

Hearing those words of the sage, Jayanti said —"Brâhmaṇ! Ascertain my desires through the powers of your asceticism" —175

At that expression of Jayanti, the sage realized everything through his Divine sight, and said to her —"O Enchanting one! Thou hast thought of living with me for ten years. This is your desire, which will be fulfilled, follow me to my abode." Afterwards, Sukra took her home and married her there —176-178

Then the sage Bhârgava, to enjoy himself in her company undisturbed, made himself invisible by means of his magical power —179

The Daityas, getting news of the return of their preceptor crowned with success, went exhilarated to pay their homage to him, but not being able to see him owing to his being enveloped in illusion, they returned as they had gone —180-181

Unfortunately for the Daityas, Brihaspati came to know of the doing of Śukra. He knew for certain that the preceptor of the Daityas would not break his shell of magic for ten years, as he was enjoying himself with Jayanti, the Devas, on the other hand, also came to know of the weak point of the Daityas, that the latter were ignorant of the distinctive features of their preceptor. They consequently entreated Brihaspati to do something for them. Brihaspati thus incited by his disciples, personating as Śukra, went and rallied the Daityas round him —182-183

He, in the form of Śukra, then addressed the Daityas that had flocked to him. He said —"O, my disciples! You are welcome. I have also

come here to do you good I shall teach you the knowledge that I have acquired from Siva " The Daityas were carried away by joy, and began to take lessons from him —184

After the lapse of ten years, the sage Śukra was also free from his enjoyments with Jayanti, and it is heard that Devayāṇī was born of her Then the Sage Śukra made up his mind to see his disciples—the Daityas—and said to Jayanti, " Lady, I am going out to see my disciples —185-187

Jayanti said—" Lord ! go and look after your devotees This is the duty of high-minded folks and I will not keep you away from it"—188

Śukra, on finding the Asuras deceived by Brihaspati, said to them—" Asuras ! I am Śukra, who has pleased Lord Siva All of you have been deceived by Brihaspati, who was personating me"—189-190

The Dānavas were bewildered to hear those words of the sage, and began to look amazingly at both of them sitting there At that time, the bewildered Dānavas could not say anything, nor could they distinguish their preceptor, at which the sage Śukra said—" Asuras ! I am your preceptor Śukra , this is Brihaspati, the preceptor of the Devas Leave him and follow me"—191-193

Then the Asuras again looked at both of them, but did not perceive any difference between Śukra and Brihaspati —194

At that time, the sage Brihaspati instantly addressed the Asuras—" Asuras ! I am your preceptor, Śukra This is Brihaspati, who has come here after assuming my form Asuras ! Brihaspati is trying to deceive you by assuming my form " After that, all the Asuras held a council and discussed among themselves that, that preceptor (Brihaspati) had been giving them lessons since ten years who, according to their judgment, was their real preceptor —195-197

After that, all the Dānavas paid obeisance to the sage Brihaspati, in the guise of Śukra, and accepted what he said to them, for they were deluded by him during his stay with them for ten years —198

Then all the Asuras, with their eyes burning with rage, most angrily said to Śukra—" He Brihaspati, is our well-wisher and preceptor, depart thou (Śukra), for thou art not our guru He might be Śukra or Brihaspati, but he is our guru We remain under his instruction"—199-200

Saying so, the Asuras acknowledged Brihaspati under the garb of Śukra, as their preceptor At that, the sage Śukra, in a fit of anger, pronounced the following curse upon the Dānavas—" Dānavas,

in spite of my advice, you have refused to acknowledge me as your guru, in consequence of which you will lose your intellect and will be routed by the Devas " Afterwards, he departed from there —201-203

Bṛhaspati became immensely pleased to find his object gained when the Daityas were cursed by Śukra Then he assumed his own form, and instantly disappeared, after which the Dānavas were confused when they saw him thus vanishing —205

They then said among themselves " Oh, we have been grossly deluded on all sides by Bṛhaspati and got cursed by the sage Śukra " —206

They got very vexed , and all the Asuras, under the leadership of Prahlāda, immediately went to their preceptor, and with their heads cast down in shame, they stood before him in repentence The sage, finding his disciples come back, addressed them thus —" Though I tried my best to enlighten you all as to the true state of affairs, you did not pay heed to my warning On account of this disregard of my advice, you will surely be defeated in future "—207-209

Hearing those words of Śukra, Prahlāda, with his eyes full of tears, falteringly said to the preceptor —" O Bhārgava do not abandon us, we all are your devotees and look to you for protection, shield us O preceptor of the Divine Vision ! You are capable of knowing, that not having the good luck of seeing you, we were deluded by Bṛhaspati, the preceptor of the Devas And, O Bhīgunandana ! if you will not show kindness to us, then all of us, discarded by you, shall go to Rasātala " —210-212

The sage Śukra, on hearing these words, curbed his anger and, moved by pity and compassion, said " You need not entertain any fear, nor need you go to the Rasātala Certainly, you will obtain prosperity in future, so long as I am away, but your destiny must be fulfilled I cannot make it otherwise, for fate is stronger You must lose your intelligence from to-day, though you will regain it hereafter You will conquer the Devas only once, and after that you had better go to Pātāla Now the ten ages of your prosperity have come to an end, for that was the period predicted by Brahmā in which you had world-dominion You will again regain your kingdom in the Sāvarnika Manvantara, after which, O Prahlāda, your grandson, King Bali, will reign with all glory, in different realms , for, even, Lord Viṣṇu will promise this secretly to your grandson, when He will deprive him of his kingdom in His Dwarf incarnation Because you were devoted to Viṣṇu and your mind was regulated according

to His will, therefore Brahmā being pleased with you, gave you this world-sovereignty Siva, the most supreme Lord of the entire universe, has spoken to me, as a secret, that Bali will be the future king of the Devas, and therefore He, invisible to all, is awaiting that time O Prahlāda ! Brahmā, on being pleased with you, has granted another boon to you which I am not in a position to reveal to you, because Brahmā, the knower of the future, has not authorised me to do so He has also said that both these my disciples (Sandā and Mārka) are equal in wisdom to Brihaspati These two will protect you against all the machinations of the Devas in my absence "—213-224

On hearing these words of Sukra, the rigid follower of ritualistic rites, all the Asuras retired pleased, along with the high-souled Prahlāda, and being assured by their preceptor, Sukra, that they would gain at least one victory over the Devas, the Asuras, acting on these words, put on their armours and challenged the Devas to fight them The Devas, seeing the Asuras standing in the battle-field well-equipped to fight, came out to give battle —225-227

The great war between the Asuras and the Devas lasted for a century in which the Devas were repulsed and the Asuras were victorious The Devas held a conference and decided to invite Sandā and Mārka (as guests of the Devas), on the occasion of their sacrifice, after which they would get victory in the next war After coming to that conclusion, the Devas invited both of them to their sacrifice, and said —"O, twice-born ones ! You forsake these Asuras, we will be yours always, after conquering them through your support "—228-230

The Devas, thus made friends with Sandā and Mārka, and then fought with the Dānavas, when they were victorious As the Dānavas became powerless by being despatched by Sandā and Mārka, so they were defeated easily, and thus the curse of Sukra took effect —231-232

The Asuras, thus cursed by their preceptor, and without any spiritual support from any side, and repulsed by the Devas, found themselves in a most helpless condition and eventually entered Rasatala (infernal regions) The Dānavas, being thus dispirited by the victory of the Devas and through the instrumentality of Bhṛigu, went to Pātāla —233-234

Again, whenever there is decay in righteousness, Viṣṇu takes birth, in order to establish righteousness by destroying the Asuras —235

Brahmā had also ordained this, that those Asuras who go against the righteous injunctions of Prahlāda would also be killed by men - 236

In accordance with that ordinance of Brahmā, there was a partial

incarnation of Narâyana as Dharmâ, at the end of the Châksusa Manvantara, when the Devas performed a sacrifice at the beginning of the Vaivasvata Manvantara At this incarnation, Brahmâ was the officiating priest This was the first incarnation There was another incarnation of the Supreme Soul When the Devas were in distress, then, on the fourth day of the Moon, which was the anniversary of the beginning of a Yuga, Lord Visnu manifested Himself on the sea-coast He incarnated Himself as Nrisimha for the destruction of Hiranyakasipu Rudra officiated as the sacrificial priest This was His second incarnation —237-239

In the seventh Tretâ Yuga, when King Bali was in power, Dharmâ was the sacrificial priest at the time of the Lord manifesting Himself as Vâmana —240

O Sages! these three are the celestial incarnations of Visnu, and there are seven more human incarnations which the Lord underwent owing to the curse of Bhrigu —241

In the first Treta Yuga, when the fourth part of righteousness was lost, the Lord incarnated as Dattatreya, and the sage Mâikandeya was the officiating priest This was His fourth incarnation —242

The fifth incarnation was that of the world-Emperor, Mandhatri, which took place in the fifteenth Tretâ, when Ultânga was the officiating priest —243

In the 19th Tretâ, there was the sixth incarnation, as Paraśurâma, to root out the Ksatruyas, when Viśvâmitra officiated as the sacrificial priest —244

In the 24th Tretâ Yuga, the seventh manifestation was that of Sri Râmchandra, as the son of Dasaratha, and with Vasistha as the priest, to kill Râvana —245

In the 28th Dwapara, Visnu incarnated Himself as Vedavyâsa, the son of Parâśara, when Jâtûkainya sage was the officiating priest This was the eighth incarnation of Visnu —246

For the establishment of righteousness and the destruction of Asuras, through asceticism, there was the 9th incarnation, in the form of Buddha of Divine splendour, with His Eyes as beautiful as lotus, and with the sage Dvaipâyana Vyâsa as the officiating priest —247

At the close of Kalivuga (the present iron age), there will be the Kalki manifestation, in the house of Visnuyasa, and the sage, Pârâsarya Vyâsa will be the officiating priest This will be the tenth incarnation, and Yâjñiyavalkya will make his appearance before this coming manifestation —248

This incarnation will destroy all the wicked ones and the hypocrites, and, with a large army of the Brâhmaṇas, He will kill Sudra Kings and drive away all hypocrisy. After killing the enemies of Brâhmaṇas and other enemies, He will march on with His army in the 28th of the Kaliyuga, and then, after purifying the Sudras, will cross the ocean, where He will destroy the sinful mixed castes and, thus fulfilling His mission, He will educate his peoples —249 253

Afterwards, the people, by becoming enraged and deluded with each other, will kill each other to fulfil the future destiny —254

When, in process of time, the incarnation of Kalkî will vanish, then the future kings will be destroyed, through the rebellion of their subjects —255

The people, not finding any one as their protector, will fight amongst themselves, and will then land themselves in great troubles after killing one another —256

All cities and villages will be devastated, and the duties of castes and the stages of life will disappear —257

At that juncture—the end of the Iron Age—men will open markets to sell boiled rice, the Brâhmaṇas will sell the Vedas and the women will earn their living by selling their hair —258

People will be very short of stature, and they will be short-lived. They will make forest, as their place of dwelling, or they will reside by rivers and hills, subsisting on roots, fruits and leaves —259

They will clothe themselves with tattered clothes, the deer-skin, &c. All the castes will mingle into one mass, and the people will be reduced to penury and will find themselves in great distress and subjected to many troubles —260

Being thus tormented with myriads of troubles and difficulties, all the population will become annihilated along with the end of the Kaliyuga —261

Satyayuga (the Age of Truth) will follow on the heels of the disappearing Kaliyuga. "This is the narration of the doing of the Devas and the Asuras that I have related at some length to you, O sages, now hear an account of Yaduvamśa, Turvasu, Puru, Druhya, Anu, along with the glory of Viṣṇu" —262 263

*Here ends the Forty-seventh chapter dealing with the curse  
of Śukra on Asuras and the ten Incarnations*

*Note.—A summary of this chapter is given by Dr John Muir, in Volume IV of his Original Sanskrit Texts, pp 161-166*

## CHAPTER XLVIII

Sūta said —Turvasu was the father of Gaibha, who begot Gobhānu, the father of the heroic Trisālī. Trisālī was the father of Karandhamā, and Bharata was his son. This Bharata should not be confounded with Bharata, the son of Dusyanta. Dusyanta the father of Bharata, who was sinless belonged to the family of Puru —1-2

Because Turvasu did not exchange his youth with the infirmity of Yayāti, through the curse of the latter, therefore, the family of Turvasu did not become prominent, but it lapsed into the house of Puru —3

Dusyanta was the father of Varūtha, who begot Āndira, who was the father of Sandhāna. He also begot Pāndya, Kerala, Chola, Karna, and their respective countries were named after them —4-5

Druhya was the father of two heroic sons, named Setu and Ketu. Setu begot Saśadvāna, the father of Gandhāra, after whose name the vast Gandhāra country is known. He had choice horses of the Ārratta country \*—6-7

Gandhāra was the father of Dhaima, who begot Dhṛita, the father of Vīduṣa, whose son was Prachetā. Prachetā was the father of a hundred sons, all of whom ruled as sovereigns in the Mlechha country lying in the north —8-9

Anu was the father of the following three pious sons, viz., Sabhānara, Chakṣuṣa, Parameṣu —10

Sabhānara was the father of the learned Kolāhala who became a king. Kolāhala became the father of the holy Sañjaya, of worldwide reputation —11.

Sañjaya was the father of Purāñjaya, who begot Janamejaya, the father of Mahāśala. Mahāśala was the father of the renowned and pious king Mahāmanā, who was the lord of seven continents and a universal monarch. He was the father of two famous sons, called Usinara and Tītikṣu —12-15

Usinara had Bhrīṣā, Kṛiṣā, Navā, Darsā and Drisadvati as his five queens, all daughters of a Rājaisī —16

The old king Usinara, through his piety and righteousness, begot from his queens, the following pious and worthy sons, viz., Nṛigu from Bhrīṣā, Nava from Navā, Kṛiṣā from Kṛiṣā, Suvrata from Darsā, Śibi Ausinara from Drisadvati —17-18

---

\* Name of the Pañcha-nāga or Panjab (Mahābhārata)

Sibi begot four famous sons, *viz.*, Prithudarbha, Sutisa, Kekaya, and Bhadraka, and their countries were named after them, *viz.*, Kekaya, Bhadraka, Sanviā, and Paurā, and the country of king Nṛgnī was also known as Kekaya —19

Ambastha was the name of the capital town of Suvrata's country, and Vrisala was the capital of Kṛṣṇa, and Navarāstra was the capital of Nava. Now listen to the family of Titikṣu —20-21

Titikṣu became a renowned king and ruled in the East. He was the father of Vrisadratha, who begot Sena —22

Sena begot Sutapā, whose son was Bali. Bali, the Daitya King, was without an issue, for he was bound by the Mahātmā [in bonds of captivity]. But, as he was a great Yogi, he took birth in human body as Bali, the son of Sutapā, and procured five Kṣetraja sons for himself. These were Aṅga, Vaṅga, Suhma, Pundra and Kaliṅga, and their country is called Bāleya. The Baleyas and the Brāhmaṇas were the sons of that lord Bali —23-25

Lord Brahmā, satisfied with Bali, gave him a boon, namely, that Bali would be a great Yogi, would live for a Kalpa, would be invincible in war, superior in wisdom, and his mind would always be inclined towards religion. He would be endowed with knowledge of the past, present and future, the chief in his community, victorious in wars, a philosopher, and the establisher of the prescribed orders.

It was through the glory of Brahmā that Bali was favoured with children (even though made a captive by Viṣṇu) —26-28

The family of Aṅga will now be described —29

The sages said —“Sūta! How was Bali blessed with five children? What was the name of the mother of those children? Which Rishi begot them? How did he do so? Be good enough to relate to us all this, and also explain to us the glory of that sage (who begot those children for Bali) —30-31

Sūta said —In the days gone by, there was a great sage, named Uḍija, and Mamatā was his wife. Brihaspati, the younger brother of Uḍija, entertained a desire to enjoy in the company of the latter's wife. Mamatā, understanding the intentions of Brihaspati, told him not to think of anything of the kind, as she was bearing a child to his brother, and added “O! Brihaspati, the child in my womb will get angry, for being

---

\* Brāhmaṇas here does not refer evidently to the Brāhmaṇa caste, but to those descendants of Bali from whom the modern Burma got its name.

of the seed of Uṣīja, thy brother, he knows all the Vedas [and will not allow thy seed to fecundate in my womb] Thou, O Brihaspati, art also one, whose seed never goes in vain So do not approach me now After I am delivered of this seed of Uṣīja, do as thou thinkest proper, O Lord"—32-36

In spite of her remonstrance, Brihaspati, even though he was such a mighty sage, could not check his passion, and forcibly carried out his intention When he was about to emit his seed, the child in the womb cried out —37-38

"Sire! There is no room for two souls in the embryo, and I have come here before"—39

Hearing those words, Brihaspati became enraged, and thus cursed his brother's son in the womb—"You, who are present in the embryo and are putting an obstruction in my way of enjoyment, will suffer from blindness"—40-41

Afterwards on account of the curse of Brihaspati, the child was born blind and named Dirghatamā [Deep darkness] He was illustrious and persevering like Brihaspati —42

Dirghatamā settled himself in the house of his brother, leading a life of total celibacy Whilst so dwelling, he learnt from a bull, the dharma of the cattle, that of promiscuous intercourse without regard to relationship He was supported by his brother and uncle Sometime after, an ox happened to go there of his own accord, and began to feast himself on the Kuśa grass, planted there for sacrificial purposes, when Dirghatamā caught him by the horns —43-45

The ox, thus taken hold of by him, could not extricate himself from his grip, and, finding himself in a helpless condition said—"O, bravest of the brave! Let me go I have never come across a valiant man like you, nor was there any one as powerful as myself Now leave me I am pleased with you, and you can ask for any boon from me —46-47

Dirghatamā replied—"Where will you go, so long as I am alive? I shall not let you—the encroacher on other's rights—go"—48

The ox said—"Sire! I have committed neither any sin nor theft There is no hard and fast rule laid down to dictate to us, animals, what to eat and what not to eat, what to drink and what not to drink Many of these duties are imposed on bipeds, and not on us, the quadrupeds We are not guided by any such restrictions as to what should be done and what should not be done, and whom we should approach for sexual intercourse and whom not"—49-50

Sāta said —Hearing from the ox the natural laws of cattle, he released him from his grasp Afterwards, he fed him with corn, etc —51

On the ox going away satisfied with the repast, Dirghatamā began to meditate on the natural laws of cattle, and being convinced of its being the true law, he became a devoted follower of it —52

On one occasion he met the wife of his younger brother's son, Gautama, and, in spite of her being with child, he taking the laws relating to cattle to be of superior importance, did not desist from her, and caught hold of her with a violent jerk and enjoyed himself in her company, though she was like his daughter-in-law in relation Knowing about futurity, he began to dilate upon the cattle law, when that lady said —"You going against nature are behaving like an ox, and without having regard for the rules of prohibited relationships in sexual intercourse , but following the natural law of the beast, you have committed an incest on your daughter Consequently, I forsake you base and mean, and now go away on account of your doings "—53-56

With those words, she packed him in a wooden case and threw him into the Ganges, saying, "I abandon you (and do not kill you, pitying) your blindness and old age "—57

That case, after a long run, was drifted ashore and was taken possession of by Bali, the son of Virochana Bali made over the contents of the case to his queen, where he was taken out of the case and nourished with various kinds of dainties After that, he told Bali that he would grant him any boon he would ask for —58-59

Bali, the king of the Dānavas, besought him to beget progeny from his wife —60

In reply to the request of the king, that sage said, "This will be so ;" hearing which, Bali sent his queen, Sudeṣṇā, to him , but she, thinking him to be old and blind, did not approach him She, however, sent the daughter of her nurse who, through her contact with that sage, gave birth to Kākṣivāna and others —61-62

King Bali, seeing the Śudra sons, Kākṣivāna, etc , so well up in saintly precepts, so illustrious, so sacred and so versed in saintly lore, said to Dirghatamā that they were his sons. The sage said they were not the sons of Bali and claimed them to be his own, on account of their having been born of the Śudra nurse sent by the queen, who herself had discarded him on account of his age and blindness —63-66

After that, King Bali appeased that sage and was furious with his

wife, and sent her again well-dressed, after her toilet, to the sage, when the seer said —67-68

"O, Devî! Cast off your bashfulness and then lick the whole of my body with your tongue, after rubbing it with salt, curds and honey, you will then attain your wish and get sons"—69

The queen followed the directions of the seer, but omitted to lick the hind private parts --70

When the sage said "O, blessed one! Your eldest son will be without that part of the body which you have omitted to lick"—71

The queen said --"Sire! It is not worthy of you to bless me with such an offspring Be pleased at my devotion and show your mercy to me"—72

Dirghatamâ said —"O, Blessed one, through your fault this will happen exactly as I have told you and this son of yours will not delight you in any way, but your grandson will, he will, however, not feel the necessity of the missing part of his body" Then the sage, touching her abdomen, said, "O, queen because you have licked all parts of my body except the privates, your sons will be like the full moon, and, in all you will be blessed with five sons of Divine beauty who will be most illustrious, renowned, righteous and performers of sacrifices"—73 76

Sûta said —O Rishi, Sudeśnâ begot, through the favour of Dirghatamâ, Aṅga, the eldest, along with his brothers, Kalîṅga, Puṇḍra, Suhuma, and Vaṅgarâja Thus the sage begot the above-named five sons to the king Bali —77-78

Afterwards, the sage took all the five sons through a course of ceremony, enjoined on all the twice-born Thus that posterity was begotten —79

Then the divine cow Surabhi said to Dirghatamâ.—"As you followed the cattle law deliberately and took it to be superior to all, O, sinless! I am very much pleased with you and hereby remove your blindness by smelling you The sin of Brîhaspati is inherent in you I however relieve you of your old age, death and loss of vision, by merely smelling you"—80-82

That sage was instantly restored to his vision after being smelled by Surabhi, and got a long lease of life, along with beautiful eyes and form He came to be known as Gautama, on account of his being relieved of his blindness by (the smelling of) the cow Afterwards, Kâksîvâna, the son of that Sudra nurse, went with his father, Dirghatamâ, to Girivraja,

and after seeing and touching him practised penances for a long time, and in the fulness of time, through his asceticism, he purified the body obtained from a Śudra mother and became a Brāhmaṇa, at which his father told him "I consider myself to-day blessed with a son through you, and O pious one ! I feel blessed on getting a righteous and renowned son like you, who after casting off his previous sheath, has become a Brāhmaṇa"—84-87

Kākṣīvāna, on becoming a Brāhmaṇa begot a thousand sons, who came to be known as Kausamāṇḍa and Gautamas—88

Thus the circumstances bringing Bali, the son of Viśrochana, into contact with the sage, Dhīghatāmā, as well as the family of Bali, have been explained —89

Bali said to his five pious sons that he considered himself highly blessed on having them as his sons, and then encasing himself in his Yoga Māyā, he became invisible to all, and began to wait for the predicted period, in the Pātālapuri—90

The son of Aṅga was the King Dadhivāhana Dadhivāhana's son was King Dīvuatha, who begot the learned Dharmoratha —91-92

That Dharmoratha the great, drank the draught of nectar with the seer Śukra, on the Viśnupada mount, after which he became the father of Chitraratha, who begot Satvaratha, the father of Daśaratha, who is also known as Lomapāda He was the father of a girl, named Sāntā and a renowned son, named Chaturāṅga—93-95

Chaturāṅga, through the blessings of the sage Śrīṅgi, was the promoter of his clan He was the father of Prithulākṣa, who begot Champa, after whose name the country Champāpuri is known It first belonged to Mali—97

Champaka, through the favour of Pūrnabhadra, begot Haryāṅga, the father of Vibhānda, who begot Vīrana, the resister of his foes, who made the celestial conveyances descend on earth through his supernatural powers Haryāṅga was the father of Bhadraratha, who begot the King Brihatkarmā, the father of Brihatbhānu —98-100

Brihatbhānu was the father of Jayadīatha, whose son was Brihadratha Janamejaya, the great conqueror, was the son of Brihadratha, who became the father of the King Aṅga, the father of Karna —101-102

Karna became the father of Viśasena who begot Prithusena "Risīs ! I have enumerated to you the family of Aṅga, now I shall relate to you the family of Puru"—103

The Risīs said —"Sāta ! How is it that Karpa is said to be the son

of Sûta, when you say that he was the son of Anga? We wish to know about it, for you are an expert in these matters —104

Sûta said --Brihadbhânu begot a son, called Brihanmanâ, who had two queens, viz —Yasodevî and Satyâ, the daughters of the king Sarvya —105

Jayadratha was born of Yasodevî, and Vijaya was born of Satyâ —106

Bribat was the son of Vijaya and the father of Brihadîatha, who begot Satyakarmâ, the father of Adhînatha, who was the [Sûta] chariot-driver of Satyakarmâ. He had nurtured Kârna, the son of Anga, and so Kârna is known as the son of Sûta also —108

*Here ends the forty-eighth chapter dealing with the family of Soma and the founding of the Eastern dominions*

---

### CHAPTER XLIX

Puru was the father of the most illustrious Janamejaya who begot Prâchitvata and ruled in the East, and gave his name to the Eastern quarter (Prachi means East) —1

Prâchitvata became the father of Manasyu, who begot Pitayudha, whose hen was Dhundhu, whose son was Bahuvidha, the father of Sampâti —2-3

Sampâti begot Rahavîrachâ, the father of Bhadiâsva, who begot from the Apsarâ, named, Dhritî, ten sons, viz, Aucheyu, Hriseyu, Kakseyu, Saneyu, Dhriteyu, Vineyu, Sthaleyu, Dhameyu, Sanateyu and Puneyu Jvalanâ, the daughter of Tak-aka, became the wife of Aucheyu, from whom he begot the King Antinâra (another reading is Rantinâra), who became the father of many good sons, through his queen, Manasvini. The heroic Amârtaiyas, the pious Trivana, and, third, a daughter, named Gauri, who afterwards became the mother of Mândhatâ, (were born to him) —4-8

Ilinâ, the daughter of Yama, who was an auspicious lady (and was another queen of Antinâra), begot sons who were gifted with Divine knowledge —9

The son of Ilinâ begot four sons through his wife Upadânavi, viz, Rishyanta, Dusyanta, Prawîra and Anagha —10

Dusyanta became the father of a world conquering and Universal Emperor, Bharata, from his wife Sakuntala, whose descendants are called Bhâratas —11

To the King Dusyanta, an incorporeal Voice thus addressed — “Mother is like a pair of bellows to the father, from whom the son is born. The son is thus identical with the father. Therefore, O Dusyanta! foster your son and do not discard Sakuntalā. The son raises his deceased father back from the hell of Yama to heaven. Thou art the generator of this child. What Sakuntalā said is true.” 12-13

Thus Bharata was born of Sakuntalā and Dusyanta. In ancient times, when all the sons of Bharata perished, through a widespread and virulent epidemic, brought on by the wrath of the Goddess Mātrikā [? smallpox], then the Marut Devas brought Bharadvāja, the son of Brīhaspati, and gave him to Bharata — 14-15

The sages said — ‘Sūta! Please explain to us fully how the Marut Devas gave the most illustrious Bharadvāja to Bharata’ — 16

Sūta said — Brīhaspati, whilst staying on Earth, one day saw the wife of his brother, Uśīja, who was big with child, and addressed her thus — “Dress thyself well and let us enjoy”. She, being thus addressed, replied to Brīhaspati thus — “The embryo in my womb is mature and is already reciting the Vedas. Thy seed will also not be fruitless and thy proposal is sinful”. Hearing which, Brīhaspati said — “I need not be taught morality by thee, O sweet one”. After saying that, he carried out his desire by force, when on the verge of his final enjoyment the child from her womb cried out to Brīhaspati — “I have entered the womb first, O Brīhaspati, thy seed will also not go in vain. There is no room for a second body in this womb”. Brīhaspati being thus addressed by the child in the womb, replied in anger — “Because on such an occasion, dear to every creature, thou preventest me from enjoyment, thou shouldst see lasting darkness [Dirghatamas]” — 17-28

Afterwards, Brīhaspati cast his seed on the floor which at once became a child, seeing whom, Mamatā said to Brīhaspati, “I am going home, you should support [Bharata] this child [born of us two (dvāja)], O Brīhaspati” — 24-25

Afterwards, she went away, and the child was also given up by Brīhaspati. Seeing the child thus forsaken by both his father and mother, the Maruts, through pity, carried that child, Bharadvāja, to Bharata — 26

At the same time, King Bharata performed a big sacrifice to beget a progeny, but his object was not gained. Then he performed the Marutsoma sacrifice, when the Marut Devas becoming pleased with the devotion of the king, gave him the child Bharadvāja. In that way, the Marut Devas

presented this son of Br̄haspati, the son of Angusas, to the king Bharata —27 30

Bharata on getting Bharadvāja said —“I consider myself blessed on getting you” —31

Bharadvāja was named Vitatha [futile], owing to his being futile as a son, for he never entered the mother's womb. The Br̄ahmanas and Kṣatriyas born on this Earth of Bharadvāja came to be known as Dvīyā-musyāyana Kaulinas. When Vitatha was thus brought to Bharata, then Bharata went to heaven, and the sage Bharadvāja also went there, after anointing his son — 33-34

Vitatha begot the renowned Bhuvamanyana, who had four famous sons, viz., Brihatkesatra, Mahāvīrya, Nara and Gārga. Nara became the father of Saṅkṛti, who begot Mahāyaśa, who, through Satkṛti, had two sons, named Gurudhi and Rantideva. Gārga's heir was the learned Śibi, whose sons, known as Sāibyas and Gargās, were twice-born Kṣatriyas as well as Br̄ahmanas. Urūksvata was the worthy son of Āhārīya (Mahāvīrya) who begot, through Viśalā, three sons, named Tūyusna, Puskari and Kavi, and they became Br̄ahmanas and were called Uīuksavas, and these three were the highest Rishis amongst Kāvyas — 35-40

The Gargās, the Saṅkṛtayas and the Kāvyas are twice-born Br̄ahmanas with Kṣatriya strain in them. They were all very learned Kṛti, the son of Brihatkesatra, is known as Hasti. He was the founder of yore, of the city, called Gajasāhvava (Hastināpura). Hasti had three sons of great glory, named, Ajamidha, Dwimidha, and Puṇumidha. Ajamidha had three wives, born of Kuru clan, Nilini, Dhuminī and Keśini — 41-44

From his wives, Ajamidha begot sons of Divine lustre, because they were born to him in his old age, on the completion of his asceticism, therefore, they were very pious and powerful. They were all born through the blessings of Bharadvāja. Hear now their names in detail — 45-46

Ajamidha begot from Keśini, Kanva, who became the father of Mēdhātithi, the progenitor of the Kānvaya clan of Br̄ahmanas, from his wife Dhuminī, Ajamidha begot the King Br̄ihadanu, who was the father of Br̄ihamta, who begot Br̄ihāmanā the father of Br̄ihadhanu, who begot Br̄ihadīṣu, the father of Jayadīatha, who begot Aśvajit, the father of Senajit, who had four world-famous sons, viz., Ruchirāśva, Kāvya, King Dhridaratha and Vatsarāja — 47 50

Vatsarāja was the founder of the dynasty of Pañivatsaka, and Ruchirāśva became the father of Prithusena, who begot Paura the father of Nipa, who begot one hundred valiant sons, who all were known as Nipās. Among them Śrimāna was the most renowned — 51-53

Kâvya begot Samara, who was only fond of wars, and he begot three sons, namely, Pâra, Sampâra, and Sadaśva. They were renowned as great men in the world, and of them Pâra begot Prithu, the father of Sukrita, who begot Vibhrâja of versatile genius, who became the father of Anuha, who was the son-in-law of Sukra and the husband of Kritvi. Anuha begot Brahmañattha, the father of Yugadatta, who begot Visvakasena who, again, came back to this Earth on account of his good deeds —54-58

Visvakasena begot Udalakasena, the father of Bhallâta who begot Janamejaya Ugrâyudha, for the sake of Janamejaya, then put an end to the family of Nipa kings —59

The Rishi said —“Sâta! Whose son was Ugrâyudha, and in what family was he born, and why did he annihilate the Nipa Kings? Pray tell us all that fully” —60

Sâta said —Ugrâyudha was born in the Solar dynasty and practised penances for eighteen thousand years, when he was dried up like a pillar. King Janamejaya adored him for getting kingdom, and he, after promising kingdom to him, killed the Nipas. Once, the Nipas attacked the Rishi Ugrâyudha and Janamejaya, who was serving him in his Ashrama. Ugrâyudha addressed the Nipas with many conciliatory speeches, but they, heedless of them, injured them. Then Ugrâyudha, when being thus injured, addressed them —“Since you have not paid heed to my words asking protection and safety from you, therefore, I curse you thus. May you all be taken away by Yama, if there is any force in my asceticism.” After that, they were all taken before the God of Death. Seeing which, Ugrâyudha, overcome with pity, said “Janamejaya, you are worthy of rescuing these misguided, but brave men,” hearing which Janamejaya began to fight Yama, after crying out to his victims, “O, sinners! become the slaves of Ugrâyudha” —62-66

Strange to say, Janamejaya vanquished his foe and captured Yama, along with hells and their tortures —67

The God of Death, becoming pleased at the end, gave the knowledge of emancipation to Janamejaya, after which all the Nipas went to Lord Krishna —68

One who hears their history does not die an unnatural death, but attains bliss in both the worlds —69 \*

Now the family from Dhûminî—another queen of Ajamidha

---

\*The translation of verses 62-69 is tentative only. The passage is very obscure, and not found in many MSS.

Ajamidha begot from his wife, Dhumuni, the learned Yuvinara, who became the father of Dhritunâ, who begot Satyadhipiti, the father of the valiant Drîdhanemî —70

Drîdhanemî became the father of Sudharmî, who begot the illustrious Sârvabhauma, who became the world-emperor, and Mahâpaurava was born in his famous family. Mahâpaurava begot the King Rukmaratha, the father of Supârâva, who begot the righteous Sumati, the father of Sannatimâna, who begot Krita, who became the disciple of Hiranyanâbhi Kaudalya —71-75

This Krita was the promulgator of twentyfour kinds of Sâma Vedic Samhitâ, and the chanter of these Samas came to be known as Eastern Kârtasamagâs — 76

Ugrâyudha was the son of Krita, and was known as Kârti. He was the promoter of his family, and it was he who killed the father of Prithu by his valour —77

That father of Prithu was Nila, the king of the Pañchâla, and Ksema the renowned, was the son of Ugrâyudha — 78

Ksema was the father of Sunitha, who begot Nupajaya, the father of Viratha. This completes the line of the Paurava Kings — 79

*Here ends the forty ninth chapter describing the Paurava dynasty*

#### CHAPTER L

---

Sûta said — Ajamidha begot from Nilini, Nila, who was the father of Susanti, through his severe austerities. Susanti begot Purujânu, the father of Prithu, who begot Bhadrâshva. Now listen to the progeny of Bhadrâshva. He had five sons, namely, Mudgala, Jaya, Brihadishu, Javihara and Kapila. They all five, it is heard, were the kings in different parts of the Pañchâla and ruled with righteousness. Hence their country was called Pañchâla, or ruled by the five. Thus we have heard —1-4

The sons of Mudgala became Brâhmaṇas from Kṣatruyas and were founders of the family of Maudgalyas. Maudgalas and Kânvas, mentioned before, were the followers of the school of Âṅgusî —5

Mudgala begot the renowned Brâhmaṇîtha, the father of Indrasena, who begot Vindhyaśva, the father of a pair of twins, called Divodâsa and the daughter Ahilyâ, from his wife Menakâ —6-7

Ahilyâ begot the famous Rishi, Satânanda, who was the son of Saradvâna. —8

Satānanda begot Satyadhrīti, who was a famous archer He was the father of Amoghavirya — 9

At the sight of a nymph, Satyadhrīti cast his seed in a pool of water, out of which, one son and a daughter were born — 10

At the same time, King Śāntanu chanced to go for a hunt and, seeing the babies, took pity on them and brought them with him — 11

All those sons of Saradvāna came to be known as Gautamas Now the family of Divodāsa will be narrated — 12

Mitayu was the son of Divodāsa, and he begot Maitreya, the founder of the family of Maitrāyanas They were all Kṣatriyas, but became Bhārava Brāhmaṇas, belonging to the gotra Yati King Chaidyavara was the son of Maitreya — 13-14

Chaidyavara became the father of the learned Sudāsa, who begot Ajamidha the second, the father of Somaka, who begot Janta From him, a hundred sons were born in the line of Ajamidha and Somaka When Somaka was killed, then Dhūmīni, the wife of Ajamidha, practised most trying and rigid penances on the loss of her promising son. She went to sleep, after duly performing Agnihotra and finishing her meals — 15-18

Ajamidha then enjoyed himself with Dhūmīni, when she begot smoke colored Rikṣa, the valiant Rikṣa begot Saṃvarana, the father of Kuru, who forsaking Prayāga, built up Kuruksetra He practised long asceticism to call India, who at last appeared before him out of fear and granted him a boon — 15-21

It is for this reason that Kureksetra is so sacred The family of Kuru multiplied, the members of which came to be known as the Kauravas The five favourite sons of Kuru, viz.,— Sudhanvā, Jahnu, Parikṣita, Pajana and Aśvamedhana were all very pious and illustrious — 22-23

Sudhanvā begot Chyavana, who was very learned, and he became the father of Rikṣa, who begot Kṛiṣṇa, the great ascetic, who was the father of Chāidyoparichaya, also known as Vasu He was a remarkable warrior like Indra, and had the power of traversing the sky He begot from Guṇikā the following seven issues, named Mahāratha, known also as Brihadratha, King of Magadha (Bihāi), Pratīśṭhāvā, Kuda, Harivāhana, was the fourth, Yaju was the fifth, Matsya and a daughter, named Kali who was the seventh Brihadratha was the father of Kuśagra, who begot Vriṣabha, the father of King Punyavāna, who begot the King Punya, the father of Satyadhrīti, who begot Dhanusa, the father of Saiva, who begot Saṃbhava, the father of the King Brihadratha Brihadratha's son was born in two parts, which Jarā joined together (Sandhīta), who, on account

of being joined by Jarâ, came to be known as Jarâsandha He was the conqueror of all the Kshatriyas —24-32

Jarâsandha begot the illustrious Sahadeva, the father of the illustrious Somâvi, who was a great ascetic Sutaśravâ was the son of Somâvi Thus the Kings of Magadha have been described —33

King Jahnu was the father of the King Suratha, who begot Vîdûratha, the father of Sârvabhauma, who begot Jayatsena, the father of Ruchira, who begot Bhauma, the father of Tvaritâyu, who begot Akrodhana, the father of Devâtithi, who begot Daksha, the father of Bhimasena, who begot Dilipa, the father of Pratipa, who was the father of three sons, viz., Devâpi, Sântanu, Bahlika Bahlika was the father of the seven sons, known as Bâhlîvarâs Devâpi, forsaken by his subjects turned a muni —34-39

The Rishi asked —Sûta! Why was the King Devâpi forsaken by his subjects For what fault of his did the subjects not accept him? —40

Sûta said —That prince Devâpi became a leper, and that is why he was forsaken by everybody Now I will narrate the future family of Sântanu (as given in the Bhavisya Pûtâna) —41

King Sântanu was a very learned physician, and was highly accomplished It is laid down in the books on medicine that by his mere touch even the patient suffering from a most dreadful disease would be instantly cured and become young He was for that reason known as Sântanu He married the sacred Ganges —42-44

Note —Sântanu means the healer of the body

Sântanu begot, from Jâhnavi, the famous Devavrata, and from his second wife, Satyavati, the daughter of a fisherman, he begot Kâli and Vichitravîrya \* The favourite and sinless son of Sântanu, namely, Vichitravîrya, had died childless, and, consequently, Kriṣṇa Dvaiपâyanâ was appointed to produce a son on the widow of Vichitravîrya He thus begot three sons, named Dhritarâstra, Pându, and Vidura Dhritarâstra begot one hundred sons, from Gandhârî —45-47

Of his hundred sons Duryodhana was the most remarkable Pându had Kuntî and Mâdrî as his wives —48

Then Pându became the father of the five sons, given to him by the Devas, viz., Yudhiṣṭhîra, from Dharma, Bhîma, from Vâyu, Arjuna, from Indra From his second wife, Mâdrî, Pându got Nakula and Sahadeva, through the two gods Aświni —49-50

\* This Satyavati, while still a maiden, had given birth to Vedavyasa, through Rishi Parâśara.

The five sons of Pându had Draupadi, as their common wife, from whom Yudhiṣṭhîra begot Prativindhya, Bhîma begot Śrutasena, Arjuna begot Śrutakîrti, Sahadeva begot Śrûta Karmâ and Nakula begot Śatânika. Thus Draupadi begot those five sons to the Pândavas, and they are known as Draupadeyâs. The five Pândavas also begot another half a dozen sons, in addition to those five born of Draupadi. They are known as Pâñdaveyas to distinguish them from Draupadeyas. Thus, Bhîma begot from the Asura gûl Hidambâ, a son, called Ghatôtkacha and Sarvaga from Kâśî, Sahadeva begot Subotra from his wife Mâdri, and Nakula from Karenunati begot Niramitîa. Arjuna begot from Subhadrâ, Abhimanyu, and Yudhiṣṭhîra begot a son, named Yaudheya, from Devaki — 51-56.

Païksit, the conqueror of enemies' towns, was the son of Abhimanyu, and he became the father of Janamejaya, the Pious. When Janamejaya favored Risi Yâjñavalkya, whom he appointed as his Brahman priest at the Sacrifice then the sage Vaisampâyana cursed him to the effect "The innovations introduced by you O man of perverted intelligence, will not be respected. They will be honored only so long as thou wilt remain on earth" — 57-59.

Thus all the subjects, seeing the Victory of Kṣatruyâs over the Brâhmaṇâs, flocked round the King Janamejaya. From that day's curse the priests officiating at sacrifices performed by Kṣatruyâs began to decline and refused to attend on occasions of their sacrifices — 60-61.

When, after finishing the sacrifice of Prajâpati, on a full-moon day, Janamejaya was entering the hall of Sacrifice, he was prevented from doing so, by Vaisampâyana, but the former did not heed him. On the contrary, Janamejaya, the son of Païksit, after performing two Aśvamedha sacrifices, became a great Vâjasaneyaka, and went to the forest on account of his being cursed for entering into hostility with the Brâhmaṇas — 62-64.

Satânika, the son of Janamejaya, was very valiant, and he was anointed and proclaimed king by Janamejaya. Satânika begot the most illustrious Adhisoma Kriṣna,\* by performing aśvamedha sacrifice — 65-66.

Sûta said — Risis! This Adhisoma Kriṣna is reigning now, and it is in his reign that you have engaged in this big sacrificial session, of which three years have passed in Puṣkara and two years in Kurukṣetra and D्रîśadvati — 67.

The Risis said — Sûta! all this is past history now. We wish to hear something about the future kings. Pray tell us about the kings who will

\* Mr Pargiter, in his *Dynasties of the Kali age*, p. 4, note 10, says that the correct name is "Adhisoma Kriṣna".

be the rulers of the land. Be pleased to tell us their names and duration of their reigns, please also tell us the extent of Satya, Tretâ, Dvâpara and Kaliyugas, and also explain to us about the prosperity, adversity and vices of those ages"—68-71

Sûta said —Rishis! listen, while I narrate all which have not yet come to pass, as told to me by Vyâsa, of untiring energy, both with regard to the future Kaliyuga and the Manvantaras. After that, I shall tell you of the future kings—72-73

I shall narrate the kings who are to be in the families of Aila and Ikshvâku, as well as in the family of Paurava, among whom, the auspicious stock of the Aila and Ikshvâku families was established. All that I shall declare, as mentioned in the Bhavisya [Purâna]—74

Besides these, other kings will also arise, belonging to the castes of Ksatrîas, Pârâavas, and Sadiâs as well as those who are outside these [foreigners], namely, Andhîas, Sakâs, Pulindas, Chulikâs, Yavanâs, Kaiyavâtas, Abhîras and Sibâras, and those having a Mlechchha origin. I shall declare those kings, according to their succession and by name—75-76

Note.—According to Mr. Pargiter, these lines follow after the words "Mlechchha origin" viz., Pauravas, Vithotras, Vaidîsâs, five (Panchâlâs?) Kosalâs, Mekalâs, Kośalâs, Paundras and Svasphrakas, Sunidharmas, Sakâs, Nipas"

Adhisoma Kuâna is the first king, and I shall first relate to you his dynasty, as told in the Bhavisya [Purâna]—77

Adhisoma Kuâna shall have Vivâksu\* for his son, and after Hastinâ-pura is washed away by the Ganges, the latter shall make Kauâambi his capital, and he shall be the father of eight powerful sons—78-79

Bhâru will be the eldest and shall beget Chitiaratha, the father of Suchidîava, who shall beget Viñânamân, the father of King Suâena, who shall beget Sunîtha, (the father of Rucha, who will be) the father of Nrichakṣu,† who shall beget Sukhibala, the father of Pâriñava, who will beget Sutapâ, the father of Medhavî, and Purañjaya will be the son of the latter, and the father of Uîva, who shall beget Tigmâtma, the father of Brihadhratha, who shall beget Vasudâmâ—80-85

Vasudâmâ will be the father of Śatânîka, who will beget Udayana, the father of the brave Vahinara—86

Dandapîni will be the son of Vahinara and the father of Niramitra, who shall beget Kșemaka. The following sloka has been sung by the

\* Another reading is Nichakṣu

† Another reading is Uṣnâ. Another reading is Suchidratha.

ancient prophets.—“The source of Brahma-Ksatra stock the family honored by Deva-isis, will come to conclusion in the Kali age, when it reaches King Kṣemaka”—87-88

Sūta said —Riśis! I have narrated to you this dynasty of Pauravas who descended from Aījuna, the son of Pāṇḍu —89

*Here ends the fiftieth chapter describing the dynasty of the  
Pauravas up to Kṣemaka*

## CHAPTER LI

The Riśis—O! Sūta! Pray tell us about those Agnis or Fires which are honored amongst the twice-born, and narrate the history of the descendants of that dynasty in detail —1

Sūta—Riśis! In Svāyambhuva Manvantara, Agni Abhimāṇi (the presiding spirit of Fire), was born from the mind of Brahmā, and Svāhā was his wife. She gave birth to Pāvaka (Subterranean), Pavamāna (Terrestrial) and Suchi (Celestial) Fires. Pavamāna or Terrestrial Fire is produced by friction, and Pāvaka (Subterranean) Fire produces the magnetic fire, called Vidyuta —2-3

Suchi is also called Saura (Solar or Celestial Fire). These fires are known as Sthāvaras or Fixed Fires. Havyavāha is the son of Pavamāna —4

Pāvaka, Saharakṣa and Havyavāhamukha are sons of Pāvaka, Pavamāna and Suchi respectively. The Havyavāhamukha Agni is sacred to the Devas, and the first-born of Brahmā (Pavamāna) is the Fire sacred to men —5

Saharakṣa is the Agni sacred to the Asuras. These three Fires belong to the three classes. Their sons and grandsons number forty —6

They are now described and named separately. Pāvana (Pavamāna), the Fire of human beings (Laukika), is the first-begotten of Brahmā, and Brahmanandana known also as Bharata, was the son of Pavamāna. Havyavāha is also known as Vaishvānara Agni. He died while carrying Havya offerings to the Gods. He being dead, the son of Atharvan (Aṅgirasa) produced the Fire Puskarodadhi (produced by the churning the cloud), which is known as Atharva Alaukika Agni and also as Dakṣina Agni, by non-rubbing —7-9

Atharvan was begotten from Bhṛigu, and Aṅgiras was the son of Atharvan, who begot the above-mentioned Alaukika Dakṣina Agni.—10.

Pavamâna is called Nîrmathya Agni, also produced by (rubbing fire-sticks or) any friction, and the same is known as Gârhapatyâ Agni or Household Fire, the first fire amongst the Brâhmaṇas —11

He produced, from Samâti, two sons, named Sabhya and Avasathyâ, then Havyavâhana was enamoured of sixteen rivers The-twice born call this Agni Abhimâni Âbavaniya Fire also —12

The sixteen above-mentioned rivers are —

Kâverî, Kriṣnaveni, Narmadâ, Yamuna, Godâvâri, Vitastâ, Chandrabhâgâ, Irâvatî, Vîpâshâ, Kausiki, Satadru, Sarayû, Sîtâ, Manasvîni, Hradini and Pâvanâ

After dividing his body into sixteen different parts, he dallied with these sixteen river-goddesses, when he was attracted towards Dhîṣnyas \* Produced from these Dhîṣnyas was the progeny known as Dhîṣṇus Since they were the sons of Dhîṣnyas, they are called Dhîṣṇus —13-16

All the sons of the rivers made friends with these Dhîṣnyas Listen now about the Vihaṇiyas (those which are removable from the altar, and Upastheyns (those which are fixed in their places and worshipped there), amongst them Vibhu, Pravâhana and Agnidhra are fixed in their altars, while the remaining Dhîṣṇus are shifting and moving, and taken from their places when some auspicious occasions arise Hear the names of Anîrdeṣya and Anvârya Agnis, in order —17-18

Vâsava and Krisânu are both the Agnis of Dvitiya and Uttara veda (altars) Samiṭ was the son of Agni, and the Brâhmaṇas worship these eight Fires —19

Parjanya and Pavamâna are also Agnis and are seen on the Dvitiya altar Pâvakoṣa and Samuhya are the Agnis found in the North or uttara altar —20

Havyasûda and Asapriyâ are both known as Sâmîtra Satadhâmâ and Sudhâjyoti are described as Raudriâisvarya agnis Brahmajyoti and Vasudhâmâ are said to be Brahmarshâniya The Upastheya Agni by Ajekapâda is known to be Sâlâmukha —21-22

Anîrdeṣya and Ahirbudhnya are carried to the south The Brâhmaṇas say that these Upastheya Agnis should be worshipped by all —23

\* Dhîṣṇya —A sort of subordinate or side altar, generally a heap of earth, covered with sand, on which the fire is placed, and of which 8 are enumerated, viz., besides the Agnidhriya [in the Agnîdhra], those in the Sadas belonging to the Hotî, the Maitravaruna or Pra-tastî, the Brâhma-râchchanaśin, the Potri, Neṣṭri, and Achchâ-vâkâ and the Mârvâliya, (Monier-Williams' Sanskrit-English Dictionary )

Now I shall describe the Viharanîyas and their eight sons. **Bahîpa Agni**, the carrier of sacrifice, was the son of Hotriya —24

**Piachetâ Agni** is the son of Piashampeya. He is the second Agni. **Samsabâyaka Viśvevedâ** is the son of Agni, called Brâhmaṇâchampâ —25

**Svâmbha Agni** is described having its origin in the waters. His name is Setu. These Dhisnya Aharana (shifting) Agnis are worshipped along with the Soma in the Soma sacrifice by Brâhmaṇas —26

The good call Pâvaka Agni to be Yoga, and that Agni is worshipped along with Varuna at the time of purificatory bath —27

Agni, the son of Hridaya, that digests the food, is known as Man-yumân, Jâtharâgñi, and Vîdhâgñi —28

The Agni that is produced spontaneously by friction and consumes all beings, is the son of the Agni Manyumân, called Ghorasaṇvaitaka —29.

This Agni dwells in the ocean, drinking water, in the mouth of Vadavâ (? oceanic volcano), and the son of Samudravâsi (oceanic fire) is Sahaiaksa —30

**Saharakṣa Agni** resides in the houses of the people, and fulfils their desires. **Kravyâda Agni**, the son of Sahaiaksa devours the dead (*i.e.*, the funeral fire) —31

These are the sons of Pâvaka Agni, as related by the Brâhmaṇas. Their sons, through Sauvînya, were stolen by the Gandhaivas and the Asuras —32

The Agni obtained by the rubbing of Aranî went to dwell in the sacrificial fuel. This fire is called Lord Ayu, in which sacrificial victims are immolated —33

Ayu begot Mahimâna, the father of Dahana. This Dahana is the presiding Fire in Pâkayajña domestic sacrifices, and eats the fire oblations made into it, and it eats also offerings made to the Devas and the pitris. His son is Sahita Adbhuta, who is very celebrated —34-35.

He eats the offerings, &c., made at Prâyahschitta (atonement). He (Adbhuta) is the father of a portion of the heroic Devâṁśa, known as the Great —36

Vividhâgñi was born of the Vîra Devâṁśa, who begot Mahâkavi. Aîka, the second son of Vividhâgñi, begot eight sons —37

He who is known as Rakṣohâyatikut is the presiding deity in all Kâmya sacrifices. The second son is Surabhî (the fifth), Rukmîvân (the

sixth), Vasumâna (the third), Aunada (the fourth), Haryaéva (the fifth), Pravargya the seventh), and lastly Kseimavâna (the eighth), and including the progeny of Suchi Agni, these are fourteen —38-39

Thus have been described the Fires, which were employed in sacrifices in previous world periods by the Devas, along with the Yâmâs (a class of gods) —40

These Agnis were the presiding deities of sacrifices in Svâymbhûva Manvantara. Now, these are subsidiary fires, shifting from one altar to another and roaming among animate and inanimate beings —41

They were the presiding deities of altars and were known as Agnîdhra Fires in ancient times, and were then carriers of sacrificial offerings, and were employed in those days, and may be employed in present days in voluntary (Kâmya) and occasional (naimittika) rites —42

They were worshipped in the first Manvantara by Sûkhas, Yâmâs and Devas —43

Thus have been described the altars and the sources of the various Fires, they should be known as existing in the seven Manvantaras, beginning with Svârochis and ending with Savarna —44

Thus have been described the Agnis of the past Manvantaras. Now will be described the characteristic marks of the Fires to be worshipped in the present and the future Manvantaras —45

In all Manvantaras, these Fires, along with Yâmâs and Devas, make their appearance in various forms and for diverse objects —46

These Fires live along with future Devas, and thus I have described the Past Agnis, what more do you wish to hear now, O Rishi —47

*Here ends the fifty-first chapter describing the dynasty of Agni*

## CHAPTER LII

The Rishi said —"Sûta! Be good enough to relate to us the difference between Virtue (Dharma) and Vice (Adharma) in detail, as explained by the Lord Vishnu, at the respectful enquiries of the King Vaivasvata Manu" —1

Sûta —"Rishi! Lord Janârdana, in the form of Fish, has explained at length Karma Yoga and Sankhya Yoga to Manu, the most illustrious son of the Sun, at the time when the world was a vast sheet of water,

He explained them at length the first creation and the destruction of the world"—2-3

**Note**—Karma Yoga=Performance of wordly and religious rites Sankhya here means Jñâna Yoga, as opposed to Karma Yoga.

Hearing those words of the sage, the Rishis cried out—"Sûta! We are also most eager to understand the characteristics of Karma Yoga, because, Oh Pious Sûta, there is nothing concealed from you in this world, and you are the knower of all"—4

Sûta—Rishis! I repeat the Karma Yoga, as taught by Vîshnu Karma Yoga is superior to a thousand Jñâna Yogâs, because Jñâna Yoga is produced by Karma Yoga, and from Jñâna Yoga, one attains the final emancipation The divine knowledge of Brahma springs from Karma Yoga and Jñâna combined Jñâna Yoga in its turn does not arise without Karma Yoga —5 6

**Note**—Jñâna Yoga=contemplation Akarma Jñâna=Renunciation

Consequently a person devoted to Karma Yoga attains to eternal Truth The entire Veda is the fountain-head of all Dharma, so also the conduct of those good men who know the Vedas is also a root from which Dharma arises —7

The eight spiritual qualities must exist in pre-eminence, in order to produce Dharma —They are,—(1) Clemency to all living beings, (2) forbearance, (3) protection of him who seeks aid in distress, (4) freedom from envy in the world, (5) external and internal purification, (6) to calmly meet sudden emergencies in all works, (7) not to exercise niggardliness in the case of the distressed and with regard to one's earnings, (8) not to hanker after the riches or the wives of others —8-10

The above eight spiritual qualifications of the soul are enumerated by those learned in the Purânas, and the possession of these qualities is essential which is, for Kriyâ Yoga, the means to the attainment of Jñâna Yoga —11

None in this world attains Jñâna without Karma Yoga, consequently, the duties enjoined by the Shuti and Smriti ought to be closely followed with diligence —12

Every day one ought to perform the five sacrifices, viz., (1) worshipping the Devas, (2) the Pitris, (3) feeding men (4) and the lower creatures, (5) and honouring the Rishis —13

The learned, according to the prescribed rites, ought to (1) adore the Devas by performing sacrifices to the fire, (2) worship the Rishis by the

recitation of the Vedas, (3) the Piṭris by Srāddha offering, (4) the men by showing hospitality to guests, (5) honour all lower living creatures by scattering food for them on the ground, as described in Balikarma — 14

To ward off the five sins by which the animal life is accidentally destroyed by a house-holder, *viz.*, (1) the threshing of the grain, (2) grinding of condiments and grain, (3) lighting the fire-place, (4) fetching water, by the water-pot, (5) sweeping by the broom, the above five sacrifices have been laid down — 15

By the above-mentioned five deeds the householder commits the five sins that are known as pañchaguna, and he does not go to heaven without freeing himself from the sins, which are wiped out by the performance of the five sacrifices mentioned above — 16

The twenty-two as well as the eight Samskāras laid down in the law-books, put together, do not lead to emancipation if the man does not possess the eight spiritual qualifications mentioned above — 17

Consequently, a man possessing these qualifications ought to perform the rites laid down in the Vedas and should support the cow and the Brāhmaṇas with his wealth, and always do good to others and should be well-conducted — 18

One ought to worship Śiva (Vāsudeva) containing within Him Brāhma, Viṣṇu, the Sun, Rudra, and the Vasus, by means of cows, land, gold, cloth, incense, flower-garland and water — 19

One should devoutly, free from jealousy, worship Śiva (Vāsudeva), according to the prescribed rites, and observe fasts and vows. Śiva (Vāsudeva) is supersensuous, peaceful, unmanifest, subtle, all-pervading, eternal. And the whole universe is His form. All the following Devas are his manifestations — *viz.*, Vasudeva, Lord of the universe Brāhma, Viṣṇu, the adorable Sun, Śiva, the eight Vasus, the eleven lords of hosts (eleven Rudras), the Lord of the Lokapālas, Piṭris, and the Mātriganas — 20-21

These above-mentioned Devas are said to be the powers of God. These powers include all moveable and immovable objects and belong to that Supreme Spirit who is the root of Brāhma, Viṣṇu, Śiva and the Sun, and who is said to be the overlord of the Unmanifested (Prakṛiti) — 22

He who has adored all the four (Brāhma, Sūrya, Viṣṇu and Śiva) without observing any difference among them, has worshipped, in fact, the whole universe, including the moveable and the immovable — 23

He who is the supreme abode of Brahmâ and the rest, in whom all the three (Vedas) reside, He is Pûsam, the personification of Vedas, and consequently he should be worshipped with great diligence —24

These Deities, Brahmâ, &c., should be worshipped by feeding the fire and the Brâhmaṇas. Moreover, they should be adored by utterance of mantras, sacrifices, gifts, penances, fasts, silent recitation of the sacred name, and by fire oblation —25

For those who are devoted to the above-described Kriya Yôga and who love the Vedânta; the Smritis and the Sâstras and who are afraid of sinful deeds there is nothing in this world as well as in the next which is beyond their reach, i.e., such people attain everything —26

*Here ends the Fifty-second Chapter describing the Kriyâ Yoga*

### CHAPTER LIII

The Rishi —Sûta! Be pleased to describe to us the number and bulk of all the Purâṇas in due order and in detail and also about the giving of gifts and charity (Dâna Dharma) —1

Sûta —I shall tell you exactly what the Universal Soul, the ancient Male Lord, said to the King Vaivasvata Manu —2

Lord said to Manu! Brahmâ remembered in the beginning first the Purâṇas among all the Sâstras. So Purâṇas are the first among the Sâstras. Afterwards, Brahmâ uttered out the four Vedas from His four mouths —3

There was only one Purâṇa in the beginning of the Kalpa. It was alone the means of the accomplishment of the three ends of man (Dharma, Artha and Kama). And it was the only holy book consisting of thousand millions of stanzas —4

When all the regions perished by fire at the Great Dissolution, then I recited the four Vedas, with their six Âṅgas as well as the Purâṇas, the manifold Nyâyas, the Mîmâṁsâs and the Dharmasâstra. In the beginning of the new age, I immersed myself in the furious waters, at the time of dissolution of the universe and explained them fully to Brahmâ, Who in His turn revealed them to the Devas and the sages, after which they spread all over the world. Therefore, the Purâṇas became the source of all other Sâstras. Later on, seeing the neglect of the Purâṇa under the changed circumstances, I re promulgated them in every yuga, through my partial incarnation of Vyâsa. In every Dwâpare yuga I compiled the Purâṇas to

the extent of 4 lacs of slokas, and spread them in the world after dividing them into eighteen. Even now the bulk of the Purâna extends to a hundred crore verses in the Deva Loka. On the universe, however, its bulk is abridged only to 4 lacs of slokas, and is divided into eighteen Purânas.—  
5-11

Sûta.—Hear, O Rishis! the names of the different eighteen Purânas I shall enumerate them to you, as they were described to Marichi by Brahma—12

(1) *The Brahma Purâna*—Brahma Purâna contains 13,000 slokas. One who writes and gives it away in charity, along with a cow and water, in the month of Vaisâkha, on the full-moon day, passes his days in Brahmaloka, in happiness—13

(2) *The Padma Purâna*—At the time when this universe came out of the cosmic waters, in the beginning of the Lotus Kalpa, and in the form of a golden lotus, then the Padma Purâna was revealed, describing that creation, and it is called Padma Purâna by the wise. And it consists of 55,000 slokas—14

One who gives away Padma Purâna in charity, along with a golden lotus and sesamum, in the month of Jyaiṣṭha, gets the benefit of performing an âvamedha sacrifice—15

(3) *The Viṣṇu Purâna*—Similarly, the rules of virtue laid down by Parâsara, for the period when there was the Varâha incarnation of Viṣṇu, in the beginning of Varâha Kalpa, form the Viṣṇu Purâna—16

That Purâna contains 23,000 slokas and one who gives it away in charity, along with a cow and clarified butter, in the month of Âśadha, on the full-moon day, is purified of all sin and goes and rests in peace in the region of Varûpa—17

(4) *The Vâyu Purâna*—The rules of virtue laid down by Vâyu, along with the glory of Rudra, in the Svetâ-kalpa, is known as Vâyaviya Purâna. It contains 24,000 slokas—18

One who gives it away in charity, along with a cow, sugar and an ox, to a Brâhmaṇa, whose family is large, on the day when Râkhi thread is tied on the wrist, in the month of Srâvana, goes and resides for a Kalpa in the region of Śiva—19

(5) *The Bhâgavata Purâna*—The Purâna which begins with the description of the sacred Gâyatî worship, and goes on to mention various Dharmas and which contains a narration of the destruction of the demon Vîtrâsura as well as an account of the famous men who flourished in the Sârasvata Kalpa, is known as Bhâgavata—20-21

One who writes Bhāgavata and gives it away in charity, along with a golden lion, on the full-moon day, in the month of Bhādrapada, attains final emancipation It contains 18,000 slokas —22

(6) *The Nāradīya Purāna* —The Nāradīya Purāna, containing 25,000 slokas is that in which Nārada has described the Brīhatkalpa and the dharmas of the Brīhatkalpa —23

One who gives away this Purāna in charity, on the full-moon day of Āsvin, along with a cow, attains bliss, and is liberated from the cycles of birth —24

(7) *The Mārkandeya Purāna* —The Purāna which begins with the story of the birds solving the difficulty of Dharma and Adharma, and which the pious sages explain in an answer to the question of the sage (Jaīmī), which has been described at great length by the sage Mārkandeya, at the request of the Rishis, and which contains 9,000 couplets, is known as Mārkandeya Purāna —25-26

One who writes this Purāna, and gives it away in charity, along with a golden elephant, on the full-moon day, in the month of Kārtika, attains the benefit of performing Punçarīka sacrifice —27

8 *The Agni Purāna* —The Purāna which commences with the description of the Isāna Kalpa, and which was a path of virtue revealed to Agni by Vaśiṣṭha, is known as the Āgneya Purāna, and contains 16,000 slokas —28

One who writes this Purāna and gives it away in charity, along with a golden lotus, a cow and sesamum, on the full-moon day, in Mārgasīrsha, attains the benefit of performing 16,000 sacrifices —29

9 *The Bhaviṣya Purāna* —The Purāṇa in which Brahmā has described the history of Aghorakalpa, the glory of the Sun, the existence of the Universe, the characteristics of the aggregate multitude to Manu, is known as the Bhaviṣya Purāṇa, and contains 14,500 Slokas —30-31

One who gives away this Purāṇa in charity, free from the feeling of jealousy, on the full-moon day of Pauṣa, along with a pitcher of raw sugar, attains the benefit of performing the Agniṣṭoma sacrifice —32.

10 *The Brahmavaivarta Purāna* —The Purāna which commences with the description of Rathāntara Kalpa, and in which Sāvarṇi Manu has described to Nārada the glory of Kṛiṣṇa and the history of the Rathāntara Kalpa, and in which there is also a constant allusion to Brahmavaraha, is known as Brahmavaivarta Purāṇa, and contains 18,000 slokas —33-34

One who gives away this Brahmavaivarta Purāṇa in charity to a

Brâhma, on an auspicious day, in the month of Mîgha, on the full-moon day, goes and enjoys in the region of Brahmâ —35

11 *The Linga Purâna* —The Purâna in which Sîva explained the virtues of Agni and the four Vargas, viz., Dharma, Artha, Kâma and Moksha, by manifesting Himself through the pillar of fire, which commences with the description of Âgneya Kalpa, and which was uttered by Brahmâ Himself, is styled Linga Purâna, and it contains 11,000 slokas. One who gives away this Purâna, along with sesamum and cow, in charity, on the full-moon day, in the month of Phâlguna, attains the form of and similarity with Sîva.—36-37

12. *The Varâha Purâna* —The Purâna in which Visnu has described the glories of the Great Boar to the goddess Earth, and which was recited in connection with the Mânava Kalpa, is known as the Varâha Purâna, and contains 24,000 stanzas —38-39

One who gives away this Purâna in charity, along with a golden eagle (Grauda), cow and sesamum, on the full-moon day, in the month of Chaitra, to a Brâhmaṇa with a large family, reaches the region of Viṣṇu by the favour of Varâha —40

13 *The Skanda Purâna* —The Purâna in which the six-faced Kârtika has expressed the virtues of high class men and also about the worship of Mahâdeva, is known as Skanda Purâna. It commences with the description of the Mâhesvara Dharmas, as found in the Satpurusa Kalpa, and contains 81,100 slokas, in this mortal region—41-42

One who gives away this Purâna, along with a golden trident, after writing it out at the time of the Sun being in the 12th sign of the Zodiac (Pisces), goes to the region of Sîva —43

14 *The Vâmana Purâna* —The Purâna in which the four-faced Brahmâ has related the glories of Trîvikrama, and which describes the three Vargas also to the Devas, after declaring the glory of Vâmana, is known as the Vâmana Purâna, and contains 10,000 slokas. It describes the Kalpa, and is auspicious. Following Kûrma Kalpa, one who gives it away in charity, after writing it out neatly in the autumnal equinox, goes to the region of Viṣṇu —44-45

15 *The Kûrma Purâna* —The Purâna in which Visnu has dwelt on the glories of the four Vargas (Dharma, Artha, Kama and Moksha), in the form of a Kûrma, in the Rasatala regions, before the sages, in connection with the story of Indradyumna, where Indra was also present, through his companion Indradyumna, is known as Kûrma-Purâna, and is related to Lâkshmi Kalpa. It contains 18,000 slokas.—46-47.

One who gives it away in charity, along with a golden turtle, at the time of the equinox, gets the benefit of giving away thousands of cows —48

16 *The Matsya Purâna* —The Purâna in which the Lord has related the glory of Nârsimha to Vaivasvata Manu, at the beginning of the Kalpa, with a view to propagate the Sutras, in the form of a fish, and in which the Lord has also described about the seven Kalpas, is known, O sages, as the Mâtsya Purâna It contains 14,000 slokas —49-50

One who gives this Purâna away in charity, along with a golden fish and a cow, at the time of the summer solstice, acquires the benefit of giving in gift the entire earth —51

17 *The Garuda Purâna* —The Purâna in which Kriâna has described the birth of Garuda out of the cosmic egg, in the Garuda Kalpa, is known as Garuda Purâna, and contains 18,000 slokas —52

One who gives away this Purâna in charity, along with a golden flamingo, attains a place in the region of Siva, endowed with highest perfection —53

(18) *The Brahmânda Purâna* —The Purâna commencing with the glory of the cosmic egg, and in which Brahmâ has described the future Kalpas as well as the history of the Universe to the Devas, is known as the Brahmânda Purâna, and contains 12,200 slokas —54-55

One who gives away this Purâna in charity, along with a yellow woollen garment, and a golden cow at the time of Vyatipâta, attains the benefit of a thousand Râjasûya sacrifices —56

Sûta said —Vyâsa, of wonderful activity, explained these eighteen Purânas, to the extent of 4 lacs of slokas, to my father, and the latter told me about it, and I, O Risis! have described the same to you —57

The venerable sage has abridged the Purânas for the sake of the good of this world, otherwise, the entire Purâna existing in the Deva Loka, contains a hundred crore slokas —58

*Upapurânas*—(1) *Nrisimha* —I shall now tell you about the difference between the Purânas that exist in the universe and the secondary Purânas There is a mention of Nârsimha in the Padma Purâna, and the 18,000 slokas (dealing with the history of Narasimha) forms the Nârsimha Purâna (which is one of the secondary Purânas) —59

(2, *Nandi upapurâna* —Where Swâmikârtika has described the glory of the great godless Nandâ (the portion dealing with that), is known as the Nandi Purâna —60

(3) *Sāmba upapurāna*—That Purāna in which Lord Śiva, taking His most noble consort, Gaurī, as his audience, has related about the future, as found in the Bhavisya Purāna and also is styled by the sages as Sāmba Purāṇa --61

(4) *Aditya upapurāna*—The learned who know, say that the recitation of the list of the Purānas dealing with the ancient Kalpa, is conducive to glory, fame and long life. This is the order of the Purānas, as described above. Similarly, the Aditya Upapurāṇa is also mentioned therein.—62

O Rishi ! the secondary Purānas have been deduced from the original eighteen Purānas —63

The following are the five characteristics of the Purānas —They describe (1) the creation of the universe, (2) its genealogy and dissolution, (3) the dynasties, (4) the Manvantaras, (5) the dynastic chronicles — 64

The Purāṇas, with these five characteristics, sing the glory of Brahmā, Viṣṇu, the Sun and Rudra, as well as they describe also the creation and dissolution of the Earth —65

The four Vargas (Dharma, Artha, Kāma and Mokṣa) have also been described in all the Purānas, along with evil consequences following from sin --66

In the Sātvika Purānas, there is largely a mention of Hari's glory. In the Rājas Purānas there is the greater mention of Brahmā's glory. In the Tāmasika Purānas, there is a mention of Śiva and Agni's glory. In all kinds of Purāṇas, of all the three attributes, the glory of Sarasvatī and the pitṛis have been described —67-68

The great sage Vyāsa, after compiling the 18 Purānas, indulged in the composition of the story of Mahābhārata, in order to magnify their bulk, which was an addition to the Purānas, by another lac of slokas. And in which he has condensed the sense of the Vedas --69

The glorious story of Rāmāyana, sung by the sage Vālmīki, at the instance of Brahmā, also extends to a hundred crore of slokas —70

Brahmā narrated the original Rāmāyana to Nārada, the latter revealed it to Vālmīki, who gave it to the world, and which is a means of giving Dharma, Kāma and Artha. And in which way the famous epic exists in the world, and contains 5,25,000 slokas —71

The learned know of the Purānas of the ancient Kalpa. The recitation of this list of the Purānas is conducive to prosperity, fame and long life. He who reads or listens to it, gets wealth, reputation, long life and emancipation.—72

This list is the most sacred It is the giver of fame and the destroyer of sins It is very dear to the pitris, and is prized by the Devas as a nectar It is external and destroyer of sin of all men —73

*Here ends Fifty-third, Chapter giving the list of Purāṇas and Upapurāṇas, and is known as the Anukramikā of the Purāṇas*

*Note*—It is a remarkable fact that this Purāṇa does not mention the eighteen Upapurāṇas, as they now exist. It gives the names of five such Upapurāṇas only, showing that when this Purāṇa was composed the other Upapurāṇas did not exist

#### CHAPTER LIV.

Sūta said —Rishis! I shall now relate to you in full about the gifts (Dāna Dharma), vows (Vrata) and fasts, as explained by the Lord in the form of fish This narration is in the form of a dialogue between the great Lord Śiva and wise Nārada and also a mention of trivarga (Dharma, Kāma and Artha) I shall relate exactly as the dialogue took place —1-2

In ancient times, Nārada questioned the Lord Śiva, who resides on the summit of Kailāśa, has three eyes, and is the enemy and destroyer of Cupid —3

The Sage Nārada said —“O Adorable God of gods! O Ruler of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Indra! pray tell me how one may become your devotee or a devotee of Viṣṇu and so attain wealth, life, health, beauty, luck, and prosperity? Pray also tell me which Vrata is the giver of gradual emancipation to married women or widows, possessing all good and auspicious qualities” —4-5

Lord Śiva said —Nārada! You have put a very useful question for the benefit of all Hear about the vow which is beneficial to widows There is a religious observance (Vrata) which is known as nakṣatrapuruṣa Vrata, which should be devoutly kept It (nakṣatrapuruṣa Vrata) is worship of Nārāyaṇa in the figure which should be made according to rule, having feet, etc., and the names of Viṣṇu should be recited —6-7

*Note.—Nakṣatrapuruṣa—A figure of a man, on the limbs of which various asterisms are marked*

The devotee should get an image of the Lord Vāsudeva made according to the instructions of the Brāhmaṇa, and should then commence to worship it from the month of Chaitra, at the time when the moon is in the Mūlā, etc —8

He should recite the following mantras on the various limbs, beginning from the feet and ending with the hair of the figure —

(1) नमो विश्वाद्धराय Namo Viśvādharāya—on the two feet, sacred to Mūlā asterism

garments, bedstead, &c., to a pious Brâhmaṇa, versed in the Sâma-veda. The mace should be placed in a pitcher of water —21-22

Besides all that, the devotee should give away other things worthy of being offered to a Brâhmaṇa, after which he should devoutly pray to the Lord to fulfil his desires in the words “ Manoratham nah Saphalikuruṣva hiranya garbhâchyutaruḍraśipin ” O thou having the form of Brahmâ, Viṣṇu and Śîva, fulfill all my cherished desires — 23

The image of Viṣṇu along with that of Lakṣmî, should be given away to the Brâhmaṇa and his wife, with a peaceful mind So also should be given a bedstead, made of wood, without any joints —24

The devotee should recite the following —“ As the worshippers of Viṣṇu never get any sufferings or sin, so let me get beauty and health as well as highest devotion towards Keśava , as the house of the Lord is never devoid of Lakṣmî, so my house, may never be bereft of my consort in all my life , O Kṛiṣṇa ”—25-26

After that, the Brâhmaṇa versed in astronomy, should be dismissed by giving away the image of the naksatra puruṣa, along with clothes, garland, sandal paste, &c. The worshipper should abstain from salt and oily food during all the twenty-seven days of his observance of the Vrata, and should feed others according to his means, without giving way to miserliness —27-28

The worshipper of the naksatra puruṣa attains all his desires, and at the end passes his days in the region of Viṣṇu with happiness He washes off all his sins as well as all the sins of his deceased ancestors committed in his present and past lives —29-30.

The married woman or the man who reads or hears the story of this observance with devotion, will free herself or himself from all the sins by hearing and reading it This observance confers many blessings on the worshippers —31

*Here ends the fifty-fourth chapter dealing with the observance called  
nakṣat्रapuruṣavrata*

Note — The twenty seven Nakṣatras which are to be worshipped in the ceremonial in the mouth of Chaitra commencing with the Moon when she is in the asterism, Mûla, and on successive twenty-six days, when she passes through different other asterisms are shown in the Table opposite to this page which has been reproduced from Colebrooke's Essays. The asterism, Abhijit, is no longer, counted amongst asterisms

## CHAPTER LV

Hearing all that Náraṇa said —“Lord! What should one, who, owing to delicate health or otherwise, is not in a position to go through the ordinance of fasting just explained by you, do?”—1

The Lord said —One who is not in a position to keep up the fast should take his meals in the night which will also give him everlasting benefit —2

Hear about the Vrata, called Áditya Sayana Sankarárchana observance, as described by the learned in the Puráṇas, as well as the method of worshipping Saṅkara, on the conjunction of the moon with particular asterism. That day is most auspicious which falls on a Sunday, when there is Sankránti and the 7th day of the dark fortnight and when the moon is in the asterism Hastí. On that day, the images of Umá and Maheśvara should be worshipped, the former after reciting the names of the God, Sun, and the latter along with the invisible form of Śiva —3-5

There is absolutely no difference between Śiva and the Sun, and consequently, the devotee, when worshipping the Śiva, uses the mantras addressed to the Sun. They are as follows —

With (1) सूर्योद नमः Súryáya namah, let him adore the feet of the image, along with Hastí asterism,

With (2) अर्काय नमः Arkáya namah, the ankles, with Chitrá asterism,

With (3) पुरुषोत्तमाय नमः Puruṣottamáya namah, the shanks, along with Sváti asterism,

With (4) ध्रुते नमः Dhruṭe namah, the region of the knees, along with Viśakha asterism;

With (5) सहस्रभावे नमः Sahasra Bhávave namah, the two thighs should be worshipped along with Anurádhá asterism,

With (6) अनंगाय नमः Anangáya namah, the generative organ, along with Jyesthá asterism;

With (7) इन्द्राय शोभय नमः Indráya Shobhay namah, the waist, along with Múli asterism,

With (8) त्र्वस्त्रे सप्ततुरामगमाय नमः Trvastre Septaturamgamáya namah, the navel, along with Púrvá and Uttara Áśvini asterism,

With (9) तिक्ष्णामुखे नमः Tíkṣṇámukhē namah, the arm pits, along with Śravána asterism,

With (10) विकर्त्तनाय नमः Vikarttanáya namah, on the back, with the asterism Dhanisthá,

With (11) द्व्यातविनाशनाय नमः Dvýatavínashanáya namah, in the eyes, with the Satabhíṣ asterism,

With (12) चण्डकराय नमः Chandaṅkráya namah, on the arms, along with Púrvá and Uttara-bhádrapada asterisms,

With (13) साम्नामधिस्याय नमः Sámnámadhisýáya namah, the two hands, along with Revati asterism;

With (14) सप्तवासद्वराय नमः Septvásavadhurandharáya namah, the nails, along with Asviní asterism;

With (15) कथोराधाम्ने नमः Kathoradhāmne namah, on the throat, along with Bharani asterism,

With (16) दिवाकराय नमः Divākarāya namah, on the neck, with the Krittikā asterism;

With (17) अंबुजेश्याय नमः Ambujeshyā namah, on the lips, with the Rohini asterism;

With (18) हरये नमः Haraye namah, on the teeth, with Mṛigasirā asterism,

With (19) सवित्रे नमः Savitre namah, the tongue, along with Ārdrā asterism;

With (20) पूनर्वासु नमः Pūnarvasu namah, in the nose, along with Pūnarvasu asterism;

With (21) अंभोरुवल्लभाय नमः Ambhoruvalabhāya namah on the forehead, along with

Pusyā asterism,

With (22) वेदवरीत्तरिले नमः Vedavratīttrilē namah, on the crown of the head, along with the asterism Aslesā,

With (28) विघ्नप्रियाय नमः Vibudhapriyāya namah, the ears, along with Maghā asterism,

With (24) गोभ्रहुमानवन्दनाय नमः Gobhrumanavandanāya namah, the eyes, along with Purvaphālguni asterism,

With (25) विश्वेश्वराय नमः Viśvesvarāya namah, the eye-brows, along with the Uttara phālguni asterism — 6-15

Afterwards the devotee should pray to Śiva "O, Lord! armed with a noose, a hook, a trident, a lotus, a human skull, and the wearer of the snake and the moon and the bow, I salute Thee O Lord! the destructor of Gaja, Demons, Cupid and Pura and Andhaka, etc., I salute Thee" — 16

The worshipper should also worship the different weapons (mentioned above), and should salute the Lord by bowing down his head, with the mantra Viśvesvarāya namah, and every day abstain from oil, flesh, green vegetables and salt, and eat moderately — 17

After thus taking his meals in the night, the devotee, on the Pūnarvasu asterism day, should put some rice, along with some ghee, in a vessel made of fig-leaves. And should then give it away to the Brāhmaṇa, after putting some gold in it. Then, on the seventh day of the fast, he should give to the Brāhmaṇa a couple of raiments — 18-19

On the day of the fourteenth repast after the fast, the worshipper should feed the Brāhmaṇas with raw-sugar, milk and clarified butter — 20

And after that, he should get a golden lotus, eight fingers in length, made with eight leaves and studded with gems, and bedecking it with nice cloth, should give it away to a Brāhmaṇa, along with bedsheets, pillow, utensils, shoes, chāmara, a piece of mattress, looking glass, garments, fruits, incense, bedstead, a cow with its horns covered with gold and hoofs with silver, along with her calf and a vessel of bell-metal for milching the cow. The cow must necessarily be given away on that occasion — 21-25

Then the devotee should pray to the Sun "God! as Your house is

not bereft of lustre, fortune and prosperity, similarly let mine be also in the enjoyment of same blessings"—26

"Lord! who else is there, excepting Thyself, to grant me prosperity, consequently, be pleased to safely and comfortably see me through this mundane sea of trials and troubles"—27

After that prayer, the devotee should circumambulate and salute the Deity, and then dismiss the Brâhmaṇa and send to his house all the things given in charity. None of them should be kept in the house of the worshipper—28.

Nothing should be said about this sacred observance to a blasphemer, to a person of evil conduct, to a hypocrite, or to a false reasoner, for they are liable to profane it. Doing so, would lead to sin—29

The self-controlled and the devout are worthy of being told about the mystery of this observance. Those learned in the Vedas assert that it is the destroyer of all sins and giver of all peace and happiness to men—30

Those women and men who observe this ordinance with devotion, are never bereft of their sons and other dear ones. They attain the Divine felicity, and are free from the curse of disease, grief and suffering—31

This ordinance was at first observed by Vasiṣṭha, Arjuna, Kuvera and Indra. The mere recitation of this liberates one from all sins—32

One who reads or hears about this Ravi Sayana observance, endears himself to Indra and helps his deceased manes to go to heaven from hell—33

*Here ends the fifty-fifth chapter describing the observance,  
called Adityasayana Vrata*

## CHAPTER LVI

The adorable Śiva said—I shall now explain to you about the Kriṣṇāṣṭamī Vrata (ordinance) which is the destroyer of all evils. This fast gives victory, peace and emancipation to men

Saṅkara should be worshipped on the eighth day of the dark fortnight in the month of Mârgaśīṣa, Sambhu, on the corresponding day of Pausa, Maheśvara in Mâgha, Mahâdeva in Phâlguna, Sthânu in Chaitra, Śiva in Vaiśâkha, Paśupati in Jyaiṣṭha, Ugra in Āṣâdha, Sarva in Śrâvana, Trayambaka in Bhâdiā, Hara in the month of Āśvina, Isâna in Kârtika. These pujâs should be performed every month, on all the 8th days of the dark fortnight. The devotee should worship the

Brahmanas, and should observe a fast after giving away cow, land, gold and cloth to them, especially to the devotees of Śiva. In the night time, Śiva should be worshipped with Pañchagavya and with urine of the cow, clarified-butter, cow's milk, sesamum, barley, Kusa grass, water, the water of the washing of the cows' horns, the leaves of Sirisa, arka (*Calatropis gigantea*), leaves of Bilva (*aegle marmelos*) and curds —1-6

*Note—Pañchagavya—Five products of the cow, taken collectively, i.e., milk, curds, clarified butter, urine and cowdung*

The worshipper should feast the learned and the pious, from Mārgasi-īśa after an interval of two months, under the following trees --asvatha (the holy fig tree), vata (the banyan tree), udumbara (*Ficus glomerata*), plakṣa (the rose-apple), palāsa (*butea frondosa*), jambu (*eugenia jambolana*), and he should use the tooth-brush made of these trees to cleanse his teeth on those days. An offering of arghya water and black cloth and black cow should be made to the Deity, and at the conclusion of the fast, curds, grain, canopy, flags and chāmaṇa, &c., should be given away in charity —7-9

Brahmanas should be given the five gems, along with a vase of water and a black cow, gold and different kinds of cloths. If the worshipper be not in a position to give away all that, he should give a cow at all events. Close-fistedness should not be exercised in charity, for it leads to sin. One who observes the Kṛishnāṣṭami fast according to the rules laid down, enjoys happiness after being venerated by the Devas, for 307 kalpas, in the region of Śiva —10-11

*Here ends the fifty-sixth chapter dealing with the Kṛishnāṣṭamitorata to be observed on the eighth day of the dark fortnight of every month*

### CHAPTER LVII

Nārada said —“O Lord! with moon as thy crest-jewel, pray tell me all about the ordinance, the observance of which begets long life, health, fecundity of the race, kingdom, in several successive lives” —1.

The Lord Śiva said —Nārada! I have already explained to you about the ordinance that confers everlasting blessing on the devotee, and I shall now also explain to you more clearly about it, as described by those learned in the Purāṇas —2

Rohinīchandra Sayanaviata is most sacred. The devotee should worship the image of Nārāyaṇa, after reciting the names of the moon in observing it —3.

When the full moon day falls on Monday, or when the Rohini asterism falls on the full moon day, the learned should bathe with pañchagavya and mustard, and, after that, should recite "Âpyâsava" Mantra for a hundred and eight times —4-5

Note.—Âpyâsava—A Vedic Mantra

The Sudra also may observe this Vrata with extreme devotion, freeing himself from the company of all unbelievers, and should devoutly salute the Gods, Moon and Viṣṇu, with the following mantra, instead of the Vedic one —Somâya Vaśadâyâtha Viṣnave cha namo namah —6

After finishing his bath and the recitation (japa) of the mantra, he should return to his house and worship Mañhusûdana, by offering fruits and flowers and singing the names of Moon (Sôma), as given below —7

After reciting (1) सोमाय शमनाय नमः Somâya śantâya namah, should be worshipped the feet (of the Divine image), and after reciting (2) अनन्तधाम्ने नमः Anantadhâmnâye namah, should be worshipped the shanks and knees, after reciting (3) जलोदराय नमः Jalodarâya namah, the two thighs, and after reciting (4) अनन्तबाह्वे नमः Anantabâhvâye namah, the organ of generation —8

After reciting (5) कामायासुखप्रदाय नमः Kâmâya sukhapradâya namah, the waist of the moon should be worshipped After reciting (6) अमृतोदराय नमः Amritodarâya namah the stomach, after reciting (7) सायंकाय नमः Sâyankâya namah, the navel should be worshipped —9

After reciting (8) चन्द्राय नमः Chandrâya namah, the mouth should be worshipped, after reciting (9) द्विजाधिपय नमः Dvijâdhîpaya namah, the teeth, after reciting (10) चन्द्रमाय नमः Chandramâya namah, the face (hâsyam), after reciting (11) कुमुदवनमियाय नमः Kumudavantavâna priyâya namah, the lips —10

After reciting (12) वनाउषधिनाय नमः Vanauṣadhinâya namah, the nose, after reciting (13) आनन्दभूताय नमः Añanandabhûtâya namah, the brows, after reciting (14) इन्द्रीयरक्षकाय नमः Indivârayâmakarâya namah, the eyes like lotus —11

After reciting (15) समास्तधर्वावन्दिताय नमः Samastâdhavaravanditâya namah and दैत्यनिष्ठाय नमः Daityaniṣṭanâya namah, the two ears, after reciting (16) उदाधिप्रियाय नमः Udadhipriyâya namah, the forehead,, and after reciting (17) सुसुमाधिपतये नमः Susumâdhipataye namah, the hair —12

After reciting (18) मुरारीय नमः Mûrâriyâ namah, the head of Murâri, after reciting (19) विशेषय नमः Viśeṣayâ namah, the coronet (of the Divine image) Rohini should also be worshipped The devotee, by praying "O, Rohini, the beloved of the Lord, also known under the name of Lâkshmi, O blessed one," should, offer sweet-smelling flowers, incense and eatables, etc., and sleep on the floor in course of the night on getting up early in the morning, and after taking his bath, he should offer a vase of water, gold and eatables to the Brâhmaṇa, with the mantra यज्ञविश्वामी and then hear the recitation of some sacred book (Itihâsa) for a couple of muhûrtas (96 minutes), after taking twentyeight morsels of food with clarified butter, milk and urine of the cow, but devoid of flesh and salt —13-15

Then he should worship the Moon and Viṣṇu with Kadamba, blue-lotus, Ketaki, jasmine, lotus, sevatî, kuvaja, white kannair and champaka —16.

Hari should be worshiped with all the various kinds of flowers that bloom in various months, from the beginning of the month of Śāvana —17

In this way, the devotee should go on with the worship, according to the prescribed rites till the end of the year, after which he should give away a bedstead, along with a mirror and other things in charity —18

Then he should make an image of Rohini and the Moon in gold. The image of the latter should be six fingers in length and that of the former four fingers. And he should give them away to a good Brāhmaṇa, along with eight white pearls, white cloths, milk, some utensil of bell, metal, rice, raw sugar, sugar-cane and fruits —19-20

He should also give away after that, a white cow, with its horns plaited with gold and hoofs covered with silver and its back covered with a cloth, along with utensils and a couch —21

Afterwards, the worshipper should bedeck the Brāhmaṇa along with his consort with fine clothes, &c., and should look upon him as the moon in company of Rohini —22

And he should then pray, "O Lord ! as Rohini shines in Thy house, so let my house, too, be full of lustre —23

O Lord Moon ! as you bring happiness and emancipation to all, be merciful enough to shower the same blessings on me, and let my devotion in you always remain firm "—24

"O Lord Moon, grant me health and prosperity I am afraid of this world, and desire bliss at your hands "—25

This ordinance is very dear to the Pitrīs, and the observer of it attains the region of the moon, after being the lord of the three worlds for 307 Kalpas, and then gets final rest —26

The women folk, observing this fast, beget the same fruits, and are liberated from the cycle of births —27

One who reads or listens to this form of ordinance, gets pure intellect and goes to heaven where he is venerated by the Devas —28

*Here ends the fifty-seventh chapter describing the worship of  
Rohinīchandraśayanavatā*

---

### CHAPTER LVIII

Sāta said —The King Vaivasvata Manu asked the Lord, who was lying in the water in the form of fish, to explain to him when should the sacrifice be performed and what feasts should be employed therein,

and what kind of altar should be made for the occasion to consecrate a newly built tank, well and pool, grove and temple —1-2

He also asked the Lord to explain what fees to the officiating priest, and Sacred offerings to the Deity should then be made. What are the proper time and place for this observance, and what preceptor should be appointed.—3

The Lord Fish said —Hear, O Mighty-armed, the rules about tanks, etc., as laid down in the *Itihāsa* and the *Purānas*, by knowers of the *Veda*. At the end of the summer solstice, the man performing the ceremony should get the preparatory rites to the observance performed in an auspicious bright fortnight, after consulting a Brāhmaṇa —4-5

After that, he should get a nice *Vedi* (square altar), measuring four-hands in length, with four openings made, near the tank, etc., to be consecrated, in the north-eastern direction —6

A pandal (mandapa), measuring sixteen hands, with four openings should also be made, and then around the altar should be made pits (gartas), five, seven or nine, but not more in number, one cubit deep and three circles round them. The receptacle (*yoni*) of the altar should be one span long and six or seven fingers broad —7-8

*Note—Vitasti=A measure of length equal to 12 fingers (being the distance between the extended thumb and the little finger)*

The gartas or pits should be seven in number, and the circles should be three inches (*parvas i.e.* digits) in height. Flags and bunting of the same colour should be on all sides —9

In all the four directions of the pandal, arches of the twigs of the *Asvattha*, *Uḍumbara*, *Plakṣa* and *Vaṭa* trees, should be made —10

Then eight Brāhmaṇas, versed in the *Vedas*, should be employed as sacrificial priests (*hotā*), eight as warders and another eight as *Jāpaka*s —11

*Note—Jāpaka=One who mutters prayers*

The Brāhmaṇa who has all the virtues in him, who is able to restrain his passions and knows the mantras, is calm and belongs to a good family, should be chosen to perform the functions of the priest (*Purohita*) —12

Water-pot and materials of sacrifice should be placed at each of the gartas (pits), after which a fan and a white chāmara should be placed on a big plate of copper —13.

Afterwards, the family *guru* (*Āchārya*) should scatter on the ground

the different kinds of boiled rice and barley for presentation to the Gods, after reciting the Vedic text —14

The sacrificial posts should be made of the glomerous fig, measuring three cubits, with closed fist, in length, of the hand of the sacrificer. It is also auspicious to get them made of the size of the worshipper —15

Twenty-five Rītivjas (the eight Hotās, eight Dvārapālas, eight Jāpakas and one Pūrohita), arrayed in ornaments of gold, should be presented with golden ear-rings, armlets, rings and different kinds of cloths, without making any difference between them. But the family (Āchārīva) should be worshipped with double the number of things offered to the Rītivjas. After that, the worshipper should give away in charity the things liked by him the best, along with a bedstead —16 17

The turtle and the crocodile should be made of gold, the fish and the unvenomous water-snake should be of silver, the frog and the crab of copper, and the Sisumāra (porpoise) fish of iron. All these things should be prepared from before, O Lord of men —18

Then the worshipper (yajamāna), bathed in the water of different herbs, according to the Vedic injunctions, by those Veda knowing priests, should enter the sacred pavilion, wearing a garland of white flowers, white garments and smeared with white sandal paste, through the western arch, in company of his consort, sons and grandsons, etc —19-20

Then the learned should draw up a ring with powders of five colors by uttering auspicious sound, while the music of drums is playing —21

Then a circle should be made, with sixteen spokes in it, and in the centre a figure of a beautiful lotus of four leaves should be made —22

Afterwards, images of the planets and the regents of the world should be established in the proper directions on the different altars, after reciting the Vedic hymns (prescribed for the occasion) —23

Then, images of the turtle and other water animals should be established in the middle, after reciting the hymns of Varuna (the God of waters), and afterwards images of the Deities, Brahmā, Śiva and Viṣṇu, should be established —24

After establishing the images of Ganeśa, Lakṣmī and Ambikā, and for the peace of the Universe, the images of the group of the Bhūtas should be established —25

*Note—Bhūta= Elements, demons*

Then the pitchers full of water should be covered with clothes, incensed with the odour of flowers and fruits —26.

After gailanding the warders and putting sandal paste on them, the Āchārya priest should ask the warders (the Dvārapāla priests) by saying "pathadhvam" to chant the Veda —27

In the east should be seated the Vahavichas (the two priests versed in the Rigveda), in the south the two Dvārapālas (learned in the Yajurveda), in the west the two Dvarapālas (learned in the Sāmaveda), and in the north, similarly, the two Dvarapālas (learned in the Atharva-Veda) —28

The worshipper should seat himself on the south side, facing the north and the Āchārya should ask the eight (Hotī) priests "Yajadhdvam" to commence the sacrifice, and to the skilful Jāpakas he should say "tiṣṭhadhvam" (to sit down). Thus directing them, the Āchārya, versed in the sacred text, should sprinkle water silently round the fire without uttering any ritual formula —29-30

Sacrificial fuel and clarified butter should be offered to the Fire, after reciting the hymns of Varuna, and the sacrificing priests should also be made to do the same all round —31

Afterwards, according to the prescribed rites, offerings should be made to the planets, Indra, Ivara, Matsuts, Lokapālas and Viśvakarmā —32

Then the knowers of the Rigveda, seated in the east, should separately mutter the formulae of R̄itrisūkta, Rudrasūkta, the auspicious Pāvāriṇānasūkta, and Purusasūkta, in the same way the Dvārapālas, learned in the Yajurveda, seated in the south, should separately mutter the formulae of Indra, Rudra, Soma, Kūṣmānda, Fire (Jätavedas), and the Sun —33-34

Similarly, the Dvārapālas, the chanters of the Sāmveda, seated in the west, should chant the hymns of Varāgya, Pañcasasūkta, Suvarna, Kudra Samphita, Sañsava, Pañchanidhana, Gāyatrīsūkta, Jyestha Sāma, Vāma-devya, Brihatasāma, Rāṇava, Rathantara, Kānva, Gavām Vratam, Rak-sogbna and Vayas —35-36

Afterwards, the learned (Dvārapālas) in the Atharva Veda, seated in the north, meditating on Varuna, should devoutly mutter the formulae of the Śāntikas and the Pañtikas —37

After performing the above-mentioned ceremonies on the first day, adhvāsana should be done, and then the earth of the following places, viz., Elephant wārd, stable, well, lane, pool, cattle-shed, ant-hill, the place where four streets meet, should be put into the pitchers full of water (placed in the pandal) —38

*Note.—Adhvāsana=Scouring with perfumes (2) Preliminary consecration of an image, its invocation and worship by suitable mantras, before the commencement of a sacrifice, (3) Making a divinity assume its abode in an image.*

Then the worshipper should bathe in the water, incensed with the following things —the yellow pigment white mustard, sandal paste and resin together with pañchagavya five products of the cow) —39

Having thus finished the preliminary rites performed with the utterance of great mantras, with regard to each ceremony, the worshipper should pass the night in sleep. In the morning, the worshipper should give away cows to the Brâhmaṇa, i.e., 100 cows or 68 or 50 or 30 or 25. —40-41

Later on, on some auspicious day and hour, as calculated by the astrologer (Sûrvatsara), the worshipper should give away after making her pass through the water of the pond, etc., to be consecrated, a cow decked with gold, to the Brâhmaṇa versed in the Sâmaveda, after chanting the text of the Vedas accompanied with music —42-43

Afterwards, the worshipper should put, five different kinds of gems on a plate of gold, and give away to the Brâhmaṇa, and should place the alligator, fish, &c., in a pond. Then he should worship the above-mentioned cow standing in water, held by the Brâhmaṇas versed in all the four Vedas, with the Ganges water, curd and rice, and should afterwards make it swim in the water facing towards the north —44-45

The cow should then be bathed by reciting the text of the Atharva Veda, such as punarîmeti, etc., as well as apohisthâ, etc., and then the worshipper should return to the circle of priests. Then the tank should be worshipped and bali offerings should be made on four sides of it. Afterwards, homa sacrifice should be performed for four days —46-47

At the end of these ceremonies the Chaturthi-Karma should be performed, when the worshipper should give daksinâ to the Brâhmaṇas, according to his means, and should mutter mantras of Varuna —48.

Then the entire materials employed in the performance of the sacrifice, including the pandal, should be equally distributed to the Ritvijas, and the golden bedstead should be conferred on the chief priest —49

Afterwards, the worshipper should feast either 1,000, 800, 50 or 20 Brâhmaṇas, according to his means, which is the way of consecrating the tank, as described in the Purâṇas —50

And, similarly, it has been laid down for the consecration of wells, pools, small tanks, &c —51

As to the consecration of palaces, groves, lands and buildings, the ritual formulae are somewhat different from the consecration of tanks.

Lord Brahma has prescribed these rites for the wealthy Forty people, in less favourable circumstances, should follow the Ekâgni rites, without giving way to miserliness — 52

The consecration of tanks in the rainy seasons and autumn begets the fruit of Agnistoma sacrifice, and of the Vajapeya and Atriâtria sacrifice in the seasons of Hemanta and Sisira — 53

*Note* -Agnistoma=a protracted ceremony, extending over several days in spring  
Vajapeya=a particular sacrifice Hemanta=winter season Sisira=spring season

The consecration in the vernal season (Vasanta) begets the benefit of Asvamedha sacrifice, and of the Kâjsûya in the summer season — 54

The Lord has said that one who performs the ceremonies mentioned above, with the mind purified by scriptures and with full faith in them, goes to the region of Siva and resides in heaven for many ages — 55

Afterwards that man goes and enjoys in higher regions, and remaining there for the full life of Brahmî, to the extent of two Parâidhas, gets emancipation and enters into the highest stage with Visnu And all this he gets through the merit acquired by the performance of this ceremony — 56

*Here ends the fifty eighth chapter dealing with the consecration  
of tanks, reservoirs, etc*

#### CHAPTER LIX

The Rishi—Sûta! Tell us in detail the rites which the wise should observe in dedicating and consecrating a tree, and also the region in which he would go after his death — 1-2

Sûta—I shall explain to you, O Lord of the world, the rites of dedicating as well as those prescribed for the laying out groves One should follow the rites, as dictated for the consecration of a tank, and should then plant the trees, the Rituvas, the pavilion and the Âchâryas should be arranged in the same way, and the Brâhmaṇas should be adored with sandal paste, &c — 3-4

Afterwards, the trees should be bathed with the water, mingled with all the prescribed medicinal herbs, and then, gairlanding them, they should be wrapped with cloth — 5

Then with a needle of gold, the Kârvavedha ceremony should be performed on the tree and, similarly, with the same golden stick the eyes of the tree should be painted with black pigment — 6

*Note* —Kârvavedha—The piercing of the ear with needle to put on earring

After that, seven or eight fruits made of gold should be placed on the altars.—7

The incense of the resin (gungula) is considered best on such an occasion. Copper pitchers, full of water, should be placed and worshipped with cloth and incense, &c., after placing corn on them —8

Then the pitchers containing gold, &c., inside them, should be placed close to the trees and sacrifice should be made after which offerings should be made to Indra, Vanaspati, Lokapilas, &c., according to the rites prescribed —9-10

After that a milch cow, covered with a piece of white cloth and wearing gold ornaments and having her horns covered with gold, should be let loose between the trees planted, with her face turned towards the north. A milking vessel of bell-metal should also be included among other things to be given away with the cow —11

Then the trees should be watered with (the water contained in) the copper pitchers, after reciting the Mantras of the Rik, Yaju, and Sâma, addressed to Varuna, accompanied by music and song —12

Afterwards the worshipper should bathe with water, taken from the above pitchers, and wear white garments, and then with a peaceful mind should confer on the officiating priests the cows, the riches, bedsteads, sacred threads, bracelets, rings of gold, clothes, sandals, along with other things, and feed them on milk for four days —13-14

Liberations consisting of mustard, barley and black sesamum and wood of *butea frondosa*, should be offered in the Fire, and on the fourth day, festivities should be observed and Dakshinâ should be given to the Brahmanas, according to the means of the worshipper —15

The worshipper should also give away with an easy mind other things which he likes, and should salute and dismiss the chief priest (Âcharya), after giving him twice as much as he gave to other officiating priests —16

The wise who observes these rites in dedicating the plantation of trees, obtains all his desires and attains to endless felicity

One who plants even one tree, O King! according to the prescribed rites, resides in heaven for 30,000 years of India. The planter of trees, according to the prescribed rites, liberates the same number of his past and future manes and attains the highest perfection, and is never re-born on earth. One who hears or relates to others these prescribed ceremonies goes to the region of Brahma and is venerated by the Devas —17-20

*Here ends the fifty-ninth chapter describing the rites of dedicating trees and planting groves*

## CHAPTER LX

The Lord Fish said —I shall now relate to you the Saubhâgya Sayana Viata (ordinance), the giver of all bliss which is known to the Paurânikas —1

When the regions Bhûsh, Bhuvah, Svâr and Mahâ, &c , were consumed, then the good fortune of all creatures went and centred itself in the heart of the Lord Visnu, in Vaikuntha heaven Agam, long time after, with the object of creating the world, O King ! the plastic material, consisting of Pradhâna (root matter), and conscious souls called Purusas, was enveloped with self consciousness (ahankâra), when there arose a rivalry between Brahmâ and Kriṣṇa, regarding the fashioning of the future world Then (from their clashing wills), a terrifying flame of fire arose in the form of a linga (pillar), by the warmth of which the good luck of the world resting in the heart of Hari came out (in the form of perspiration) —2-4

That good fortune emerging from the heart of Visnu, passed through the Intermediate plane (antarikṣa) before it could reach the earth in liquid form, and Dakṣa the wise son of Brahmâ, drank up this giver of beauty and loveliness —5-6

Thence Dakṣa got mighty power and great lustre, and the remainder of (the good luck) which reached the Earth was divided into eight parts From them were produced the seven givers of prosperity to all men, namely (1) sugarcanes, the Kings of all juices Rasañjam (2) Nispaṇa, coriander seed (?), (3) the cuminseed (Kâlajñâ), (4) the clarified butter (ghrita), (5) cow's milk (Ksîra), (6) saffron (Kusumbha), (7) safflower (Kumkuma) So also the common salt was produced as the eighth, and these are called saubhâgya Astaka, the eight blessings —7-9

That which was drunk by Dakṣa, the son of Brahmâ, the knower of Yoga, became his daughter, known as Sati (Pârvatî) Pârvatî, owing to Her matchless beauty, came to be known as Lalita, and that paragon of beauty was afterwards married by the Lord Siva The very Sati is called the Goddess who gives bliss (Saubhâgymayî) and also prosperity and emancipation Those men and women who worship Her with devotion may obtain everything —10-12

Manu said —O Lord ! explain to me the ways of worshipping that sublime Goddess, the upholder of the Universe, and tell me completely the ritual of Her worship —13

The Lord Fish said —The devotee should bathe himself with sesamum in the forenoon, on the third day of the lunar fortnight, in the month of Chaitra, during the vernal season , for, on that day, the Goddess was

united to Siva, the soul of the Universe, with marital rites. On that day, Siva, along with His consort, Parvati, should be worshipped with flowers, fruits, incense, lamps, and offerings of foods, &c., and the image (of Gauri) should be bathed with Pañchagavya and scented waters, after which Gauri and Sankara should be worshipped as follows —14-17

By pronouncing (1) पाटलायै नमः | अतियानन्मः, the feet of the Devi should be worshipped, and those of Siva should be worshipped with the mantra शिवाय नमः शिवायानमः. Their ankles should be worshipped after pronouncing (2) शिवाय नमः शिवायानमः and जयायै नमः Jayāyānamah, after saluting Rudra with (3) त्रिपुराय नमः Trigundyanamah and the Goddess, with भवान्ती नमः Bhavāntī namah, their shanks should be worshipped. After saluting Gauri with (5) हरेखरायै नमः Rudresvarāyai namah, Siva and with विजयायै नमः Vijayāyā namah, their knees should be worshipped. After saluting Siva with (6) हरिकेशाय नमः Harikesāyānamah and Gauri with वरदे नमः Varade namah (the giver of boons), the thighs should be worshipped —18-19

Their waist should be worshipped, after saluting the goddess with (7) ईशायै नमः Isāyai namah I salute the goddess Isā. He should salute Sankara with शक्ताय नमः Śaṅkariyānamah. The abdomen should be worshipped by saying (8) कोऽस्त्रै नमः Kotaval namah I salute the goddess Kotavi, and by गुलित्रै नमः -uline namah, I salute the wielder of the trident —20

The stomach of the Goddess, after saying (9) मङ्गलायै नमस्तुष्य Mangalāyai namastubhyaḥ, 'I salute Mangala' (the giver of bliss), the stomach of Siva, after pronouncing शिवाय नमः शिवायानमः 'I salute Siva, the breasts of the Goddess, after saying (10) ईशायै नमः Isāyai namah, 'I salute Isā', and of the God by saying सर्वात्मने नमः Sarvātmane namah, I salute the All Soul —21

The throat of the Lord, after saying (11) वेदात्मने नमः Vedātmane namah, 'I salute the soul of the Vedas', the throat of the Goddess, after saying रुद्रायै नमः Rudrāyai namah, 'I salute Rudrāyi, their hands, after pronouncing (12) त्रिपुराय नमः Tripuraghnāyānamah, 'I salute the god, the destroyer of the demon Tripura, and the goddess with अवन्तायै नमः Anantāyai namah, 'I salute the Infinite' —22

Their arms, after pronouncing (13) त्रिलोचनाय नमः Trilochanāyānamah 'I salute the three eyed Hira, and the goddess by कलानप्रियै नमः Kalānaprīyāyai namah, 'I salute the beloved of the Lord,' the ornaments, after saying (14) सौभग्याभवानाय नमः 'Saubhāgyaabhavaṇāyānamah,' their mouths, after reciting (15) स्वाहासद्धायै नमः 'Svāhāsadvadhāyai namah, for the goddess and ईश्वराय नमः Isāvārāyānamah, for the god' —23

The lips of the Goddess, the giver of prosperity, should be worshipped by reciting (16) अ॒कामधु॒र॒स॑म्य॑ नमः A-oka-madhu-śa-mya-namah and of the god by शिवाय नमः शिवायानमः. The cheeks of the Lord should be worshipped by saying (17) श्वाषै नमः Sthānave namah and of the goddess by चंद्रमुखप्रियै नमः Chandramukha-prīyāyai namah —24

The nose of the Lord should be worshipped by reciting (18) अ॒र्द्धां॒श्री॑य॑ नमः Ardhāṁśrīyānamah and of the goddess by अ॒सि॒त्प॒र॑य॑ नमः Asit-paṛayānamah. The eye-brows of the Lord of the world should be worshipped by reciting (19) उ॒ग्रा॑य॑ नमः Ugrāyānamah and of the goddess by ल॒लिता॑य॑ नमः Lalitāyai namah —25

The treases of Siva, after reciting (20) श॒र्व॑य॑ नमः Sarvāyānamah, 'I salute śarva,' the

destructor of Pura, the tresses of the hair of the Goddess, after saying वासवी नमः Vāsavyai namah "I salute Vāsavi, the hair of the god after reciting (21) नमः शोकटनाथाय namah Śokantañtha nāthaya and of the goddess with the same mantra. The head of the goddess, after pronouncing (22) भूमोग्रसमारुपये Bhūmograsamārūpye, "I salute Bhūmograsamārūpiṇī" and of the God by सर्वात्मेन मन्त्रः Sarvātmeṇi mantrah — 26

After thus worshipping Siva the devotee should place before Him the Saubhagya Astaka, the eight blessings consisting of the following eight things—clarified butter (ghee) nisphala (?) saffron cow's milk, unmissed sugarcane juice salt and coriander seed. All these eight things are considered as boons, and therefore their mixture is called Saubhagya Astaka — 27 28

**Note** — The enumeration here is slightly different from that of Sloka 9

After offering these things to Siva and Pārvati, the devotee should wash the horns of the cow in the night and drink the same and sleep on the floor — 29

Getting up in the morning, the devotee should bathe, and after turning his rosary, should offer clothes, garlands, ornaments, &c., to the Brāhmaṇa and to his Consort — 30

The devotee should get a pair of golden feet made and give them away along with the eight blessings to the Brāhmaṇa after invoking blessing of the Goddess Lalitā, saying "piyālām atia Lalitā" — 31

Similarly, for a year, the worship should be performed according to the prescribed rites, on each third day of the moon, by those who desire all blessings — 32

The following special articles of diet and mantras of gift (Dāna) should be observed here them from me. The devotee should drink the washing of the cow's horns in the month of Chaitra, eat cowdung in the month of Vaisikha. The flower of Mundā tree in the month of Jyaiṣṭha, the leaves of the woodapple (Vileapatala) in the month of Āṣadha, curds in the month of Śāvanā, the water sprinkled with the Kuśa grass in the month of Bhādiṇa. Milk in Āṣadha clarified butter, mixed with curd, in Kṛitika, the cow's urine in Mārgasīra, clarified butter in Pausa. Black sesumum in Māgha, Pañchagavya in Phālguna. At the time of giving away the gifts, the devotee should recite the following mantras "Lalitā, Vijayā, Bhadrā, Bhūrīṇī, Kunḍalā, Sīvī, Vāsudevi, Gaurī, Mangalā, Kumālā, Satī, Umā, be pleased". In other words, the devotee should in each month invoke the pleasure of the Goddess by reciting a fresh name out of the twelve names mentioned, e.g., in Chaitra he should say, "Lalita be pleased," in Vaisakha, "Vijayā be pleased," and so on — 33 37

He should offer the following varieties of flowers (one each month), at the time of worship — Mallika, Asoka, Lotus, Kadamba, Utpala, Mālati,

Kubjaka, Karabhrta, Bānam, Amlāna, Kuṭkuma and Sindhuvara ; or any of the following flowers, as procurable, should be offered, viz.—Jasmine, Safflower, Mālatī, Lotus and Karabīra —38 40.

Married woman or maid, after devoutly worshipping Śiva, at the end of the ordinance, should give away a bedstead, along with all the necessary requisites.—41

At the time of giving away the bedstead, the following things should also be placed on it and given away along with it —The golden images of Śiva and Pārvati, the golden figures of ox and cow —42

Besides this, according to his means, the devotee should give to the Brāhmaṇas and their wives, clothes, grain, ornaments, cows, cash, and should not give way to niggardliness or doubt —43

One who observes this ordinance—Saubhāgya-sayana—achieves all his ends and emancipation This ordinance had better be observed without any object of bearing fruits —44

One who observes this ordinance every month, begets good fortune, health, beauty, longevity, clothes, ornaments, etc., which last him for 900000(0300 years One who observes this ordinance for 12 years, 8 years, or 7 years, goes and enjoys in the region of Śiva, for three Kalpas —45-46

The married woman or the maid who keeps up this ordinance also attains the same benefits through the grace of the Goddess Lalitā —47.

One who hears or advises others to listen to the account of this ordinance, passes his days in heaven for a long time in the form of Vidyādhara —48

Cupid was the first to observe this ordinance, and Sahasrabahu, the son of Kārtavirya, was the second to observe it, and afterwards it was kept up by Varuṇa and Nandi, and consequently this is considered so sacred in this world —49

*Here ends the sixtieth chapter dealing with the observance called Saubhāgya-sayana-vratā*

---

## CHAPTER LXI.

Nārada said.—Śiva ! There are named the following seven regions of the Devas, viz.—Bhuḥ, Bhuvah, Svah, Mahah, Janah, Tapah, Satyam —1

How may mastery be obtained in succession over these lokās, and how one may obtain in this earth prosperity, beauty, long life and blessing. Please also explain to me how they become blessed with fortune, beauty and wealth —2

Siva said—Formerly, a fearful fire was ablaze on this earth accompanied with a strong wind. The friction caused by the wind produced the fire for the destruction of the demons, at the command of Puruhûta (Indra) —3.

That terrific fire reduced many demons to ashes, when Târakâsura, Kamalâksha, Kâladanîstra, Parâvasu, and Virôchana fled from their warfare with the Devas.—4

They all plunged themselves into the waters of the sea and took up their abode there, where fire with the help of air could not consume them —5.

Afterwards, the demons began to come out of the waters and persecute the Devas, men, sages and other living beings, and disappear again into the sea.—6

In that way, the demons asserted their boldness for twelve thousand years and continued their campaign of persecuting the three worlds, for a period of five or seven years at a time, by taking shelter in the fortress of the ocean —7.

Later on, Indra directed the fire and the wind to dry up the ocean in the following words—Dry up this receptacle of water quickly.—8

"Because it shelters my foes They have taken their refuge in the home of Varuna It should therefore be dried up as quick as possible"—9

Hearing that mandate of Indra, both fire and wind said to Him, the destroyer of Sambara—"It would be a great sin to destroy the ocean. Because innumerable beings had made it their home, and the destruction of the ocean meant their annihilation along with it, therefore, we, O Purandara, cannot do it. Lacs and lacs of beings inhabit the ocean, within the space of every yojana. It was not meet for us to annihilate them. What fault have they done to be destroyed, O chief of the Devas" —10-12

Hearing the speech of the fire and the wind, Indra became full of wrath. His eyes turned crimson red, and it appeared as if He was going to eat up both fire and wind. In his rage, he said —13

"There is no question of Dharma or adharma where Immortals are concerned, and your glory is still more high O Agni and Vâyu! Since you have violated my injunction and have adopted the duties of the Munis not to injure any being, and since you have leaned towards the enemies who are devoid of religion and politics, losing sight of duty

and Sāstra; therefore You, O fire, will now be born by assuming one body along with Maruta, among the mortals, in the form of a sage In that form of the sage Agastya, you will dry up the ocean, after which you will again come back to your Divine form"—14-17

After thus being cursed by Indra, both of them fell on the earth, where they were jointly born out of the pitcher by the seeds of Mitrā Vāruni and came to be known as Agastya—the younger brother of Vasishtha, and one of the most renowned ascetics—18-19

Narada asked Siva how Agastya became the brother of Vasishtha, and how Mitrā Vāruna became his father, and how the sage Agastya was born out of the pitcher—20

Siva said that, once upon a time Lord Visṇu, the son of Dharma, began to practise rigid asceticism on the summit of the Gandhamādana mountain Indra being afraid of His austerities, sent a group of nymphs in company of the Vernal-season and Cupid to distract Him from His penances and destroy His austerities—21-22

The Lord Hari was not in any way moved by the songs and music, gestures and tones of the Cupid and the spring, nor was his mind attracted to external objects—23

Finding the Lord remaining firm, the agents of Indra began to shiver with fear, when the Lord, in order to further bewilder them, produced from His thigh a damsel of exquisite beauty, fascinating the dwellers of the three worlds—24

Seeing whom, all the Devas, along with Cupid and spring, became enamoured of her, when the Lord said to them, in the presence of the Apsaras—25,

"This is the nymph Urvashi, O Devas! and I have created her to become the head of all Apsarās"—26

Then the God Mitrā called her, and asked her to enjoy with Him, which she accepted—27

Afterwards, the lotus-eyed Urvashi, while moving in the sky slowly, was caught by Varuna, who slowly pulled her by her cloth, at which she told Him: "Your action is not proper Because I have accepted Mitrā first, and consequently I cannot be your wife, O Varuna." Varuna told her, "Keep me at least in your favor and then go elsewhere."—28-29.

She replied.—"All right." When Mitrā heard this, he cursed her "You go down to the world of the mortals and be married to the son of moon, Budha, because you have followed the ways of a courtesan." Saying

that, both Viruna and Mitra threw their seed in a pitcher of water, out of which two sages Agastya and Vasistha came out —30-31

Once upon a time King Nimi was playing with women the game of dice, where Vasistha, the son of Brabhrā, chanced to go. At that time the king did not show his respect to the sage, at which the latter got annoyed and cursed him to become bodyless, and the king also pronounced another curse on the sage —32-33

They both became bereft of reason, as it were, through the curse of each other, and went to Brahma, the Lord of the Universe, to remedy the effects of the curses —34

With the orders of Brahma, Nimi entered the eyes of the mankind, and this causes them to open their eyes, but when Nimi takes rest, they close their eyes, and hence this shutting and closing of the eyes is called winking or nimbus. Vasistha, similarly, entered that pitcher of water and was born out of it, and after him the sage Agastya was born, of the same pitcher, of white colour, with four hands, sacred thread, kamandalu, and garland —35-36

The sage Agastya went to the Malaya mountain, along with his better-half, and began to practise rigid austerities, surrounded with a number of other sages, according to the rules of forest-dwellers, hermits —37.

A Long time after, the sage Agastya, seeing the world oppressed by the demon Tarakasura, drank the ocean —38

When Brahma, Venu and Siva went to grant him a boon and asked him to seek any boon he wished, Agastya said —“I wish to have the privilege of moving about in the Vimanas on the Dakshinachala mount, till a thousand Brahmás come and go in turn for 25 crores of times, and those who worship me at the time of the appearance of my Vimâna, should be the monarchs of all the seven realms, till the time of the re-establishment of fresh sovereignty in the seven climes” —39-41

Lord Siva said —“It will be so,” and afterwards all the Devas went back to their respective regions. It is therefore proper for every sensible man to give a libation of water (arghya) to the sage Agastya —42

Nîrada —“How should a libation of water be offered to the sage Agastya, he pleased to explain to me the ways of worshipping him” —43

The Lord said.—The learned should get up early in the morning, with the rising of Agastya, and bathe in water mixed with white sesamum and should wear garland of white flowers and white clothes.—44.

And then a good pitcher, free from perforations, should be placed, after decorating it with flowers, cloths, and filled in with Pañcharatna, and having a pot, full of clarified butter, put on top of it — 45

*Note*—Pañcharatna, Lit five gems They are variously enumerated viz.—

(१) नीलकं वज्रकं खेति पश्चागद्वा मौतिकं । प्रधालं खेति विष्णुं पश्चरत्नं  
मनीषिभिः ॥

(२) सुवर्णं रजतं मुका राजाश्वते प्रधालकं । रक्षपत्नमारक्षातम् ॥

(३) कनकं इरकं गीलं पश्चागद्वा मौतिकम् । यश्चरक्षामिदं प्रोक्तमूषिभिः पूर्व-  
पूर्विभिः ॥

Afterwards, a golden image, of the size of a thumb, with extensive arms and four heads, should be made and placed on top of the pitcher, and then, after filling it in with saptadhanva and decorating with cloth — 46

*Note*—Sapta-dhanva seven grains

It should be given away to a Brâhmaṇa, along with a vessel of bell metal, rice, shell, and then the image of gold should be given away in charity, with the devotee's face turned towards the south — 47

The devotee, if he can afford it, should give away a milch cow, along with her calf, after getting her hoofs covered with silver, and horns covered with gold, and wearing a bell round her neck, to a Brâhmaṇa — 48

The devotee should observe this rite for seven days from the rising of Agastya Some say that it should be observed for seventeen years — 49

" O Thou, as white as Kâda flower, O Thou born of Agni and Marut, O Thou son of Mitra and Vâruna, I salute Thee, born of a pitcher " The devotee worshipping like this with fruits and flowers, never gets aggrieved — 50

Afterwards, homa sacrifice should be performed, without any desire of obtaining any fruits The devotee should thus offer libation of water — 51

The devotee offering a libation of water once, according to the rites prescribed, gets beauty and health, the one offering it twice gets a place in Bhuvana region, the one performing it thrice goes to heaven In the same way, one who performs it seven times goes and enjoys in all the seven realms, one after the other, and the one who offers it during the whole of his lifetime, becomes united with Brahmâ — 52-53

One who hears, reads or relates to others this ordinance, goes to the clime of Viṣṇu, and is respected by the Devas there.— 54

*Here ends the sixty-first chapter dealing with the birth of Agastya and the method of giving arghya to him.*

## CHAPTER LXII

King Vaivasvata Manu said —Lord ! pray tell me about a vrata (ordinance) that may be the giver of good luck, health, prosperity, emancipation, and everlasting fruit in the next world —]

Lord Matsya said —I shall relate to you what Siva, the destroyer of Pura, said to Parvati, in answer to a question put by her, while he was sitting on the beautiful peak of the Kailasa. I shall explain to you now the ordinance which gives prosperity and emancipation, as enunciated by Him, in the course of a conversation on religious and pleasant subjects in which they were engaged —2-3

Siva said —Hear, O lady, attentively, the vow which gives endless merit, the best of vows, worthy of being followed by men and women. The devotee should put the tilaka mark on his forehead made with a paste of gordhana, fresh urine of the cow, cowdung and sandal, mixing them with curds, after bathing well and rubbing white mustard on his body, in the month of Bhadra, Vasakha or the holy Mârgasîrsha (Agrahâyan and), on the third day of the bright fortnight. This is giver of auspiciousness and health, and is very much appreciated by the goddess Lalita —4-6

On every third day of the bright and the dark fortnights, the male devotees, with their minds controlled, should wear yellow garments, the married women red garments, the widows should put on ochre-coloured garments, and maidens should be clad in white. Afterwards, the devotee should bathe the goddess with pañchagavya and milk, then with honey and then with water aromated with flowers and sandal. Then white flowers, various kinds of fruits, salt, raw-sugar, milk, clarified butter, white rice, sesamum, coriander and cuminseed should be offered to the goddess, and a libation of water should be made on the third days of the bright and dark fortnights with the following mantras —7-10

The feet should be worshipped after reciting (1) "Varadâya namah," (I salute the giver of boons), the ankles after reciting (2) "Sriyai namah," (I salute you Lakshmi, the goddess of wealth), the legs after reciting (3) "Adokâya namah," the knees, after reciting (4) "Pârvatîya namah," the hips, after reciting (5) "Mangala Kôripyai namah," "I salute the giver of happiness," the waist, after reciting (6) "Vamadevyai namah," the stomach, after reciting (7) "Padmodarâya namah," the breast, after reciting (8) "Kâmaśriyai namah," the hands after reciting (9) "Saubhag-yadâyinyai namah," the arms and the mouth, after reciting (10) "Sriyai namah," the face after reciting (11) "Darpâva vâsinyai namah," the cheeks after reciting (12) "Smaradâya namah," the nose after reciting

(13) "Gauryai namah," the eyes after reciting (14) "Utpalayai namah," the forehead and the tresses, after reciting (15) "Tu-tyatî namah," the head after reciting, (16) "Kâtyâyanyai namah"—11-14

The Goddesses Gaurî, &c., should be worshipped also after pronouncing the mantra नमो गौर्यै नमो उपलयै नमः कात्ययै नमः त्रियै । एवमादै चतुर्विंशति च शत्रुघ्नेयै नमो नमः ॥ "Salutations to Gaurî, Dhisrî, Kântî, Sri, Rambhâ, Lalitâ, and Vâsudevi" Then the devotee, having thus worshipped, according to rule, should draw in front of the goddess, the figure of a lotus with twelve petals, with the pericarp made of saffron—15-16.

The Goddess Gaurî should be fixed on the Eastern petal, Aîpanâ on the South-Eastern petal, Bhavâni on the Southern petal, Rudrâni on the South-Western petal, Saumyâ on the Western petal, Madanavâsini on the North-Western petal, and after that Umâ on the Northern petal, followed by the terrible Pâtalâ on the North-Eastern petal, in the Centre, in due order, should be placed, 1 Mâipsâṅga, 2 Matgalâ, 3 Kumuda, 4 Sati, and the Lord Rudra in the midst of all these goddesses, the goddess Lalitâ on the pericarp of the lotus flower, the goddesses should be located with flowers, rice, and water by uttering the salutation, namah—17-18.

Afterwards, auspicious songs should be sung, conches blown, and the goddesses, adorned with red sandal, red cloth, red flowers, should be worshipped and the devotee should put red pigment and bathing powder on them after bathing them, for, red sindura and saffron are extremely agreeable to them—20

The teacher (guru) should also be adored, with prescribed rites, because where the guru is left unadored, all the rites prove fruitless.—21.

The Goddess Gaurî should be worshipped with blue lotus, during the month of Bhâdrapada, with red Bandhujuva flower in the month of Âśvina, with white lotus (Satapatra) during the month of Kârtika, with jasmine flowers in the month of Mârgâśîra (Agrahâyanâ), with the yellow amaranth flower in the month of Pauṣa, with the white jasmine or safflower in the month of Mâgha, and with the white jasmine or Sindhuvarâ flowers in the month of Phâlguna, with the Champaka and the Asoka flowers in the month of Chaitra, with Pâtala flowers in the month of Vaisâkha, with lotus flowers in the month of Jyeṣṭha, with fresh lotus during Âsâdha, with Kadamba and Malati flowers during Śrâvâsa—23-24

The devotee should take the following things, one after the other, from the month of Bhâdrapada—Cow's urine, cowdung, cow's milk,

curds, clarified butter, the water of Kuśa grass, the leaves of the wood-apple (bilva), the flowers of Calotropis-gigantea (arka), barley (yava), the washing of the cow's horns, Pañchagavya and Bael fruit, and offer these to the Goddess as Pratana. They should be taken one by one, viz., on the third day of Bhādrapada cow's urine, in the month of Āśvina cowdung, and so on — 25-26

In the same way, on every third day of the bright and dark fortnights, the devotee should, after adoring the God (Śiva) with his consort,\* offer them clothes, garlands, flowers, sandal, etc. To a male God, a yellow garment should be offered and to a female goddess, saffron-colored dress — 27

The following things should also be given away to the Goddess — Niṣṭava, cuminseed, salt, sugarcane, raw sugar, flowers, fruits, a lotus of gold, with these words "Goddess! as Śiva does not go anywhere forsaking you, so you should save this devotee of yours through this mundane sea of troubles" — 28 29

The Goddesses Kumudā, Vimalā, Anantā, Bhavāni, Sudhā, Śiva, Lalitā, Kamalā, Gaurī, Sati, Rambhā, Pārvatī should also be worshipped. The devotee should invoke the pleasure of the Goddess by reciting each of the names mentioned above, one by one, from Bhādrapada, viz — "Kumudā Priyatām," Kumudā be pleased and satisfied, and so on. On the completion of the ordinance, a bedstead, along with a golden lotus, should be given away to the Brāhmaṇa — 30-31

Every month, 24, 10, 8, 6 or 2 Brāhmaṇas, with their wives, should be adored by the devotee and by his consort — 32

After first giving Dakṣinā to the guru, it should be given to other Brāhmaṇas. This is what has been laid down for the observance of this ordinance—the giver of infinite benefit — 33

It is the destroyer of all sins, and the giver of good luck and health. It should not be missed through miserliness, for the man or the woman who exercises miserliness goes to the lower regions — 34

Women who are in the family way, maids, those in confinement due to delivery, and those who are ailing, should take their food at night 'not keeping the full fast'. If one is in her menses, and so cannot observe it through impurity, she should get it observed by others, according to the prescribed rites. She herself should observe continence — 35

One who observes this Tritiya, giver of endless fruit, with devotion, remains in the realm of Śiva for a hundred crore of Kalpas — 36

---

\* This offering may be made also to a Brāhmaṇa and his wife

Even the poor who observes it with devotion for three years, according to the prescribed rites, using flowers alone for worship, gets the same benefit — 37

The maid, the married woman or the widow observing it, also gets the same benefits through the grace of the Goddess Gauri — 38

One who reads or hears the relation of this Gauri Vrata or advises others to follow it, is honored by celestial beings and by the Devas and their consorts and the Kinnaras — 39

*Here ends the sixty-second chapter dealing with Ananta-trityā-vrata*

Note.—All the above Goddesses are really manifestations of the same deity. The words Kumuda, etc., may be taken also as different names of one and the same Goddess for the purposes of worship in different months and tithis

### CHAPTER LXIII

The Lord Siva said — I shall now describe to you another Trityā ordinance that washes off all the sins and is known as “Rasakalyānī trityā” by knowers of ancient rituals. In observing it the devotee should bathe in cow’s milk and sesamum on the third day of the bright fortnight in the month of Māgha. The Goddess should be bathed with honey and the juice of sugarcane. The right hand side of the Goddess should be worshipped first and the left hand side afterwards, with the following mantras — 1-3

The feet and the ankle should be worshipped, after reciting (1) ललितायै नमः. “I salute the Goddess Lalitā,” the legs and the knees, after pronouncing (2) सांत्यायै नमः Sāntyā namah the thighs, after reciting (3) श्रीयायै नमः “Sriyā namah” — 4

The waist, after reciting (4) मदालस्त्यायै नमः “Madālastyāyai namah,” the stomach, after reciting (5) अमलायै नमः “Amalāyai namah,” the breasts, after reciting (6) मधुनवासिन्यायै नमः Madhuvāsinyāyai namah, the shoulders, after reciting (7) कुमुदायै नमः Kumudāyai namah — 5

The arms and the hands, after reciting (8) माधवायै नमः “Mādhavāyai namah,” the mouth and the face, after reciting (9) कमलायै नमः “Kamalāyai namah,” the brows and the forehead, after reciting (10) रुद्रान्यायै नमः “Rudrānyāyai namah,” the locks of hair, after reciting (11) संकरायै नमः “Sankarāyai namah” — 6

The Coronet, after saying (12) विश्ववासिन्यायै नमः “Visvavāsinyai namah,” the head, after reciting (13) कान्त्यायै नमः “Kāntyāyai namah,” the left forehead, after reciting (14) अचन्द्रायै नमः “Madanāyai namah,” the brows, after reciting (15) मोहनायै नमः “Mohanāyai namah” — 7

The eyes, after reciting (16) चंद्रार्धाहरिन्यायै नमः “Chandrārdhāharinnyai namah,” the mouth, after reciting (17) तुष्ट्यायै नमः “Tushtyāyai namah,” the throat, after reciting (18) अमृतायै नमः “Uthāntāyai namah,” the breasts, after reciting (19) अमृतायै नमः “Amritāyai namah.” — 8

The left abdomen by reciting (20) रम्भायै नमः “Rambhāyai namah,” the waist, after reciting (21) विशेषायै नमः “Viśeṣāyai namah,” the heart, after reciting (22) मन्मथाधिष्प्यायै नमः “Manmuthādhiṣpypāyai namah,” the stomach, after reciting (23) पात्यायै नमः “Pātyāyai namah.” — 9

The waist, after reciting (24) सुरावस्त्रिय नमः "Suratvāsnyai namah," the thighs, after reciting (25) चम्पकप्रियाय नमः "Champakapriyāyal namah," the knees and the legs, after reciting (26) गौरी नमः "Gaurīl namah," the ankles, after reciting (27) गौत्री नमः "Gautrīl namah."—10

The feet, after reciting (28) धराद्धरी नमः "Dharāddharīl namah," the head, after reciting व्लावकार्य नमः "Vlāvakāryal namah."

Namobhavāniyai, Kāmīyai, Kāmadevya, Jagatapriyāiyai, should also be said.—11

The Goddess should be worshipped like this, and then the Brāhmaṇa and his wife should also be honoured and feasted with sweet food and drink.—12

A pitcher, full of water and decorated with a pair of white cloths, along with a golden lotus and flower-garlands and sandal, should be given away in charity to the Brāhmaṇa —13

Afterwards, the devotee should say, O Kumudā Goddess! be pleased and accept this lavaṇapavrata. In this way, the Goddess should be worshipped each month. The Goddess Kumudā becomes pleased with the devotee by the observance of this ordinance —14

In the month of Mâgha, salt should not be taken, raw sugar should be avoided in Phâlguna, oil and mustard should be discarded in Chaitra, and honey and sweets should be avoided in Vaisâkha —15

In the month of Jaiṣṭha puddings should be avoided, cumin-seed should be discarded in Âśâdha, milk in Srâvana, curds in Bhâdrapada —16

Clarified butter in Âśvina, honey in Kârttika, coriander in Mârgâśîrsa, sugar in Pausa —17

On the completion of the ordinance, a Kamandalu, full of water, &c., along with a full vessel, should be given away in charity, each month, in the afternoon.—18

(1) White balls of sweet (Laddu), (2) mohanbhôga, pudding, (3) cake (puri), (4) gharika cake, (5) sweet cake, (6) sweet cake mixed with spices, (7) maṇḍaka, (8) milk, (9) vegetable, (10) curd rice, (11) indari imarti, (12) and avokavatika Gojhâ, should be given, one by one, after putting them on the top of the Kamandalu in each month, i.e., in Magha, white balls of sweet should be given, in the next month mohanbhôga, and so on.—19-20

Kumudâ, Mâdhavi, Gaurî, Rambhâ, Bhadrâ, Jayâ, Sîvâ, Umapati, Rati, Sati, Mangals, Ratîslasâ should be invoked, turn, by turn each month, beginning with Mâgha, and say 'priyatâm'. The devotee should offer to the goddess the prâśana with panchagavya, and should observe a fast on each of the prescribed days; if he cannot keep the full fast, he might eat something in the night —21-22

Again in the month of Mâgha, sugar should be placed on the Kamandalu, and, after saying, " Goddess be pleased," should be given away to a Brâhmaṇa in charity —the golden image of Pârvati, of the size of an inch, after decorating it with the five gems, rosary, sacred thread, Kamandalu, the figure of the moon with four arms, white eyes and white clothes, a pair of white cows, decorated with gold and covered with white cloth, along with a milking vessel.—23-25

One who observes this Rasa Kalyânîntrityâ ordinance, becomes instantly liberated from sins and never remains grieved for 9000001000 years One who gives away an image of Pârvati, with a golden lotus, each month, gets the benefit of performing a thousand agniyântoma sacrifices.—26-27

The married woman, or the maid, or the widow who observes this ordinance, derives the same benefit and gets good luck and health, and goes to the realm of Pârvati —28

One who reads or hears this, is liberated from the sins of the Kali Age and goes to the region of Pârvati One who relates this to others or induces others to observe this vrata, also becomes like the Lord of the Devas and moves about in aerial chariots —29.

*Here ends the sixty-third chapter describing Râsakalyânîntrityâ vrata*

## CHAPTER LXIV

Siva said —Nârada! I shall now explain to you about the ordinance known as Ârdrâñandakari trityâ, which is the destroyer of all sins.—1

On the third day of the bright fortnight, whenever the moon is in the mansion of any one of the following asterisms, Pûrvâśâdha (or Uttarâśâdha), Rohîṇî, Mrigasîrâ, Hastâ or Mûla, the devotee should bathe in water mingled with kuâa and incense —2

Afterwards, he should wear a garland of white flowers, white raiments, and use white sandal paste, and then worship goddess Bhavâni, along with Her consort, Mahâdeva, with white flowers and incense, and then seat them in their proper places, and recite the following mantras —3

Pârvati's feet should be worshipped, after reciting " Vâsudevyai namah," and Siva's feet should be worshipped, after reciting " Sankarâya namah," and their legs, after reciting " Śokavîñânyai namah and Ânandâya namah," respectively —4

Their hips, after reciting " Rambhâyayi namah" for the goddess, and

"Śivāya namah" for the God Śiva. The waist of the goddess, after reciting "Ādityai namah," and of the God by reciting "Śūlapānaye namah"—5

The navel of the Goddess, after reciting "Mādhavyai namah," and of the God Śambhu, by reciting "Bhavāya namah" The breast of the Goddess, after reciting "Ānandakārinyai namah," and of Śankara by Indudhārīne namah"—6

The throat of the Goddess, after reciting "Utkanthinyai namah," and of the God Hara by "Nilakanthāya namah" The hands of the Goddess, after reciting "Utpaladhārinyai namah," and of the Lord of the world by "Rudrāya namah" The arms of the Goddess, after reciting "Pārirambhīyai namah," and of Hara by "Trisulāya namah"—7

The mouth of the Goddess, after reciting "Vilāsinyai namah," and the mouth of Śiva, after reciting "Vriṣṭīśāya namah" The cheek of the Goddess, after reciting "Sasmeralilāyai namah," and of the God by "Viśvavaktīśāya namah"—8

The eyes of the Goddess, by reciting "Madanavāśinyai namah," and of the God Trisūlin by "Viśvadhāmne namah" The brows of the Goddess, after reciting "Nṛityapriyāyai namah," and of the Lord by "Tandavesāya namah" The forehead of the goddess, after reciting "Indrānyai namah," and of the God by "Havyavāhāya namah" The coronet of the Goddess, after reciting "Svāhāyai namah," and of the God "Gangādharāya namah"—9-10

Then the following prayer should be said to them — विश्वाकारी विश्वामुखी विश्ववाहारी शिखी : मत्तमवदना बन्धे परमेश्वरनेत्री ॥ I salute Pārvati and Paramēśvara, the whole universe is whose body, mouth, hand and feet, the auspicious ones with gracious countenance —11

Having worshipped in this way, he should make, according to rules, in front of the image of Śiva and Pārvati, pictures of lotus, etc., with various coloured powders He should also make pictures of conch, quoit, flags, tridents (svastika, goad) and chāmara As many grains of the coloured powder as fall on the ground, the devotee remains for the same number of thousands of years in the realm of Śiva —12-13

For four months, in the dark as well as in the bright fortnight, the devotee should give away to the Brāhmaṇas four kamaṇḍalus full of water, grain and gold, and having a vessel of clarified butter and gold ont op of them —14

Then, for another four months, the 4 kamaṇḍalus should be given away, after placing 4 pots of barley meal (Saktu), along with a vessel, full of sesamum on top of them, and after that, for another four months, 4 pots fo

sesamum should be placed on top of the kamandalus and for one year from the month of Mārgasīra on the tritīyā tithi the devotee should offer the following eatables to the deities, one in each month (1) Incense with water (2) flower, (3) sandal and water, (4) saffron and water, (5) curd, (6) unboiled milk (7) washing of the cow's horns, (8) water and flour, (9) water mixed with powdered kuśtha (a kind of plant, called *Costus speciosus*), (10) Andropogon *Muricatus*, (11) water mixed with powdered barley, (12) cuminseed, sesamum and water —15-18

In the worship of this Goddess, white flowers are said to be the best, and at the time of giving away dāna (presents to the Brāhmaṇas) the following mantra should be uttered —19

" O Goddess Gauri, be pleased, O Goddess Maṅgalā, the giver of happiness, liberate me from sins, O Goddess Lalitā, promote my good luck, O Bhavāni, fulfil all my desires " —20

After a year, the devotee should give away to the Brāhmaṇa and his wife, after saying, " O Gauri, be pleased with me " the following things pitchers, full of salt and raw sugar, natron, sandal, cloth (*netra patte*), lotus, along with gold, the images of Śiva and Pārvatī made in gold, sugarcane, cotton and bedstead, along with mattress and pillows —21-22

One who observes this ordinance, called Ārdraṇandakaritrītyā, goes to the region of Śiva and attains healthy longevity, wealth and happiness in this world, and never gets grief or woe —23-24

Married women, or maidens, or widows also, through the grace of the Goddess, attain the same benefits —25

The person, acquainted with the rites, duly observing this ordinance, goes to the realm of the Goddess Pārvatī —26

One, who hears or relates this ordinance to others, goes to the region of Indra, and is venerated by the Gandharvas for three ages —27.

The woman, whose husband is alive, and the widow, who observes this ordinance, attain unbounded happiness in their houses, and in the end goes to the region of Pārvatī, along with her husband, and the widow rejoins her husband there —29

*Here ends the sixty-fourth chapter dealing with Ārdraṇandakari-trītyāvratā*

## CHAPTER LXV

Śiva said — I shall now explain to you about the Aksayatrītyā (giver of all desires) vrata, on which day the performance of charity, sacrifice or Japa gives inexhaustible benefit to the devotee —1.

One who keeps a fast on the third day of bright fortnight, in the month of Vaisākha, derives inexhaustible fruit of all his good deeds.—2

If the asterism Kṛittikā happens to fall on that day, it becomes still more sacred, and charity, sacrifice or yapa performed then, begets inexhaustible benefits —3

The progeny of the devotee will be unlimited and her good deeds will have no end, since Viṣṇu is worshipped on that day with Akṣata, it is called Aksaya tritiyā. On that day, the devotee should bathe in water mixed with unhusked rice (Akṣata). He should also offer unhusked rice to Viṣṇu and to the Brāhmaṇas, or well-made barley meal (Śaktu) should be offered to the Brāhmaṇas as well as taken by the devotee himself. The devotee who does this gets everlasting benefit —4-5

One who keeps up, according to rules, this tritiyā ordinance even once, begets the benefit of having observed all the tritiyas, and one who keeps a complete fast on this tritiyā and worships Janārdana, gets the benefit of having performed a Rājasūya sacrifice, and attains bliss —6-7

*Here ends the sixty-fifth chapter, describing Akṣaya Tritiyā*

---

#### CHAPTER LXVI

Vaivasvata Manu asked —Lord! By what vrata does one get sweet speech, worldly prosperity, intelligence, skill in all arts and sciences, inseparable conjugal union, fast friendship and longevity. Pray explain all this to me —1-2

The Lord answered — King! you have put a very useful question to me. Now listen attentively to the description of Sārasvata ordinance, the mere recitation of which gives so much pleasure to the Goddess Sarasvati —3

The devotee should begin this vrata by adoring the Brāhmaṇas on the morning of the day which is most proper for the worship of the Goddess he usually worships —4

Or, the fast should be observed on a Sunday and the Brāhmaṇas fed with rice, cooked in milk and sugar, after consulting the stars and determining an auspicious hour for the feast —5

According to his means, the devotee should give away gold and cloth in charity, and should then worship Gāyatrī with garlands of white flowers, and with white sandal, &c.—6

And then pray, "O Goddess! as Brahma, the father of the universe,

never lives in the Brahmaloka separate from you, in the same way be pleased to give me boons —7

" Goddess ! the sacred Vedas, the Sāstras, the songs and the dances, &c, are not apart from you, let by your grace success attend me —8

" O Goddess Sarasvati ! protect me with your eightfold body, viz., Lakṣmi, Medhā, Dharā, Pustī, Gaurī, Tustī, Prabhā and Matī —9

Gāyatrī with a Vīṇâ (a kind of harp), a rosary of Akṣa, a Kamandalū and a book in each hand, should be worshipped with devotion, with white flowers and unhusked rice, &c The pious devotee should, then in silence, take his meals, morning and evening, without speaking a word at the time He should worship the Brahmavāsinī (Gāyatrī), on the fifth day of both the fortnights He should also offer her a quantity of (Prastha) measure of rice, placed in a vessel and full of clarified butter and milk and gold, by invoking her in the following words — " Gayatī, be pleased with these "—10-11

The devotee, following this rite, should observe the vow of silence in the evening, and should have in the daytime no meal, till 13 months are over —12

On the completion of the ordinance (vrata), the devotee should take white rice, and, before doing so, should feed a Brāhmaṇa and give him a couple of clothes —13

Then he should give away, in honour of the Goddess, the flags, bells, a silver-eyed milch cow, sandal, a pair of clothes, and a crest jewel. Afterwards, the preceptor should be worshipped with devotion, with garlands, cloths and sandal paste, without giving way to miserliness —14-15

One who worships Sarasvati in this way, becomes learned, wealthy and gets a melodious voice. Besides this, he goes to the region of Brahmā through the grace of the Goddess. The women folk, observing this ordinance, too, get the same benefit. Such devotees reside in the Brahmaloka for three Ayuta Kalpas —16-17

One who reads or hears this, goes and enjoys in the region of Vidyādhara, for three Kalpas —18

*Here ends the sixty-sixth chapter describing the Sārāsvata Vrata*

### CHAPTER LXVII

Manu said —Lord ! Knower of the rites, the mantras and of the things to be given away in charity at the time of solar and lunar eclipses, I wish to hear from you the method of bathing at those times —1

The Lord said —When the eclipse takes place, at the time when the sun or the moon is in that particular sign of the zodiac under which a person is born, it is necessary that he should bathe in water mixed with herbs, according to the prescribed rituals, as mentioned below. When there is a lunar eclipse, the devotee should get blessings invoked by Brâhmanas and worship four of them with white flowers and sandal paste, and place four flawless pitchers, full of water and herbs, before the commencement of the eclipse, and consider these pitchers as representing oceans —2-4

Then the Devas should be invoked, after putting the following things in the pitchers —The earth of the elephant ward, of the stable, of the chariot-house (or, road), of the anthill, of the tank, of the confluence of two rivers, of the cattle-yard and of the king's gateway, as well as pañchagavya, good and genuine pearls, gorôchanâ, lotus, conch-shell, pañcharatna (five jewels), quartz (crystal), white sandal, Ganges water, mustard, andropogon muricatus, Kumudini (lotus), Râjadanta (ivory), and resin (guggul) —5-7

The Devas should be invoked with the following mantras —“All the sacred places, seas, rivers, tanks, rivulets, come here to wash off the sins of the devotee —May the God India, the wielder of the thunderbolt, known as sovereign of the Adityas, and having thousand eyes, come and remove my suffering caused by the (inauspicious) planet —May Agni, the mouth of the Devas, having seven flames, of immeasurable brightness, come and remove my suffering caused by the lunar eclipse —May Yama, the rider of the buffalo, representative of justice (Dharma), the witness of the deeds of all men, come and soothe my pain caused by the lunar eclipse —May the living god Varuna, the ruler of all waters, the rider of the alligator, and wielder of the noose, consisting of sea serpents, come and remove my suffering caused by the lunar eclipse —May Vâyu, who nourishes all creatures in the shape of vital breath, who loves black antelope, come and remove my suffering caused by the lunar eclipse —May Kuvera, the giver of wealth and master of riches, and armed with sword, trident, club, &c., come and drive away my sin caused by the lunar eclipse —May Saṅkara, the rider of the bull and the wearer of the crescent and armed with the bow, called pinâka, come and destroy the pain arising out of the lunar eclipse —May Brahma, Viṣṇu and Arka as well as all mobile and immobile beings existing in the three worlds, come and burn up my sin” —8-16.

After thus invoking all Devas and other beings, the devotee should sprinkle upon himself the water of those medicated pitchers which are

adorned with white garlands and sandal paste, and then worship the Brâhmaṇas and the family Deity by reciting the mantras laid down in the Rig, Sâma and Yajur Vedas, and then give away a cow, along with cloth to the Brâhmaṇas —17

The mantras mentioned above, (in the verses 8-16,) should be written on a piece of cloth or on a lotus leaf, and, placed in an earthen dish with five jewels (gold, diamond sapphire, ruby and pearl, or gold, silver, coral, pearl and râgapatta) The Brâhmaṇas should place on the head of the devotee, the said dish and await the time of passing away of the eclipse. At the time of the eclipse, the devotee should turn his face towards the east and worship his family God. On the cessation of the eclipse, cows should be given away in charity, and then after a bath, the cloth, on which the above mantras are written, should be given away to the Brâhmaṇa —18-20

One who bathes according to these rites, after an eclipse, never gets any trouble through unlucky stars, and his family and kinsmen will also prosper —21

The person following the above rites with devotion, attains highest bliss, free from re-birth

At the time of a solar eclipse, the mantras mentioned above should be recited by substituting the word Sûrya (the Sun) in the place of Chandra or Moon. The additional gift in the case of solar eclipse must consist of rubies. A beautiful cow should be given away at the time of any eclipse (either solar or lunar), in honour of the moon —22-23

One who hears or causes others to hear about this ritual goes to the realm of Indra, after being liberated from all sins, and is glorified there —24

*Here ends the sixty-seventh chapter dealing with the ritual of bathing, at the time of solar or lunar eclipse, by a person in whose zodiacal house of birth the eclipse takes place*

---

### CHAPTER LXVIII

Nâlada said —Lord! What should be done to restore the equilibrium of mind in times of distress? How is poverty to be got over? What should be done at the time of the ablution of a woman whose offspring do not survive? —

Lord said —The sins of the past fructify in one's present life. Disease, misery, loss of dear ones, are only the results of past sins. —2.

I shall now describe to you the rituals of bathing on the seventh day of a bright fortnight, that washes off all the sins, which causes prosperity, and destroys all human troubles. I shall also describe to you the rituals of the ablution of a woman, whose offsprings do not survive, as well as for the longevity of old and diseased men as well as of young men. This ablution which is done according to special rites, drives away the unceasiness of the mind —35

In a future Vaïsha Kalpa, O King, there will be a Vaivasvata Manu also —6

Then in the 25th Satyayuga, of that Vaivasvata Manvantara, an illustrious and powerful king, Kritavîya, the promoter of the Hayava dynasty will be born and thrive —7

That king will rule the world, consisting of seven continents for seventy thousand years, O Narada, with great statesmanship —8

He will have one hundred sons who will all die as soon as born, owing to the curse of the sage Chyavana —9

Sometime after that the King Kritavîya will be blessed with a renowned son, named Sahasrabhan (thousand-armed). He will have beautiful eyes like elephant, will be lucky and possess all the auspicious marks of a king —10

His father, Kritavîya will worship the thousand-rayed Sun according to the Vedic hymns with fasts and vows, in order to ward off the sage's curse, so that the son may not die in infancy. He will then come to know of the rituals of this particular ablution from the God Sun, who will relate to the king the ways of the ordinance that would wash off all sins and allay all misfortunes —11 12

The God-Sun will say "King Kritavîya! I am very much pleased with your devotion and penances. There is no further need of them. I bless you that this son of yours will be long-lived" —13

I shall now explain to you about the rituals of ablution on the seventh day of a lunar fortnight, in order that all men may be benefited by it. The woman, whose offspring does not survive, ought to bathe on the seventh day of the lunar fortnight, or on the seventh month after the birth of the child —14

The worshipper should consult Brâhmaṇas about his lucky stars and then fix some auspicious day for the rituals, avoiding the birth asterism of the child. This ritual applies to old men and to others suffering from illness, etc —15

According to the rites of the Ekâgni fire ceremony, the devotee should locate the Fire on an altar, plastered over with cowdung, and cook on that fire pudding (charu), with red rice and cow's milk, and offer it to Sûrya and Rudra by reciting the mantras of Rudra and the God Sun —16

An offering of clarified butter should also be poured into the fire, after reciting the seven Rik mantras of the Sun, and, similarly, he should offer to Rudra with hymn sacred to Rudra —17

In this sacrifice, the fuel of Calotropis gigantea and Butea frondosa should be used. An offering of barley and black sesamum should be made 108 times in this homa.

In the same way, another 108 offerings of clarified butter should be made, after reciting Vyâhîti mantras. Afterwards, the worshipper should bathe —18-19

Four pitchers should be placed in four corners by a Brâhmaṇa versed in the Vedas, with a Kusa grass in his hand, and a fifth one should be placed in the centre, after filling it in with emulsions, uncooked rice, etc., reciting the seven Rik verses, and then Agni should be invoked —20-21

The central pitcher, which must have no flaw in it, should also be filled in with the sacred water of the Sûrya tirtha. All kinds of gems, and different kinds of herbs, pañchagavya, pañchiatna, fruits and flowers, should be placed in the corner pitchers. Afterwards, the pitchers should be covered with cloth, and then located at their respective places —22

The earth of the following places should also be put into those pitchers, along with the things mentioned above —stable, elephant yard, chariot house, anthill, confluence of two rivers, tank, cattle-fold, royal palace gate —23

The Brâhmaṇa touching the central pitcher, which is surrounded by four other pitchers, each containing precious stones within them, should recite the Vedic mantras relating to the God Sun —24

Seven Brâhmaṇa ladies, along with their husbands, should be worshipped with garlands, cloths, ornaments, etc., according to the means of the devotee. These women should have no bodily defect. Afterwards, the Brâhmaṇa women should perform the ablution ceremony of the woman whose children do not survive, and recite the following words —

' May this child be long lived, may this progeny of this woman be long-lived. O Sun, Moon, planets, Stars, India, Devas, Lokapâlas, Brâhmaṇa, Viṣṇu, Śiva and other groups of Devas, always protect this child. O Mitra, O Saturn, O other Devas, O Agni, O Bâla-graha, be pleased and never injure the child and his parents '—25-28

Note.—~~वृश्चिक~~ = A demon or any planetary influence that injures the child

After this, the seven Brâhmaṇa women with their husbands and children and wearing white raiments, should be honoured along with the preceptor —29

Then the image of Dharmarâja, made in gold and placed on a copper vessel should be given away to the preceptor.—30

Afterwards with his mind free from jealousy and miserliness, gold, cloth, gems, clarified butter, milk, &c, should be given to the Brâhmaṇas.—31

The Brâhmaṇas should be fed first and then the devotee should take his meals After meals, the preceptor should pronounce his blessings in the following words — "This child may live for a century and may always remain prosperous —32

"All his sins be instantly consumed in the submarine fire O Brahmî, Visnu, Sîva, Vasu, Svâmkârtika, Indra, Agni, protect this child from all calamities and bless him" The preceptor pronouncing the above blessings should be worshipped —33-34

Then a milch cow should be given away in charity to the preceptor who should then be dismissed with proper honors Then the woman holding her child should salute the Sun and Sâkara and eat the remainder of the charu (Sâkalya), and then pronounce "Âdityâya namah" This is the way which should be followed to restore the peace of mind caused by evil dreams or calamities, &c —35-36

Note — अर्पण = The thing which is offered as a libation in the Fire at the time of sacrifice शौकितवान् = I salute the sun

One who observes these rituals on a seventh day of a bright fortnight avoiding his birth-day and asterism, never comes to grief —37

The King Kritavîya, most renowned, got long life and ruled the world for a period of ten thousand years, owing to his having observed the above-mentioned rituals repeatedly —38

The deity Sûrya, having described this ablution called Septamisnâna, and which is sacred, sanctifying and giver of long life, vanished then and there —39

This Septamisnâna, which has been thus described, is most sacred and dispeller of all evils It is the giver of great benefit to children —40

Health ought to be sought from the Sun, wealth from Agni, knowledge from Isvara, and emancipation from Janârdana —41

'This ritual is the destroyer of great sins and giver of happiness to

the children, and the Munis say that one who hears about it attains success —42

*Here ends the sixty-eighth chapter describing the Saptamivara for the longevity of infants*

### CHAPTER LXIX

The Lord said —In the past, during the Rathantara Kalpa, Brahmā asked Siva on the summit of the Mandarāchala Mountain —1

Brahmā said, "How one may with the performance of slight austeries get unending prosperity and health, O Lord of immortals? How may men attain emancipation by practising brief austerities? —2

O, Mahādeva, nothing is unknown to thee Through thy grace one knows everything Pray, be pleased to explain to me how, by practising small austerities, one may get large reward" —3

The Lord Matsya said —On thus being asked by Brahmā, Siva, the lord of Umā, the Soul of the universe, the creator of all worlds, began to explain the ordinance, so pleasant to the mind —4

Siva said --After this 23rd Rathantara Kalpa, will again follow Vārāha Kalpa In that Kalpa, also, there will be 14 manvantaras The seventh of these will be Vaivasvata manvantara In the 28th Dvāpara yuga of the Vaivasvata manvantara will be born the great God, Vāsudeva-Janārdana By the end of the same (28th Dvāpara) age, Lord Viṣṇu will manifest Himself in three different ways, to relieve the world of its burden —5-7

He will manifest Himself as (1) Dvārpāyana Vyāsa, (2) Baladeva, (3) Śrīkṛṣṇa, and will bring relief to the world by crushing the pride of the wretches like Kaqas, etc —8

The puri Dwārāvati, which is now known as Kusasthalī, will become Dwārikā and will be planned for the residence of Kuṣṭha by Viśvakarmā, according to my instructions —9

In the noble assemblage which will be attended in that sacred city, in company of their beautiful ladies, by Viṣṇu, Yādava and the Kauravas, the Pāndava Bhīṣma, the most illustrious of all assembled there, will, at the close of the paurāṇic discourses, ask Lord Kṛṣṇa, attended by the Devas and the Gandharvas, and He will then explain about the ordinance just now asked by you —10-12

O Brahmā! after that Bhīṣma will follow the rituals dictated by Lord Kṛṣṇa and will promulgate it in the world —13

Bhimasena is called Vrikodara, on account of his having Vrika or wolf-like fire given by me in his stomach. His hunger will never be appeased —14.

*Note.—“Vrikodara=A wolf in the stomach”*

Bhima will be most wise, charitable, wealthy, handsome like Cupid, and will have the power of ten-thousand elephants —15

The pious who are unable to suppress their hunger and keep up a full fast, should observe this ordinance, which is the best of all for them —16

For the benefit of the pious, unable to suppress their hunger, Lord Vāsudeva, the Jagadguru, the soul of the universe, will explain the rituals relating to this ordinance, which will be the giver of the benefits of all the sacrifices, the destroyer of all sins and calamities, the giver of the highest prosperity, the most ancient of all the forms of ordinances and venerated by the Devas ”—17-18

*Note—Now follows the explanation of the rituals by Lord Vāsudeva, which is another epithet of Kṛṣṇa*

Vāsudeva said —The devotee who may not be able to fast on the eighth, fourteenth and twelfth day of a bright fortnight, or on any other prescribed day, attains union with Viṣṇu, by keeping a fast on this sacred day only —19-20

On the tenth day of the bright fortnight, in the month of Māgha, the devotee should bathe in water mixed with sesamum, after anointing his body with clarified butter —21

He should then worship Viṣṇu with the words, “Namah Naiāyanāya ” The feet of the Lord should be worshipped with “Kuṇḍalīnamah,” the head with “Saṅkāśinānamah,” the throat with “Vaikunṭhāyānamah,” the breast with “Śrīvatsadharāyānamah,” the four arms with “Chakrūnamah,” “Gadālīnamah,” “Vaśadāyānamah,” “Sankhīnamah,” the stomach with “Dāmodarāyānamah,” the region of Cupid with “Pañchadarāyānamah,” the thighs with “Saubhāgyavānāyānamah,” the knees with “Bhūvadharāyānamah,” the shanks with “Nilakanthāyānamah,” the feet with “Viśvavajrāyānamah.” Then the Goddess Laxmi should be worshipped with “Devyānamah,” “Sāntyānamah,” “Lakṣmīyānamah,” “Śriyāyānamah,” “Pūṣyānamah,” “Tuṣyānamah,” “Dhrīṣṭyānamah,” “Hṛīṣṭyānamah.” Afterwards, Garuda, the king of birds, swift like the wind, the destroyer of serpents, should always be saluted —22-26

Having thus worshipped Govinda, Śiva and Ganesa should be worshipped with sandal, incense, flowers, and various kinds of victuals

Then the devotee should take, in silence, with ghee, the porridge made of rice sesamum and grain, cooked with cow's milk, sugar, and walk a hundred steps —27-28

Afterwards, the devotee should brush his teeth with a stick of banyan or khadī and then rinse his mouth, facing the east or the north, and holding a kuśa in his hand After sunset he should perform his sandhyā and then utter "Om namonārāyanāya namah, twāṁnabhaṁ śarnatgataḥ I salute Nārāyaṇa, I throw myself under your protection" On the Ekādaśī day, I shall keep a fast and worship Nārāyaṇa and keep a vigil at night, have a bath early in the morning (i.e., on the Dvādaśī) and make an oblation of clarified butter to Fire Pundarikākṣa, I shall, with mind controlled, eat rice, cooked with milk, with a few good Brahmans May that be fulfilled by Thy grace, without any obstruction'

With these words, he should sleep on the bare earth Then, on day-break, he should hear recitations from the Itihāsa, and go and bathe in a river, after rubbing earth on his body At this time, he should avoid the company of wicked persons —29-34

After that, he should perform his sandhyā prayers and offer libations of water to the manes of his deceased ancestors, and then salute Hṛishikēśa, the sole sovereign of the seven worlds Then he should erect a pandal measuring ten or eleven hands, in front of his house —35-36

*Note.—Sandhyā.—The morning, noon and the evening prayer, performed by a twice-born*

An altar, measuring four hands, should be made in the pandal, and a portal of the same measurement should be made —37

He should place there a pitcher of water and worship the Guardians of the quarters (Dikpāla) There the devotee should sit on a black deer skin and over his head place the pitcher of water, after making a hole in its centre He should allow the water to trickle, drop by drop on his head, and, in the same way, should allow a stream of milk to fall on the head of the symbol of Viṣṇu —38 39

There should be made a sacrificial pond, one hand deep, of the shape of a conical triangle and surrounded by three circles, and after that the Brāhmaṇas should be asked to make an offering of milk, clarified butter and sesamum to Lord Viṣṇu, after the rituals of Ekāgnī, with mantras sacred to Viṣṇu, after which a stream of clarified butter, of half the size of a winnowing basket (Nispāva), should be poured into the fire as well as the charu, mixed with cow's milk Thirteen pitchers, full of water, should be placed The mouths of these pitchers should be covered with plates of

fig leaves containing different kinds of eatables and five jewels and covered with white cloths Four Rigvedi Brâhmaṇas should offer sacrifices to Fire, facing north —40-43

Four Brâhmaṇas, well up in the Yajurveda, should recite the mantra sacred to Rudra Another group of four Brâhmaṇas, versed in the Sâmaveda, should be asked to chant the hymns of the Sâmaveda, sacred to Viṣṇu, along with Ariṣṭa hymns.—44

The twelve Brâhmaṇas thus employed should be honoured with garlands of flowers, sandal paste, bed sheets, gold rings, gold sacred threads, gold bangles, and different kinds of cloths Miserliness should not be exercised in this respect That night should thus be passed in rejoicings, accompanied with singing and music — 45-46

Double of all these Daksinâs should be given to the preceptor, and, O Bhîmasena," on the following morning thirteen quiet and good milch cows, with their horns covered with gold, hoofs with silver, covered with cloth and painted with sandal, should be given away in charity, along with milking pots of bell metal to Brâhmaṇas well fed with nice eatables —47-49

Then the devotee should take his meal, without acid and salt Afterwards, the Brâhmaṇas should be dismissed, after being satisfied with dainty dishes —50

The devotee should follow the Brâhmaṇas for eight steps in company of his son, wife, etc., and should say "Kesava' the destroyer of all evils, be pleased Siva is enthroned in the heart of Viṣṇu and the Viṣṇu in the heart of Siva As I do not see any difference between the two, so there may be long life and prosperity to me"—51-52

With these words, the devotee should send the pitchers, the cows, the bedding, the clothes, &c., to the house of the Brâhmaṇas —53

If many beddings cannot be given, then only one should be given away, with all necessary requisites —54

One who wishes to acquire vast wealth should read the Purâṇas that day —55

"O Bhîmasena! You should also keep up this ordinance (vrata), without pride and with purity of heart I have dictated all this out of affection for thee Bhîma'. This ordinance observed by you will be known after your name" The ordinance (vrata) of Bhîmasena dwâdaśi is the dispeller of all ills, and was known as Kalyâṇini in the past Kalpas O Valiant one! You will be the first to observe this ordinance (vrata) during this Varsha Kalpa, having remembered all about it, you

will be liberated from all sins and attain the rank of the Lord of Devas (Tridandas). The public women of other Kalpas having observed this vrata, have become celestial nymphs (Apauras). One dairy maid, of a previous Kalpa (Āvira Kanyā), having observed this vrata out of curiosity alone, has now become Urvashi in the heaven of Indra. The daughter of a Vaidya became the daughter of Pulama and the queen of Indra, by virtue of this ordinance, and, similarly, Satyabhāmā, the maid of that girl, has become My beloved" — 56-60

The Sun also on account of having bathed in a thousand torrents on the Kalyāpadwādasi, got His shining body, surrounded by halos, and has become the thousand-rayed Vivasvan — 61

In former times, the same ordinance was observed by Mahendra and other gods, by the Vasus and by Asuras. No one, even with a thousand tongues, can adequately describe its effect — 62

Kṛṣṇa, the King of Yādavas, will describe this tithi which, when observed, dispels all the sins of the iron (Kali) age, and liberates all his manes from the region of Yama, (Naraka) — 63

One who devoutly hears about it or reads it for the good of others, gets whatever he desires and even becomes unified with Brahma. — 64.

What was in the former Kalpa, known as Kalyāñ-dwādasi of the month of Māgha, will come to be known as Bhīmadwādasi, when observed by Bhīmasena, the son of Pāṇḍu — 65

*Here ends the sixty-ninth chapter, describing the Bhīmadwādasi-vrata.*

### CHAPTER LXX

Brahmā said — Siva! I have heard of the efficacy of Varpa Āśrama as well as of good conduct, as prescribed by the Dharma Śāstras. I am now desirous of hearing the practice and conduct of public women — 1

Siva said — There will be 16,000 wives of Krisna in the Yuga mentioned before. When once, in the spring time, those ladies, having decorated themselves with ornaments, would be drinking together on the banks of a pond studded with full-budded lotus flowers, dancing with the wind and resounding with the melodious notes of the cuckoo and musical tunes of the big black bee, they will see Lord Śambha, beautiful like Cupid, having eyes handsome like those of a gazelle, and wearing the garlands of malati, passing by. They will cast on him amorous glances, their hearts being fired with lustful feelings and they being targets of the arrows of Cupid — 26

Lord Kriṣṇa will come to know all that with his mental vision, and will curse them as follows : 'Because you cherished the desire of amorous pastime during my absence, all of you will be taken away by bandits'—7

Then those ladies, overcome with grief on account of such a curse, will please Kriṣṇa (by their prayers), when the Lord will say 'Dālbhya Rishi of eternal soul, the favourite of the Brāhmaṇas, will teach you a vrata, which will be the means of your liberation from the bondage and which will actually free you all. This vrata will be of great benefit to futurity. With these words, the Lord of Dvārakā left them —8-10

Then, ages after, there will be a great slaughter, owing to the mūḍha affair, and Lord Kriṣṇa, after relieving the universe of its great burden, will go to heaven. The Yūdhyas will have ceased to exist, and the ladies of Kriṣṇa will be seized by robbers, a warrior, like Arjuna being defeated (and unable to protect them). These robbers will take them to the seashore and enjoy with them their. When these ladies will bewail their hard lot, the sage Dālbhya, will appear before them. Those ladies will worship the sage by offering him aghya and salute him again and again. They will then, with tenisful eyes, remember their past enjoyments, use of garlands and sandal paste, and think of their Lord, the unconquerable master of the universe, as well as of flowers and the beautiful city of Dvārakā, glittering with its riches and gems, and of their respective abodes therein, the Divine forms of their sons dwelling in that sacred city. Then they will put the following question to the sage, standing before him —11-16

"Sage! We have all been forcibly defiled by these robbers. Now we have lost our Dharma and place ourselves at your mercy O, Seer! Pray explain, why we have been degraded to the status of concubines, we, who have been united with God. You have been ordained by the wise Kriṣṇa to be our guide. Pray explain to us the duties of concubines." Thus questioned, the sage will say —17-19

Dālbhya said.—"Ladies! in the days gone by, all of you were sporting in the Mānsarovara lake, when Narada chanced to go there. Then you were the daughters of Agni, in the form of nymphs. You did not salute the sage, but asked him how Narayana, the Lord of the universe, would be your husband. Narada blessed you with the boon asked for, but also cursed you for not saluting him. He said that, by giving away two beddings, according to prescribed rites, on the twelfth

day of the bright fortnight, in the months of Chaitra and Vaisākha, you would get Kṛiṣṇa as your husband in the next life."—20-23

And cursed you as follows :—" Because in your conceit of beauty and prosperity you have omitted to salute me before putting me this question, you will also be separated from Kṛiṣṇa and will be lowered to the rank of public women, after being forcibly carried away by thieves. In consequence of the curses of Nārada and Kṛiṣṇa you gave way to lustful feelings and have become prostitutes. Now listen to what I say — 24-25

Once upon a time thousands and thousands of the demons (Dānavas, Asuras, Daityas and Raksasas), were killed in the war between the Devas and the demons. Indra told their numberless widows and those women who were forcibly seized and enjoyed, to lead the life of prostitutes and remain devoted to the kings and the Devas — 26-28

Indra continued, ' You should look upon, with equal eye, the kings your masters and on Sudra. All of you will attain prosperity, according to your fate. You should satisfy those who would come to you with adequate sum of money to enjoy your company, even if they be poor. But you should not give pleasure to proud men. You should give away cow, land, grain and gold, according to your means, in charity on the sacred day of worshipping the Devas or the ancestors. You should act as the Brahmapas will say. In addition to this, I shall also tell you an ordinance (or vrata), which all of you should blindly practise '—29-32.

This ordinance has been held to be the best means of crossing unscathed the sea of the evils of life, by those learned in the Vedas. The women folk should bathe in the water mixed with several herbs, on a Sunday, when there falls Hasta, Pūrṇa or Pūnairvṛṣu asterism. They should then approach the God of Love and worship Pundarikākṣa, by reciting the names of Cupid, viz.—The feet of Viṣṇu, the God of the gods, should be worshipped with the words, " Kāmāya namah," the legs with " Mohakārine namah," the region of Cupid with " Kandarpaṇidhīye namah," the waist with " Pṛiti mate namah," the navel with " Sankhyasamudrāya namah," the stomach with " Rāmāya namah," the heart with " Hrudayedāya namah," the breasts with " Abilādakātīne namah," the throat with " Utkanthāya namah," the mouth with " Ānaudakātīne, namah," the left limbs with Puṣpadhanvāya namah," the right limbs with Puṣpabhanvāya namah, the head with " Māṇasāya namah," the hair of the head with " Vilolāya namah," and all the body with " Sarvatmae namah."—33-38

They should then salute the respective Gods and Goddesses with the following mantras, "Namah Śivāya, namah Śantāya," "Namah Pāṇḍukūḍha-rāya," "Namah Gadīne," Namah Pitavastrāya (yellow-robed one) " Namah Saṅkhchakra-dharāya," "Namah Nṛśyāpāya," "Namah Kāmātmāne," "Namah Sarvadāntya," "Namah Prītyai," "Namah Ratyaī," "Namah Śrīyai," "Namah Puṣṭyai," "Namah Tuṣṭyai," "Namah Sarvārtha samparī" —39-40

The women folk should then worship the Lord, whose body is cupid himself, by offering Him incense, flowers, sandal and eatables —41

Afterwards, the Brāhmaṇa well versed in the Vedānta who must be virtuous and free from bodily deformity, should be honoured with the offerings of incense, flowers, sandal —42

And a quantity (of the measure Prastha) of uncooked rice, along with a pot, full of clarified butter, should be given away to the same Brāhmaṇa, after saying, 'Lord Mādhava, be pleased' —43

That Brāhmaṇa should be well fed and be devoutly look upon as cupid, for the sake of sexual enjoyment —44

Each and every desire of that Brāhmaṇa should be satisfied by the woman devotee She should, with all heart and soul and with a smile on her face, yield herself up to him —45

This rite should be observed on every Sunday, and the devotee should give away the above-mentioned quantity of uncooked rice for a period of thirteen months, at the expiry of which, the same Brāhmaṇa should be given a full bedding, with all its requisites, viz —pillows, good sheets, dipa (lamp), a pair of shoes, umbrella, sandals, a small piece of mattress to sit upon —46-48

Next, that Brāhmaṇa, with his wife, should be honoured with gold threads, gold rings, fine cloth, bangles, and with incense, garlands of flowers and sandal paste —49

The images of Cupid and Rati, seated on a plate of copper, placed on a vessel full of molasses, their eyes being of gold and they being well dressed, should be given away, along with a fine milk cow, a vessel of bell metal and a piece of sugar cane, by reciting the mantra of the following signification —50-51.

'As I do not make any difference between Viṣṇu and Cupid, so O Lord Viṣṇu, be pleased to always fulfil my desires' —52

'O Kedāva ! as the Goddess Lakṣmi never remains apart from you, in the same way make my body Your dwelling place' —53

After that, the Brâhmaṇa, accepting the image of Cupid, should pronounce the following Vedic mantrî ‘Ka Idam Knamat, &c.’—54

Then the Brâhmaṇa should be dismissed, after being circumambulated, and beddings and other things should be sent to the house of the Brâhmaṇa —55

Henceforth, any Brâhmaṇa coming to them for the sake of sexual enjoyment on a Sunday, should be respected and honoured —56

In this way, the good Brâhmaṇas should be kept satisfied for a period of thirteen months, but if they go abroad, their course of action will be different —57

If, with the consent of that Brâhmaṇa, another handsome person come to them, these women should, with love and affection and to the best of their ability, perform all the fifty-eight kinds of observances of Love, favourite of man and gods, which would lead to pregnancy and which is not harmful to their soul's welfare —58-59

I have described to you this vrata in detail, which, when always performed, never leads the prostitutes to sin —60

I have fully related to you what Indra said to the women of the Danavas (demons) in ancient days —61

O, Women of beauty! This vrata is the dispeller of all sins and giver of innumerable benefits. I wish well of you hence you should do as I told you —62

She (the well-favoured), who follows this ordinance strictly, goes to the region of Mâdhaba, and is honoured by the Devas and in the end obtains a place in the Viṣṇu-loka —68

The Lord said —“The sage Dalabhya, having thus taught those women how to observe this ordinance will go to his own place, and those women of divine origin will practise the vrata, as directed”—64

*Here ends the seventieth chapter describing Anâharâvratâ (Gift of cupid)*

---

### CHAPTER LXXI

Brâhma said —“Lord be pleased to explain to me the ordinance, by the observance of which there may be no separation between husband and wife, nor should there be any grief, disaster or pain”—1

Lord said —Kedava always reposes in company with Lakṣmi, in the ocean of milk, on the second day of the dark fortnight, in the month of Srâvâna —2

By worshipping Govinda on that day all the desires are fulfilled, and by giving away cows, land, gold &c, the devotee goes and resides in the region of Viṣṇu for a period of 700 Kelpas.—3.

The ordinance is known under the name of Addhyayanaadvitya, on which day Viṣṇu should be worshipped, according to the rituals and mantras mentioned hereafter —4.

The devotee should pray :—“ O, Śrīvatsudhārī, Śrīkānta, Śridhāmāna, Śripati, Avināśi, let this house-holder's life of mine which is the giver of trivarga (dharma, artha and kāma) may never be destroyed —5

O Puruṣottama ! let there be no destruction of my Agni or Pitṛi, nor let there be any separation between husband and wife — 6

Deva, as you never remain apart from your consort, Lakṣmi, similarly, let there be no aloofness between me and my wife.—7

Mudhusūdana ! as your household is never bereft of the goddess Lakṣmi, similarly, let not mine be devoid of my wife” —8

After this prayer, the hymns of Viṣṇu should be sung in accompaniment of various kinds of musical instruments; if that may not be feasible, then the mere ringing of the bell is sufficient, for a bell is an embodiment of all musical instruments —9

After thus worshipping Govinda, the devotee should have his meals at night, avoiding oil and salt and acids —10

In the morning, the image of Lakṣmi and Viṣṇu, candle, food grain, cloth, utensils, and bedstead should be given away —11

A pair of sandals, shoes, umbrella, chāmara, mattress, white sheet should also be given away with the bedstead —12

Pillows, bedding, fruits, ornaments, should also be given away, along with the bedstead, according to the means of the worshipper, without exercising jealousy and miserliness, to a Brāhmaṇa, who may be versed in the Vedas and be a devotee of Viṣṇu, having a large family and having no bodily defects —13-14

At the time of giving away the bedstead, the Brāhmaṇa, along with his wife, should be seated on it, and the former should be given a vessel, full of nice eatables —15

The image of Viṣṇu should be given away to the Brāhmaṇa after placing it on a pitcher full of water —16

A woman with a husband, or a widow, who keeps up this ordinance according to the prescribed rites, without niggardliness, goes to and resides in heaven. They, being always dutiful and free from sorrow and blessed with sons, cattle and wealth, always remain in company of their husband,

without being separated so long as the sun, moon and stars remain in heaven —17-18

Their sons, cattle and wealth are never destroyed, and the devotee goes to the region of Viṣṇu where he resides for 77,000 kalpas —19

*Here ends the seventy-first chapter describing the Asūnyaśayanavrata*

### CHAPTER LXXII

Siva said —“Brahmā! Now listen to the ordinance that will be the giver of wealth, and will come in vogue at the end of future Dwāpara. It is in the form of a conversation between Yudhiṣṭhīra and the sages, Pippalāda, etc” —1

“Yudhiṣṭhīra, the pious, will go to Naimiṣāranya before the sage Pippalāda, and put this question to him” —2

Yudhiṣṭhīra said —“O sage! How health, prosperity and firm faith in religion can be maintained, and how can unflinching devotion be centred in Siva and Viṣṇu, and how may one be free from all bodily defects” —3

Siva said —“Brahmā! I shall now tell you the reply of the sage Pippalāda to the queries of Yudhiṣṭhīra” —4

Pippalāda said —“King! you have put a most useful question. I shall now tell you something about it” So saying, he will describe the Ahgārvrata. About this, there is the following ancient story —5

There took place a dialogue between Virōchana and Bhārgava —6

Once upon a time, the mighty sage, Sukra, seeing Virōchana, the handsome, sixteen-years old son of Pippalāda, laughed, and saying, Sādhu, Sādhu, addressed him, “O mighty armed Virōchana! O prince! O may you be always prosperous” Then Virōchana, the enemy of the Devas, wondering at the laughing of the sage, inquired —7-8

‘O Brahmana! tell me the reason of your laughter without any apparent cause and why did you again say, Sādhu, Sādhu, to me —9’

Sukra said —“I laughed on the sudden remembrance of the glory of the Vrata (which you had the good luck of witnessing in your past life and which gave you this handsome form) —10

In ancient times, a drop of perspiration trickled down the forehead of Siva at the time of His getting into rage to annihilate Dakṣa —11

That drop penetrated into all the seven lower regions and dried up all the seven oceans. Afterwards, out of the same drop, Virabhadra,

with many a mouth and eyes emitting flashes of fire from them, was born. He was endowed with myriads of hands and feet, and destroyed the sacrifice of Dakṣa. This Earth-born Virabhadra destroyed the sacrifice of Dakṣa and then attempted to burn up the three worlds. Whereupon, Śiva intervened, when He saw Virabhadra was going to consume the universe, and made him abstain from his campaign of destruction—12-13

Śiva said —“Virabhadra! You have destroyed the sacrifice of Dakṣa, and now you should not consume the universe. Be calm. You will be prime in the mansion of auspicious planets, and people will worship you through my favour —14-15

“You will be known as Angāraka (the planet Mars), the son of the Earth, and your form in the Divine region will be a peerless one in beauty —16

“On the fourth day of a bright fortnight, when it falls on a Tuesday, the people worshipping you will get everlasting beauty and prosperity and health”—17

Hearing such words of Śiva, that son of the Earth, instantly became placid and afterwards turned into a planet —18

“Some Sudha was worshipping that planet Mars, and you saw the ceremony, on account of which you are so handsome and renowned, O you son of Prahlāda. You are known as Viśchana by the Devas and the Asuras, because you possess various ‘vi’ fai-teaching intelligence (Rochi), and hence you are called Viśchana (fai-teaching light). I was astonished to see the great beauty possessed by you simply by your looking at the ceremony of Angārakavīta, and consequently I greeted you with the words Sadhu, Sadhu, thinking of the great mahātmya of that vrata. When, by merely looking at that ceremony, one gets beauty and lordliness as yours, I do not know what would be the case if a man were to observe this ordinance”—19-22

“O Prince! You looked with faith at the ceremony of giving away the cows, &c., in charity, at the conclusion of the vrata performed in honour of Mars, the son of Earth, by a low-born despicable Sudha, and consequently you have been given such a handsome form and are born in the royal family of Daityas”—23

Śiva said —“On hearing those words of Sukra, Viśchana was very much astonished and asked him”—24

Viśchana said —“O sage! I am eager to hear about the ordinance as well as about the charities witnessed by me in my previous life”—25

"Pray explain to me the glory and the rituals connected with that ordinance" Hearing those words of Vîshchana, Śukrâ, began to explain it in detail —26

Śukrâ said —O Dâruava! if the 4th day of the bright fortnight fall on a Tuesday, the devotee should bathe after rubbing earth over his body, and then wear rubies —27

He should mutter the mantras, "Agnimûrdhâ diva," by turning his face towards the north If the devotee be a Sudra, he should silently, without uttering any mantra, meditate over the form of Bhauma (Mars) The company of women should be avoided that day —28

At dusk the court-yard of the house should be plastered with cow dung and adorned with floral wreaths, and uncooked rice should be placed all round —29

Thereafter, worshipping Bhauma, a lotus of eight petals should be drawn in saffron If saffron is not available, then it should be drawn by red-sandal --30

Four pitchers, full of eatables, should be placed, and uncooked rice and rubies should be placed in them —31

The pitchers should be located in the four corners, and fruits, flowers, incense, etc , should be placed over them —32

Then a milch cow, with her horns covered with gold, and hoofs with silver, should be given away to a Brâhmaṇa in charity, along with a milking vessel of bell metal, and her calf So also should be given an ox, and the seven kinds of grains tied in seven different pieces of cloths —33

An image of the size of a thumb should be made in gold Its four arms should be extensive The image should be placed on a vessel of gold, and the vessel should be placed on raw sugar and clarified butter —34

Afterwards, all that should be given away in charity to a Brâhmaṇa, who is versed in the sacrificial rites, is able to restrain his passions, is calm and modest, is well-born and has large family It should never be given to a Brâhmaṇa, who is a hypocrite Then the devotee should recite the following mantras, with his hands folded —35

'O, Son of Earth, O blessed one, you have been born of the sweat drop of lord Śîva, I pray you for beauty and have taken shelter under you Be pleased to accept this arghya, I salute you Pray accept this libation of water'—36

*Note* —(The mantra in the original is this —

भूमिपुत्र महामाग स्वेष्टेन्द्र च पिनाकिनः ।

दृष्टार्थी त्वा प्रपञ्चोऽहं यृहाश्चार्थं नमोऽस्तु ते ॥

The libation of water (arghya), mingled with red sandal, should be made by reciting the above mantras, and the Brâhmaṇa should be worshipped with red sandal, red flowers, and red cloths, etc - 37

By uttering the same mantra, a cow, with an ox, should be given away in charity in honour of Mars, and a bedstead, well-arranged with all its requisites, should also be given away - 38

All the nice things available or the things appreciated by the devotee wishing to acquire everlasting benefits, should be given away in charity to the Brâhmaṇa - 39

After this, the Brâhmaṇa should be circumambulated and dismissed, and the devotee should take his evening meal with clarified butter, avoiding salt and acid - 40

I shall now describe to you the benefits that accrue to the devotee by observing this Angâraka viata for eight times or even four times with devotion - 41

He gets handsomeness, luck, and devotion to Śîva and Viṣṇu in all his lives, and becomes the king of the seven realms - 42

He lives for seven Kalpas in the clime of Śîva after death, and, O Prince of the Daityas! You should also therefore perform this Viata" - 43

Pippalâda said - After thus describing the rituals, the sage Sukra went away and Vîrachana, the Prince of the Daityas, afterwards kept this observance, according to the prescribed rites, and O King Yudhiṣṭhîra! You should also keep it For the knowers of Veda say that its fruit is inexhaustible - 44

Śîva said - Hearing all this from the sage Pippalâda, the King Yudhiṣṭhîra, of the wonderful deeds and prowess, said — "Let it be so" He then performed this Viata One who hears about it, after pondering over the words of Pippalâda with attention, also gets the same benefit by the grace of the lord Mars - 45

*Here ends the seventy-second chapter describing the Angârakaviata*

### CHAPTER LXXIII

Pippalâda said — "King! now listen to the rituals pertaining to the pacification of the malignant aspect of the planet Sukra (Venus) On the beginning of a journey or its end, or on the occasions of the appearance and the disappearance of Sukra, a vessel of silver, gold or bell metal

should be made and filled in with white flowers, white cloth and uncooked rice.—1-2.

A silver image of Śukra should be made and given away to a Brāhmaṇa versed in the Sāmaṇeva, after decorating it with pearls and placing it on the top of the vessel—3

At the time of giving away the image, the following mantra should be uttered —'O, master of all realms, O, Bhūgunandana, O Kavi, salutations to you Accept this aghya for the fulfilment of my desires' The aghya mantra is —4

नमस्ते शर्वदोक्षेत्रा नमस्ते भृगुनन्दन ।  
कवे सर्वार्थसिवृथ्यं गृहाणार्थं नमोऽस्तुते ॥

The person who thus gives away all the things mentioned above, in charity, according to the aforementioned rites, when undertaking a journey, etc., at the time of the appearance of Śukra, goes to the region of Viṣṇu, after getting all his desires fulfilled —5

The devotee should not take his meals until he has finished his worship of Śukra by offering Him white flowers, fried cakes and cakes of urad pulse and things made of wheat and gram. The person who does so attains tṛivarga (religious merit, wealth and enjoyments) —6

Yudhiṣṭhīra! the worship of Brihaspati (Jupiter) has been described in the same way, to which now listen. An image of Brihaspati should be made in gold and placed in a golden vessel, after being dressed in yellow cloth. The devotee then should bathe in water mixed with sesamum, or with water mixed with the juice of butea-frondosa or Panchagavya —7-8

He should then put on yellow raiments and paint his head with sandal mixed with saffron, and then pour libations of clarified butter in the fire. Then, after saluting Brihaspati, the image should be given away to a Brāhmaṇa, along with a cow —9

Brihaspati should thus be saluted --'Salutations to Brihaspati, the giver of solace to those falling under the influence of evil stars'—10—

O, son of Kuntī! One who thus worships Brihaspati on a Sankrānta or on undertaking a journey or on other auspicious occasions, attains all his wishes —11

*Here ends seventy-third chapter describing the Puja of Jupiter and Venus*

\* Note —The pranāma mantra of Brihaspati is as follows —

नमस्तेऽभूतसां नाथ धाक्षते च वृहस्पते ।  
कूरपैः पीडितानामसूताय नमो नमः ॥

## CHAPTER LXXIV

Brahmā said —Lord Siva! you are the One, who sees all beings safely through the ocean of the world, pray therefore describe some such ordinance, as may lead people to cross the sea of the world in safety and attain health, heaven and happiness —1

Siva said —Brahmā! I shall describe to you the Sauria dharma, consisting of the following viatas (i) Kalyāṇa saptamī (ii) Viśokasaptamī So also (iii) Phala Saptami, the destroyer of sins and giver of great merit Similarly, (iv) the sacred Saṅkarā Saptamī (v) Kamala Saptamī (vi) Mandāra Saptamī, (vii) Śubha Saptamī, the giver of auspiciousness These are the givers of endless merit All these have been respected by the Devas and the Rishis, and I shall describe their rituals to you, one by one, in due order —3-4

When a Sunday falls on the 7th day of a bright fortnight, it is known as Kalyāṇini or Vijayā Saptamī On that day the devotee should bathe in cow's milk, in the morning, and put on white clothes, and then sit facing the east and draw the picture of an eight-petalled lotus flower, made of uncooked rice powder He should, then, draw a circle round that lotus, and in the centre of it draw its pericarp, with the same material Then, on all sides of it, he should draw eight pictures of the Sun with flowers and rice The devotee should put a pinch of uncooked rice on each petal of the lotus, after reciting the following mantras —“Tapanāya namah, Mārtandāya namah, Divākāraḥya namah, Vidyātatre namah, Varunāya namah, Bhāskarāya namah, Viśvātanāya namah, and Ravaye namah, respectively, beginning with the picture of the Sun on the Eastern petal, and then on those on the South Eastern, Southern, South Western, Western, North-Western, Northern, and, lastly, on the North-Eastern petals —5-9

Note—A pinch of uncooked rice should be placed on each petal after reciting one name each time, until it is placed on each eight petals, viz.—On the petal in the eastern direction by reciting Tapanāya namah, and so on

At the commencement, as well as at the end, and so also in the middle, of placing rice, he should recite the Mantra Paramātmane namah Then at the end, the God-Sun should be saluted —10

The Sun should be worshipped on the altar by being offered white cloth, fruits, incense, flowers, sandal paste, eatables and raw sugar, along with salt, all of which should be given away in charity to Brāhmaṇas —11

Afterwards, good Brāhmaṇas should be devoutly worshipped with raw sugar, clarified butter and milk, and then they should be given gold, placed on a dish, containing sesamum —12

Then the Brâhmanas should be dismissed with fees, after reciting the 'vyâhriti' mantras. The devotee should then go to sleep and then, after getting up in the morning, he should bathe and finish his japa (prayers) and take rice cooked in clarified butter and sugar in company of the Brâhmanas —13

After meals, the devotee should give away to the Brâhmanas, who may be free from hypocrisy, a pot, full of clarified butter, and a piece of gold, along with a pitcher, full of water —14

At that time the devotee should say "O, Adorable Sun, the Supreme Self, be pleased". The worship of the Sun should thus be followed for a year, on the bright Saptami of every month, and in the 13th month, 13 cows, with their mouths covered with gold and bodies adorned with clothes and ornaments, should be given away —15-16

If one cannot afford 13 cows, he may give only one. The observer of this ordinance should not exercise miserliness and jealousy. Those who do so, go to hell —17

One who thus observes the Kalyâna Saptami ordinance, goes to the region of the Sun, after being liberated from all sins, and obtains long life, health and prosperity on this earth —18

This Saptami, which is the destroyer of all sins and venerated by the Devas, is known as Kalyâna Saptami, the remover of all evils —19

One who reads or hears about this kalyâna Saptami, the giver of endless merits, is freed from all sins on this earth —20

*Here ends the seventy-fourth chapter describing the Kalyâna Saptami vrata*

#### CHAPTER LXXV

Siva said —O sage! I shall now tell you about the Visôka Saptami (the Sorrow-Destroying fast) the observance of which fast frees the devotee from all grief —1

*Note* —Visôka=Free from grief

On the sixth day of the bright fortnight, in the month of Mâgha, the devotee, after brushing his teeth in the morning and rubbing the body with black sesamum, and bathing, should fast the whole day, and at night, again brushing his teeth, he should take kusâra pudding (consisting of rice, sesamum and a pulse cooked in milk and eaten with ghee and without salt). Then go to bed as a Brahmachâri —2

On the following morning, after bathing and finishing his daily-prayer and so being pure, he should have a lotus made of gold, and worship it by pronouncing 'Aikāya namah'—3

*Note* —Arakāya namah=Salutations to the Sun

The lotus should be worshipped with red kanera flowers and a piece of red cloth. The devotee should pray to the Sun in these words—'O Aditya' as this world becomes free from all grief at Thy rising, in the same way, let me also be free from sorrow, in all my lives, and may I have always firm faith in Thee'—4

Thus, having performed Pūjā on the sixth day of the bright fortnight, the Brāhmaṇas should be worshipped with devotion. The worshipper, after taking cow's urine, should go to bed \* Then, on the following morning, rising from his bed, bathing and finishing his daily prayers, he should offer food to the Brāhmaṇas, in a vessel containing raw sugar. Then the golden lotus should be given away to a Brāhmaṇa, along with a pair of red clothes mentioned above—5-6

On the Saptamī (seventh) day, oil and salt should be avoided, and the devotee should observe a vow of silence and listen to some Purāṇa—7

The ordinance should then be continued on the seventh day of each fortnight, till the next month of Māgha—8

On the conclusion of the ordinance, a pitcher of water, along with a golden lotus, should be given away, and a bedstead, with all its requisites and a milch cow, should also be given away—9

One who keeps up the Viśoka Saptami ordinance, according to the rites mentioned above, without giving way to miserliness, attains bliss, and never gets any sorrow for a period of ten padmas, and is also free from disease. He also attains his wishes, and if he observes it without any desires, he becomes unified with Brahman—10-12

One who reads, listens to, or relates this vrata of Viśoka Saptami, goes to the realm of Indra and never gets any sorrow—13

*Here ends the seventy-fifth chapter dealing with Viśoka saptami vrata  
or the Sorrow-Destroying fast*

## CHAPTER LXXVI

Siva said—"I shall now describe to you the Phala Saptami, (fruit-gift fast) the observance of which liberates the devotee from sins and leads him to heaven—1

\* This ceremony relates to the sāṣṭhi day

In the month of Mārgaśīrsha, on the seventh day of the bright fortnight, the devotee, after fasting, should give away a lotus of gold, along with sugar, to some Brāhmaṇa with a large family. A golden image of the Sun, weighing one pala in measure, should also be given away to a Brāhmaṇa in the afternoon, when the devotee should say, 'O Sun, be pleased on me'—2-3

On the following day, that is, on Asṭami, the Brāhmaṇas should be worshipped with devotion and fed with milk and fruits, during that period of the day, so long as there is any portion of the Kṛṣṇa Saptami remaining, and on every seventh day of the dark fortnight, fruits should be given away in charity—4

In the same way, any fruit made of gold, and a lotus, along with sugar, utensils, cloths and flowers should be given away on each seventh day of the dark and the bright fortnights in the month, for a full year—5-6

The following names should be recited, one after the other, each month—Bhānu, Arka, Ravi, Brāhmaṇā, Sūrya, Sukha, Hari, Śiva, Śiṁśān, Vibhūtavasu, Tvaṣṭā, and Vaiuṇa—7

Out of the names mentioned above, one name, turn by turn, should be recited monthly, on the seventh day of the dark or bright fortnight. The desire of obtaining any fruit or meat, by the observance of this vrata, should be renounced by the devotee—8

At the end of the ordinance, a Brāhmaṇa and his wife should be adored, and then cloth as well as a pitcher, full of sugar, along with a lotus of gold, should be given, and the following prayer should be offered—'O'Ravi! as the wishes of your devotees never prove fruitless, so the attainment of endless fruits be mine, throughout my future seven lives'—10

One who observes this Phala Saptami, the giver of endless fruits, being liberated from all his sins, goes to the realm of the sun. He is freed from the sins arising out of drinks, &c., whether committed in this or the next world. All that is destroyed, who observes this Phala Saptami fast. He who observes this Phala Saptami, becomes free from all diseases and liberates his past ancestors as well as his successors, for 21 generations from bondage. One who reads, hears or relates this to others, gets also prosperity—11-14

*Here ends the seventy-sixth chapter relating to Phala Saptami  
or the fast followed by the gift of fruits*

## CHAPTER LXXVII

Siva said—"I shall now explain to you something about the Sarkerā Saptami, (gulf of sugar) the destroyer of sin, by the observance of which one gets longevity, prosperity and health —1

In the month of Vaisākha, on the seventh day of the bright fortnight, the devotee should bathe in water, mixed with white sesamum, and then put on white sandal paste and a garland of white flowers —2

A lotus with its petals and pericarp, should be drawn on an altar with saffron, and flowers and incense should be put on it, after reciting 'Sāvitre namah'—3

Afterwards, a pitcher of water, with a vessel of sugar, should be placed on it. The pitcher should be covered with a piece of white cloth and white flowers, sandal paste, and gold should be put on it. Then the pūjā should be made with the following mantra —4

'O Pitcher, You are the Vedamaya, and, consequently, you are praised as knowel of all the Vedas. You are like nectar to all, bring peace unto me'—5

*Note*—Vedamaya=Full of all Vedas, Vedavidī=The knower of the Vedas

Afterwards, the devotee should drink panchagavya and sleep on the floor, by the side of the pitchers, and should recite the Vedic mantras relating to the Sun and listen to the Purānas —6

After the lapse of a day and night, on the 8th day of the fortnight, the devotee should give away all the things to the Brāhmaṇas after performing his daily prayers —7

He should feed the Brāhmaṇas, according to his means, with sugar, clarified butter and rice cooked in milk and sugar, but should avoid oil and, salt. He himself should take his meals in silence. The same rule should be observed each month for a year, after which a pitcher of water, with a vessel of sugar, a bedstead, with all its requisites, and a milch cow, and if means permit, then a house containing all the necessities of a householder's life as well as eatables, should be given away. Misery should not be exercised, for it leads to sin. The devotee should, in addition to the things mentioned above, give away a horse of gold worth 1,000 Niskas, 100 Niskas, or 10 Niskas, or of even 5 Niskas, according to his means, by reciting the mantras pertaining to the Sun --8-12

*Note*—One Niska is equivalent to Rs 4

The nectar fell from the mouth of the Sun, whilst He was quaffing it, out of which (Śali) rice, mūṅga pulse and sugarcane were produced

Sugarcane is the best of all these three, because out of it sugar is prepared. Its juice is just like nectar, consequently, an offering of sugar to Devas and Pitris is dear to the Sun also — 13-14

This Šarkarâ Saptami is said to give the same benefit as Asvamedha sacrifice. It removes all diseases and makes the sons and the grandsons thrive. One who observes this fast with unflinching devotion, gets bliss. He passes his days for one Kalpa in heaven, and then attains emancipation. One who hears, listens, or reads about this, goes to the region of the Sun. One who advises others to observe this ordinance, is also venerated by Devas and Heavenly damsels, and passes his days in heaven —15-17

*Here ends the seventy-seventh chapter describing the Šarkarâ Saptami or the fast followed by gift of sugar*

## CHAPTER LXXVIII

Siva said — I shall now describe to you that Kamala Saptami viata, by the mere mention of which the God Sun becomes pleased —1

In the spring, on the 7th day of a bright fortnight, the devotee should bathe in water mixed with white mustard and should then make a golden lotus and place it in a golden vessel, full of sesamum —2

The lotus should be covered with a pan of cloths, and then the Lord Sun should be worshipped with incense, flowers, &c. The following mantras should be recited at the time of worship ‘Kamalahastâya namah, Viśvadhârîne namah, ‘Divâkârâya namah’, ‘Prabhâkarâya namah,’ and he should then give away the golden lotus in the evening, along with the pitcher of water adorning it, with ornaments, cloths and garlands, and then give it to a Brâhmaṇa. So, also, according to his means, he may give away a milch cow after adorning her well —3-5

On the following day i.e., on the astami the Brâhmaṇas should be fed according to the means of the devotee, but he himself should not take flesh and oil —6

In this way, the devotee, without giving way to miserliness, should observe the same rituals, on the 7th day of a bright fortnight each month —7

On the conclusion of the ordinance, a bedstead along with the golden lotus, should be given away, and a cow with its horns plaited with gold as well as utensils, asana (seats) and candle sticks should also be given away,

along with other necessary articles One, who observes this ordinance, according to the prescribed rites, becomes possessed of inexhaustible wealth and goes to the kingdom of the Sun —8-9

He also goes to all the seven lokas, in each kalpa, where he enjoys in the company of the nymphs and gets bliss One who hears, sees, relates or observes this ordinance also becomes wealthy and goes to heaven, where he enjoys the company of Gandharvas and Vidyâdhara —10-11

*Here ends the seventy-eighth chapter dealing with Kamala Saptami Vata*

### CHAPTER LXXIX

Siva said —I now relate to you about the Mandâra Saptami, the giver of all desires, the most excellent, and the destroyer of all sins —1

The devotee should take some light food on the fifth day of the bright fortnight in the month of Mâgha, and, having arisen from his bed in the morning and brushing his teeth and bathing, should keep fast on that day viz , on the Saptami day —2

That day he should honor a few Brâhmaṇas and feed them with delicious food at night Mandâra\* pâtana should be offered to the Deva On the following morning, that is, the saptami day, he should feed the Brâhmaṇas again, according to his means, after his morning ablutions Then procure eight Mandâra flowers and prepare a golden image of the Sun carrying a lotus in his hand and place it in a copper-vessel containing sesamum, and prepare also an eight-petalled lotus and invoke the God Sun, thus He should offer one mandâra flower on each petal —3-5

He should then salute the Sun and put some flowers and uncooked rice on the lotus leaf, in the Eastern direction by saying 'Bhâskarâya-namah' in the South-East by saying 'Sûryâya namah' in the South, by saying 'Aikâya namah' in the South-West, by saying "Aiyâinne namah," in the West by saying --"Veda dhâmuñe namah," in the North-West direction by saying "Chanda Bhânave namah," in the North by saying "Puṣpe namah," in the North-East by saying 'Anandâya namah' —6-7

The devotee should place the image of the Male Purusa on the pericarp of the lotus, and after saying 'Saivâtmâne namah,' white cloth should be put on the image, and eatables, flowers and fruits should be offered —8

Then all these things should be given away to a Brâhmaṇa versed in the Vedas He himself should take his meals, but then oil and salt should

\* Mandâra is the name given to several species of plants, viz., Calotropis gigantea, Erythrina indica, and thorn-apple

be avoided. He should observe the vow of silence while eating, and take his meals facing the East —9

This ordinance should be observed, according to the prescribed rites for a year, on the seventh day of a fortnight, each month, without giving way to miserliness —10

On the conclusion of the ordinance, the lotus of gold should be given away after being placed on a pitcher of water. One wishing to acquire prosperity, should give away a cow in addition to it —11

The following prayer should then be offered 'I salute Mandāranātha and Mandārabhavana, O Lord Sun! see me through this wordly ocean of troubles' —12

One who observes this Mandāra Saptami fast in this way is freed from all sins and goes to heaven where he resides for a kalpa. This ordinance is like a torch that dispels all the sins like pitched darkness. One who keeps it up gets his desires fulfilled. One who reads or listens about this ordinance becomes freed from all sins —13-15

*Here ends the seventy-ninth chapter dealing with Mandāra Saptami vrata*

### CHAPTER LXXX

Sri Bhagavān said —I shall now explain to you about the excellent Subha saptami fasting, which frees the devotee from all diseases, sorrows and troubles —1

The devotee should observe this ordinance on the seventh day of the bright fortnight, in the month of Asvina, after ablutions and morning prayers, when the Brāhmaṇas have done the svastivāchana —2

A milch cow should be worshipped with incense, flowers and sandal paste and the devotee should say, 'O, One who has been born of the Sun and one who resides in the various climes, whose body is goodness itself, I salute Thee for the fulfilment of my desires' —3

After this, a quantity (of the Prastha measure) of sesamum put in a vessel of copper, an ox of gold with incense, garland, molasses, various kinds of fruits, eatables and dishes made of milk and clarified butter, should be given away in the evening by reciting the mantra, "Aryamā Priyatām" —4-5

The devotee should offer Pañchagavya as Pāśana. He should be free from all pride and sleep on the floor. On the following morning, he

should get up and worship the Brâhmaṇas with devotion. Thus men should give away each month a couple of cloths, a golden ox and a golden cow, and, at the end of the year, sugarcane, molasses, bedding, pillows, utensils, and mattresses — 8

Afterwards, a quantity (of the Prastha measure) of sesamum placed in a vessel of copper and a golden ox, should be given to a Brâhmaṇa versed in the Veda, with the words, "Visvâtmâ Priyatâm" — 9

One who keeps up this ordinance in this way becomes wealthy and renowned in each birth — 10

He is also honoured by the nymphs (*i.e.*, Apsarâs and Gandharvas), and resides in heaven as the Lord of Hosts (*i.e.*, Ganas) till the end of the kalpa, after which he is born as a king — 11

Thousands of the sins accruing by the killing of Brâhmaṇas and by wilful abortion, are expiated by the reading of this sacred vrata of Saptami — 12

One who reads this or hears it, even for a moment, or sees the vrata performed and things given away, is freed from all sins and becomes the Lord of the Vidyâdharaś — 13

One who keeps up this Saptami vrata (ordinance), of sevenfold prescription, for a period of seven years, becomes the Lord of seven regions, turn by turn, after which he goes to the region of Viṣṇu and attains bliss there — 14

*Here ends the eightieth chapter describing the Śubha Saptami vrata*

---

### CHAPTER LXXXI

Manu asked — Lord! which is that ordinance, by the observance of which, separation from the dear ones ceases to be painful and which confers prosperity on the devotee and which saves men from the evils of this life — 1

The Lord said — The question put by you, O Manu! is beneficial to the world, and, owing to the sublimity of the subject-matter, is beyond the reach of heaven even, and, though kept secret from Suras and Asuras, now, I shall relate it to you on account of your intense devotion — 2

The Viśokadvâdaśi ordinance falls in the month of Āśvina. On the tenth day of the fortnight, the devotee should take some light food and commence the ordinance by observing the prescribed rites. — 3

On the Ekādaśi day, he should brush his teeth by turning his face towards the north or the east. Then he should worship the Lord Kṛṣṇa and the Goddess Lakṣmī, and fast the day "I shall take my meal consisting of many dishes next day." With this thought, he should go to sleep, and, on getting up in the morning, he should bathe in Pañchagavya water, mixed with various medicines, and put on white clothes and garlands of white flowers. Afterwards, the worship of Lakṣmī and Nārāyaṇa should be commenced with white lotus flowers —4-5

The feet should be worshipped, after reciting 'Viśokaya namah,' the legs after reciting 'Varadāyā namah,' the knees after reciting 'Śrīsāya namah,' the thighs after reciting 'Jalasāyine namah,' the private parts after reciting 'Kandālapāya namah,' the waist after reciting 'Mādhabavāya namah,' the stomach after reciting 'Dāmodarāyā namah,' the ribs after reciting 'Vipuliya namah,' the navel after reciting 'Padmanābhāya namah,' the heart after reciting 'Mānmathāyā namah,' the breasts after reciting Śridharāyā namah,' the hands after reciting 'Madhujīte namah,' the left arm after reciting 'Chakrīne namah,' the right arm after reciting 'Gadīne namah,' the throat after reciting 'Vākunthāya namah,' the mouth after reciting 'Yajñyanukhāya namah,' the nose after reciting 'Āśokanidhaye namah,' the eyes after reciting 'Vānsudevāya namah,' the forehead after reciting Vāmanāyā namah,' the eye brows after reciting 'Hārāye namah,' the locks of hair after reciting 'Mādhabavāya namah,' the crown after reciting Viśvarūpiṇī namah,' the head after reciting 'Sarvātmāne namah — 6-11

Thus worshiping Viśnu with sandal, fruits and flowers, an altar should be made on the ground after making a circle —12

The altar should be a square in shape, and of the dimensions of a cubit, and should slant towards the north. It must be smooth and soft, surrounded by three small mud-walls —13

The upper surface should be eight fingers high from the ground, and the mudwalls one finger high and two fingers thick —14

[*N.B.—One finger is a little less than one inch.*]

On it should be placed an image of Lakṣmī, made of river sand, and placed in a winnowing basket, and worshipped according to the rites hereafter mentioned —15

Lakṣmī should be worshipped, after reciting the following mantras, viz.—

नमो देव्यै नमः शास्त्र्यै नमो लक्ष्म्यै नमः श्रियै ।

नमः पुष्ट्यै नमस्तुप्त्यै पृष्ट्यै हृष्ट्यै नमो नमः ॥

Devyat̄ namah, Sāntyai namah, Lakṣmyai namah, Śriyai namah, Puṣṭyai namah, Tuṣṭyai namah Vṛiṣṭyai namah, Hṛiṣtyai namah —16

The devotee should also say, 'O Viśokī goddess, destroy all grief, grant some boon, give wealth, and fulfil all desires' —17

After this, he should wrap up the winnowing basket in a piece of cloth, and worship Lakṣmi with fruits and various kinds of clothes and with a golden lotus —18

The devotee should drink the water purified by the Kuśa grass, and carry on music and singing throughout the night, and, on the lapse of three quarters of the night thus past in vigil and prayer, the devotee should sleep in the last quarter, and then waking up, go and worship them, along with three couples of Brāhmaṇas and Brāhmaṇis according to his means if not three, at least, one couple should be worshipped. He should offer them sandal, flowers and cloths as well as bedsteads, with the mantra, "Namastu Jalasayine" The night thus passed with watching, in music and songs, the devotee, after bathing in the morning, should worship the Brāhmaṇa couples, as mentioned above. They should be fed according to his means, free from niggardliness. And then, after taking his meals, he should pass that day in listening to the Purāṇas —19-23

The devotee should observe the same rituals every month till the ordinance is over, after which, he should give away a bedstead, along with the guda dhenu\* (sugar cow), pillows, bedding, sheets and cloths —24

Then he should say, 'O Lord! as Lakṣmi does not forsake you, similarly, beauty, health, and pleasure may always be mine' --25

'As Lakṣmi does not go without Viṣṇu, let there always be happiness with me. Let my devotion always remain centred in Viṣṇu' —26

With the above words, the devotee should give away the bedstead, and guda dhenu, the image of Lakṣmi and the winnowing basket, to the Brāhmaṇa —27

The following flowers are always desirable in this form of worship viz., 'Lotus, Kanera, Bâna, fresh Safron flower, Ketaki, Sindhuvarā, Jasmine, Gaudhapatala, Kadamba, Kubjaka and Champaka —28

*Here ends the eighty-first chapter describing the Vrata called Viśoka  
Doddas*

\* *Guda dhenu has been explained in the next chapter*

## CHAPTER LXXXII

Manu asked —O, Lord of the Universe ! pray tell me about *Guḍadhenu* How should it be made, and by what mantras should it be given away ?—1

The Lord Matsya answered —O King ! I shall explain to you the form of *Guḍadhenu*, and the fruits of its gift, as well as the mantras, according to which it should be given away It is the destroyer of all sins —2

The floor should be plastered with cowdung, the Kusa grass should be spread on all sides, and then over it should be placed a black antelope skin of four hands in length with its neck towards the east This is meant for the cow A smaller deerskin should be spread on the floor, near the first, and it should be meant for her calf The cow should be made to face the east and the calf the north —3-4

The image of *Guḍadhenu* (Sugar cow) should be made of 4 maunds of raw sugar, and the calf of one maund of raw sugar, which is considered to be the first class , the image of the cow made of two maunds and the calf of half a maund of raw sugar is considered to be the next best The image of the cow made of one maund and the calf of ten seers of raw sugar is considered to be the last best The devotee is to choose between the three, according to his means —5-6

The mouths of the images of the cow and the calf should be made of clarified butter, and both should be covered with five silk cloths Their ears should be made of mother-of-pearl and legs of sugarcane and the eyes of good pearls —7

The tendons, nerves, &c , of these images should be made of white threads, white blankets to represent their dewlaps, cheeks and backs should be made of copper, the white hair trimmed from a *chāmara* (antelope hair) should represent the hair of the body —8

The eyebrows should be made of corals, the udders of fresh butter, the tail of silk cloth, a vessel of bell metal should be placed to represent the milking vessel, the horns should be made of gold, the pupils of the eyes of sapphire, the hoofs of silver, the scented fruits in place of the nostrils After thus making the images of the cow and the calf, the devotee should worship them with incense, lights, &c , with the following prayer .—9-10

'The Goddess, who is inherent in all beings, in the form of Lakṣmi and who also resides among the Devas, let that Goddess, in the symbol of a cow, may confer peace upon me The Goddess who is known as Rudrāṇī,

the favourite of the Lord Śiva, in whose form she resides, may that very same Goddess in the symbol of the cow, dispel all my sins. The Goddess, who reclines on the breast of Viṣṇu, as Lakṣmī, who is present in the form of Svāhā in the fire, and is called the power and the energy of the sun and the moon and Indra, the same Goddess, in the symbol of the cow may grant me wealth. She who is the Lakṣmī (wealth) of Brahmā, Kuvera, Loka-pālas may grant me boons in the symbol of the cow. She who is Swadhbā, of the highest Pitrīs, is Svāhā of the Devās, may she remove all my sins and bring me peace in the symbol of the cow'—11-15

The gudadhenu, thus invoked by the above prayer should be given away to the Brāhmaṇa. The same ritual is observed in giving away all sorts of cows —16

O King! there are ten sorts of cows that are said to remove all sins, and I shall enumerate them to you —17

They are —1 Cow made of raw sugar (guda dhenu) 2 Cow made of clarified butter (ghṛita dhenu) 3 Cow made of sesamum (Tila dhenu), 4 Cow made of water (jala dhenu), 5 Cow made of milk (Keśa dhenu), 6 Cow made of honey (Madhu dhenu), 7 Cow made of sugar (Saṅkarā dhenu), 8 Cow made of curds (dadhi dhenu), 9 Cow made of syrup (Rasa dhenu) and 10, the real, that is, the living cow —18-19

The symbols of cows made of liquid should be placed in pitchers filled to the brim, and the symbols of the cow made of other substances should be arranged in a heap. In this matter of gift, some also like to make a symbol of the cow of gold — 20

Some sages have also said that the symbol of the cow made of flesh butter and gems should be given away. The above-mentioned rituals should be observed in giving away all sorts of cows (described above) —21

The devotee should give away, with faith, these cows to attain prosperity and emancipation, on occasions of different festivals, accompanied with the invocation of mantras. I have already explained in connection with this *guda dhenu* gift, the gift of other symbolical cows. These gifts are destroyers of all sins, the givers of the fruits of innumerable sacrifices, and are very auspicious —22-23

Of all the ordinances the one of Adokadvādaśi is the best, and the gift of *guda dhenu*, as being an ingredient of that vrata, is, therefore, praised as the best —24

It is most appropriate to give away the *guda dhenu*, &c., on the days of equinoxes, and solstices, on the occasion of an eclipse and *Vyatipāta*

(i.e., when the Sun and the Moon are in opposite *Ayana* and have the same declination, the sum of their longitude being equal to  $180^{\circ}$ )—25

This *Visokadvâdashi* is most sacred and dispeller of all sins, and is auspicious. He who fasts on this *Dvâdashi* goes to Viṣṇu's highest seat. He attains prosperity, longevity and health in this world, and, after death, he goes to the city of Viṣṇu, remembering him always at that critical moment. The virtuous devotee never gets grief or pain for a period of nine arbuda and eighteen thousand years. A married woman, observing this *Visokadvâdashi vrata*, with music and dance, obtains also the same benefits. Consequently, one, full of faith, should always have music and songs in honor of Hari, on the occasion of this *vrata*, for, thereby, he gets prosperity.—26-30

One who reads, listens to, or sees the worship of Lord Madhusūdana or advises others to observe this ordinance, goes to the kingdom of Indra where he is venerated by the Devas for a period of one *kalpa*.—31

*Here ends the eighty-second chapter describing Asoka Dvâdashi and the subsidiary gift of guḍa dhenu and other symbolic images of the cow*

### CHAPTER LXXXIII

Nârada said —O Lord of the Universe! I wish to hear the benefits of that best of all gifts, that may be the giver of everlasting benefits in the next life and that may also be venerated by the Devas and Rishis.—1

Siva said —O Sage! I shall explain to you the ten ways of the gift or *dâna* known as the *Sumerupaivata* gift, by virtue of which, the devotee attains the highest of the climes and is respected by the Devas.—2

The blessings conferred by this form of charity cannot be attained otherwise, not even by the reading of, or listening to, the Purâṇas, Vedas, performing sacrifices and worshipping, or erecting temples to, the Devas.—3

Consequently, I shall relate to you the ways of this form of charity serially. The following ten hills should be made and given away, viz.—1 the hill of grain, 2 the hill of salt, 3 the hill of raw sugar, 4. the hill of gold, 5 the hill of sesamum, 6 the hill of cotton, 7 the hill of clarified butter, 8 the hill of jewels, 9 the hill of silver, 10 the hill of sugar.—4-6

Now I shall explain to you the ways of giving away the different hills enumerated above. The hills made of grain, salt, &c., should be given

away on the following occasions —on the day of the sacred equinoctial and solstitial sankrāntis, at the time of Vyatipāta, on the day of the conjunction of three tithis (tryahasparī), on the third day of the bright fortnight, on the occasion of an eclipse, on the amāvasyā day, on the occasion of the sacrificial rites connected with the marriage ceremonies, and other festivals, on the 12th day of the bright fortnight, on the full moon day, and on the day of the moon being in a sacred asterism —7-9

A four cornered (square) pandal should be erected with devotion, within a temple yard, in a sacred place, within the limits of a cattle-shed or in the devotee's own courtyard. It should face the north and be slightly slanting towards East and North, and the floor should be plastered with cowdung and covered with Kuḍā grass. In the centre should be made the hill, surrounded by posts as props. (Four hills should be made in the corners, with Sumeru in the centre). The hill of (1,000 dronas or) 1,6000 seers of grain is the first best, of 8,000 seers of grain is the second best, and of 4,800 seers of grain the last best —10-12

The Sumeru hill in the centre should be made of rice (vr̥ihi), three trees of gold should be in it. Pearls and diamonds should be studded in the east side of the hill, cat's eye and topaz in the south, emerald and sapphire in the west and lapis-lazuli and ruby in the north. Pieces of sandal wood should be placed on all sides. So also a creeper of corals should surround it, and the surface and the bottom of the rock should be decked with oyster shells —13-14

The images of Brāhma, Viṣṇu and Śiva as well as of the Sun should be made of gold by holy Brāhmaṇas, and placed on the summit of the hill —15

The four peaks should be made of silver, and silver should also be plated at the bottom. Sugarcane should be put in place of bamboos, the caves should be made of butter, and the streams, of clarified butter —16

The clouds surrounding this hill on four sides, should be made of cloths of four colors, viz., those on the east, of white cloth, those on the south, of yellow, those on the west of pigeon-grey, and those on the north of red-colored cloths —17

Fruits of different kinds, fine garlands of flowers and sandal should be put on on all the sides. Eight silver Loka-pālas representing 1 Indra E, 2 Agni S E, 3 Yama S, 4 Sūrya S W, 5 Varuṇa W, 6 Vāyu, N W, 7 Kuvera, N, and 8. Chandra N E, should be made and located in their ascribed places. The hill in this way should be decorated —18,

The canopy should be made of five colours, and it should be garlanded with white unfading flowers. The Sumeru hill should thus be located in the centre, and its four spurs decorated with flowers, and sandal should be located in their proper places. Then the Mandarâchala hill should be erected with barley in the east and adorned with the row of fruits and on the top, should be planted a tree of gold, representing the Madra Kadamba tree —19-20

That hill should be adorned with a golden image of Cupid, arrayed with beautiful dresses, garlands of flowers and sandal. There should be on one side of it a vessel, containing milk, representing the sea of milk and on the opposite side, another vessel, representing the sea called Aupodha. The forests of the hill should be represented by silver trees, according to the means of the devotee —21

On the south, the Gandhamâdana hill should be made of wheat, putting some gold in it, on the top of which should be placed a golden image of Yajñapati and the lake Mânasarovara, of clarified butter and a garden of white cloth and silver should adorn it —22

On the west, the Hiranmaya hill of sesamum should be made and adorned with sweet flowers. Silver, fig tree and swan of gold, garden of silver-flowers, a pond of curds representing the Sitodha sarovara and clouds represented by white cloths, should also be made —23

On the north, the Supârsva hill, of urad pulse (*Phaseolus radiatus*) should be made. A golden vâta tree and a cow of gold, should be placed on the top of the hill. A pond of honey, representing Bhadra sarovara, and a garden of silver trees, should also be made at the bottom of it. The Brâhmaṇas, versed in the Vedas and Purânas, and able to control their passions and of blameless character and sound bodies, should be made Hotâs performing Homa. The sacrificial pond should measure one cubit square in size and east of Sumeru hill. Sacrificial offerings should be made of sesamum, barley, clarified butter, sacrificial fuel, and Kusa grass. The devotee should keep himself awake during the night and blow conches, etc., and sing. Now I shall describe to you the way of invoking the hills —24-26

In invoking the Sumeru hill, the devotee should say, 'O hill! Thou art the best resort of all the Devas. O hill of immortals! destroy quickly all ill-luck in our houses and confer all prosperity on us as well as the highest peace. I have commenced worship with unalloyed devotion. Thou art the adorable Śîva, Brâhma, Viṣṇu, and the Sun. Thou art formless, with and beyond all forms. Thou art the seed of all, protect me, therefore, O Eternal One. Thou art the temple of the Lokapâlas and of

Vishvamurti, the Great Omnipresent, as well as of Rudra, the Adityas and Vasus, therefore give me peace Since Thou art never bereft of the Devas or Devis or by Siva, therefore take me across the mundane ocean of sufferings in safety'—27-30

After thus worshipping the Sumeru hill, the Mandarâchala should also be worshipped with the following words —'O Mandarâchala! Thou art embellished with the forest called Chaitra-ratha, and the continent, called Bhadrâeva, therefore, soon bring happiness unto me O, Gandhamâdana! Thou art the crest jewel of the continent, Jambudvipa, and art adorned with Gandharvavana, therefore, grant me high renown O, Hiranmaya hill, Thou art adorned by the Ketumala continent as well as by the garden called Vaibhârâja The golden fig tree is on your summit, let my power therefore be everlasting O Supângva hill, Thou standest majestic, beautified by the northern Kuru country and the Savitri forest, therefore, let my prosperity be inexhaustible' After thus invoking those hills, the devotee should bathe in the morning and give away the best central hill, to the guru (preceptor)—31-35

The four corner hills should be given away, in due order, to the four Rishvijas, and, O Nârada! twenty-four or ten cows should also be given away —36

Nine, eight, seven, five or even one milch cow should be given away to the preceptor (guru), according to the means of the devotee —37

This is the way of the worship of all the hills The same mantras and materials for worship should be employed in worshipping them all The sacrificial offerings to the different asterisms, Lokapâlas, Brahmâ and other Devas should also be offered by applying their respective mantras Diurnal fasts should be observed In case the devotee cannot do so, he may take his meals in the night O Nârada! Now listen to the Dâna mantras of all hills serially —38-40

Hear also the rituals of their being given away "The (Anna) grain is Brahmâ and is known as the giver of life The grain nourishes the universe, consequently, it is Viñu and Lakshmi O, Supreme of all the hills! protect me in the form of a hill of grain"—41-42

One who gives away the hill of grain in this way, resides in Devaloka during the reign of a hundred Manus, and traverses through the skies seated in an aerial chariot in company of the nymphs and the Gandharvas On the exhaustion of his merit, he is re-born in the family of a great king —43-45

*Here ends the eighty-third chapter describing the gift of hills  
(s e , heaps of grain)*

## CHAPTER LXXXIV

Siva said —I am now going to tell you about the mount of salt, the donor of which goes to My region —1

The first best mount of salt is of 256 seers (of the measure of 16 drônas), the next best is of 128 seers (eight drôras), and the last is of 64 seers (i.e., 4 drônas) —2

The poor may make it of any weight rising from 16 seers (one drôna) onwards. The four corner mounts (viṣkambha) should be of the quarter measurement of this main mount —3

And Brahmâ, along with the other Devas, should be arranged in the same way as mentioned before, and the golden Lokapâlas should also be so located —4

The ponds and Kâmadeva and others should be made as before. The devotee should keep up all the night. I now explain to you the mantra of giving it away 'O Salt! Thou hast been born of the ocean of fortune, in consequence of which thou art styled as the best of all the flavours. Hence this gift of the mount of salt may protect me from the evils of this mundane world —5-6

'There is no flavour in anything without a pinch of salt. It is always dear to both Siva and Sivâ (Gauri). Hence, O Salt! give me peace —7

'The salt that has sprung from the body of Viṣṇu is the giver of health. Therefore, O Salt in the shape of a mountain, carry me through the mundane ocean of troubles in peace' —8

One who gives away the mount of salt in this way, attains bliss after passing a Kalpa in the realm of Siva and Pârvati —9

*Here ends the eighty-fourth chapter describing the gift of the mount of salt*

## CHAPTER LXXXV

Siva said —I now relate to you about the gift of the mountain of molasses, the donor of which, honoured by the Devas, remains in heaven —1

The mount of 50 maunds (10 bhâras) of molasses is the first best, of 25 maunds (5 bhâras) the second best, and of 15 maunds (3 bhâras) the last best. The poor may make it of 7½ maunds even —2

The invocation, worship, the golden tree, the worship of the Devas, the four corner mounts (viṣkambha), the ponds, the forest, the Devas, and the sacrifice, the keeping up of the night and the Lokapâlas and the preli-

minary ceremonies, all these should be done according to the rituals connected with the mount of grain, and the following mantras should be pronounced —3-4

'As Viṣṇu is supreme among the Devas, the Saṃaveda among the Vedas, Lord Mahādeva among the yogis, the sacred *Om* among the mantras, the Goddess Pārvati among the ladies, similarly, the sugarcane juice is superior to all'—5-6

'Therefore, O mountain of molasses, give me unbounded wealth, you are the brother of the Goddess Pārvati (the giver) of goodluck, and the abode of Pārvati, therefore grant me peace'—7'

One who gives away the mount of molasses in this way, goes to the region of Pārvati and is honoured by the Gandharvās—8

After seven Kalpas, he becomes the sovereign of the seven Dvīpas. He remains also always healthy and never gets defeat from his enemies—9,

*Here ends the eighty-fifth chapter dealing with the description of the gift of the mount of molasses*

---

#### CHAPTER LXXXVI

I am now describing to you the ways of giving away the mountain of gold, which drives away all sins, and takes the devotee to the region of Brahmā —1

The mount of 4,000 tolas (1,000 palas) of gold is the first best, of 2,000 tolas (500 palas) is the second best, and of 1,000 tolas (250 palas) is the last. The poor may make, leaving pride aside, one of less weight, but greater than one pala, according to his means —2

The rituals prescribed for the mount of grain should be observed. The four corner mounts (*vṛkṣakambha*) should be given away to the sacrificing priests, as before, with the following words 'I salute you, O mount of gold, you are the seed, the womb of Brahmā, you are the giver of unbounded fruits. The gold is most sacred on account of its being born of Fire, therefore, O Nāgottama! protect me'. One who gives away the mount of gold, according to these rites, goes to the blissful realm of Brahmā where he resides for a period of one kalpa, after which he attains emancipation —3-7

*Here ends the eighty-sixth chapter describing the gift of the mount of gold*

## CHAPTER LXXXVII

Now I proceed to explain to you about the giving away of the mount of sesamum, by the virtue of which the devotee goes to the realm of Viṣṇu.—1

The sesamum mount of 160 seers (10 drōṇas) is the first best, of 80 seers (5 dīḍhās) second best, and of 48 seers (3 drōṇas) is the last —2

The four corner mounts (vṛiskambha) should be located as before, and I am now telling you the mantra to be recited at the time of offering, O Nārada —3

'Sesamum, kusa and misa were produced from the sweat of Viṣṇu, at the time of His killing the demon, Madhu, therefore, O mount of sesamum grant me happiness In Havya and Kavya, (in the Deva as well as in Pitrī worship), sesamum is considered to be the best, therefore, O mount of sesamum, I salute you'—4-5

One who thus gives away the mount of sesamum, attains similarity with Viṣṇu, and is never born in this world —6

He gets long life, children and grand children and goes to heaven, where he is honoured by the Devas, Pitrīs, Gandharvas, &c —7

*Here ends the eighty-seventh chapter describing the mount of sesamum*

## CHAPTER LXXXVIII

The Lord Śiva said —I shall now fully relate the method of the gift of the cotton-hill By this gift, one attains the highest state —1

It is best to make the mount of cotton for 100 maunds (20 bhāras), of 50 maunds (10 bhāras) is the next best, of 25 maunds (5 bhāras) is the last best The devotee, if in straitened circumstances, may make one of 5 maunds (one bhāra) even, without exercising miserliness —2

O Nārada! the rites prescribed for the giving away of the hill of grain should be observed in this also On the lapse of the night of prayers, &c, the devotee should recite the following mantra in giving away the hill of cotton —3

'O Hill of cotton! you cover everyone in the shape of cloth, I salute you, kindly dispel my sins'—4

One who gives away the cotton hill, according to these rites, goes to the region of Śiva where he resides for one Kalpa, after which he is born as a king —5

*Here ends the eighty-eighth chapter dealing with the gift of Cotton-Mass,*

## CHAPTER LXXXIX

Now I shall describe to you about the gift of the mount of clarified butter. It is like nectar, and its charity is the destroyer of all ills —1

The mount of clarified butter, consisting of 20 pitchers, full of it, is the first best, of ten pitchers is the second best, and of five pitchers is the last best —2

People with limited resources may make it of two pitchers even. The corner spurs should be duly located in the four sides, like the previous ones —3

Vessels of uncooked rice should be neatly placed on the mouth of the pitchers, touching each other, and rising up into the form of a peak like a pyramid, and should be adorned, according to rules —4

They should be surrounded with sugarcane, fruit and cloth, etc. The rest of the rituals are the same as those described for the hill of grain —5

The devotee should keep himself awake during the night, perform Homa offerings and worship the Deities, and give away everything to the preceptor (guru) in the morning —6

The spurs of the hillock (viśkambha corner mounts) should be given away to the Rītvika priests, as before, after which the devotee should say with a peaceful mind ‘The clarified butter has been produced by the confluence of the fire and nectar, therefore, O Sankara, the Lord of the universe, be pleased. Brillancy is Brahmā which is present in the clarified butter, therefore, let there always be my protection, by virtue of this charity of the clarified butter hill.’ One who gives away the first best hill of clarified butter, decidedly goes to the kingdom of Śiva, in spite of his being a great sinner, and resides in heaven till the dissolution of the world where he roams about in an aerial chariot decorated with cranes, birds, small bells, perforated work and potholes in the company of Apsarās, Siddhas, Vidyādharaś and the pitis —7-10

*Here ends the eighty-ninth chapter describing the gift of the mount of Ghee*

---

CHAPTER XC.

I am now going to explain to you about the mount of gems. The mount of one thousand pearls is the first best, of 500 pearls the second best, and of 300 pearls the last best. The spurs (viśkambha) in the

corners should be made and located in their proper places, the quantity consisting of one-fourth of the main mount —1-2

The eastern spurs of the mount, should be made with diamonds and cat's eyes The southern spur (Gandhamadana mount) should be made of sapphires and topazes —3

The western spur, called the Vimalachala, should be made with corals and lapis lazulis, the northern spur to be made with topazes and gold The rest of the rituals should be observed as laid down for the hill of grain The trees and the images of gold should be made and invoked in the same way and worshipped with incense and flowers. After the night is passed, the devotee should give everything away to the preceptor (Guru), priests, &c, by uttering the following mantras —4-6

'When all the Devas are dominant in the jewels, and you are the mountain of gems, you are of immortal stability I salute you.—7

'Lord Hari is pleased by the gift of precious stones, therefore protect me, O Lord' by virtue of this gift of gems'—8

One who gives away the hill of gems, according to these rites, goes to the region of Visnu and is venerated by the Devas like Indra, &c, where after passing his blissful days for a very long time, he is re-born as an emperor on Earth, endowed with beauty, health and all good qualities —9-10

His sins of killing a Brâhmaṇa are destroyed as the thunderbolt destroys the mountains —11

*Here ends the ninetieth chapter describing the gift of pearls and gems*

### CHAPTER XCI

Now I shall explain to you about the mount of silver, by the gift of which the devotee goes to the realm of the Moon —1

The first best silver mount is of 40,000 tolas (10,000 palâs) of silver, the second best of 20,000 tolas (5,000 palâs), and the last best of 10,000 tolas (2,500 palâs) —2

The devotee, in less favourable circumstances, should make a mount from 80 tolas (20 palâs) of silver and upwards, as much as he can afford, and, as before, the four corner spurs should be one-fourth in dimension of the main central mount.—3

According to the rites mentioned before, the mounts should be made of silver and the Lokapalas of gold —4

Separate images of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and the Sun (Arka) should be made and placed at the bottom of the hill, whatever has been ordained to be made of silver in other places, should be made of gold here — 5

The rest of the rituals, like Homa, vigil, &c, should be observed, as before. The devotee should keep himself awake during the night and give away the silver mount to the preceptor (guru), and the corner mounts, after being decorated with cloths, &c, and worshipped, should be given away to the priests (Ritvijas). Afterwards, the devotee, holding a blade of kuśa grass in his hand, should recite the following mantra, with a peaceful mind — 6-7

'The silver is pleasing to the Pitris, and so it is to Viṣṇu, Indra and Śiva, therefore, O mount of silver ! protect me from the ocean of sorrows of this world' — 8

One who thus gives away the mount of silver, attains the benefit of having given away ten thousand cows, and goes to the region of the Moon, after being venerated by hosts of Gandharvas, Kinnaras and Nymphs, and resides there till the dissolution of the world — 9-10

*Here ends the ninety-first chapter describing the gift of the mount of silver*

## CHAPTER XCII

I now relate to you the ways of giving away the mountain of sugar in gift, by the virtue of which Viṣṇu, Śiva, and the Sun always remain pleased — 1

The first best mount of sugar is of 20 maunds (8 bhāras) of sugar, the second best of 10 maunds (4 bhāras) and the last best of 5 maunds (2 bhāras) — 2

People of limited circumstances may make it from  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  maunds (one to one-half bhāra), and the four corner spurs should be made one-fourth of the central mount — 3

The rituals connected with the mount of grain should be observed here as well. The hills should be made with the images of Gods settled on them, and, as before, the three golden trees of Mandāra, Pārijāta and Kalpadruma, should be located on the Sumeru peak. These three trees should always be located on the gift of every kind of hill — 4-5

Harichandana and Santāna trees should be located on the east and the west, respectively. This should be done in the case of the gift of every hill, and particularly in the instance of the one made of sugar — 6.

The image of Cupid should be located on the Manadarâchala peak facing the west, that of Kuvera facing the north, on the top of the Gandhamâdana, on Vipulâchala, the incarnation of the Veda, in the form of the Swan, facing the east, facing the south, the (Surabhi) cow of gold on the Supârâva hill —7-8.

The invocation, &c , should be done, as before, in the case of the mount of grain, after which the central hill should be given away to the Preceptor (guru), and the corner spurs should be given away to the priests (Ritvijas), whilst reciting the following mantras —9

'This hill of sugar is known as the essence of prosperity and nectar, therefore, let thou be the source of everlasting bliss to me, O Lord of hills O, mount of sugar! the drops of nectar that fell from the Devas when they were quaffing it, produced thee, O sugar, therefore, protect me The sugar has also been generated from the floral arrows of Cupid, thou art the mount of the very same sugar , therefore, save me from this sea of troubles in the world '—10-12

One who gives away the hill of sugar, according to these rites, is liberated from all sins, and attains bliss.—13

By the grace of Visnu, the devotee traverses through the sky seated in an aerial chariot, shedding lustre like the moon and the stars, after which he becomes the lord of the seven dvipas at the end of a hundred Kalpas, and enjoys health and wealth for three arvuda of lives —14-15

In observing the rites of giving away these different hills, the devotee should feed as many Brâhmaṇas as he can, according to his means , and, then, with their permission, should take his meals without salt and acid He should send away the materials of the hills to the houses of the Brâhmaṇas —16

Siva said —In ancient times (Bṛhat Kalpa), there was a king named Dharmamûrti, the friend of Indra, who killed thousands of Daityas —17

He eclipsed even the sun and the moon by his lustre, and he destroyed hundreds of enemies, and was ever victorious In spite of his being a mortal, he had access to every region , and, roaming about hither and thither, he subjugated many of his foes —18

His queen, Bhânumati, was the most beautiful of all the ladies in the three regions She was matchless, like the Goddess Lakshmi, and excelled all the beautiful ladies of her time She was dearer than life to the king She shone like Lakshmi, even in a group of 10,000 ladies.— 19-20

Thousands, aye, millions of Rājas, could not be compared to him On one occasion, that remarkable sovereign, whilst seated on his throne, asked his Purohita, the sage Vasiṣṭha, with mind full of bewilderment —21

The King said —O Sage! be pleased to tell me, on account of what good deeds in my past lives, I have become so illustrious and wealthy in my present life? —22

Vasiṣṭha said —‘Some time in the past, there was a public woman, named Līlāvati, who was devoted to Śiva. She gave to her preceptor (guru), a mount of salt, along with the trees of gold, &c., as prescribed in the rituals, on the fourteenth day of the bright fortnight —23

In the house of Līlāvati used to live a Sudra servant, named Saunda, goldsmith by profession, who was very clever. He had made beautiful golden trees and images of Devas, with faith, and with marked skill, and did not charge anything for his labour. He never charged any wages. He thought that these were all meant for religious purposes —24-25

The wife of that goldsmith, O King! fixed those trees artistically on that mount, after polishing them well —26

Līlāvati, along with those two, whilst worshipping the mount with faith, showed great devotion to their preceptor (guru). After a long time, Līlāvati died, and by virtue of her charity, she was liberated from her sins and went to the kingdom of Śiva —27-28

The poor, but high-minded, goldsmith, who was in the house of Līlāvati, and who did not charge anything for manufacturing those trees of gold and images, has been born in your person —29

By the same virtue, you are so illustrious and have your sway over the seven continents. Your wife of the past life had polished up the trees and had fixed them up on the mount, in consequence of which she has now been born as your queen Bhānumati —30

She is of matchless (polished) beauty, on account of her polishing those trees, and both of you had devotedly served in the gift of the mount of salt, consequently, you have obtained health, wealth and kingdom —31

You should give away in your present life the ten kinds of hills, according to the prescribed rites. Acting on that advice of the sage Vasiṣṭha, the king performed the gift of ten hills, beginning with Dhānyāchala, and went to the realm of Viṣṇu —32

One, who himself cannot perform, but merely touches, hears or even advises others to give these gifts, is liberated from sins and

goes to the region of Viṣṇu So, also, one who is poor, but who, full of faith, sees this Pūja performed by others —33

By reading this, evil dreams do not come, and their effects are removed One who gives the gifts with devotion, undoubtedly consumes all worldly fears —34-35

*Here ends the ninety-second chapter describing the glory of gifts  
of sugar hill in general*

### CHAPTER XCIII

Sūta said —In the days gone by, Saunaka asked Vaiśampâyana, who was seated at his leisure, to explain to him the ways of the acquirement of all desires by the performance of Sânti and Puṣṭi rites —1

*Note* —The past Karmas of a man tend to produce either some bad or some good results These Kârmik tendencies are indicated by the aspects of the planets, at the time of one's birth The influences, which tend to the production of sorrow, are malignant, and those which tend to the production of happiness, are beneficial. The effects of Karmas being the results of actions performed in past lives, can naturally be modified by appropriate actions done in this life Hence, the necessity of Sântika and Paustika rites. Those which pacify or neutralize the malignant influences are called Sântika rites, and those which strengthen and augment the beneficent tendencies, are called Paustika rites As karmas by themselves are inert, but work through the agencies of the Lords of Karmas designated by the names of planets, hence the worship of the planets, or, their propitiation

Vaiśampâyana said —I shall now relate to you, listen to it attentively what should be done by persons desirous of acquiring wealth, peace, longevity, and of freeing themselves from malignant influences and how the offerings to the planets should be made by a person desirous of Sânti and Puṣṭi —2

I shall explain to you, in brief, on the basis of all Sâtras, the ways of propitiating the planets —3

On an auspicious day as pointed out by almanacs and Brâhmaṇas, and after inviting the Brâhmaṇas, the different planets and their rulers should be located in their proper places, through a Brâhmaṇa, and hôma sacrifice should be performed.—4

The knowers of the Purâṇas and Sûtras have described the planetary offerings as being of three kinds, viz —1 of the thousand homas (fire oblations), 2 of a lac or a hundred thousand homas, 3 of ten millions of homas, that fulfil all desires Hear the ways of performing the homa with a thousand offerings, as told in the Purâṇas This is called Navagraha yajña, or the sacrifice to the Nine Planets An altar, measuring two

vitasti wide, within the sacrificial pond, should be made in the direction of north-east of the fire pit —5-7

The *vedi* (altar) should be one *vitasti* in height and square, facing the north. It should have two buttresses on which the Devas should be located. Afterwards fire should be lighted in the fire pit and the thirty-two Devas should be invoked in that fire —8-9

The following are the nine planets, viz. —The Sun, the Moon, the Mars, the Mercury, the Jupiter, the Venus, the Saturn, the Râhu and the Kêtu. They always bring good to all creatures (to call some of them malignant, is a mere mode of speech)

(1) The Sun should be located in the centre, (2) the Mars in the south, (3) the Mercury in the north-east, (4) the Jupiter in the north, (5) the Venus in the east, (6) the Moon in the south-east, (7) the Saturn in the west, (8) the Râhu in the south-west and (9) the Kêtu in north-west. All the planets should be drawn with uncooked rice powder —11-12

(10) Śîva is the Presiding Deity (*adhîdevata*) of the Sun, (11) the Goddess Pârvatî of the Moon, (12) Skanda (Kârtika) of the Mars, and (13) Hari of the Mercury, (14) Brahmâ of the Jupiter, (15) Indra of the Venus, (16) Yama (Dharma-râja) of the Saturn, (17) Kâla of the Râhu, and (18) Chitrâgupta of the Kêtu, (19) Agni, (20) Water, (21) Earth, (22) Visnu, (23) Indra (24) Aindri (wife of Indra), (25) Piajâpati, (26) Sarpa, (27) Brahmâ, (28) Ganesa, (29) Durgâ, (30) Vâyu and (31) Akâsa are the secondary presiding Deities (*Pratyâdhîdevata*). All these make up 31, to which number adding the Twin Asvinikumâras, the group becomes of 32. All of them should be invoked in the sacrificial fire by Vyâhritis —14-16.

*Note* — Vyâhriti means utterance. A mystic word, viz. the Syllables, Bhuvah, Svah, Mahah, Janah, tapah, Satyam, and Om

The colours of these planets should be as follows —The Sun should be drawn in red, the Moon in white, the Mars in red, the Mercury and the Jupiter in yellow, the Venus in white, the Saturn and the Râhu in black and the Kêtu in smoke colour —17

Their forms are of the same colour as indicated above. They should be dressed in the same colour of cloth and offered the same colour of flowers. Incense, highly fragrant, should be offered to them, and a nice canopy should be placed over the altar, which must be well decorated, by hanging flowers and fruits —18

Rice, cooked in coarse sugar, should be offered to the Sun, clarified butter and rice cooked in milk and sugar to the Moon, mohanabhoga (pudding) to the Mars, milk and rice to the Mercury, rice and curds to the

Jupiter, coarse sugar and rice to the Venus, rice, sesamum and pulses, cooked in milk to the Saturn, mutton to the Rahu, and coloured rice to the Ketu.—19-20

To the north-east of that altar, a flawless pitcher of water painted with rice and curds (five powders) and decorated with pañcha-ratna (five gems), the leaves of the mango tree, fruit and cloth, should be placed, and Varuna should be located on it —21-22

The earth of the elephant ward, stable, chariot-house, ant-hill, tank, cattle-shed should be mixed with water, along with the different herbs and Ganges water, and the devotee should bathe in it, after reciting the following mantras 'All the rivers, seas, tanks and rivulets, come to wipe out the sins of the devotee' —23-25

O, sages! the Deities should be, similarly, invoked, and afterwards Homa offerings of clarified butter, barley, uncooked rice, and sesamum should be made to the fire —26

The wood of Arka (*Calotropis gigantea*), Palasa (*Butea frondosa*), Khadira (*Catechu*), Apámárga (*Achyranthes-spera*), Áswatha (the holy fig tree), Udambara (the fig tree), Sami (*Prosopis spicigera*), Kusa and Durva grasses are to be used for lighting the sacrificial fire. The Homa offerings, consisting of honey, ghee and curds of milk, should be made either 101 times or only 28 times to each planet

The sacrificial twigs (of the plants named above), in all homas, should each measure a span in length (prádeśa), and should not contain roots, branches and leaves. Such a kind of fuel should be used by the wise in all sacrificial offerings —29

*Note—Prádesamátra* A span measured from the tip of the thumb to that of the forefinger

Particular kind of sacrificial fuel should be used for the particular Deity (named above), and offerings should be made, after uttering the particular mantras in low voice, with the name of the Deity for whom it is intended —30

The sacrificial twigs should be soaked in clarified butter and then thrown into the fire. Afterwards, the eatables, like charu, etc., should also be put into the fire. Ten offerings should be made at first to one's own particular mantra. The completion of the sacrifice should be performed by the vyāhṛiti mantras —31

The learned Bráhmaṇas should be placed, either facing the North or the East, and the cooked rice, charu (pudding), should be placed in front of each Devata, with recitation of the proper mantras —32

After the Homa of cooked rice (*charu*), the remaining offerings should be made with the twigs (*samidhs*), in honor of the planets, *viz.*, offering (1) to the Sun should be made after reciting 'Ākris̄hai,' etc., (2) to the Moon after reciting 'Āpyāsva,' (3) to the Mars after reciting 'Agnimūrdhādivah,' (4) to the Mercury after reciting 'Agnevivavasadūṣe,' (5) to the Jupiter after reciting 'Bṛhaspate pāṇḍiyārāṭhēna,' (6) to the Venus after reciting 'Sukran te anyat,' (7) to the Saturn after reciting 'Śannodevīrabhīṣṭa,' (8) to the Rāhu after reciting 'Kāyānaśchitrābhuvat,' (9) to the Ketu after reciting 'Ketunkrinvan,' (10) to Rudra after reciting 'Āvorājā,' (11) to Umā after reciting 'Āpohīṣṭa,' (12) to Kārtika after reciting 'Syonāpiñthvi,' (13) to Viṣṇu after reciting 'Idam Viṣṇu,' (14) to Brahmā after reciting 'Tamiśāna,' (15) Indra should be invoked by reciting 'Indramiddevatāya,' (16) to Yama by reciting 'Ayahgau,' (17) to Kāla by reciting 'Brahmajajñānam,' offering should be made (18) to Chitrāgupta after reciting 'Ajñātame,' (19) to Fire after reciting 'Agnimūḍaprvnīmahe' 'Uduttamam Varunam' is the mantra for (20) Varuna, 'Prithivyantariksam' for (21) the Earth, 'Sahasraśrāpurusā' for (22) Viṣṇu 'Iindrāyendomarutvata' for (23) Indra, 'Uttānaparne subhage' for (24) the Goddess (Indrāṇi), 'Prajāpati' for (25) Prajāpati, 'Namostu Sarpebhyah' for (26) Serpents, 'Eṣabrahmāyaśitvīgbyah' for (27) Brāhma, 'Anūnam' for (28) Vīṇāyaka (Ganēśa), 'Jātavedasesunavāma' for (29) Durgā, 'Ādītpratnasyaretasa' for (30) the Ākāsh, 'Krānāśur mahināścha' for (31) the Vāyu, 'Eṣousā apurvyā' for (32) the Twin Asvinikumāras Murdhānamdīvah is the mantra for offering the last libation, called the Pūrnāhuti, to complete the sacrifice —33-48

Afterwards, the devotee, facing the east or the north, should get himself sprinkled with the water of the pitcher, by the prescribed mantras accompanied with music, blowing of conch and songs —49

Four Brāhmaṇas, free from natural deformity and wearing garlands and golden ornaments, should bathe the devotee —50

At that time they should utter the following mantras “ Brāhma, Viṣṇu, Maheśa, all the three Gods may sprinkle you with the holy waters, and may Vāsudeva, Jaggannātha, Sankarsana, Pradyumna and Aniruddha lead you to victory —51

“ Indra, Agni, Yama, Nirṛiti, Vaiuṇa, Vāyu, Kuvera, Śiva, Brāhma, Sesāṅga and Dīkpālas may protect you —52

“ Kirti, Lakṣmi, Dhṛiti, Medhā, Puṣṭi, Śraddhā, Kīryā, Mati, Buddhi, Lejjā, Vapu, Śānti, Tuṣṭi, Kānti, who are called the Mothers, and are Dharmapatnis may come and sprinkle you with holy waters —53

**Note**—Kirti, Renown, Laks̄mi, wealth, Goddess of wealth, Dhriti, Firmness, fortitude, satisfaction joy, Medha, Power, Intellect, Lajja, Bashfulness, modesty, serenity, Puṣṭi, nourishment, Sraddha, Devotion, Kriya Accomplishment, Mati, Sense, Buddhi, Talent; Vapu, Body, Santi, Peace, Tuṣṭi, Contentment, Kanti, Lustre

The Sun, the Moon, the Mars, the Mercury, the Jupiter, the Venus, the Saturn, the Rāhu and the Ketu may also sprinkle you with holy waters, after being satisfied —54

The Devas, the Dānavas, the Gandhaivas, the Yakṣas, the Rākṣasas, the Serpents, the Seers and Sages, the Cows, the Divine Mothers, the trees, the nymphs, the Nāgas, the Daityas, the weapons, the arms, the kings, the king's vehicles, the heībs, the gems, the various parts of Time, the rivers, the oceans, the mountains, the sacred places, the clouds and the rivulets, may also spuinkle you with holy waters, for the fulfilment of all your desires"—55-57

Afterwards, the devotee should get himself sprinkled by the Brāhmaṇas, with the water mixed with different herbs and incense and then put on white clothes, and white sandal paste —58

Then the devotee should fasten his garments with those of his wife and worship the priests with devotion, and offer them appropriate fees, with full faith —59

A milch cow should be given away in the name of the Sun, a conch in the name of the Moon, a red ox in the name of the Mars, gold in the name of the Mercury, a pair of yellow garments in the name of the Jupiter, a white horse in the name of the Venus, a black cow in the name of the Saturn, iron in the name of the Rāhu, goat in the name of the Ketu. The fee in each case must be a piece of gold, called suvāraṇa (a golden coin), or cows adorned with gold, in the case of every one of these planets, or a suvāraṇa coin in the case of each planet. If he cannot do that, then, he may give whatever may appeal to the fancy of the preceptor (guru). Everything should be given away, after reciting the prescribed mantras with fees, as noted below —60-63

"O Cow! Thou art worshipped by all the Devas, Thou art Rohini, Thou art the sacred pilgrimage, containing all the Devas, let there be Santi to me. O Conch! thou art sacred amongst all, thou art auspicious amongst all auspicious things, thou art held by the Lord Viṣṇu, therefore let there be Santi to me. O, Ox! thou art the symbol of justice, source of the world's happiness, the conveyance of the Lord Śiva possessing eight forms, therefore grant me Santi. O Gold! thou art the womb of the Golden Child (born of the golden egg of the Lord), and art

also the seed of the Sun and the giver of everlasting rewards of good deeds, therefore grant me sānti Since yellow raimants are beloved to Thee, O Vāsudeva (Kṛiṣṇa), hence, be pleased with me by their gifts, O Viṣṇu, and grant me sānti

"O Viṣṇu, Thou, in the form of the horse, rose out of the ocean of nectar, and Thou art the eternal carrier of the Sun and the Moon, therefore, grant me sānti Cow! Thou art the symbol of the Earth and Thou art the beloved of Kedava, destroyer of all sins, so grant me sānti O Iron! since all difficult works are under thy control, thou helpest in the forging of the plough and arms, &c., therefore grant me sānti O Gold, thou art an ingredient of all sacrifices, thou art the eternal vehicle of the sun, therefore grant me sānti O Cow! Fourteen regions are present in thy body, therefore give me wealth in this world, as well as happiness in the next As the bed of Viṣṇu is never devoid of Laksmiti, therefore, my bed may never remain unoccupied by my wife, by the virtue of my giving away this bed in charity As there is always the presence of the Devas in all gems, so may the Devas grant me all jewels, by virtue of my giving away precious stones in charity All the forms of charity do not come up to even  $\frac{1}{16}$ th of the gift of land, therefore, let there be sānti to me by virtue of gift of this land"—64-76

With devotion, devoid of miserliness, worship should be performed with jewels, gold, cloth, incense, flowers, and sandal — 77

One who worships the planets in this way, attains all his wishes and goes to heaven after death — 78

The particular unlucky planet should be worshipped with great care, according to the prescribed full rites Other planets should, then, be worshipped with abridged rites This is for a man of limited means, otherwise all planets should be worshipped with full rites — 79

The planets, cows, King and Brāhmaṇas, especially, are worthy of being worshipped Those, who worship them, are nourished by them, and those, who insult them, are destroyed — 80

As the armour shields the warrior from the blows of arrows, similarly, the propitiation ceremony (sānti) protects them from the effects of the bad destiny — 81

The person desirous of acquiring prosperity should not perform any sacrifice without giving away the fees (Dakṣinā), since by the giving of handsome fees, even the Deva is propitiated — 82

### *I The ten thousand Homas.*

Homa sacrifice with ten thousand offerings is prescribed, in the

ceremony of the propitiation of the Nine Planets. The same number of Homa offerings should be made in connection with the nuptial, festive, yajña ceremonies as well as with the ceremonies of the installation of sacred images—83

O Sage! the ways of performing the sacrifice of ten thousand offerings to ward off obstacles, &c., caused by one's past karmas, as well as the dangers arising from evil spirits, have been described. Now I shall explain to you the ways of performing the Homa sacrifice of a hundred thousands of offerings—84

### *II The hundred thousand Homas*

The learned have said that a sacrifice of a lac of offerings should be performed for the fulfilment of all desires. It is very pleasing to the Pitris, and is the giver of prosperity and emancipation—85

The devotee should get the blessings invoked by Brāhmaṇas, after selecting an auspicious day, according to the benign influences of planets and stars, and then make a pandal to the north-east of the house, or a square pandal, measuring 10 or 8 hands, should be made to the north-east of a temple of Śiva—86-87

The altar should have a slant towards north-east, and it should be made with great care. The same north-east corner of the pandal, should be selected for the purpose of digging the fire pit. This pit should be a square, beautiful and according to rules. The pit should have girdles round it and of the form of the mouth of a yoni—88-89

The girdle should be 4 fingers in breadth and of the same height, slanting from east to north. It should be even in other directions—90

The sacrifice for the propitiation of the nine planets has been laid down for the peace of all. It is dangerous to make the sacrificial pond of more or less dimensions than prescribed. Therefore, it should be made carefully, as described above—91

Brahmā has said that the sacrificial pit in the ceremony of a hundred thousands of Homa, should be ten times the dimensions given above. The dakṣina to the priests should be ten times that given in the ordinary ten thousand homas—92

To perform the sacrifice of a lac of offerings, a sacrificial pond of 4 hands in length and 2 in breadth should be made. Its mouth should be made of the shape of a conical-triangle. Three girdles should also be made to surround the pit—93

To the north-east of the pandal, after leaving a space of three vitastas, the sacrificial pond should be dug. On the land selected for it, a square altar slanting north-east should be erected —94

Vishvakařinā has said that the buttress of the altar should be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  vitasti, that is, half of the above measurement, and should have three girdles. The Deities should be located on this buttress —95

The first girdles should be 2 fingers high and the remaining two should be only one finger high —96

The breadth of all the three girdles should be three fingers, and the wall round the altar should be ten fingers high. The Devas should be invoked on it, with flowers and uncooked rice —97

O Sage! the presiding (Adhi-devatās) and the minor (Pratyadhi-devatās) Deities should all face the east, and not the north or the west —98

Persons, desirous of acquiring wealth, should worship Garuda also, in addition, by reciting the following mantra —'the chanting of the Sāma-veda, is Thy body, Thou art the vehicle of Visnu and the destroyer of poison and sins, therefore grant me dānta' —99

In the former manner, the pitcher of water should be placed, and then the homa should be performed. The sacrifice of a lac of offerings being finished, if there remain some more sacrificial fuels, then these should be thrown into the fire, with the pouring of ghee on the pitcher, in the form of a continuous stream as a Vasudhātā —100

The sacrificial ladle should be made of the fig tree. It should be of fresh, sappy wood, and straight, and free from rot. It should be one hand in length. This ladle should be placed on two supports, and clarified butter should be poured through it in a continuous stream into the fire —101

The hymns of the Agneya-sūkta, Vaisnava-sūkta, Raudra-sūkta, Chandra-sūkta, Mahāvaishvāra-sūkta, Sāma and Jyeṣṭha Sāma should be recited, whilst so pouring —102

The bathing of the devotee with the holy waters and the Svastivāchana should be done as before, and the devotee should also give Dakṣinā separately, as before.—103

The Dakṣinā to the sacrificial priests should be given free from anger and bias, and with a calm mind. There should be four Brāhmaṇas, well-versed in the Vedas, to officiate on the occasion of the sacrifice of the Nine Planets, or only two such Brāhmaṇas, of peaceful disposition and versed in the Vedas, should be made officiating priests. This is in case of

the sacrifice of ten thousand Homa offerings. The number of Brāhmaṇas need not be greater than those mentioned above —104-105

In the sacrifice of a lac of offerings, there may be eight or ten priests, or even four, according to one's means —106

The sacrificial material should be ten times more for the sacrifice of a lac of offerings, than what it is in the sacrifice in connection with the worship of Nine Planets. Eatables, ornaments, bedsteads, necklaces, sacred threads, rings, etc., should be given away, according to the means of the devotee —107-108

Dakṣinā should be given according to the means of the devotee. It should not be reduced through miserliness. If he does not give any dakṣinā, through avarice or delusion, his family becomes extinct. —109

The devotee, anxious for prosperity, should give away also grain in charity, according to his means, because the ceremony without the gift of grain brings famine on the sacrificer and his country —110

There is no greater enemy of mankind than an ill-conducted sacrifice, for the priests, if not versed in the rituals, are destroyed, and the devotee is destroyed by not giving Dakṣinā, and the country is destroyed where food grain is not given in charity —111

A man in narrow circumstances should never perform a sacrifice of a lac of offerings, for the spending of even a small fortune in that case leads to disease and distress —112

The sacrificer, with devotion, according to prescribed rites, should engage even one, two, or three Brāhmaṇas, and the man in straitened circumstances may employ only one Brāhmaṇa, well versed in the Vedas whom he should properly honor and give full Dakṣinā —113

The sacrifice of a lac of offerings should be performed only by that man who possesses a large fortune, for the man performing such a sacrifice accurately, according to the prescribed rites, attains all his desires —114

The man who does so, is venerated by Vasu, Āditya, Marutgana, in the realm of Śiva, and attains emancipation after 800 kalpas —115

The man who performs this sacrifice of a lac of homas, with any object in view, attains his desire and goes to heaven, where he gets bliss —116

The man desirous of sons, obtains sons, one desirous of riches, gets riches, the devotee, eager for a wife, gets a beautiful wife, and if a maiden performs this sacrifice, she gets a good husband by virtue of it. —117

Further more, by the virtue of this sacrifice, a dethroned sovereign gets back his realm, the man hankering after prosperity gets prosperity, in fact, the devotee, desirous of anything, gets that thing. But the one, who performs it without any object in view, attains the Supreme Brahman —118

*III The 10 millions Homas*

Lord Brahmā has described the sacrifice of ten millions of homas, a hundred times more efficacious than the sacrifice of a lac of offerings. The money given away in Dakṣinā, and the effect and the result are a hundred times more than the last —119

In performing this bigger sacrifice, invocation and dismissal of Devas should be done as before. The same mantas are to be used in ablutions, offering libations and giving charity. I shall now describe the special mode of preparing sacrificial pond, altar and pandal, pay attention to my words —120

In the sacrifice of a crore of offerings, the receptacle should measure four hands and should be made of a conical shape, on a square base, and surrounded by three girdles, while the pond should have two openings —121.

A wise man should make the first girdle two fingers high, the second three fingers, and the height as well as the thickness of the third one, should be four fingers. The thickness of the first and the second girdles should also be two fingers —122-123

The receptacle should be one vitasti (half a cubit, or 12 fingers) in extent, but the height should be of 6 or 7 fingers. It should be raised in the centre as the back of a tortoise, and one finger high on the sides —124

It should resemble the lips of an elephant in extent and in having a hole. Such will be the receptacle as regards all kinds of sacrificial ponds —125

Over the girdles everywhere, an altar of 4 vitasti in measurement (i.e., 2 cubits or 1 yard) and of the shape of a peepal leaf, should be made. This is in the case of the sacrifice of a crore of offerings —126

In this form of sacrifice the altar should be made square, measuring four vitasti and having three girdles. Their height and extent should be as indicated before —127.

The pandal should be made of sixteen cubits in extent and should

have 4 doorways On the eastern gate, a Brâhmaṇa, proficient in the Rigveda, should be located —128

A Brâhmaṇa, versed in the Yajurveda, should be located in the south, one versed in the Sâmaveda in the west, one knowing the Atharva Veda in the north —129

Eight more Brâhmaṇas, well up in the Vedas and Vedângas, should be made to officiate as Homa-offering priests These twelve Brâhmaṇas should be sincerely honoured with cloths, sandal, garlands, and ornaments, as before --130

In the east, hymns from the Râtri-sûkta, Raudra and Pavamâna, and Sumeṅgala mantras, for the peace of the universe, should be chanted by the Brâhmaṇa versed in the Rigveda and facing north —131

The Yajurvedî Brâhmaṇa, seated in the south, should recite the mantras relating to Śanti, God Indra, Saumya, Kuṣmânda, &c —132.

The Sâmavedî Brâhmaṇa, sitting in the west, should sing the hymns of Suparna Vairâja, Agneya, Rudrasambhitâ, Jyeṣṭhasâma, and peace chant —133

The Atharvavedî Brâhmaṇa, seated in the north, should read the following mantras —Śanti Sûkta, Saura, Śâkunaka, Paustika, Mahârâjya —134

Five or seven Brâhmaṇas should perform the *homa* sacrifice as before, (the remaining Homakas helping them) The mantras relating to bath and the gift are the same as before —135

The Vasudhârâ or the way of letting the stream of clarified butter fall in the fire from a vase is the only peculiar rite of the sacrifice of a lac of offerings (as mentioned before) That should be done here also) One who performs this sacrifice of a crore of offerings, according to the prescribed rites, attains all his wishes and obtains the rank of Viṣṇu—136

He who reads or hears this description of these three sacrifices of the Grâhas (Planets), becomes purified of all sins and attains the rank of Indra —137

The benefits of this sacrifice are similar to those derived by the performance of 18,000 Aśvamedha sacrifices —138

Śiva has said that the sin of killing a crore of Brâhmaṇas and of making 10 crores of abortions, is washed off by the performance of this sacrifice —139

*Magic and Sorcery*

The sacrifice relating to the worship of the nine planets should be performed before the performance of the rites of *Abhichâra* (sorcery), *Uchchâtana* and *Vâsyâ Karma*, &c —140

[*Note*.—*Uchchâtana*=A magical incantation that causes a man to go away out of disgust   *Vâsyâ Karma*=A magical spell that fascinates and subdues a foe ]

Otherwise, no rite has the desired effect, so this sacrifice of ten thousand offerings to the planets should necessarily be performed as a preliminary.—141

In the sacrifice connected with *Vasikarana* and *Uchchâtana*, the sacrificial pond should be made of the measure of a handful (ell), it should be surrounded with three girdles, be circular in shape, and have one mouth, and the offering of the wood of *Butea frondosa*, sprinkled with honey, camphor, gôrôchana and agara, dissolved in water, mixed with saffron, should be made —142-143

An offering of woodapple (Bael) and lotuses, mixed with honey and clarified butter, should be made   Brahmâ has said that ten thousand offerings should be made in such sacrifices —144

In a sacrifice for *Vasikarana*, the offerings of woodapple (Bael) and lotuses should be made, and the *Sumitriyâna Apa osadha* mantra should be recited in offering Homa —145

No sprinkling with holy waters or location of a pitcher of water should be made in these forms of sacrifices   A householder should bathe in the water mixed with herbs, dress in white, put on white flowers, worship the Brâhmaṇas with gold threads   They should also be given fine costumes and *Dakshinâ* of gold   A white cow should also be given —146-147

This sacrifice subdues the worst of enemies, endears those who have no love, and dispels ills —148

The sacrificial pond for the performance of the sacrifice intended for *Abhichâra* and *Vidveṣana*, should be triangular in shape, measuring one hand, surrounded by two girdles, and having openings towards the vertices —149

[*Note*.—*Vidveṣana*=A spell that causes friction ]

Then the Brâhmaṇas wearing red garland, red sandal, red sacred thread, red turban, and red raiments, should perform the sacrifice —150

With three vessels containing the blood of the young crows before them, bones of the hawks in their left hand and sacrificial fuel in the other, and their hair loose, the Brâhmaṇas should perform the sacrifice,

all the while thinking ill of the enemies at the time of making these offerings —151

With the syenamantia, 'durmitriyâstasmai santu lumb phata,' the razor should be sanctified , with this the image of the enemy should be cut piecemeal and offered to the fire —152-153

Having performed the sacrifice of the Grahas, the proper Avichâra sacrifice should be performed Such is the rule for "Vidvesana" sacrifice as well —154

Such deeds only bear fruit in the present life and do not beget good results in the next, so a man, desirous of ultimate good, should not indulge in such deeds --155

One who performs the worship of the stars, along with the prescribed sacrifices, without any object in view, goes to the clime of Viṣṇu, whence he never returns to this world —156

One who hears or relates this to others, never suffers from any pain, owing to the evil influence of the planets or to the destruction of friends —157

The children of the house in which these sacrifices are written down, never suffer from any ill, mental or physical, or any other calamity —158

The sages are of opinion that this sacrifice of a crore of offerings begets fruits of many a sacrifice and dispels all ills , it is the giver of worldly prosperity and final emancipation The sacrifice of a lac of offerings gives the benefit of the advarmedha sacrifice The sacrifice performed in course of a twelve days and the sacrifice connected with the worship of stars, give equal benefits —159-160

Thus I have told the mode of the sacrifices of the Nine Grahas and the Abhiṣeka in divine sacrifices (the sprinkling of the devotee with the holy waters ) These are to be done to dispel all ills and hindrances to ceremonies of rejoicings These purge all sins One who reads or listens to it subdues all his foes and gets longevity and health —161

*Here ends the ninety-third chapter describing the mode of Navagraha homa sânti*

---

#### CHAPTER XCIV.

Siva said —The image of the God Sun who causes the lotus to bud-should be made as seated on a lotus (Padmâsana), with color like that of a lotus, with two hands, with a lotus in one hand and the other hand raised

in the posture of giving blessings, and having seven horses in His chariot, drawn by seven reins —1

Note — Padmasana=A lotus-seat An epithet of Sun A particular posture in religious meditation, (See Sacred Books of the Hindus, Vol XV —The Yoga Sāstra )

The image of the Moon, the giver of boons, should be made in white color, dressed in white robes, seated on a white chariot, having a white horse for His conveyance, having two hands, one holding a club and the other raised, in the posture of giving blessings —2

The image of the Mars should be made, having white hair, four hands, armed with a spear, a lance and club, with the fourth hand raised in the posture of giving blessings, wearing red robes and garland —3

The image of the Mercury should be made yellow, dressed in yellow robes and wearing a yellow garland, with four hands armed with a sword, shield and club, and the fourth hand raised in the posture of giving blessings, and having a lion for his conveyance —4

The Venus and the Jupiter should be made in white and yellow respectively They should have four hands, holding staff, rosary, and kamandalu, and the fourth hand raised in the posture of giving blessings —5

The Saturn should be of the colour and the lustre of an emerald, having a vulture for His conveyance and four hands armed with a lance, bow and arrow, and the fourth hand raised in the posture of giving blessings —6

The image of Rāhu should be made, having a terrible mouth or appearance, seated on a blue-colored lion, having four hands, armed with a sword, a leather shield, a spear, and the fourth hand raised in the posture of giving blessings The image of Kētu should be made of smoky color, with a vulture for His conveyance and having two hands— one hand holding a mace and the other raised in the posture of giving blessings, and having a distorted face —7-8

All the planets should be made with a crown on their head, and the images should be two fingers high (or, of the height of one's own finger) The mantras relating to the planets should be recited on the rosary 108 times each (It may also mean that the size of the planets should be 108 fingers or digits in height 'If the anguli be one inch in length, the images will be nine feet high , if the measure of the anguli be  $\frac{1}{4}$ th of an inch, then the height will be  $6\frac{1}{2}$  feet The sense is obscure) —9

*Here ends the ninety-fourth chapter describing the iconography of the Planets.*

## CHAPTER XCV

Nârada said —O Lord, presiding over the Past and the Future! pray tell me about some other ordinance that may be the giver of happiness and emancipation —1

Hearing the above words of the sage, Lord Sîva, the knower of all things, understood the inclination of Nârada, and said "Nârada! this sacred bull, who is my principal attendant and who has become unified with me on account of his asceticism and knowledge of the Sruti and the Purânas, will explain to you the rituals connected with my ordinance (Mâhesvara Dharma)"—2-3

Lord Matsya said —Having said so, that Lord of the God of gods, vanished then and there Nârada also, being anxious to hear, asked Nandikeshvara thus —O Nandikeshvara, thou hast been ordered by Sîva, therefore, tell me the Mâhesvara vrata —4

Nandikeshvara said —Hear with attention, O Brâhmaṇa! I shall tell you the Mâhesvara vrata. It is well-known in all the three worlds by the name of Sîva Chatuṛdashi —5

In the month of Mârgashîrsha, on the thirteenth day of the bright fortnight, the devotee should take his meals once and pray to Sîva with this Saṅkalpa mantra, "O Lord of all the Deities! I take refuge in Thee To-morrow, the Chatuṛdashi day, I shall observe a complete fast, without eating anything, and worship Sîva. I shall also give away a bull, made of gold, and then take my meals the next day"—6-7

Having made this Saṅkalpa, the devotee should go to bed and then rise early on the next morning and worship Sîva along with His Consort (Umâ), with white lotus flowers, sandal, etc —8

- (1) The feet should be worshipped, after reciting शिवाय नमः 'Sivâya namah.'
- (2) the head, after reciting सर्वात्मेष्य नमः 'Sarvâtmâne namah'
- (3) the eyes, after reciting विनिष्टेष्य नमः 'Viniṣṭeyânamah'
- (4) the forehead, after reciting हरये नमः 'Harayânamah'
- (5) the mouth, after reciting इन्दुमुख्य नमः 'Indumukhaya namah.'
- (6) the throat after reciting श्रीकंठाय नमः 'Śrîkanthâya namah'
- (7) the ears, after reciting सद्योजात्य नमः 'Sadyojâtâya namah'
- (8) the arms, after reciting वामदेवीय नमः 'Vâmadevîyânamah'
- (9) the heart, after reciting अघोराधिदाय नमः 'Aghorâdhidâyânamah'
- (10) the breasts, after reciting तत्पुरुषाय नमः 'Tatpuruṣâya namah'
- (11) the stomach, after reciting ईशानाय नमः 'Iśâna� namah.'
- (12) the ribs, after reciting अनन्तधर्माय नमः 'Anantadharma� namah.'
- (13) the waist, after reciting जिनाभूताय नमः 'Jinâbhutâya namah'
- (14) the thighs, after reciting अनांतरवैराग्यसिंहाय नमः 'Anante Vairâgysinhibâya namah'
- (15) the knees should be worshipped, after reciting अनांतरवैराग्याय नमः 'Anantavairâgya namah'
- (16) the legs, after reciting प्रधानाय नमः 'Pradhâna� namah'
- (17) the ankles, after reciting व्योमात्माय नमः 'Vyomâtmâne namah'
- (18) the hair, after reciting व्योमकेस्त्मरूपाय नमः 'Vyomakesstmrûpâya namah'
- (19) the back, after reciting पुष्टय नमः 'Puṣṭyai namah'
- (20) the neck, after reciting तृष्ण्याय नमः 'Tṛṣṇyayi namah'—9-18.

Then the devotee should give to the Brâhmaṇas a golden bull, along with a pitcher, full of water, white garments, Pañcharatna, various kinds of eatables —14

Really good Brâhmaṇas should be invited and well-fed, after which curd mixed with clarified butter, saved from the sacrificial offerings, should be taken by the devotee, who should sleep on the ground, with his head towards the north. On the full moon-day, he should feed the Brâhmaṇas and then take his own meals in silence. Similarly, he should do on the fourteenth day of the dark fortnight —15-16

The worship should be performed in the same way all the fourteenth days of each fortnight of every month. Now the especial mantras to be recited in each month will be explained —17

Commencing with the month of Mârgasîra, the mantras hereafter mentioned should be pronounced one by one —(1) Sankarâya namah, (2) Karavîrakâya namah, (3) Tîyamvakâya namah, (4) Maheśvâriâya namah, (5) Mahâdevâya namah, (6) Sthânave namah, (7) Paśupataye namah, (8) Nâthâya namah, (9) Sambhave namah, (10) Namaste Paramânanda, (11) Nâmah Somârdhadhârîne, (12) Bhimâya namah I am at Thy Meicy These names should be recited one by one, each month, from Mârgasîra. The devotee should offer as Prâsana (1) cow's urine, (2) cow-dung, (3) milk, (4) curds, (5) clarified butter, (6) water mixed with kuâ-grass, (7) pañchagavya, (8) woodapple (bael), (9) camphor, (10) agaru, (11) barley, (12) black-sesamum, on the Chaturdasi of each month —18-22

Note —The mantras to be recited in twelve months, beginning with Agraḥâyaṇa, are given below —

(1) ब्रह्मण नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "Salutation to Sambhava I take refuge in Thee" This should be pronounced in the month of Mârgasîra

(2) करवीरकाम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "Salutation to Karaviraka. I take refuge in Thee" This should be pronounced in the month of Pânsa

(3) त्र्यम्बकम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "To Tryambaka, in Mâgha"

(4) महेश्वरम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "To Maheśvara, in Phâlguna"

(5) महादेवम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "To Mahâdeva, in Chaitra"

(6) स्थानेम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का. "To Sthânu, in Vaishâkha"

(7) पशुपतेम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "To Paśupati; in Jyaiṣṭha"

(8) नाथम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "To Nâtha; in Âṣâḍha"

(9) सम्भवम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "To Sambhu, in Brâvâpa"

(10) ब्रह्मणम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का. "To Paramânanda, in Bhâdra"

(11) सोमार्धद्वारिम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "To Somârdhadhârîn, in Âsvina"

(12) भीमम नमस्तेऽस्तु त्वाम् चह शरण का "To Bhîma; in Kârtikî"

The worship of Sîva should be conducted from the month of Mârgasîra onward, by offering the following flowers, turn by turn, viz. --(1)

Mandéra, (2) jasmine, (3) Dhatura, (4) Sambhalū (Sindulvera), (5) Aśoka, (6) Mallikā, (7) Patala, (8) Aśka flower, (9) Kadamba, (10) lotus (*Satapati*), (11) Kamalini (Utpala) - 23-24.

Again, when the month of Kārtika arrives, the Brāhmaṇas should be fed with various kinds of eatables and offered garments, ornaments and garlands - (25)

Afterwards, the devotee should let loose a black bull, in conjunction with the Vedic rites. A golden image of Śiva and Pārvati should be made and given away to a Brāhmaṇa, along with a bull and a cow. A bedstead, with the following things, should also be given away. Eight white pearls, sheets, pillows, and a vase, full of water - 26-27

The images of Śiva and Pārvati should be placed in a copper vessel, full of rice, and then located on top of the pitcher of water, after which they should be given away to a Brāhmaṇa versed in the Vedas, observing ordinances and having a calm disposition - 28

It is best to give it to one acquainted with Sāmaṇeva - it should never and on no account be given to a hypocrite. Only one versed in the Vedas, knowing the Vedic principles, is fit to receive such an offering - 29

A Brāhmaṇa, free from deformity and of simple habits, should be worshipped, along with his wife, with garments, garlands and ornaments. These things might be given to the preceptor (Guru), if there be one, otherwise, to a really good Brāhmaṇa, free from all feeling of miserliness; for such a feeling leads one to the lower region - 30-31

One who observes the Śiva Chaturdaśī ordinance, according to these rites, gets the benefit of a thousand Aśvamedha sacrifices - 32

And the sins of killing a Brāhmaṇa and also against the parents, committed in this or in the previous life, are destroyed in a moment - 33

The devotee gets long life, health, domestic prosperity, and promotion in his husbandry. He then eventually goes near the Lord of four hands, whose chief attendant he becomes, and then after, passing crores of kalpas in the heaven, he becomes unified with Śiva - 34

Even the sage Brihaspati, the Devas, like the mighty Indra, and Brahmā, cannot adequately describe the glories of this ordinance. Even I cannot do so with a crore of tongues. - 35

One who reads, hears or thinks about this ordinance becomes liberated from all his sins. The Divine Consorts also venerate it; therefore, a devotee should always observe it, free from all feelings of despise - 36.

The woman who observes this ordinance with the permission of her husband, son or the preceptor also attains bliss by the glory of Śiva. - 37. Here ends the ninety-fifth chapter describing the Śiva Chaturdaśī Vrata

## CHAPTER XCVI

Nandikēvara said —O Nārada ! also hear the benefits that accrue to the devotee in his next life, by his relinquishing the fruits of this ordinance —1

O Sage ! the ordinance (*vrata*) should be commenced on any one of the following days, in the month of Mārgasīrsha the third, the twelfth, the eight or the fourteenth day of the bright fortnight, after invoking the Brāhmaṇas.—2

O Nārada ! In other auspicious months also, the devotee should, to the best of his ability, feed the Brāhmaṇas with rice cooked in milk and mixed with sugar, and then satisfy them with Daksīpā —3

The prohibited grains of eighteen kinds and fruits and roots should be avoided for a period of one year, but there is no harm in taking anything in the form of a medicine. A golden image of Śiva and a bull should be made. The image of Dharmarāja should be made similarly —4

The following sixteen kinds of fruits should be made in gold, according to the means of the devotee, viz —pumpkins, citrons, egg-plants, bread-fruits, mangoes, hog-plums, woodapples, India grains, cucumbers, cocoanuts, the holy figs, the jujubes, the lemons, the plantains, saffron, and pomegranates —5-6

The following should be made of silver, according to the means of the devotee, viz —Muti (a kind of root vegetable), Emblica officinalis, rose apple, tamarind, Karaundā, Kankolaberry, cardamom, cotton, bamboo, Kutaja, Śami, Udumbara cocoanut, grapes, two kinds of egg-plants —7-8.

The fruits of the following should be made of copper, according to the means of the devotee —Palms, Agasti grandiflora, Kāyaphala, Gāmbhārī, esculent root, the red esculent root, a bulbous root, svarnakhīri, cucumber, chiravalti, Sālmali, mango, liquorice, kidney-bean, fig tree, patola (a species of cucumber) —9-11.

Two pitchers of water, covered with cloth, should be placed on grain, and a bed should also be arranged and covered with cloth —12

On some sacred day, the devotee should give away all these things as well as three food plates, the images of Dharmarāja, Śiva, with that of the sacred bull and a cow, to a peaceful Brāhmaṇa couple who may have a big family, having first worshipped them —13

"As the numberless Devas dwell in all kinds of fruits, so let my devotion be to Śiva, as a consequence of my performing this *vrata* of relinquishing the fruits of my actions."—14

"Siva and Dharmarāja are known to be the great Givers of boons, let Them therefore confer boons on me for giving away these likenesses, together with these appropriate fruits in charity"—15

"As in the devotees of Siva are always (to be found) endless fruits, so let me also have fruits endless, in life after life"—16

"I do not make any (invidious) distinction between Siva, Viṣṇu, Sun, Brahmā, let the Lord Siva, the soul of the universe, bless me with eternal happiness"—17

The articles (to be given away) should be given to the Brāhmaṇa, having first decorated him. The devotee may also give a bedding, with all its requisites, if he had the means to do so, otherwise he may only give away the fruits mentioned before. The golden images of Siva and Dharmarāja being given to the Brāhmaṇa, with the pitchers of water, he should feed himself on food devoid of oil, by observing the vow of silence, and should also feed the Brāhmaṇas, according to his means—20

This is the way of a devotee of Viṣṇu, Sun or a Yogi or a Bhagwat to relinquish the fruits of their actions, as laid down by the Brāhmaṇas versed in the Vedas—21

"O Sage Nārada! this ordinance should be observed, to the best of their ability, by the womenfolk, too. There is no ordinance like this that can give such everlasting boons in this world, as well as in the next—22

"O Sage! the devotee remains in the region of Siva for as many thousand Yugas as there are atoms of gold, silver and copper, in this world, when these latter are ground to a powder—23

This ordinance washes off all the lifelong sins of the devotee. He never has the pain of losing his son, and he attains the region inhabited by Gods—24

The poor man who hears or reads this, either in some sacred place (place of a God), or in the house of a pious man, goes to the region of Siva where he gets into the place of Deities and enjoys, after being liberated from all his sins—25

*Here ends the ninety-sixth chapter describing the Vrata of Relinquishment of all results (of one's actions)*

### CHAPTER XCVII

Nārada said —Nandikeśvara! Pray describe to me the ordinance that may be the giver of peace, health and everlasting benefits to the people.—1.

Nandikēśvara said — That which is the eternal abode of the soul of the universe, is known as the Sun, the Fire and the Moon, in this world ; by the worship of these a man attains happiness. The devotee observing it should always take his meals at night time only on Sundays — 2-3

In the case of the asterism Hasti falling on Sunday, the devotee should take his meals only once on Saturday, purging his heart of all vanity. — 4

On Sunday night, the devotee, after feeding good Brāhmaṇas, should draw a lotus of twelve petals with red sandal. To the east of it he should place, after salutations, the Sun (Sūrya), to the south-east Divākara, to the south Vivasvāna, to the south-west Bhaga, to the west Varuna, to the north-west Mahendra, to the north Āditya, to the north-east Śanta. In the forepart of the lotus, the horses of the Sun should be inscribed, in the south the Āyayinā Devas, in the west Mārtanda, and on the northern petal Ravi Bhāskara on the pericarp of the lotus. — 5-9

Afterwards, red flowers, red sandal, sesamum, mixed with water, should be poured on the lotus, and the following mantra should be recited at the time — 10

" O Divākara (the giver of day) ! You are the soul of time, creation and the Vedas. You have your face turned to each direction. You are of the form of Indra and Agni therefore shelter me " — 11

" Agnīmile namastubhamisetvōrye cha bhāskara " " Agna āyāhi varada na aste jyotiṣam pate " With this mantra Arghya should be offered, and the Deity dismissed. He should take his meals at night free from oil. When a year has elapsed in this way, he should make a lotus of gold and an image with two hands — 12-13

He should then give away in charity a milch cow, with her horns covered with gold, the hoofs with silver, along with her calf, and a milking vessel of bell metal, while the lotus and image should be placed in a pot of copper completely full of molasses — 14

The devotee, after worshipping the Brāhmaṇa with red cloth, sandal, garland, incense, etc., should bestow his gifts, viz — the lotus and the image, etc., on him, he having a large family, and being free from deformity and pride, and able to restrain his passions and the object of charity in many other vratas — 15

At that time, the devotee should utter the following words —

" Namō namah pāpavinasanāya,  
" Viśvātmane saptatarāṅgamāya,  
" Sāmargyajurdhāmidhe Viḍbhatre,  
" Bhāvabdhīpataya jagatsavitre,"

"O Dispeller of sins, the Soul of the universe, your chariot drawn by seven horses, the vase of Rīka, Yaju and Sāma Vedas, the boat of the ocean of universe, I salute Thee oft and often"—16

One who observes these rituals and keeps up this vrata for a year, is freed from all sins and goes to the solar region fanned by chāmara —17

On the consumption of his store of piety he becomes the sovereign of the seven Dvīpas, and never gets pain, suffering or disease. He becomes most powerful and virtuous —18

O Nārada! the woman who is devoted to her husband, God and preceptor, and observes this ordinance, and eats at night only on Sundays, undoubtedly reaches the solar region, which is honoured by the Devas —19

The person who reads or hears, or approves of the reading of this ordinance, also goes to the region of India where he is served by the Devas, and remains there for innumerable kalpas —20

*Here ends the ninety-seventh chapter describing the Sunday ordinance (Vrata)*

### CHAPTER XCVIII

Nandikeśvara said —Nārada! I shall now describe to you the way how the ordinance of Sankrānti, which in the next world gives everlasting boons of all kinds, is to be brought to a close —1

The Sankrānti ordinance should be observed on the day of equinoxes or solstices. The day, prior to Sankrānti, the devotee should have his meals only once, and, on the following day, he should bathe in water mixed with sesamum, after brushing his teeth —2

On the day of the Sankrānti, the devotee should draw on the earth a lotus of eight petals with sandal, in the centre of which pectorals should be made, where the presence of the Sun should be invoked —3

The Sun should be located in the pectoral, Āditya in the east, and salutations should be made in the south, after reciting 'Uṣṇārchiṣe namah, Rīgmandalāya namah "Savitre namah" in the south-west, "Tapanāya namah" in the west, Bhaga in the north-west should be located and worshipped constantly Mārtanda should be located in the north and Viṣṇu in the north-east. These should be adored with incense, flowers, fruits and eatables, on an altar —4-6

A golden vessel of clarified butter, with a pitcher of water, should

be given away to the Brâhmaṇa , and the lotus should also be made of gold, according to the means of the devotee, and given away to the Brâhmaṇa.

—7

Afterwards, the Arghya, consisting of water, sandal and flowers, should be placed on the floor as an oblation to the Sun, by reciting the following mantra “ Viśvâya Viśvarûpâya Viśvadhamne Svayambhube Namânanta namo dhâtue Riksâm Yagusâmpati ” This ritual should be observed each month, or at the end of the year All the twelve vratas should be done at the same time —8-9

Then libations of rice, cooked in milk and sugar, should be poured into the fire and Brâhmaṇas should be satisfied with eatables On that occasion, 12 pitchers of water, with a few gems, 12 golden lotus flowers and 12 milch cows of gentle disposition, or only 8, 7 or 4 such cows (in the last case, the cows being dressed and garlanded), according to the means of the devotee, should be given to a poor and deserving Brâhmaṇa, after their horns being covered with gold, then hoofs with silver, along with milking pots of hell metal In case, the devotee be a very poor man, he may give only one milch cow —10-11

Afterwards, an image of earth, along with that of the serpent Sesa, should be made in gold, silver, copper or even of kneaded flour, according to the means of the devotee, and given away to the Brâhmaṇa, along with a golden image of the Sun As far as possible, no miserliness should be exercised in this ritual, for the man doing so, in spite of having riches undoubtedly goes to hell —12

Nârada ! One who observes this ordinance, enjoys in heaven the honour and respect by all the Gandharvas, for as long as Indra and other gods, earth and the seven oceans, the Himâlayas and other mountains survive —13

His piety being consumed, the devotee is born, in the beginning of creation, a sovereign of good family, endowed with all kingly virtues and blessed with handsome form (devoid of deformity) and many a child, wife, friend and relation —14

One who reads about this Sûrya Sankrânti with devotion, or hears or advises others to read it, is honoured by the Devas in the realm of Indra —15

*Here ends the ninety-eighth chapter describing the mode of bringing  
the Sankrânti vrata to a close*

## CHAPTER XCIX

Nandikesvara said — Nârada ! I shall now relate to you Visnu vrata, known as the Vibhûti-Dvâdasî vrata, which is held in veneration by all the Devâs”—1

On the tenth day of the bright fortnight, in the month of Kârtika, Chaitra, Vâsakha, Mârgasîrsa, Phâlguna or Asâdha, the devotee should have a light meal, and in the day time, after performing his evening prayers, make the following resolution —2

“ Oh God, on the eleventh day I shall keep a rigid fast and worship Janârdana I shall break the fast on the twelfth day, in company of the Brâhmaṇas —3

“ O Keshava ! let there be no hindrance in the observance of my fast ” He should utter “ Om namo Nârâyânaya namah ” (Om, Salutations be to Nârâyaṇa), before retiring to bed —4

On getting up in the morning, he should recite Gâyatrî 108 times, and then worship Lord Visnu with white sandal and flowers —5

The feet should be worshipped after reciting “ Vibhûtaye namah,” the knees after reciting “ Aśokâya namah,” the thighs after reciting “ Sivâya namah,” the waist after reciting “ Viśvamîrtaye namah,” the male organ of generation after reciting “ Kandarpâya namah,” the hands after reciting “ Âdityâya namah,” the stomach after reciting “ Dâmodarâya namah,” the breasts after reciting “ Vâsudevâva namah,” the chest after reciting “ Mâdhavâya namah,” the neck after reciting “ Utkanthine namah,” the mouth after reciting “ Sidharâya namah,” and the hair after reciting “ Keshavâya namah,” the back after reciting “ Sârangadharâya namah,” the ears after reciting “ Vaidadâya namah,” the head after reciting “ Sarvâtinane namah,” with His other names, viz., “ Sankapânye namah,” “ Chakrapânye namah,” “ Asipânaye namah,” “ Gadâpânaye namah,” and “ Padmapânaye namah ”—6-9

A golden fish should be made and also a lotus of gold, according to the means and wishes of the devotee , and a pitcher, full of water, should be placed in front of it —10

Afterwards, a vessel, full of molasses and covered with a white cloth, together with some sesamum, should be placed The devotee should keep up the night with the recitation of Itihâsas —11

On the following morning the golden fish and lotus, along with the pitcher of water, should be given away to some good Brâhmaṇa with a large family —12

At that time, the devotee should pray " As Thou, O Lord Viṣṇu, art never devoid of any prosperity (Viḍhūti), so please extricate me from the meshes and manifold calamities of this world "—13

The devotee should give away one in each month of the year the golden images of the ten incarnations (of the supreme God) as well as of Dattātrey and Vedaavyāsa, along with a lotus of gold. During this period the devotee should avoid the company of rogues and the wicked —14

After observing the fast like this for twelve months, on each Dvādaśī, the devotee at the conclusion of the year, should give away to his preceptor a bedding, a mount of salt and a cow —15

A man of means may also give away a village or a house and honor his preceptor with diverse raiments and ornaments ---16

Other Brāhmaṇas should be feasted, according to the means of the devotee and satisfied by being given clothes, jewels, money, ornaments cows, &c A man with limited means should give only as much as he can afford —17

A very poor man, but having sincere devotion to Lord Mādhava, may worship Lord Viṣṇu for a couple of years with flowers alone —18

One who observes the Viḍhūti-dvādaśī ordinance like this, liberates himself from all sins and also frees hundreds of his ancestors. He is not oppressed with grief, disease or poverty during thousands of births. He is always born as a devotee of Viṣṇu or Śiva, and, after spending 108 thousand yugas in heaven, is born as a king —19-21

*Here ends the ninety-ninth chapter describing the Viṣṇu vrata*

### CHAPTER C

Nandikeśvara said —In the days gone by, during the Rathantara Kalpa, there lived a mighty king, as illustrious as the Sun, who was known by the name of Puṣpavāhana —1

O Nārada ! Brahmā, being pleased with his asceticism, presented him with a lotus of gold that could move about at will —2

(With its help) the king began to wander about at his pleasure in the seven dvipas as well as in the abode of the gods, in company of his citizens —3

At the beginning of the kalpa, the kingdom of this king, who lived in the lotus, was the seventh dvipa —on account of the great praise and honour given to it by the people, it came to be known as Puskara —4.

The King was called Puṣpavāhana by the Devas and the Dānavas on account of his having received the lotus for his conveyance —5

Owing to his powers, acquired by the practice of penances, no place in the three worlds was inaccessible to him, seated on his lotus given by Lord Brahmā His queen, Lāvanyavati, was worthy to be honoured by thousands of ladies In beauty and womanly virtues, she had no equal She was like the Goddess Pārvatī, the noble Consort of the Lord Śiva —6

The king became the father of ten thousand virtuous princes, who all were renowned in archery The king began to wonder at his incomparable prosperity One day, seeing the great sage Pracheta, approaching, he addressed him thus —7

"O Sage! how is it that there is such an abundance of prosperity in my house? How have I got a queen who is venerated even by the Devas, and who has no equal even among the goddesses? Why has Brahmā become so much pleased with my little asceticism as to present me with such a lotus, (vast wonderful), that when myriads of kings, with ministers, elephants, people, and chariots entered into it, they appear small indeed, like so many galaxies of twinkling stars with the moon herself in the immeasurable expanse of the firmament —8.9

"Hence, O Lord, what is the use of being born in the separate womb of the mother? To obtain endless (good) results, I have performed many a religious rite Now please tell us what is of ultimate good to me, my wife and sons" —10

Hearing the above words of the king, the sage, after meditation, spoke the following words, about the wonderful former lives of the king — "King! Previously you were born in the house of a hunter, and you led a life of sin from day to day —11

"Your body was hard, rough and also offensively stinking Snakes coiled all over it You had no friend, nor sons, neither kinsmen, nor sisters, nor parents All were abused and cursed by you This beloved consort of yours was also against you —12

"Then the land was visited by a terrible drought, when you were over-whelmed with hunger, but could not get grain, fruits, flesh or any kind of eatables to quench it, though you searched for them everywhere —13.

"On that occasion you came to a tank, full of muddy banks, but which was abundantly full of lotus flowers You culled a heap of lotuses out of that tank and carried them home to Vardha 'the city in which you lived') —14

" You wandered about the whole city to sell those lotuses, but could not find a purchaser   Eventually you were overpowered with hunger and fatigue —15

" And you went and sat with your wife in the courtyard of some one whence in the night you heard some nice and auspicious sound —16

" You went to the spot whence the sound was heard with your wife There you saw the worship of Lord Visnu conducted in a pandal —17

" The worship in question was the concluding chapter of Vibhûti-dvadasi ordinance, in the month of Mâgha, which was kept up by a courtesan, named Anangavati   At that time, she was giving away the mount of salt, the bedstead along with other things, the decorated image of the merciful Lord Visnu and the golden Kalpa tree, to her preceptor   On seeing all that, you said to yourself, ' What would I now do with these lotus flowers, I should better offer them to Visnu '—18-20

" O King ! thus devotion came to the hearts of both of you , and you worshipped the Lord as well as the mount of salt, the bedding, and even the earth with your lotus flowers —21

" The courtesan was very much pleased with your devotion and offered you 300 gold coins which both of you did not accept, as you were both then filled with sattvaguna (*i.e.*, your hearts became pure,) at which the courtesan became still more pleased with you, had four kinds of delicious foods brought and asked you to eat   You again declined to partake of her hospitality, and said, ' We shall have food at some other time   We are exceedingly glad to-day with your acquaintance and the keeping fast   Hitherto we have been carrying a vicious life and have been sinners all along ' By her contact you had then acquired some virtue —22-25

" In that way, you kept up all the night with that courtesan and, on the following morning, she gave the mount of salt and the bedding as well as villages to her preceptor and to a dozen Brâhmaṇas, garments, ornaments, kamandalu and cows —26-27

" After that, she fed her friends, poor men, blind men, misers, companions and kinsmen, and at the same time she also honoured in the same way and dismissed you both —28

" King ! owing to this worship of Kesiava by lotus flower, the same hunter and his wife have been now born in the persons of yourself and your consort   You have been freed of all your sins by the virtue of your little self denial and purity of heart   Hence this wonderful lotus

moving at will. This has been given to you by Janārdana, the Lord of creation in the person of four-faced Brahma, because he was pleased with you --29-31

"That courtesan is now the rival of Rati, the wife of Cupid, and is known as Priti. She is the giver of happiness to the womanfolk, and is venerated by the Devas --32

"King! Even now abandon this Puskarā-dvipa and observe the vibhūti-dvādaśī fast on the banks of the Ganges, so that you may attain Nirvāna" --33

Nandikeśvara said — "Nārada! That sage vanished then and there, after telling all that to the king, and the latter observed the ordinance, as dictated —34

"Nārada! the devotee, observing this ordinance, should keep up the penance and perform the rites with molasses of any kind whatsoever, as prescribed, for 12 months, and give alms to the Brāhmaṇas, without any feeling of miserliness. Kṛṣṇa is pleased with devotion alone —35-36

"One who reads, listens to or produces in others a desire to observe this ordinance, which dispels all sins, remains in the heaven for a hundred crores of years" —37

*Here ends the hundredth chapter describing the Vibhūti-dvādaśī-vratam*

### CHAPTER CI

Nandikeśvara said — Nārada! Hear, I am now going to tell you about the sixty ordinances, as explained by the Lord Śiva and which dispel great sins —1

The ordinance, known as, (1) *Deva-Vrata*, is the dispeller of all sins. The observer of it should have his meal only in the night for a year, after which he should give away one cow, quoit and trident, all made of gold along with a pair of clothes, to a Brāhmaṇa having a large family. One who does so becomes unified with Śiva and lives in His region —2-3

The devotee keeping up the (2) *Rudra-Vrata* should, for a year, have only one meal a day, after which he should give away one bull of gold and a cow of sesamum. This observance is also the destroyer of ills and helps the devotee to go to the region of Śiva, and raises him to the rank of Śiva —4

One who gives away a bull and a blue lotus, made of gold, as well as a vessel full of sugar, and lives on nightly meal only for a year, eating in

a secluded place, obtains the rank of Visnu This is known as (3) *Lîlâ-Vrata* —5

He, giving up of all unguents and giving away of nice and clean cooking utensils, in the four months, beginning with Âśâdha leads the devotee to the realm of Visnu This observance is known as (4) *Priti-Vrata*, because it pleases everybody —6

One who observes the (5) *Gauri-Vrata*, in the month of Chaitra, by invoking the pleasure of the goddess, with the words, "Gauri me priyatâm," and by giving up honey, milk, curds, clarified butter, molasses, and similar articles, gives fine cloths, and the vessels full of sugarcane juice, &c., and worships the Brâhmaṇa with his wife, goes to the realm of Pârvatî —7-8

The (6) *Kâma-Vrata*, the destroyer of all woes should be observed on the thirteenth day of Pausa The devotee should take his meal at night and give away to a Brâhmaṇa, a golden tree of Asoka, ten fingers in height after covering it with a cloth and pieces of sugarcane He should invoke the pleasure of Pradyumna, with the words "Pradyumnah priyatâm" at the time of giving it away By doing so, the devotee resides without care and anxiety in the region of Visnu, till the end of the kalpa —9-10

(7) *Siva-Vrata* should be observed during the four months of Âśâdha, &c in course of which the devotee should not get his nails, &c, trimmed He should avoid the use of brinjals and give away to a Brâhmaṇa a pitcher full of honey, clarified butter and golden brinjal in the month of Kârtika By doing so, he goes to the realm of Rudra —11-12

One who abstains from flowers during winter (*i.e.*, the seasons of Hemanta and Siśira) and in the month of Phâlguna, and gets three flowers of gold made according to his means and gives them away in charity at dusk, after invoking the pleasure of Siva and Visnu, with the words "Priyatâm Siva-Kesavam," attains final beatitude This is known as (8) *Saumya-Vrata* —13-14

(9) *Saubhîgya-Vrata* should be kept up by avoiding, on the third day of every month, beginning from Phâlguna, the use of salt for a year At the conclusion of the ordinance, he should give to a Brâhmaṇa couple a properly equipped bedstead, a house with all its necessary appurtenances, after showing due honour to them, and should invoke the pleasure of the goddess, with the words, "Bhavâñi priyatâm" By doing so, he resides for a hundred kalpas in the realm of Pârvatî —15-16

The devotee who maintains the vow of silence in the evenings for a year and at the end of it gives a jar of clarified butter, a pair of clothes,

sesamum, and a bell to a Brâhmaṇa, goes to the domain of Sarasvatî—the Goddess of letters—and is liberated from the cycle of birth. This is known as (10, Sarasvatî ordinance—the giver of beauty and learning—  
17-18

One who worships Lakṣmî—the Goddess of wealth—and keeps the fast on the fifth day of a month, for a year, and at the end of it gives away a cow, along with a lotus of gold, goes to the kingdom of Viṣṇu and is always born in good circumstances. This is called the (11) *Sampada-Vrata* and is the destroyer of all ills—19 20

One who washes the floor in front of Viṣṇu or Śiva for a full year and then gives away a cow with a pitcher of water, is born a king on this earth, ten thousand times, and at the end goes to the realm of Śiva. This is known as (12) *Ayu-Vrata*, and is the giver of all desires—21-22

One who takes his meal once a day, in silence, bereft of vice for a full year and salutes the peepul tree, the sun and the Ganges together, and at the end of the ordinance adores the Brâhmaṇa with his consort, having given them a golden tree with three cows, attains the benefit of Asvamedha sacrifice. This is called the (13) *Kirti-Vrata*—the giver of every fame and prosperity—23-24

The observer of the (14) *Sima-Vrata* should make an altar of cow-dung bathe Śiva or Viṣṇu with clarified butter, worship them with uncooked rice and flowers, for a year. At the end of the year, the devotee should give away a lotus of gold, eight fingers in height, with a cow of sesamum to a Brâhmaṇa versed in the Sâma-Veda. As a result, the devotee is respected in Śiva loka—25-26

One who takes only one meal a day on the 9th day of a month and then gives to a virgin, after feasting her, according to his means, a pair of clothes embroidered with gold and raiments of silk, and a lion of gold to a Brâhmaṇa, gets a handsome form and he is never defeated by his foes and lives for a considerable time in the realm of Śiva. This is known as (15) *Vira-Vrata*—the giver of all prosperity to women kind—27 28

One who takes milk only on each full moon day, for a year, and at its conclusion, after performing Śraddha, gives away five milch cows, along with pitchers of water and cloths of tawny colour, goes to the domain of Viṣṇu, where he saves hundreds of his ancestors and becomes the King of Kings at the end of a kalpa. This is called (16, *Pitrî-Vrata*)—29-30

One who voluntarily gives drinking water to the needy, from the beginning of Chaitra for four months, and after it gives away a big water

jar (Manika), with grain, cloths, gold and a pot containing sesamum, goes to the region of Brâhma and becomes a king at the end of a kalpa This is called the (17) *Ananda-Vrata* —31-32

One who bathes in Panchâmpita for a year, and then gives away a conch, Panchâmpita and a cow to a Brâhmaṇa, goes to the realm of Sîva and becomes a king at the end of a kalpa This is called the (18) *Dhriti-Vrata* —33-34

*Note*—पञ्चाम्पिता=Consisting of five ingredients viz., दूध एव घटा दधि ताका शुद्धि ; i.e., milk, sugar, clarified butter, Curd and Honey

(One who gives up meat for a year and at the end gives away a cow or a deer of gold gets the benefit of Asvamedha sacrifice, and, after reaping the fruits of his virtue for one full kalpa, is born as a king This is (19) *Ahimsâ-Vrata* —35

One who, in the month of Mâgha, bathes in the small hours of the morning and then worships a Brâhmaṇa and his wife with garlands, ornaments and clothes and then feeds them to their satisfaction, resides in the region of the Sun for a kalpa This is (20) *Sûrya-Vrata* —36

One who bathes early in the morning and feeds the Brâhmaṇas for a period of four months from Asâdha, and gives away a cow in the month of Kârtika, goes to the realm of Viṣnu This is (21) *Viṣnu-Vrata* —37

One who abstains from flowers and clarified butter from one solstice to another and at the end of that period gives garlands, clarified butter, and cows to a Brâhmaṇa, and feeds them on clarified butter, rice cooked in milk and sugar, goes to the region of Sîva This is (22) *Sila-Vrata*, the giver of modesty and good health.—38-39

One who voluntarily provides light (to the needy) every evening for a year and abstains from oil and then gives a lamp, a quoit and a trident of gold, along with a pair of cloths to a Brâhmaṇa, is born as a man of greatness and power in this world and ultimately goes to the domain of Sîva This is (23) *Dipti-Vrata* —40-41

One who takes for a year bailey soaked in the cow's urine at night, on the third day of the month of Kârtika, etc., and then gives away a cow, resides in the realm of the Goddess Pârvatî, and is afterwards born as a king on this land This is (24) *Rudra-Vrata*, the giver of everlasting happiness—42-43

One who does not use sandal, incense, etc., in the month of Chaitra and gives away mother-of-pearl, full of scent, along with a pair of white cloths, goes to the region of Varuna This is (25) *Dridha-Vrata* —44

One who gives up flowers and salt during Vaisâkha, and gives away a cow, goes to the kingdom of Visnu where he resides for a kalpa, and then is born a king. This is (26) *Kânti-Vrata*, the giver of lustre and fame —45

One who makes a golden globe of the universe weighing more than 12 tolas, (3 palas), according to his means, places it on a mound of sesamum, and offers the latter to the Brâhmaṇas for three days, and libation to fire, honours the Brâhmaṇa couple with clothes, garlands, ornaments, etc., after reciting, 'O Lord of the Universe, be pleased' (*Vishvâtmâ priyatâm*), liberates himself from the cycle of birth and becomes unified with Brahma. This is (27) *Brahma-Vrata*, the giver of Nirvâna —46 48

One who lives on milk in course of the day, and gives away a two-faced (ûbhaimukhi) cow (*i.e.*, half delivered of her calf) made of a big lump of gold, attains the highest bliss. This is (28) *Dhenu-Vrata*, which makes re-birth almost impossible —49

One who lives on milk for three days and then gets a kalpa tree of gold made, weighing more than 4 tolas (one pala), according to his means, and then gives it away with a heap of rice, becomes unified with Brahma. This is (29) *Kalpa-Vrata* —50

One who fasts for a month, gives away a beautiful cow to a Brâhmaṇa, goes to the realm of Visnu. This is (30) *Bhûmi-Vrata* —51

One who, after living on milk on the day, gives away an image of earth made of gold, weighing more than 20 palas, resides respected in the domain of Siva for 700 kalpas. This is (31) *Dhniâ Vrata* —52

One who gives away a cow, made of molasses, on the third day of Mâgha or Chaitra, having observed the Guda-Vrata on that day, goes to the realm of Gauri. This is (32) *Maha-Vrata* —53

One who gives a pair of tawny colour cows (*kapilâ*) to a Brâhmaṇa, after fasting for a fortnight, goes to the Brahmaloka honoured by Devas and Asuras, and at the end of the kalpa becomes the monarch of kings. This is (33) *Prabhâ-Vrata* —54

One who lives upon only one meal a day for a year, and then gives away a pitcher of water, along with various kinds of eatables, resides in the dominion of Siva for a kalpa. This is (34) *Prâpti-Vrata* —55

One who has only one meal in the evening, on the 8th day of a month, for one year, and then gives away cows in charity, goes to the region of Indra. This is (35) *Sugati-Vrata* —56

One who gives fuel to the Brâhmaṇas during the rainy season and

at the end of the year gives away a cow of clarified butter, becomes unified with the supreme Brahma This is (36) *Vaisvadnara-Vrata*--the destroyer of all ills —57

The devotee who, on the 11th day of each month, has his meal in the night and then gives to the Vaishnava a quoit made of gold, goes and resides in the realm of Vishnu for one kalpa, at the end of which he is born a great king This is (37) *Kiṣṭha-Vrata* —58

One who gives away a pan of cows after living on milk for a year, goes to the kingdom of Lakṣmi This is (38) *Devi-Vrata* —59

One who gives away a milk cow at the end of a year, after living only on milk, on the night of every seventh day of each month, goes to the domain of the Sun This is (39) *Bhīnu-Vrata* —60

One who has his meals at night of the 4th day of each month, and at the end of the year gives away an elephant, made of gold, goes to the realm of Siva This is (40) *Vaiḍyaka-Vrata* —61

One who abstains from larger fruits (Mahā-phala during the Chaturmāsa, and gives away the same fruits made of gold, along with a pair of cows to a Brāhmaṇa, goes to the realm of Vishnu This is (41) *Phala-Vrata* —62

[Note—Chaturmāsa=A period of four months reckoned from the eleventh day in the bright half of Aśada to the 11th day in the bright half of Kartika]

One who keeps a (total) fast on the seventh day of each month for a year, and then gives away a lotus of gold, a golden vase, full of grain, and cows, according to his means, goes to the domain of the Sun This is (42) *Sūrya-Vrata* —63

One who keeps a (total) fast on the 12th day of each month, and then at the end of the year gives away to the Brāhmaṇas, according to his means cows, cloths and gold, attains beatitude This is (43) *Vishnu-Vrata* —64

One who, after performing Vrisdtsarga in the month of Kartika, lives on only one meal a day and that at night, for a full year, goes to the realm of Siva This is (44) *Vāiga-Vrata* —65

[Note.—Vrisdtsarga=Setting free a bull on the occasion of a funeral rite, or as a religious act generally]

One who, on the conclusion of ChāndīĀyana (or Kṛcchra) obsevance gives away a cow and feeds the Brāhmaṇas, according to his means goes to the realm of Siva This is (45) *Prajāpatya-Vrata* —66

One who lives only on the nightly meal, on the 14th day of each month for a year, and then gives away cows, goes to the region of Siva This is (46) *Trayambaka-Vrata* —67

One who keeps a continuous fast for seven nights, and then gives a pot of clarified butter to a Brâhmaṇa, goes to the region of Brâhma. This is (47) *Ghrīta-Vrata* —68

One who sleeps in Akâśa during the rainy season, and then gives away a milch cow, goes to the region of Indra. This is (48) *Indra-Vrata* —69

[Note —Akâśa = Ether, Vacuity, Place in general, Light, Hole, in the air, etc.]

One who takes the uncooked eatables on the third day of each month, and then gives away cows, goes to the realm of Sîva, after being liberated from the cycle of birth. This is (49, *Kalyâna* (or Sîyô) *Vrata*, the giver of happiness —70

One who gives away a chariot with the horses made of gold weighing more than 8 tolas (2 palas), after fasting in course of the day, resides in the heaven for a hundred kalpas, and then becomes the King of Kings. This is (50) *Aśva-Vrata* —71

And one who, similarly, observes the fast and gives away a chariot, with a pair of elephants made of gold, resides in the Satyaloka for a thousand kalpas, and is then born as a King. This is (51) *Hasti-Vrata* —72

One who gives away a cow at the end of his yearly fast, becomes the Lord of Yâkṣas. This is (52) *Sukha-Vrata* —73

One who gives away a cow in the morning, after passing the night in water, goes to the realm of Varuna. This is (53) *Varuna-Vrata* —74

One who gives away a moon of gold at the end of the Chândrâyana ordinance, goes to the realm of the moon. This is (54) *Chandra-Vrata* —75.

One who gives away cows in the evening, after warming himself with five fires (pañchatapa), on the 8th and the 14th day in the month of Jyâṣṭha, goes to heaven. This is *Rudra-Vrata* —76

Note —A modification Vrata No, 2

One who makes a canopy, in a temple of Sîva, on the third day of a month and gives away a cow at the end of the year, goes to the region of Sîva. This is (55) *Bhavâñi-Vrata* —77

In the month of Mâgha, one who wears wet garments in the night and on the seventh day of the month gives away cows, goes and resides in the heaven for a kalpa, after which he is born as a King. This is (56) *Pavana-Vrata* —78

One who maintains a fast for three nights and gives away a good

house in the month of Phâlguna, goes to the domain of the Sun This is (57) *Dhâma-Vrata* —79

One who adores the Brâhmaṇa and his wife with ornaments and gives away cows along with grain, on three evenings, after observing a fast in the day, attains beatitude This is (58) *Indra-Vrata* —80

One who gives away a vessel of salt in the name of the moon, on the second day of the bright fortnight, and at the end of the year gives cows to the Brâhmaṇas, goes to the realm of Sîva, and at the end of the kalpa becomes the King of Kings This is (59) *Sôma-Vrata* —81

One who has only one meal a day on each Pratipada (first day of a fortnight), and at the end of the year gives away a tawny coloured cow (*kapilâ*), goes to the domain of Agni This is called *Sîva-Vrata* —82

One who has only one meal a day on the tenth day of the month, and after a year gives away ten cows, along with the images of ten directions made of gold, becomes the lord of the universe This is called the (60) *Vîśva-Vrata*, the destroyer of all ills —83

One who reads, or relates about these sixty ordinances, remains the lord of Gandharvas, for a period of one hundred Manvantaras —84

Nârada! I have related to you about the sixty ordinances, now let me know what more you desire to hear, which is for the benefit of the world I shall tell you all What may I not say to my favoured ones?

*Here ends the one hundred and first chapter describing the 60 Vratas and their results*

## CHAPTER CII

Nandikeshvara said —Nârada! There cannot be purity of body and mind without bathing, therefore to keep the mind refreshed it is essential to bathe first of all —1

"Om Namo Nârâyânâya" is the principal mantra, by the recitation of which the tirtha should be conceived in the water in which bath is to be taken, whether that water is taken out from the main source (e.g., river), or well, tank, etc —2

[Note —(a) Tirtha —A holy place A place of water

(b) Namo Nârâyânâya —Salutations to Nârâyana

(c) This means that a person bathing at a well or elsewhere—other than in the sacred waters, viz.—the Ganges, the Narmadâ, &c.—if one recites the above formula with devotion and philosophically conceives and invokes the presence of some sacred tirtha in his bathing water, his fervent devotion fulfils his object A good bath in a pure and running stream is essential to refresh the mind thoroughly The Ganges, the Narmadâ,

&c., are undoubtedly the best of the rivers for the purpose from many points of view, and consequently so much sanctity is attached to such invigorating streams. A true Aryan is expected to bathe daily in such streams, but every one is not so situated as to have the benefit of such a bath daily. Those, therefore, who are not so placed, may bathe as stated above which would fulfil their duty of bathing unavoidably in a place other than a tirtha, for under the influence of a fervent devotion they will feel as if they were bathing in some sacred waters, and the feeling of sanctity that attaches in the mind of an Aryan to invigorating streams would be kept evergreen which would take him oftener to such tirthas.

Briefly speaking, therefore, a man should bathe daily to refresh his mind. He should bathe in a pure and fresh stream, as far as possible, barring which he should work up his devotion to help him in not breaking the rule and in keeping his mind refreshed and his desire fixed on some sacred stream.]

He should put on the rings of kusa grass and rinse his mouth with a little water—according to the prescribed form—and then with a calm mind he should conceive within a square, measuring four hands, the sacred Ganges and invoke Her there thus—“O Ganges! Thou art born from the foot of Vishnu, thou art a Vishnu force, and loved by Vishnu, Thou art Vishnu-devatā, ward my sins off from the time of my birth to death. The 3½ crores of tirthas of heaven, earth and sky are absorbed in Thee, as stated by Vāyu—3-5

O Ganges! the Devas call Thee Nandini, Nalini, Dakshā, Prithvi, Vihagā, Viśvakāyā, Amṛti, Śivā, Vidyādhari, Supradāntā, Viśva-priśadīni, Ksema, Jāhnavi, Sāntā, Sāntiprādāyani, these, too, are thy epithets, and one who recites these sacred names with true devotion, at the time of his bath, finds Tripathagāmīni (going three ways) Ganga there”--6-8

[Note—Nandini—Lit. gladdening. An epithet of the Ganges, for Her waters are so refreshing and Her flow so pleasing.

Nalini—Lit. a lotus plant. A place abounding in lotuses. The intoxicating juice of the cocoanut. The Ganges, for Her waters are so invigorating.

Dakṣā—Lit. one who moves or acts quickly. The Ganges, because Her stream is so rapid and Her waters infuse freshness and vigour so quickly.

Prithvī—Lit. Earth, one of the five elements. The Ganges, because She is so invigorating. There can be no life without five elements, and the life cannot be sustained without there being some vigour.

Vihagā—Lit. a bird. An arrow. The Ganges, because she flows so swiftly.

Viśva-Kāyā—This is a compound word made up of Viśva—universe and Kāyā—Capital, abode, Principal, Body. The expression Viśva-kāyā=Capital, abode, body or principal (tirtha) of the universe, and is an epithet of the Ganges, for she is the Capital of all the Aryan tirthas. She is the abode of pious Aryans, who in their lifetime pass their days in contemplation on Her banks and their remains ultimately find an abode in the sacred waters. She is the principal tirtha of the universe. She is the body of the universe, in the sense that water is one of the 5 elements in the body and the water, as such an element, means purest water. The Ganges water being so best can be compared with the purest water as one of the elements.

Vivākāya, as one word, may also mean produced from the body of Siva, & for Viśva is and epithet of Siva also. It is said that the Ganges fell on the head of Siva from the heaven, and thence she moved on to the world below, which is a simple fact, for the clouds hang about in the heavens and discharge themselves in form of snows on the lofty peaks of mountains. The Kailāsa peak in the Himalayas is the region of perpetual snows, where the snow being crushed by its own weight flows downward, and reaching a certain level is converted into water which in its turn flows onwards in form of a river. Now, Kailāsa is the abode of Siva, and the Ganges has its source in the Himalayas near it. The snows of Kailāsa being the chief feeder of the river.

**Ampita.**—Lit imperishable, beautiful, agreeable, final beatitude, nectar of immortality, beverage of the Gods, sweet. An epithet of the Ganges, because she is imperishable, beautiful, agreeable in the sense of refreshing. She is considered by the Aryans to be the giver of final beatitude. Her water is sweet and is often compared with the Nectar and the beverage of the gods.

Siva.—Lit final beatitude Born of Siva

**Vidyadhari**—Lit a class of demi-gods. The Ganges, on account of her purific properties, is regarded as such.

**Suprasānta**—The giver of tranquillity Serene

**Viśva Prasādini**—The purifier of the universe

**Ksemā**—The giver of happiness and comfort

**Jahnavi**—The Ganges, when brought down from heaven by the austerities of Bhāgiratha, was forced to flow over earth to follow him to the lower regions. In its course it inundated the sacrificial ground of the King Jahnu who got very much vexed and swallowed the stream, but his wrath was appeased by the prayers of the Gods, sages and Bhāgiratha, and he discharged the current from his ears. The Ganges is therefore regarded as his daughter and is called Jahnavi.

**Sānti-pradāyini**=The giver of peace.

**Sānta**=The peaceful

One should hold water in both the hands, and after 7 times reciting the mantras mentioned above, sprinkle it on his head 3, 4, 5 and 7 times and then bathe, after rubbing some earth on his body with proper invocation thus —9

"O Earth! trodden by the horse (Asvakrānti) and the chariot (Rathakrānti) and belonging to the base of the temple of Visnu (Visnukrānti) dispel my sins stored from generations"—10

"O Earth! Kūra hast dug Thee out by assuming the form of the wild boar with a hundred hands. Thou art the element employed when empowered by the mantra of Kātyapa in the creation of all beings, by Bṛahmā. By your contact (as you encircle my body) purify my body of all sins"—11

"O Earth, in Thee are all things. Thou givest us nourishment. Thou art the source of all lokas (worlds). I salute Thee"—12

After thus taking his bath, one should again rinse his mouth and change his clothes, putting on white garments and present libations of water as follows --13

"Devas, Yakṣas, Nāgas, Gandharvas, Apsarās, Asurās, ferocious serpents, suparnas (a class of bird like beings of a semi-Divine character), trees, jackals &c, the beings living in the air, the beings living in water, the beings traversing in the sky, the beings without any one to offer them libations, the pious ones, I offer you all these libations' Libations to the Devas should be made with the sacred thread on the right shoulder —13-15

Then libations should be offered with devotion to the manes, sons of Bṛahmā and the Rishis "Sanaka, Sananda, Sauñatana, Kapila, Bodhu, Pañchadikha, receive and be gratified with the libations I offer you"—16-17

Afterwards, Mañchi, Vīru, Angnī, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kṛatu, Piachetā, Vaśistha, Bṛigu, Nārada, Devaśis and Bṛahmaśis should be offered libations with uncooked rice and water —18

Then, with the sacred thread on the left shoulder and reclining on the left knee the Pitrīs, Agniśvāta, Saumyā, Havīṣmanta, Uṣṇimapa, Sukālinā, Barhisada, and Ājyapa, should be offered libations with water, sesamum and sandal, &c —19-20

After reciting the names which are synonyms of Yama, viz., Dharmarāja, Mrityu, Antaka, Vaivaswata, Kala, Saivabhūtakṣaya, Audumbara, Dadhma, Nila, Parameṣṭhi, Vṛikodara, Chitīa and Chitragupta libations should be offered to him, and then after holding the Kuśa in hand as prescribed, libations to the manes should be offered by the wise —21-22.

After reciting the names and the gotras of fathers and maternal grandfathers, libations should be offered to them, after which the following mantika should be uttered with devotion —23

"Those who may be my kith and kin, those who may have been my kith and kin in some other previous birth, may feel gratified by the libations that I offer them"—24

After this, the devotee should again rinse his mouth and draw the figure of a lotus in front of him on which libations of water (arghya), mixed with uncooked rice, flowers and red sandal should be offered to the Sun, after which His (Sun's) names should be recited —25

"I salute Thee, O Sun! Thou art Viṣṇu Thou art the mouth of Viṣṇu Thou hast thousands of rays Thou art full of lustre and potency"—26

"O Śiva! O Lord of all, O Father of all! I salute Thee O Lord of the universe, whose body is painted with sandal, I salute Thee"—27

"O Thou, seated on a lotus, salutations be to Thee, adorned with ear-rings and bracelets, the Lord of all the worlds! Thou bringest light to the worlds! I salute Thee"—28

"Thou seest good and bad deeds of every one, always Thou pervadeest all O Satya Deva! salutations be to Thee, Thou, O Bhâskara! be propitious to me—29

"O day-maker! I salute Thee" After thus saluting the Sun, the devotee should circumambulate three times, and then, after touching a Brâhmaṇa, cow and gold, should go to the temple of Viṣṇu—30.

*Here ends the one hundred and second chapter describing the method of bathing*

### CHAPTER CIII

Nandikeśvara said —Nârada! I shall now relate to you what the sage Mârkandeya narrated to Yudhiṣṭhîra about Prayâga, in the days gone by —1

Yudhiṣṭhîra, the son of Kuntî became the Lord of the world after the great Mahâbhârata war. He was very much depressed by the grief of the death of his kinsmen. He said to himself —"King Duryodhana, the master of armies of eleven akṣauhiṇîs, and the other kings who were his allies, are slain, causing me much pain and anguish, and we, five brothers, sons of Pându, are alive under the shelter of Lord Krisna"—2-4

"I have killed Bhiṣma, Drona, the mighty Kârṇa, the King Duryodhana, our kinsmen and other kings, who considered themselves brave soldiers and heroes 'O Govinda! what is now the good of my life, and how and why should I rule the empire?'—5-6

"Fie to me!" Thus oppressed with his thoughts, the mighty King Yudhiṣṭhîra became very much despondent, and his head bending downwards he fainted. When he came back to his senses, he fell into thought, "Which could be the best religious act that would wash off all my sins, and which could be the sacred place of pilgrimage that would purify me and enable me to go and reside in the world of Viṣṇu"—8-9

"How possibly can I make enquiries on such points from Sri Krisna, because he has been so much instrumental in the great war. How can I ask Dhritarâstra about these things I have slain all his sons to the number of one hundred"—10.

Being thus overpowered with grief, Yudhiṣṭhîra began to weep bitterly

and the good men that were there also fell down on the ground, along with Draupadi and Kunti, and began to weep —11-12

At that time, the great sage Mârkandeya was in Kâsi and he knew how much the king was upset with grief He therefore instantly went to Hastinâpura and appeared at the gate of the palace of Yudhiṣṭhira —13-14.

The gate keeper, on seeing the great sage Mârkandeya, immediately reported his arrival to the king, who, without the least delay, repaired to the door to accord him a fitting reception, and said "O Sage ! you are most welcome By your having so kindly graced me with your presence, I feel that the mission of my life has been fulfilled and that my family has been liberated from all sins O Sage ! the manes of my deceased ancestors have also become gratified by your presence, and I feel myself purified in your presence"—15

Nandikeshvara said --"O Nârada ! After thus according him a welcome, the king washed his feet and seating him on his throne, he worshipped the great sage —18

Mârkandeya said —King ! what ails your mind so much Pray tell me at once without the least reserve the cause of your mental agony —19

Yudhiṣṭhira said —"O great sage ! my thoughts over my doings for the gaining of this kingdom haunt me and choke me with intense grief"—20

Mârkandeya said --"King ! hear the duties of an ideal Kṣatriya It is no sin for a wise man to fight , and for a king there is absolutely no sin to wage war to acquire his kingdom Do not therefore allow yourself to be carried away by any such feeling that you have committed a sin"—21-22

On hearing these words of the sage Mârkandeya, Yudhiṣṭhira fell prostrate at his feet and begged him to tell something that would wash off all his sins —23-24

Mârkandeya said —King ! I tell you the way how to destroy all your sins Hear it with attention It is very great merit for pious people to go to Prayâga —25

*Here ends the hundred and third chapter describing the greatness of Prayâga*

---

### CHAPTER CIV

Yudhiṣṭhira said —Brâhmaṇa ! I am desirous of hearing what Lord Brâhma had said in the days gone by —1

How should people go to the sacred place of Prayâga ? Pray also tell me what benefits do they reap who die, bathe and live there ?—2

Märkandeya said —Son ! I shall tell you the chief benefits from a pilgrimage to Prayâga, as I have heard them from the good sages in the past —3

From the site of the sacred Prayâga, in the town of Pratiśṭhâna up to the deep pool of Vâsuki, the Kambala, Aśvataha and Bahu Mâlaka, consecrated to the Nâgas, form the Prajâpati-ksetra, which is renowned in the three worlds.—4

People who bathe there go to heaven People who die there are liberated from the cycle of birth Those who live there are guarded by the Devas, Brahma, &c O King ! there are several other sacred tirthas that drive away sins which I would not be able to enumerate even in the course of centuries , consequently, I shall briefly confine myself to the narration of the virtues of Prayâga —5-6

The Ganges is guarded by 60,000 bows, the Yamuna (Junna) by the Sun drawn by his seven horses, the sacred place Prayâga by Indra, and the circumference of it by Lord Viṣṇu, along with other Devas —7-8

The Akṣayavata tree is guarded by Siva, and the Devas protect the sacred places that dispel sins —9

O King ! the sinners cannot go to that sacred place All minor sins are washed off merely by the remembrance of that sacred place —10

All the sins of a man disappear by the sight, remembrance, or the rubbing on the body of the clay of that place —11

O King ! there are five deep channels in Prayâga The Ganges flows in the middle of them The sins disappear the moment one enters the boundary of Prayâga —12

The mere remembrance of the Ganges, from the distance of a thousand yojanas, melts away all the sins The doers of the evil deeds even attain emancipation by the mere mention of the sacred name of the Ganges —13

The sins disappear by the utterance of the name of the Ganges, the sight of Her leads to prosperity, and the bathing in and drinking of Her sacred waters purifies one's soul along with those of his ancestors, for 7 generations —14

Those who speak the truth, keep themselves free from anger and the vice of killing or causing pain to living beings, are wise and learned, are the lovers of the cow and Brahma are liberated from their sins and attain the fruits of their desire by bathing at the confluence of the Ganges and the Yamunâ.—15-16

Those who maintain their sexual purity for a month in that sacred

place, protected by the Devas, and offer libations of water to the manes of the deceased ancestors and to the Gods, always attain what they desire, wherever they are born —17

The Goddess Yamunâ—the daughter of the Sun, renowned in all the three worlds—is present in Prayâga, and the place where she meets is the abode of Siva —18

The merit of a pilgrimage to the Ganges at the sacred place of Prayâga, does not fall to the lot of every one, O King! The Devas, the Dânavas, the Risis, the Siddhas and the Châranas—they all go to heaven by bathing at Prayâga --19

*Here ends the one hundred and fourth chapter describing the greatness of Prayâga*

### CHAPTER CV

Markandeya said —King! Besides this, I shall now tell you about the great virtues of Prayâga, by the mere hearing of it one is rescued from all sins —1

The sacred place of Prayâga is highly beneficial to the distressed, the poor whose faith is firmly fixed No one should raise any controversy about it —2

✓ The good sages say that the diseased, the meek and the old who give up their lives at the confluence of the Ganges and the Yamunâ go in a vimâna, of the lustre of the gold, or that of the Sun surrounded by the celestial nymphs, and all his desires are fulfilled. The departed spirit till it thinks of re-birth, is honored in the heaven wearing precious stones and seated in a vimâna, streaming with myriads of bunting and flags, surrounded by the celestial nymphs singing beautiful songs melodiously —3-6

On consuming his store of virtue he is reborn in the house of a wealthy man where, too, he recollects the greatness of Prayâga and goes there —7

One who thinks of Prayâga in his own country, in the forests, in some foreign land, or even in his own house, on the point of one's death, goes to the world of Brahmâ This is the saying of the good sages —8

He goes to such regions where the earth is full of gold, where he would obtain all the fruits of his desire, where reside the Risis and the sages There, in their company, he enjoys on the banks of the Ganges, surrounded by thousands of beautiful women, sages, pilgrims and the Gandharvas Leaving the heaven, he is born as a King of Jambudvîpa —9-11

Then, constantly thinking of good deeds, he undoubtedly becomes wise and wealthy —12

One who is devoted to virtue with all his mind, speech and deeds, and makes gifts of cows at the confluence of the Ganges and the Yamunâ, and makes gifts of gold and jewels, &c., in course of Deva or Pitrî worship, attains great merit and virtue —13-14

A Brâhmaṇa should, however, avoid, as far as possible, the accepting of any gift at sacred places. He should be on his guard, that is, should not yield to temptation —15

One who gives away a pale-red milk cow after getting her horns plaited with gold, her hoofs with silver, along with a milking pot of bell metal, cloth and jewels, to a virtuous and dispassionate Brâhmaṇa, well-versed in the Vedas, at the confluence of the Ganges and the Yamunâ, goes to and resides in the heaven for as many years as there are hairs on the body of that cow —16-19

At the time of his re-birth, the very same cow saves him from hell. He is born in Uttara-Kuru, and enjoys a long life. One who makes a gift of only one milk cow of his many thousands, that same cow helps the donor, his son, wife and kinsmen, to cross the sea of troubles with ease —21

For this reason the gift of a cow is said to be the best of all charities because a single cow protects the donor from all great sins. A cow should be given to a good Brâhmaṇa —22

*Here ends the hundred and fifth chapter dealing with the merit resulting from the gift of the cow (goddna) at Prayâga*

#### CHAPTER CVI

Yudhiṣṭhîra said —Sage! I feel I am gradually being freed from my sins by the virtues of Prayâga that you have been pleased to relate to me. O, blessed saint, now be pleased to explain to me how one should go to Prayâga —1-2

Mârkandeya said —King! I shall now relate to you what you wish to hear, exactly as I have heard from the sages and have seen them doing on such an occasion —3

One who drives to Prayâga, on a conveyance, drawn by bullocks, makes himself liable to a fearful hell, and his libations are not accepted by the manes of his ancestors —4-5

The bathing of his children there and then drinking the sacred water, does not do them any good —6

One who gives alms to the Brâhmaṇas, with any feeling of conceit, does not derive any benefit It is not therefore wise to visit a sacred place on any conveyance —7

One who gives away his daughter (in marriage), according to the prescribed rites, between the Ganges and the Yamunâ, according to his means, never goes to the fearful hell He is born in the Uttara-Kuru and gets a good wife and dutiful sons, and enjoys long life —8-9

O King! on account of these things, the giving away of charity at sacred places, according to one's means, enhances his merits and makes him entitled to live in heaven till the dissolution of the world —10

One who departs from his body, near the Aksayavata in Prayâga, goes straight to the region of Sîva —11

It is the very same Aksayavata which does not perish, in spite of the combined fury of all the suns that reduce the rest of the world to ashes —12

The Lord Viṣṇu is present there, and worships constantly near the Aksayavata, even when the world becomes extinct —13

O King! The sacred place lying between the Ganges and the Yamunâ is venerated even by the Devas, Asuras, Sages, Rishis, Gandharvas One should therefore go there with devotion, for Brahmâ, Devas, Rishis, Sages, Lokapâlas, Sâdhyâ Devas, Pitrîs, Sanatkumâra, etc., the greatest of the sages Amgirâ, etc. Brahma Rishis, serpents, suparnâs, oceans, rivers, mountains, vidyâdharaś, Lord Viṣṇu Himself, along with Brahmâ, are present there —14 18

It is said that the site of the confluence of the Ganges and the Yamunâ forms the middle or the waist of the earth This Prayâga tirtha is known throughout the three worlds —19

The remembrance of this sacred place or the hearing the name of it or the touch of its soil, liberates one from his sins, so also from bathing there One who sprinkles the water of that place, has the benefit of performing Advamedha and Itâjasûya sacrifices —20-21

You should not be dissuaded from going to Prayâga, my son! even by the preachings of the Devas —22

At the sacred Prayâga, there are sixty crores and ten thousand holy places, all gathered there —23

The man dying at Prayâga derives the same benefits as one does by truly devoting himself to yôga —24

Those who do not go to Prayâga are like the living dead, O Yudhîsthîra! —25

Those who go to Prayâga, in accordance with the rules laid down, are freed from their sins as the Moon liberates Himself from Râhu —26

He who bathes in and drinks the water of the Yamunâ, at the high banks presided by the Nagâs, Kambala and Aśvattha, is freed of all his sins —27

The man by going to the shrine where resides Lord Siva, liberates from bondage his ancestors and posterity for ten generations —28

By the sprinkling of the holy water over his body on that spot, he gets the merits of an Aśvamedha sacrifice, and resides in the heaven till the end of the world cycle —29

On the eastern bank of the Ganges, there is a well, by the name of Samudra-Kûpa, and the place Piatisthâna (modern Jhusi) which is renowned in the three worlds. If one resides there for three nights, observing sexual purity and keeping himself dispassionate, he is freed from all his sins and gets the merit of the performance of Aśvamedha sacrifice —30-31

Note — The mention of Samudra-Kûpa in modern Jhusi fixes the date of this portion of the Purâna. The well called Samudra-Kûpa was sunk by Samudra-Gupta, and so this Mahâtmya must have been written after the Gupta

The Hamsaprapatana tirtha (the shrine where swans alight), that lies on the north of Piatisthâna and on the east bank of the Ganges, is renowned in all the three worlds. By bathing there the devotee gets the benefit of Aśvamedha sacrifice and resides in heaven, as long as the sun and the moon shine in the firmament —32-33

One who dies at the sacred Uivastramana, whose high bank becomes white by the swans that dwell there, goes to heaven and enjoys with the Pitris for a period of sixty thousand and six centuries —34-35

And O King ! he is always in company of that famous celestial nymph, Urvasî, and is venerated by the Risis, Gandharvas, and the Kinnaras, &c —36

After consuming his store of virtue, he becomes the lord of ten thousand towns and of hundreds of maids, like Urvasî, in whose midst he revels as their husband —37-38

He wakes from his bed by the music of the sweet jingling of the waist chains and anklets of the ladies, and, after enjoying fully all his luxuries retires to that shrine again. —39

One who wears white raiments and has his meals only once a day and preserves his sexual purity, becomes a king and gets hundreds of beautiful wives, adorned with fine ornaments. He rules over a vast territory whose boundary reaches to the seas —40-41

And, after enjoying the result of his wealth and of the practising of his charities, he again retires to that spot —42

One who, preserving his sexual purity, observes a fast till the evening, at the Sandhyâ Vâta , attains Bâlimalôka —43

One who dies at Koti-tîtha, remains in Svarga for crores of years —44

And, on coming back to the world after exhausting his virtues, is born a very handsome person in a most wealthy family —45

One who goes and sprinkles water over him at the Dadâsvamedha tirtha in the Bhogavati pûti, to the north of the abode of Vâsuki, attains the benefit of Asvamedha sacrifice, and, in his next birth, is born as a very rich, pious, handsome, wise and generous man —46-47

The merits accruing from truth speaking and abstention from inflicting injury to another, are obtained by a pilgrimage to Prayâga --48

The place where the Ganges alone flows, is as sacred as Kurukshetra, and the place where she flows touching the Vindhya range, is tenfold more sacred —49

The spot where the Ganges flows touching many tirthas is undoubtedly a most holy place —50

The Ganges exercises Her elevating influence over mankind on earth, over the serpents in the lower regions, and over the Devas in Svarga , consequently, she is also known as Trîpathagâmînî —51

Those whose bones are deposited in the Ganges, remain in Svarga for as many thousand years as there are bones deposited —52

The Ganges is the most sacred of all the Tirthas, the best of all the rivers, and is the giver of emancipation to the vilest sinners —53

The Ganges is easily accessible everywhere, excepting at Gangâdvâra, Prayâga and Gangâ Sâgara Those who bathe at the above mentioned 3 places, go to heaven and are never re-born --54

There is no other source of bliss to the sinner as the Ganges —55

The Ganges has fallen from the head of Lord Siva, who is the sacred of the most sacred and propitious of the most propitious —56

*Here ends the one hundred and sixth chapter dealing with the greatness of Prayâga*

## CHAPTER CVII

Merkandeya said O King ! I shall now relate to you further the greatness of the holy Prayâga by listening to which a man undoubtedly gets liberated from all sins —1

On the banks of the Ganges, towards the west, lies the sacred Mānasatirtha, where by keeping up a three days' fast, the man gets freed from sins and attains all his desires —2

The merits acquired by the giving away of cows, land and gold are attained by the mere remembrance of this tīrtha —3

One who resides on the banks of the Ganges, with or without any object in view, and dies there, goes to heaven and remains far away out of the sight of hell —4

Such a man sits in a vimāna, adorned by decent birds like swans and flamingoes, where celestial nymphs sing lovely songs. Thus he enjoys long life in heaven.—5

On coming back from heaven, he is born in the house of a very wealthy man —6

During the month of Magha, sixty thousand tīrthas and sixty crores of sacred streams are to be found at the confluence of the Ganges and the Yamunā —7

The merits of giving away a lac of cows are attained by bathing at Prayāga for 3 days —8

One who, at the confluence of the Gauges and the Yamunā, lights cowdung fires all round and sits in the midst of them, enjoys healthy body, with all his limbs in the best condition —9

He remains in heaven for as many years as there are hairs on his body —10

And when he is re-incarnated on earth, he becomes the emperor of the world. After enjoying these, he again remembers the very same tīrtha —11

One who immerses into the sacred waters at the junction of the Ganges and the Yamuna, during the time of the lunar eclipse, goes to the world of the Moon where he enjoys in His (Moon's) company and remains in heaven for sixty thousand years, and is freed from all his sins —12-13

At the end, he leaves the world of India where he was venerated by the Rishis and Gandharvas, etc., and is born in a rich family —14

One who uplifts his legs and balances himself on his head, swings over the flames of fire, resides in heaven for a hundred thousand years —15

And, on being born again, he becomes Agnihotri when, after various enjoyments, attains the same tīrtha again —16

(One who cuts and offers his flesh to the birds, goes and resides in the domain of Chandra (Moon), and, on being born again, becomes a very pious king, — 17-18 )

Full of wisdom, knowledge, beauty and sweetness of speech After enjoying life, he again goes to that Tirtha —19

On the northern bank of the Yamunâ, to the south of Prayâga, there is the most sacred Rinamochana tirtha.—2

Where, by residing for a night and by bathing there, one remains no more liable to pay any debts, and goes to heaven and never runs into debts —21

*Here ends the one hundred and seventh chapter dealing with the greatness of the Prayâga tirtha*

## CHAPTER CVIII

Yudhisthîra said "Bhagavân! my mind has become purified by hearing the greatness of Prayâga narrated by you —1

O, Rishî! now be good enough to tell me that great virtue that may lead one to some higher world and be the source of everlasting bliss after washing off all his sins —2

Mârkandeya said —King! Now hear how one can attain everlasting bliss by going to Prayâga —3

He enjoys the full bloom of his health and attains the benefit of Asvamedha sacrifice at every step in his pilgrimage to Prayâga —4

Such a man gets emancipation from bondage for his manes and posterity for ten generations —5

Yudhisthîra said —The way of getting everlasting happiness just explained by you, is very simple It is the source of so many blessings —6

"The merits of an Asvamedha sacrifice are acquired with very great difficulties How can one attain similar merits in such a simple way? Please remove my doubts, O blessed one —7

Mârkandeya said —King! I have heard what Bîkshu first said to the sages —8

The circumference of Prayâga is five yojanas in extent, and by the treading on its ground one acquires the merits of Asvamedha sacrifice at every step —9

One who passes away at Prayâga, liberates seven generations of his ancestors and fourteen of his coming generations from bondage —10

King! Knowing this greatness of Prayâga, you should devote yourself unflinchingly to that sacred Tirtha, because those devoid of devotion and leading a life of sin cannot attain the benefits of this holy tirtha which is guarded by the Devâs" —11

Yudhishthira —“O Sage ! how do they get the benefits of the sacred tīrtha who yield to their desires, whether such be feelings of affection or greed of worldly objects --12

And what is the fate of the man who not knowing the difference between proper and improper, carries on a trade ? Pray explain all this to me --13

Mārkandeya said — King ! hear the rare greatness of the holy place The man who has restrained all his passions, attains emancipation by bathing for a month at Prayāga --14

Hear what Prayāga does to a man who treacherously kills another He undoubtedly frees himself from his sins by living on alms and bathing 3 times a day, for a period of three months --15

One who repairs to a holy place unintentionally, goes to heaven, and, after spending all his store of virtue there, is born in a well-to-do family --16

One who goes to a sacred place intentionally, always remains happy and rescues all his ancestors from hell --17

O incarnation of Dharma and knower of all, in compliance with your repeated enquiries, I have unfolded to you the ancient virtue for your benefit --18

Yudhishthira said —O Sage ! I was not born in vain, my family has been redeemed, I have become delighted by meeting you Indeed, you have shown me very great kindness --19

O Pious one ! I have been liberated from my sins by meeting you , and I now feel myself sinless --20

Mārkandeya said -- By your own destiny your soul has become elevated, and your family has been redeemed By the narration of the greatness of Prayāga one's store of virtue is increased, and his sins are decreased by listening to it --21

Yudhishthira said -- O, Great Sage ! Pray tell me, as seen or heard by you, the greatness of the Yamunā --22

Mārkandeya said —The Yamunā, the daughter of the Sun, renowned in all the three worlds is known as the great river of that name --23

The Yamunā has come from the same source as the Ganges, and She also dispels all sins by the mere utterance of Her name, from a distance of 1,000 yojanas --24

The virtue is attained by bathing in, drinking the waters and relating the greatness of the Yamunā The sight of Her gives happiness --25

His seven generations are purified by once plunging into and sipping the holy waters , and emancipation is obtained by dying there —26

On the south of the Yamunâ lies the Agni tîrtha and Dharmarâja tîrtha Naraka is situate on Her western bank —27

One goes to heaven by bathing there , by dying there he is not born again Similarly, there are thousands of tîrthas on the southern bank of the Yainunâ I am now describing the Tîrtha on the northern bank known as the Niranjana tîrtha of Âditya, where the Devas, along with India, perform sandhya three times a day and worship the tîrtha , otherwise men do the same —28-30

You should also get yourself devoutfully sprinkled with its holy water There are many other tîrthas, by bathing into which a man goes to heaven Those who die there are not re-born The Yamunâ, too, has been described to be sacred like the Ganges, but the latter is held more in veneration as the older of the two, by all classes everywhere —31-32.

Yudhiṣṭhîra! you should sprinkle yourself with the holy waters of each tîrtha, by doing which all the sins of life will be consumed --33

One who reads or hears this Mahâtmya, in the morning, is freed from all his sins and goes to heaven —34

*Here end the one hundred and eighth chapter describing the greatness of Prayâga tîrtha*

### CHAPTER CIX

Mârkandeya said --The thousands of tîrthas that I have heard described in the Brahma Purâna by Brahmâ, are sacred, purifying and givers of emancipation There is one Somatîrtha which is the most sacred and the dispeller of all sins, where by mere bathing one gets the deliverance of hundreds of his ancestors , one should, therefore, unavoidably bathe in it —1-2

Yudhiṣṭhîra said --Naimisâranya tîrtha on earth, Puṣkara in Akâsa, and Kurukshetra in the three worlds are the most famous How do you then extol the greatness of Prayâga only and leave the rest I feel it difficult to put my faith in your words, which seem to me to be not good without any proof How does one attain emancipation, virtues and various kinds of happiness by residing there for a few days only? Pray do remove my doubts, from what you have seen and heard —3-5

Mârkandeya said --Anything in which faith cannot be put, should not be uttered, even if it is based on the direct perception of a person without faith and whose mind is vitiated by sin —6

Those who are faithless, unchaste, evil minded and wicked, are great sinners (You must have some sin) that is why you have said so Now hear the greatness of Prayâga, which I shall tell you as I have heard and seen it directly or indirectly Whatever else is seen, heard or not seen should be clear to you if you meditate on them with concentration, taking the Sâstras as your ground of evidence —7-9

Therefore, a man inclined to doubt gets pain and not Yoga The latter is attained in thousands of lives.—10

A man attains (true) Yoga after performing thousands of Yogas, and not by giving away thousands of gems to the Brâhmaṇas, but one dying at Prayâga undoubtedly gets all the benefits —11-12

King! Now hear this main reason in good faith Though Brahma is omnipresent in every being, He is deemed to be particularly present in Brâhmaṇa, other things being called abrahma He is, however, worshipped in all the beings —13-14

Therefore, O, Yudhiṣṭhîra! the learned adore the holy Prayâga among all other tirthas Thus Prayâga is indeed to be worshipped as the King of all tirthas —15

Because Brahma also thinks of the same holy place everyday, that is why wise men after attaining the sacred Prayâga do not feel inclined for anything else —16

O, Yudhiṣṭhîra! whoever wishes to be classed among the mortals after becoming one with the Devâs? You will surely understand by these examples why I have described Prayâga to you as the most sacred and a ready dispeller of sins among the various tirthas —17

Yudhiṣṭhîra said —I have heard the greatness of Prayâga and am wondering, by what virtue the holy tirtha is obtained and how one goes to reside in heaven?—18

(I venture to enquire from you the means by which the giver of charity enjoys the world, with a store of happiness, by constantly being born in it—19 )

Mârkandeya said —King! Brahma has said that the wicked who despise the earth, the cow, the fire, the Brâhmaṇa, the Sâstrâs, the gold, the water, the women, the mother and the father, do not reach to the higher regions —20-21

Similarly the attainment of Yoga has been said to be very difficult Those who follow a sinful life go to the worst region in hell —22

The one who steals elephants, horses, cows, bullocks, jewels, pearl and gold, and then gives them in charity, never goes to heaven where the giver in good faith enjoys himself. They become addicted to many a (sinful) act and go to hell —23-24

Similarly I am telling you about Yoga, Dharma, chief traits of a donor, the truth and the untruth and good and evil fruits, as enunciated by the Lord Sun in ancient times —25

*Here ends the one hundred and ninth chapter describing the greatness of the Prayâga tirtha*

## CHAPTER CX

Markandeya said —King! Hear from me something further about the greatness of Prayâga. The sages have said that Naimisa, Puṣkara, Gotirtha, Sindhusâgara, Gaya, Chaitiakatiñtha, Gangâsâgara and other sacred hills &c, along with 30 crores of other tirthas are present there —1-3

In their midst are the three Agnikundas and the Ganges runs in the middle of them. The daughter of the Sun, the Yamunâ—venerated by all the tirthas, has appeared in Prayâga and meets the Ganges at the confluence —4-5

The middle of the waist of the earth is said to be between the Ganges and the Yamunâ and no other tirthas are even equal to  $\frac{1}{16}$ th of its greatness. It is said by Vâyu (or in Vâyu purâna?) that the 3½ crores of tirthas of Heaven, Âkasha and the earth are to be found in the Ganges —6-7.

Prayâga is the place where both Kambala and Avatara reside. This place of enjoyment is described as the altar of Prajâpati —8

There the incarnate Vedas and yajñas (sacrifices), O, Yudhiṣṭhîra!, adore Brahman, as do ascetics, the sages. The Devas, and the kings adore Prayâga by performing sacrifices. There is nothing more sacred than Prayâga in all the three worlds —9-10

The tirtha of Prayaga is by its own virtue sacred of all the tirthas. The place having the Ganges along with 3 crores and 10,000 tirthas is the holiest of all. The whole of Prayâga is sacred owing to its being situated on the banks of the Ganges —11-12

Know this to be the truth. The good should dim it into the ears of their friends, pupils and the servants, that Prayâga is blessed, is the giver

of heaven, is the very personification of bliss and truth, is sacred, and is the giver of Dharma, the dispeller of all sins, and is not (fully) known even to the great sages. The twice born by reading this Mahatmya become purified and go to heaven —13-15

One who, with a pure heart, listens everyday to the greatness of this tirtha, remembers his past lives and enjoys heaven.—16

The good only attain this tirtha, therefore, O, Yudhishthira, you should also bathe in these tirthas after discarding all misgiving O, King ! I have explained all this as asked by you, you have saved your ancestors by putting all these questions to me —17-18

O, Yudhishthira ! The tirthas enumerated before do not reach even tenth the Sanctity of Prayâga —19-20

*Here ends the one hundred and tenth chapter describing the greatness of Prayâga tirtha*

### CHAPTER CXI

Yudhishthira said —“ O' Sage ! How is it that you have been telling me only all about Prayâga ? Please explain it to me so that my family may get salvation —1

Mârkandeya said —King ! You should bear in mind what has just been told you about Prayâga, for Brahmâ, Viṣṇu and Śiva, the Lord of Devas are eternal —2

Brahmâ creates the universe, Viṣṇu fosters it and at the end of the kalpa, Śiva destroys it. At the time of the destruction of the universe, Prayâga is saved. One who looks upon the sacred Prayâga as the Lord of all creatures, becomes omniscient and blessed

Yudhishthira said —Seer ! Please tell me why is it that Brahmâ, Viṣṇu and Śiva are present in Prayâga ?—6

Mârkandeya said —Yudhishthira ! I shall tell you the reason of Brahmâ, Viṣṇu and Śiva's residing there ”—7

The circumference of Prayâga is five yoyanas , owing to the absence of sin, Brahmâ resides towards the northern portion of the tirtha to guard it, Viṣṇu stands personified in Venimâdhava, and Śiva has fixed Himself in the form of the sacred banyan tree. Besides them, the Devas, the Gandharvâs, the ascetics and the seers guard the boundary of the holy place after driving away sin from there. It is the place where a man after getting rid of his sins does not see hell at all —8-11

Brahmâ, Visnu, Sîva, the seven Dvîpas, the ocean and the mountains, safely there dwell, and besides them other Devas also dwell there till the end of the world —12-13

King ! Brahmat and other Devas have created the universe by placing themselves under the protection of Prayâga Prajâpati Indra-ksetra is known as Prayâga —14

O Yudhîshthîra ! this Prayâga is most sacred Now you should rule over your empire, along with your brothers, after being cleansed of all your sins.—15

*Here ends the one hundred and eleventh chapter describing the greatness of Prayâga*

## CHAPTER CXII

Nandîkesvara said —Nârada ! Having placed full belief in the words of the Sage Mârkandeya, Yudhîshthîra along with the other Pândavas went to Prayâga where after saluting the Brâhmaṇas they offered libations of water to the Pitrîs and the Devas &c —1

There in a few moments, Sîkrîṣna also turned up, when He and other Pândavas anointed Yudhîshthîra and proclaimed him Emperor —2-3

At the same hour, the Sage Mârkandeya also appeared there, and returned to his hermitage after pouring his blessings on Yudhîshthîra After that the virtuous Yudhîshthîra, with an easy mind, began to rule over his empire after bestowing great charity —4-5

One who reads this Mâhâtmya in the morning, and remembers Prayâga every day, attains bliss and goes to the world of Sîva, after being free from his sins —6

Vâsudeva said —O, King ! hear what I say You will undoubtedly rise to heaven, if you will remember Prayâga every day —7-8

One who goes to, or resides in, Prayâga goes to the world of Rudra, after being freed from all his sins —9

The Brâhmaṇa who is contented and does not accept gifts, and is chaste and devoid of conceit, attains the merits of a pilgrimage to this tirtha —10

One who is free from the feeling of anger, is truthful and regards all the beings like himself, also attains the merits of a pilgrimage to this tirtha —11

O, King ! The Yajñas, defined by the Seers and the Devas, cannot be performed by a man of limited means. Consequently the benefits accruing from such sacrifices are attainable only to the well-to-do and not to the poor —12-13.

Therefore, O, Yudhiṣṭhīra ! also hear from me the means by which the poor attain the benefits of such sacrifices —14

The sages have said that it is highly beneficial to go to the sacred places.—15

O, King ! ten thousand tirthas and three crores of rivers go and dwell in the Ganges during the month of Māgha —16

O, King ! you will also repeat visiting Prayāga, after performing sacrifices and ruling over your dominions with a balanced disposition —17

Nandikēśvara said —After having described the glory of Prayāga, that great Seer Mārkandeya disappeared then and there, then the King Yudhiṣṭhīra attained great happiness by going to, and bathing at, Prayāga along with his retinue following the prescribed rules —18-19

O, Nārada ! you are also in Prayāga Sanctify yourself by sprinkling the holy waters —20

Sīta said —O Rishi ! After thus narrating the whole thing to Nārada, Nandikēśvara vanished at the spot, and the former instantly went to Prayāga —21

Thereafter, bathing and giving alms to the Brāhmaṇas, he returned to his abode —22

*Here ends the hundred and twelfth chapter describing the greatness of Prayāga*

#### NOTE

There is no better account of Pīnyaga in the English language than the handbook, named, *Prayāg or Allahabad*, published by the *Modern Review* office of Calcutta, in 1910. It is indispensable to visitors to that holy city. The following passages are reproduced from that brochure bearing on the antiquity of Prayāga

The name by which modern Allahabad was known in ancient Prayāg its etymo- Hindu writings and which is usually in use among logical meaning present day Pandits and pilgrims is Prayāg. It was so called because the god Brahmā of the Hindu Trinity had performed many sacrifices (*yagnas*) here

**Prayâg** bears the title of Tirtha-râj—the holiest of holy places

**Why Prayâg is called Tirtha-râj.** It acquired this title because, according to a legend, when all the holy shrines were placed on one scale of the balance and Prayâg on the other, the former kicked the beam

The confluence of the Ganges and the Jumna finds appreciative

Prayâg mentioned in the Rig-Veda and other ancient works of Sanskrit literature mention in the Rig-Veda—the earliest sacred record of the Aryan race. In the Râmâyana and the Mahâbhârata, the two great epics of the Hindus

Prayâg has attained an established sanctity in the eyes of the saints and heroes whose deeds have been celebrated in those national encyclopædic chronicles

Several of the Purânas—especially the Matsva and Padma Purânas speak eulogistically of the merits of a pilgrimage to Prayâg

The Prayâg Mâhâtmya—"the greatness of Prayâg"—a popular

The Prayâg Mâhâtmya work which wholly dwells on the merits that the pilgrim gains by his pilgrimage to Prayâg, is a portion of the Matsya Purâna. It is in twelve chapters. Another and bigger work, bearing the same name, claims its origin to the Padma Purâna. It is in one hundred chapters. But the genuineness of this latter compilation is doubted

The Prayâg Mâhâtmya of the Matsya Purâna, on the other hand, is accepted as authentic. It is the scriptural hand-book of the pious pilgrim to Prayâg. It is his guide on the occasion of his visit to Prayâg. If he can not read it himself in the original Sanskrit, it is read to him and explained in the vernacular, by a professional Pandit, who has daily audiences of groups of men and women who listen to his *Kathâs*—recitations with expositions—that he delivers from his platform. Most of the religious observances practised by the pilgrims have their authority in that book. And so long as the Prayâg Mâhâtmya will hold sway over the Hindu pilgrims, Prayâg will continue to be their Tirtha-râj

The following from the Prayâg Mâhâtmya is a favourite verse descriptive of the paraphernalia that attends that august sovereign of the holy shrines —

सितासिते यत्र तत्त्वं चाप्ने  
नयौ दिनाते मुनि-मातुकम्बके ।  
नीवातपर्वं वट पद साथाद्  
स तीर्थराजो ज्ञाति प्रकाशः ॥

"Splendour in his glory the King of shrines Two noble-born maid-s—Ganga and Yamunā—daughters of the ascetic Jahnū and of the Sun—wave their white and blue chauris (the woolly tail of the yak) The imperishable holy banyan tree serves as the azure-coloured royal umbrella over Prayaga's head "

To understand this conceit of the Pāṇinik bard, one has to bear in mind, that in the winter and summer months, the two streams are clearly distinguishable by their colours—the fair stream of the Ganges mingling with the blue waves of the Jumna

In some fine stanzas (Canto XIII, stanzas 54-57) of the Raghuvamśa, the poet Kālidāsa dwells on this phenomenon These stanzas may be translated as follows

[Rāma addressing his spouse Sītā says ] Lo ! My darling of faultless limbs, how the Gāṅgā mingled in current with the waves of the Yamunā looks ! At one place it looks like a string of pearls interspersed with sapphires besmeared neighboring things with their blue lustre, while at another place, it looks like a garland of white lotuses, the interstices of which are studded with blue ones At one place it looks like a flight of the white swans, fond of the Mānasa Lake, in company with the China geese of dark colours, while at another place it looks like a painting of the earth ornamented with white sandal-paste wherein the ornamental leaves of the fringes are made of black aloes At one place, like the moonbeam variegated by darkness attached to shade, at another place like a white streak of autumnal clouds, with parts of the blue sky slightly visible through the chinks, and at yet another, like the body of the God Śīva anointed with cosmetics of ashes and adorned with the ornament of black snakes

The antiquity of the religious practices observed at Prayāg, enjoined

The Chinese traveller Hiouen Tsang's narrative of his visit to Prayāg in the 7th Century, A. C. in the Prayāg Māhātmya, has been testified to by a foreign chronicler of a different faith The Buddhist Chinese traveller Hiouen Tsang, who has

left a record of his travels in India, visited Prayāg in the middle of the seventh century of the Christian era His observations confirm the fact of the existence of the Aksayavata (Imperishable Banyan Tree) that was still standing and from the branches of which some pilgrims leaped down to die, it being the privilege of Prayāg to impart impunity from the sin of suicide The victims of self-slaughter cherished the belief, that they would attain in their next mundane existence, the object they desired at the time of their voluntary ending of their lives The bathing at the confluence of the rivers and the alms-giving to Brāhmaṇas were noted by him, thirteen hundred years ago, as it is by the modern tourist.

## CHAPTER CXIII

The Rishis said --Sūta, How many spheres (dvipas) are there of the world, as well as how many oceans and mountains are there? How many zones (varas) are there, and what are the rivers mentioned as flowing in them?—1

What is the extent of the Great Earth and of the Lokaloka mountains? What are the circumference and size of the moon and the sun, and what is their course?—2

Please be good enough, O knower of truth, to explain all this to us at full length, because we are always anxious to hear all this from you—3

Sūta said —The Dvipas are several thousands in number, and out of them seven are important ones. To describe them all, in this place, in their entirety is not possible —4

I shall explain to you something about the moon, the sun, the planets, along with the seven only of the important Dvipas, giving their dimensions as established by human calculation —5

The things which are "inconceivable" should be established by reasoning. The definition of "inconceivable" is this, viz., "a thing not understood by common people (by their common sense)" —6

I shall now proceed to tell you something about the seven varas (zones) and about Jambudvipa. Now listen to the entire extent of Jambudvipa in terms of Yojanas —7

Its breadth (diameter) is 100,000 yojanas, and many countries and beautiful cities are to be found in it —8

It is full of Siddhas and Chāranas, and is adorned by mountains, full of ores of all metals streaming out (as lava) from the different sides of rocks —9

Besides these, it is beautifully embellished by various rivers flowing from the mountains. There are these six ranges of mountains, running from east to west, demarcating the six varas —10

Stretching to the sea on both sides, east and west stand (1) the Himālaya, full of snow (bhima) and (2) Hemakūta full of gold (hema) —11

Then comes the great (3) Nisadha mountain, which is beautiful to look at on all sides. Then there is the golden mountain (4) Meru, with its four colours on its four sides, said to be bleak and barren. Its extent is 24,000 yojanas on four sides —12.

It has a circular form, divided into four quadrants. Its sides

(quadrants) are of various uniform colours, with properties conferred upon it by Brahmā (the Lord of creatures). - 13

On its navel peduncle (east quadrant) sprung from the self-born unmanifested) Brahmā there is white colour. Consequently, it is said to have Brāhmaical properties —14

On its southern quadrant, there is yellow colour, on account of which it is said to have the properties of the Vaishya caste. On its western quadrant, there is the colour of the wing of a black bee, owing to which it is said to possess the properties of Śūdras —15

Its northern quadrant is naturally of red colour, therefore it has the properties of Kshatriyas. Thus the four colours and castes have been enumerated --16

The mountain Nāla is studded with lapis-lazuli. The mountain Sveta is yellow and full of gold. The mountain Śrīgiri is made of gold (satakumbha), and has the colour of the tail of a peacock —17

These mountains are the kings among their kind, and are the abode of Siddhas and Chāranas. Their inner diameter is 9,000 yojanas -- 18

The vaishya Ilāvṛata stands in the middle and encircles the Mahā-Meru on all sides. Its expanse is 24,000 yojanas —19 \*

In the centre of this (Ilāvṛata) stands the Great Meru, shining in its majestic glory, like the fireblaze, devoid of smoke. Its southern portion is called the Dakṣina Meru and the northern the Uttara Meru --20

Each of these seven varṣas (zones) has a boundary mountain of its own, -which from north to south extends to 2,000 yojanas, and the southern ones are 2,000 yojanas in circumference --21

The sum of the breadths of these varṣas and mountain ranges is breadth of the Jambūdvipa, as mentioned above. Of these Nila, Niśadha are the longest, and those that come after them diminish in length —22

So are Sveta, Hema Kūṭa, Himavān and Śiṅgavān. Rishabha (Meru) is said to have the same extent as Jambūdvipa —23

Hema-Kūṭa is shorter (than Meru) by 12,000 yojanas, and Himavān is shorter (than Meru) by 20,000 yojanas. The great Hema-Kūṭa is 88,000 yojanas —24

The Mount Hima-vān is 80,000 yojanas, from east to west. The dvipa (Jambūdvipa) being spherical, this difference in extent of the mountains has sprung up —25

---

\* It should be 34,000 instead of 24,000 or chatrostrimśat, instead of chaturvimsat.

As there is a distribution of the mountains, so there is a distribution of the Varsas (along with them) one after another. Many peopled districts are in them. These varsas are seven in number.—26

They (the varsas) are surrounded by precipitous and insurmountable mountains. All the seven are mutually inaccessible by different rivers.—27

In those regions, various species of animals are found everywhere. This varsa of the Himavat is known as Bhārata.—28

Beyond that, up to Hema-Kūṭa, is the land (varsa) of the Kimpurusas, and from the borders of Hema Kūṭa up to Nisadha is the Harivarsa.—29

*Note*—Kimpuruṣa—Low man. A mythical being, with a human head and the form of a horse.

Niṣadha—Held Name of a mountain. Name of a country governed by Nala.

Harivarsa—One of the nine divisions of Jambūdvīpa

The other limit of Hari-varṣa is Meru, and further on is Ilāvṛata, beyond which extends Ramyaka to the Nila mountain.—30

Next to Ramyaka stands the Sveta mountain in whose region is Hiranyaka (varsa) and next to it, is Śringasāka, which is also known as Kuru.—31

On the north and south there are two bow-shaped continents, extending over 400 yojanas, and Ilāvṛata stands in the middle of them.—32

Half of it is Dakṣina Ilāvṛata and the rest of it is Uttara Ilāvṛata.—33

Between them is Meru in Ilāvṛata, to the south of Nila mountain and to the north of Nisadha.—34

The Mount Mālyavān, stretching north to south, which is 32,000 yojanas in length enters the sea on the west.—35

Mālyavān is a thousand yojanas from Nila to Niṣadha and Gandha Mādana, is 32 yojanas.—36

Within their circumferences is the square and lofty golden Sumeru mountain, which is of fourfold colour, like the four castes.—37

There are different colours on its sides on the east it is white, on the south, it is yellow, on the west, it is like the wing of the black-bees, on the north, it is red. These are the different colours.—38

*Note*—Bhringi—A poisonous plant, a fig tree,

The Mount Meru shines out like the rising sun or the blaze of fire without smoke, in the heart of those Mountains, like a divine king.—39.

That Sumeru is 84,000 yojanas high, 16,000 yojanas deep underground and 28,000 yojanas broad —40

Its circumference is double its breadth It is a great divine mountain, abounding in celestial medicines —45

It is surrounded on all sides by lands of golden effulgence On this king of mountains, the Devas, the Gandharvas and the Rakshasas enjoy and carry on their pastimes in the company of Apsaras —42

That Sumeru is adorned by the Bhûta and Bhâvana worlds, and has four realms on its sides, viz —Bhadrâsva (in the east), Bhârata (in the south) and Ketumâla in the west and the sacred Kuru on the north —43-44

The subjacent hills are —

Maudara, Gandhamâdana, Vipula, and Supâisva, all full of precious stones —45

And on these mountains there are four lakes and forests known as Arunoda, Mâuasa, Sitoda and Bhadra —46

And there are big trees of turmeric, rose-apple, Asvattha on the Gandhamâdana and banyan on the Vipula —47

Amaragandaka is west of Gandhamâdana which is 32,000 yojanas, equally on all sides —48

There reside the well-known Ketumâlas, the doers of blessed deeds —there everybody is like the destructive Fire of high spirit and great strength —49

The ladies of that place are beautiful like the lotus and lovely On that mountain there is a divine jackfruit tree, looking effulgent through its leaves —50

The people of that region live up to 10,000 years by drinking the juice of those fruits To the east of Mâlyavân flows the river Gandaki which is 32,000 yojanas in length —51

The inhabitants of Bhadrâsva (khanda) always remain happy and the Bhadramâla forest lies in the same clime, where there is a huge and black mango tree - 52

The people of that place are white in complexion and very sturdy and strong The womenfolk are the most beautiful, like white lily, and very agreeable to look at —53

They possess the radiance and colour of the moon, their faces are like the full moon, and their body cool, as the moon, smells like lotus —54.

They live up to 10,000 years in good health. By drinking the kala-mango juice, they always remain in full bloom of youth — 55

Sūta said — Rishis! Brahmā has thus described the nature of the continents to the Rishis, and the same Brahmā who had previously favoured me (with describing the same) Now, what am I to narrate to you next? — 56

All the self-restrained seers, hearing these words of Sūta, became curious, and said with great joy — 57

"Sage! Be pleased to say all about the two countries, eastern and western, which have been already mentioned by you and of the northern varṣas and mountains, besides which, we are also desirous of hearing the account of the men living on those mountains" On being thus urged by the seers, Sūta again resumed the string of his narration — 58-59

Sūta said — Listen to (the account of) the varṣas which have been already referred to by me to the south of the Nila and to the north of Nisadha — 60

That is Ramanaka (varṣa), and the inhabitants of that place are very handsome and given to amicable delights, and of pure birth — 61

There, too, is a huge banyan tree, and the people of that place, live by drinking the juice of the fruits of it — 62

These best of men of great parts live happy — 63

To the north of Sveta Mountain and to the south of Śringa (Śringin) is the Hiranyavat continent (varṣa) where flows the river Hiranyavati — 64

The people of Hiranyavat are very strong and of high spirit They are of pure and noble birth and are a good-looking and happy lot — 65

These first class men live up to the age of 11 thousand and 1,500 years — 66

In that continent, there is a great bread-fruit tree of nice foliage, by drinking the juice of the fruits of which men live on — 67

The Mount Śringa (Śringin) has three lofty peaks One of them is full of precious stones, the other one is studded with gold and the third one, full of all gems, is adorned with the worlds — 68

The country situated to the north of this Śringa, to the south of the sea, is the renowned Kuru varṣa where the saints (siddhas) have fixed their abode — 69

It also has trees producing sweet fruits, and the water of the rivers

is like divine nectar Those beautiful trees produce raiments and ornaments by their fruits —70

Some of those beautiful trees are the givers of all the fruits of one's desires, and the others are called Kairina, always beautiful to look at, produce milk (juice) with the six tastes and sweet as pañchāmpita (the five best products of cow's milk), productive of nectarlike milk —71 ..

The whole land of that place is full of gems and is inlaid with fine gold dust There, the wind is most pleasant and salubrious and noiseless —72

The people falling down from Devaloka are born there They are of pure and noble descent, having permanent youth —73

There, the daughter and the son are born as twins, and husband and wife like the manifestations of Gandharva and Apsarā There, they drink nectarlike milk of trees overflowing with them —74

The twins are born in a day They grow together and are possessed of like beauty and character They die together —75

They are attached to each other with the fondness of the ruddy geese They are healthy, without bereavement, and happy —76

These great souls live for 11,000 years, and are ever devoted to their own wives —77

Sūta said —O Rishi! The nature of these continents of the Bhāratavarṣa has been brought to your notice O greatly pious ones! what more do you wish to hear now? —78

The Rishi, being thus asked by the enlightened son of Sūta again questioned him, being desirous of hearing something more in answer —79

*Here ends the one hundred and thirteenth chapter dealing with Jambudvīpa and its mountains and rāgaś*

#### CHAPTER CXIV

The sages said —We wish to hear from you an account of this Bhāratavarṣa, which was peopled by Svāyambhuva and the rest of the fourteen Manus O Blessed one! do tell us about their creation —1-2

On hearing these words of the seers, Sūta of the Purāṇas and son of Lōmāharṣaṇa after a deep consideration, began to answer the queries of the seers of thoughtful mind —3-4

Sūta said —I shall tell you about the people of Bhāratavarṣa Manu

came to be known as Bhârata by his creation and protection of the people (of Bhârata) —5

According to Nîrukta, that place is Bhâratavâsa where human beings can obtain heaven, emancipation and a middle course of the two —6

There is no field of action for mankind without Bhâratavâsa. Bhâratavâsa has nine divisions, *Viz*—Indradvîpa, Kâsîra, Tâmrâparnî, Gabhastimâna, Nâgadvîpa, Saumya, Gandharva, Vâruna, and the ninth is this place, surrounded on all sides by the ocean. The whole of the dvîpa is a thousand yôjanas in extent, from north to south. It is gradually broader from Kumâri (Cape Comorin) to the mouth of the Ganges, whence it has risen to a height of ten thousand yôjanas in an oblique direction —7-10

The Mlechhas live on its outskirts. The Kirâtas and the Yavanas inhabit the east and the west of it —11

*Note*—Kirâta=A degraded mountain tribe

Yavana=Foreigner, especially the Greeks

The Brâhmaṇas, the Ksatriyas, the Vaisyaṇas, and the Sudras inhabit in its centre and carry on (*i.e.*, inside this boundary) their occupations of rituals (sacrifice, &c.) trade, commerce, &c —12

They all pursue their respective duties by adhering to the varna-dharma, Artha and Kâma —13

Here exist the âśramas in their due order in which the five fold desires of men are fulfilled (*viz.*, niskâma dharma as well as the four ordinary desires, consisting of dharma, artha, kâma and moksha). Here, men engage in activities for the sake of obtaining Heaven and emancipation —14

The Mânavadvîpa is also called Tiryag-yâma (*i.e.*, obliquely situated). One who conquers it entirely, is called Samrâ̄ta —15

This loka is known as the conqueror of Antarikṣa which in its turn is known as Svarâ̄t I shall explain this at full length —16

There are seven principal mountains in this continent, *viz.*, Mahendra, Malaya, Sahya, Saktimâna, Rikṣavâna, Vîndhya and Pâriyâtra, and there are thousands of smaller ones adjacent to each of these —17-18

Some of these are known to have fine peaks and tablelands, covered with many kinds of trees, &c. The smaller ones are less productive, and are distinguished from the bigger ones by contrast —19

The Mlechhas and the Aryan reside there mingling with each other without distinction, and they drink the waters of many rivers, such as

the Ganges, the Sindhu, the Sarasvati, the Sutlej, the Chandrabhaga, the Yamuna, the Sarayu, the Airavati, the Vitatsa, the Devikâ, the Kuhu, the Gomati, the Dhantapâpâ, the Vâhudâ, the Dusadvatî, the Kausiki, the Trityâ, the Nischalâ, the Gandaki, the Iksu, the Lauhitâ (all these having their source in the snow-clad mountains of the *Himâlayas*)

The Vedasmriti, the Vetravati, the Vritragni, the Sindhu, the Parṇâsa, the Narmadâ, the Kavei, the Mâhi, the Parâ, the Dhanavati, the Rupâ, the Viduṣa, the Veṇumati, the Siprâ, the Avanti, the Kunti (all these rivers having their source in the *Pâriyâtra* mountain)

The Mandakini, the Dasâinâ, the Chitrakûtâ, the Tamasâ, the Pippali, the Syeni, the Chitrotpalâ, the Vimalâ, the Chañchalâ, the Dhutavâhini, the Saktimanti, the Suni, the Lajjâ, the Mukutâ, the Hradikâ (these having their source in the *Rishavân* mountain)

The Tâpi, the Payôni, the Nirvindhyâ, the Kshiprâ, the Risabhâ, the Venâ, the Vaitarani, the Viśvamâlâ, the Kumudvatî, the Toyâ, the Mahâgauri, the Durgamâ, the Silâ (these rivers of cool water having their source in the *Vindhya* mountains)

The Godâvari, the Bhîmarathi, the Krisnaveni, the Banjulâ, the Tungabhadra, the Suprayôgâ, the Vâhyâ, the Kaveri (these rivers in the south having their source in the *Sahya* mountains)

The Kritamâlâ, the Tamraparni, the Puspajâ, the Utpalavati (these rivers of the cool water having their source in the Malayâchala mountain)

The Trîbhâga, the Risiukulyâ, the Iksudâ, the Tridivâ, the Chalâtâmraparni, the Mâli, the Sarvâ, the Vimalâ (these having come from the *Mahendra* mountain), the Kâsikâ, the Sukumâri, the Madangâ, the Mandavâhini, the Kripâ, the Pâshini (these having come from *Saktimanta*) —20-32

All the rivers named above are sacred, and fall into the sea, and their waters are pure and sacred, and every one drinks from them. They are the mothers of the universe and purge the sin of the world —33

From these rivers thousands of rivers are branched off, and into them thousands of tributaries fall.

On their banks are situated the following (janapadas) places Pâñchâla, Kuru, Sâlva, Jângala, Surasena, Bhadrakâsa, Vâhya, Paṭṭachara, Matsya, Kirâta, Kulya, Kuntala, Kâsi, Kośala, Avanti, Kalinga, Muka and Andhaka. Thus I have described almost all the countries of Madhyadeśa

*Note.—*Madhyadeśa the central region, the country lying between the *Himâlaya* and the *Vindhya*. The Gangetic doab. Surasena=Name of country about Mathura

**Matsya**=Another name for Virata—the country lying to the west of Dholpur   **Kuntala**=S W portion of Hyderabad, Deccan   **Avanta** Country to the N of Narmada.   **Kalinga**=Northern Circars   **Andhaka**=Telangana

Now the following are between the Sahya mountain and the Godâvari, most charming lands in the whole world, where there are (the mountains) Gobardhana, Mandara and Gandhamâdana as well as the celestial trees and herbs, for Râma's benefit —37-38

These were brought down by Bharadvâja Muni, for Râma's good, and by him was created a pleasant country decorated with flowers —39

Bâhlîka, Vâtadhâna, Âbhira, Kâlatoyaka, Purandhra Sûdra, Pallava, Âtta Khandîka, Gândhâra, Yavanas, Sindhu, Sauvira, Madraka, Saka, Druhya, Pulinda, Pârada, Hârmurtika, Râmañha, Kantakâra, Kaikeya, Daśanâmaka, Prasthala, Daseraka, Lampaka, Talagâna, Sañika, Jângala, and other places peopled by the Bhâradvâja Brâhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas, Vaishyas, and Sûdras —These places (janapadas) are on the north Now hear of those on the east —40-43

Note—Bâhlîka=Balkha   Sindhu=The country of the Upper Indus   Saka=The countries on the N-W Frontier   Kaikeya=Bordering on the Sindhu Deâa

आमीर भीकोक्यादधोभागे तापीतः पश्चिमेतटे ।  
आमीर देशो देवेशि विन्ध्यशैले अवस्थितः ॥

Âbhira —South of Sri Konkana and on the Western bank of the Taptî is the land of the Âbhiras on the Vindhya hills

Anga, Vanga, Madguraka, Antaragiri, Vahirgiri, Plavaṅga, Mâtaṅga, Yamaka, Mallavarnaka, Suhma, Uttara Pravijaya, Mârga, Vâgeya, Mâlava, Prâgjyotisa, Puddra, Videha, Tamraliptaka, Sâlva, Magadha and Gonardla —44-45

Note—Anga=Near Bhagalpur   Vanga=Also called Samatala, Eastern Bengal  
Vidhiha=Country lying to the N=E of Magadha   Magadha=Bihar

Those lying to the south (or in the Daksinâpatha) are --Pândya, Kerala, Chola, Kulya, Setuka, Sutîka, Kupatha, Vâjivâsika, Navarâstra, Mâhiśika, Kâlinga, Kâruṣa, Aisîka, Âtavya, Savara, Pulinda, Vindhya, Pusîka, Vîdarbha, Dandaka, Kuliya, Sirâla, Rupasa, Tâpasa, Taitirîka, Kâraskara, Vâsika and the countries on the banks of the Narmadâ

Note—Kerala=Modern Malabar   The strip of land between Western Ghants and the sea north of the Kaveri   Chola=Tanjore   Pândya=Thennevelly   Vîdarbha=Bihar  
A district in the Deccan between the Narmadâ and the Godâvari

The following countries lie on the west —Bhârukachha, Samâheya, Sarasvata, Kâchîka, Saurâstra, Anarta and Arbuda —46-51.

Note.—Saurâstra or Anarta=Kathiawar.   Arbuda=Abu

The following countries are on the western extremity of the Vindhya-chala —Mâlava, Karuṣa, Mekala, Utkala, Aundra, Mâsa, Dadârṇa, Bhoja, Kiskindhaka, Tôṣala, Kosala, Traipura, Vaidîṣa, Tumura, Tumvara Padgama, Naicadha, Aīupa, Saundikera, Vitihotra, Avanti —52-55.

**Note** — Mâlava=Malwa Utkala=Orissa Kiskindhâ=A city in the Deccan Dasarna=The country through which the Dasan flows Kosala=The country along the banks of the Sarayu Tripura=Tevur Avanti=Country to the north of the Narmada

The following countries are situated on the mountains —Nirâhâra, Sarvaga, Kupatha, Apatha, Kuthuprâvarana, Urna, Darva, Samudgaka, Trigarta, Mandala, Kirâta and Amara — 56

There are four ages of the world, viz —Satya, Tretâ, Dwâpara and Kaliyuga I am now going to give you an account of each —57

**Note** —The duration of each age respectively is 1,728,000, 1,296,000, 864,000 and 432,000 years of men, the four together comprising 4,820,000 years which is equal to a Mahâyuga The regularly descending length of the Yugas represents a corresponding physical and moral deterioration in the people living in each age, the present age being Kaliyuga—the Iron Age

The Lord said —King ! Hearing this, the sages, desirous of hearing the narration, began to enquire from Sûta, the son of Lâmâharṣana —58

The seers said —Sûta ! You have told us about Bhâratavarsha, now be pleased to tell us something about Kîmpuruṣa Varṣa and Hari Varṣa , besides this, be good enough to tell us about the Jambûdvipa, &c., as well as about their people and the trees that grow there —59-60

Thus exhorted by the Brâhmaṇas, Sûta began to relate to them what was in accordance with the Purânas and approved by the Risis —61

Sûta said —Rishis ! As you desire to hear these things, listen to me attentively The Kîmpuruṣa of Jambûdvipa is as great in magnitude as the Nandana-Vana —62

**Note** —Nandana-Vana=The garden of Indra

Kîmpuruṣa —The people of Kîmpuruṣa-Khanda have a complexion like that of heated gold, and they live up to 10,000 years —63

A stream of honey flows from a Plakṣa tree, in that sacred Khanda, which the Kinnaras residing there drink — 64

On account of which they remain so healthy, without any grief and happy, and cheerful in their minds The people have a yellow complexion like shining gold, and the womenfolk are known as Apsarâs — 65

Hari Varṣa —Beyond Kîmpuruṣa is Harivarṣa, the inhabitants of which are silvery white in complexion They are the fallen people of Devaloka They all drink the juice of the sugarcane --66-67,

They do not get old, and consequently they live for a very long time  
Their average age is 11,000 years —68

*Ilâvrita-Khanda* is in the middle, where there is no strong sunshine  
and of which men have little knowledge —69

The sun, the moon, as well as the stars are seldom seen in *Ilâvrita*  
The people of that place are handsome like the lotus and their eyes are  
like the same, and their body, too, emits a scent like that of the lotus  
They seldom get excited and drink the juice of the roseapple, (*jambuphala*)  
They, too, are the fallen people of *Svarga* and wear silvery white  
garments, and live up to 13,000 years —70-73

To the south of Meru and north of *Nîśadha* stands the roseapple tree  
(*jambuvîkṣa* , which is called *Sudarśana* It is a huge tree, and always  
abounds in flowers and fruits, and is frequented by the Siddhas and Châ-  
manâs —74

*Jambûdvîpa* is so called after this huge tree It rises to a height of  
thousands of *yojanas* —75

The tree is so high and big that it seems to cover all the heavens,  
and the juice of its fruits flows in the form of a river —76

It flows round Sumeru, and then waters the root of the tree, and  
people of *Ilâvrita* drink it with great pleasure —77

By drinking it, they neither get infirm, nor do they ever feel hungry,  
tired or miserable —78

There is to be found a kind of gold, called the *Jâmbunada*, which is  
the ornament of the Devas It is red like the *Indragopa* (insect) The  
fruits of this tree produce the best juice of all the fruits of trees of other  
*Varcas* This tree exudes a gummy sap, like gold, which is also the  
ornament of the Devas —79-80

By the grace of God, the soil of that place swallows the excreta  
of the people and the dead —81

The Râkshasas, and the Pisâchas live (in the dales) of *Himavata*  
The Gandharvas and the Apsaras are the inhabitants of *Hemakûṭa* —82

*Seṣa*, *Vâsuki*, *Takṣakas* and the Nâgas, all haunt the *Nîśadha* moun-  
tain, and the 33 blessed Yâjñyias (Devas) sport on *Mahâmeru* On the  
*Nîla* mountain, where sapphires abound, live the Siddhas, Mahârasas and  
Dânavas The *Sveta* range is said to be the resort of Daityas —83-84

*Sringavân*, the best of the mountains, is the haunt of the Pitris  
These are the nine continents in the world The changeable (plains) and

the fixed (mountains) are inhabited by various creatures Men and Devas see numerous increase in them They cannot be counted, but should be taken on trust, by one who wishes his own good —85-86

*Here ends the one hundred and fourteenth chapter in Bhuvanakoga  
describing the Kosa Vargas*

---

### CHAPTER CXV

Manu said.—Janārdana! I have heard the doings of the son of Budha and have also heard the ways of performing sacred Srāddha that dispels all sins I have heard the benefits of giving away a milch cow, a black deer skin, and the ways of letting loose a bull (at the end of funeral rites), but O Kesava! my curiosity is awakened on hearing about the beauty of the son of Budha Pray now tell me what I ask By virtue of what acts did he become so handsome and prosperous? How is it that Urvashi became so much attached to him in preference to all the Devas of the three worlds as well as the beautiful Gandharvas?—1-5

Hearing those words of Manu, the Lord said —King! Hear the actions, in virtue of which the King Pururavā became so handsome and happy In his previous life, the King Pururavā was the lord of Madra, known as Pururavā —6-7

At the close of the Chāksusa Manvantara, the king was in the Chāksusa dynasty, endowed with all the royal qualities, except beauty alone.—8

The Rishi asked Sūta how the Madra King, Pururavā, became Lord of the Earth, and what act of his deprived him of his beauty —9

Sūta said —Seers! In the village of Dvija, on the bank of a river, there was a Brāhmaṇa named Pururavā, who in his after life became the King of Madra, named Pururavā, because in his former life of a Brāhmaṇa, he always observed the Dwadasi fast and worshipped Janārdana, with the desire of getting a kingdom But though he kept the fast, he bathed, with his body rubbed with oil —10-12

He obtained the kingdom of Madra by the virtue of his fast, but became, ugly on account of his rubbing his body with oil, before bathing on fast days —13

Hence, one, who observes a fast, should not rub his body with oil on that day before bathing, and if he bathes after rubbing his body with unguent, he becomes ugly in his next life —14

This is about the previous life of the King Purûravâ of Madra  
Now I shall tell you something about him, after he became the lord of  
Madra —15

In spite of his royal qualities, he was not loved by his subjects,  
on account of his ugliness —16

He then decided to go and practise penances for the attainment of  
personal beauty, in the Himalayas, after making over charge of his realm  
to his ministers —17

That far-famed king, with his own enterprising spirit as the only  
companion, went on foot to that home of all the tirthas (*i.e.*, Himalayas),  
and at the end saw the renowned and beautiful river Airâvati.—18

The king, whose fame was like that vast icy region, saw that river  
of the mighty Himalayan torrent, whose waters are cold like the rays of the  
moon and white like snow —19

*Here ends the one hundred and fifteenth chapter describing the  
Hermitage (Tapôvana)*

## CHAPTER CXVI

Sûta said —O Rishi! The King saw the glorious, blessed and  
sacred river of Haumavati where the Gandharvas abound and which Indra  
worshipped —1

The King Purûravâ was greatly charmed to see that beautiful river,  
the waters of which were intermingled with the rut of the celestial  
elephants, the middle of which was shaped like the bow of Indra.  
It was the home of many ascetics, was worshipped by a multitude of  
Brâhmans, and was of golden colours. Its surface is covered with a row  
of snow-white flamingoes, and seemed to be fanned by kâshamara.  
Many a pious one sprinkled its water on his head. It appeared to the king  
to be beautiful, and subject to waxing and waning like the moon, and the  
giver of great joy —2-5

The rapid running stream of cold water, the best of daughters of the  
Himalayas, full of ripples and tasteful like nectar, full of birds, honoured  
by the Tâpasas and Brâhmaṇas, the sacred river destroys all sins and  
raises men to heaven —6-7

She is the senior consort of the ocean, adored by the seers, the  
producer of ardent zeal in all, the most beautiful, the giver of universal  
happiness and relief, the guide to heaven, the waters of which flow up

to Gokula, most pleasing, devoid of moss and reeds, and decorated with lotuses, the geese and the cranes throwing out their melodious notes at rapid succession, having deep whirlpools as her navelpit, having little islands hither and thither looking as her thighs, the blue lotus flowers looking like her eyes, the blooming lotuses supplying her mouth, the crystal waters her dress, the cranes her beautiful lips, the train of Balâkâs (cranes) her row of teeth, the restive shoals of fish her eyebrows, the elephants of her waters (water spouts) her breasts, and adorned with the singing geese and the lotus flowers that looked her jingling anklets and bracelets respectively —8-12

Charmed with the beauty, the Gandharvas sport every noon in her with their Apsarâs. Her waters are highly perfumed by the mixing of the sandal and other scents (kunkuma), used by the Apsarâs, and also with the various aroma of the trees on its bank, they are so constantly rippled with the wind that the reflection of the sun is difficult to be seen, while her banks are broken here and there as the elephants of the Devas strike them with their tusks —13-15

Such a magnificent stream, in which flows the ichor of the Airavata, the elephant of India, and the sandal perfume of the consorts of the Devas, is swarmed by a train of sweetly buzzing bees —16

The ascetics, the seers and the Devas, in company of the Apsarâs, derive happiness on her banks, where the humming bees were attracted by the aroma of sweet flowers of the trees on her banks and where the intoxicated deer gratify their passions —17-18

The celestial women, with their face like the lotus, and the moon, become sanctified by a bath in her water and are honoured by the Devas —19

The water of this river is not disturbed by the Devas, Pulindas, (kings) and tigers, &c., is decked with lotus flowers, illumined by the reflection of the moon and stars. The king continued his journey while seeing this river, which satisfies the desire of the sages. On her banks, the groups of Devas and Brâhmaṇas were sitting under the branches of trees, whose kâsa flowers look like the rays of the moon —20-22

The king, who is famous like the moon, saw that the river was inundated with many rivulets and was the dispeller of sins of the devotees and worshipped by many sages, which gives nourishment to the people, as a mother does to her sons, and which is surrounded by the Devas, and by other people, seeking their own benefit, which

is sported by the lions and the elephants, whose waters are full of Párijáta trees, and which is never increased or decreased by the heat of the sun —25

*Here ends the one hundred and sixteenth chapter describing  
the celestial river Aírdvati*

## CHAPTER CXVII

Súta said —Rishi ! when the king's fatigue was removed at the sight of the holy water of that river and by the contact of its wind, he trudged along, and sometime after had a view of the majestic Himalayas —1

That mountain touching the skies with many of its gray (white ?) peaks was accessible to the sages, although not accessible to birds —2

Besides this the Himalayas resounded with the thundering sound of the rivers falling down in cascades and which rendered all other sounds inaudible They, the Himalayas, looked charming with their reservoirs of cold water —3

The blue forests of Devadáru trees looked like its lower garment, clouds formed its upper garment, the white cloud the turban , while the moon and the sun the diadem Its body was covered with snow, (which served the purpose of an unguent), while the presence of minerals here and there seemed to paint it with sandal It gave out coolness even during the hot weather It was decorated with massive rocks, at places imprinted red with the foot-prints of the nymphs (Apsarás), with places lit up by the sun, enveloped in darkness at others, drinking water somewhere through its deep chasms, adorned elsewhere by the multitude of playful Vidyá-dharas, and the chief Kinnaras at places looking beautiful with the flowers of Heaven (Santána, &c) fallen from the Gandharvas and the nymphs (Apsarás), while they were busy in drinking, and elsewhere covered with the beds of flowers pressed down by the Gandharvas rising from their slumber, and thus looked beautiful —4-10

At places it was covered with blue grass, without a breath of wind, and spots abounded with pretty flowers This mountain is the refuge of the ascetics and most inaccessible to lovers Herds of deer graze at the foot of rocks, whose trees are broken down by the tusks of elephants who, bewildered by the roars of the lion, were making noisy uproar, and could not be seen to be at rest —11-13

In whose valleys and bowers were enshrined meditating seers, and precious stones from whose stores adorn the three worlds --14,

It is the refuge of the great, and always served by the great. The great see this mountain great in jewels and precious stones —15

The hermits accomplish their course of asceticism in short duration. All the sins vanish merely by the sight of this mountain. The wind makes the landscape pleasant by blowing the sprays of water of its waterfalls —16-17

(It is) decorated somewhere with summits bristling with waterfalls, at other places, with peaks, which, owing to hot sun shining are inaccessible, except by the wind —18

At places it looked beautiful, with clusters of the great overshadowing Devadārus which, owing to their thickness, looked like clusters of bamboos. At other places were huge icicles, hundreds of thundering waterfalls and fountains, as well as caves, with their mouths sealed with snow —19-20

The great King of Madra roamed about, seeing that beautiful valley, and (after a time) sat down for a time at a certain place —21

*Here ends the one hundred and seventeenth chapter dealing with the description of the Himālayas in Bhuvana Kōṣa*

---

### CHAPTER CXVIII

Sūta said —Sages! King Purśravā suddenly came to one of the beautiful places, that mountain inaccessible to ordinary human beings —1

The country where the Airāvati river has its source, is also sombre in appearance, like the clouds, on account of its plentiful trees and thickets —2.

It abounds with the following varieties of trees, flowers, grass, creepers and plants —

Sala, Tāla, Tamāla, Karnikāra, Sāmala, Nyagrodha, Aśvattha, Śirīsa, Śūnapa, Śleṣmātaka, Āmalaka, Hariṭaka, Bibhūtaka, Bhūrja, Muñjaka, Bāna, Septachchada, Mahānimba, Nimbā, Nirgundi, Hanī, Devadāru, Kāleyaka, Kadimaka, Chandana, Vilva, Kapittha, Raktachandana, Māta, Ānra, Āriṇṭa, Akṣota, Abdaka, Arjuna, Hastikarna, Sumanase, Kovidāra, Prāchijñāmlaka, Dhanaka, Samarītaka, Kharjurā, Nārikela, Priyāla, Amṛataka, Inguda, Tantumāla, Dhava, Bhavya, Kāśmiraparoi, Jāṭiphal, Pūgaphalā, Katphala, Lavaliphalā, Mandāra, Kimsuka, Kusumāṁśuka, Yavāsa, Samiparpāsa, Vetasa, Ambuvetasa, Nāraṅgi (of deep red color), Hinggu,

Priyāṅgu, Aśoka, and (Red-flowered) Aśoka, Akalla, Avichāraka, Muchukunda, Kunda, Ātarūṣa, Parūṣaka, Kīrāta, Kīñkīnata, Ketaka, Svetaketaka, Sobhāñjana, Añjana, Sukalitga, Nikotaka, Asana, Sabakāra, Yuthikā (yellow and white), Jāti, Chappakajāti, Tumbāra, Atumbara (?), Mocha, Locha, Lakucha, Tila, Kuśeśayn, Chavyaka, Bakula, Pāribhadra, Haridraka, Dhāra-Kadamba, Kutaja, Kadamba, Ādityamustaka, Kumbha, Kumkuma, Katphala, Badara, Nīpa, Pālivata, Dādīma, Champaka, Bandhuka, Subandhuka, Kuñjakajāti, Pātalā, Mallikā, Karavira, Kurabaka, Jambu, Nīpajambu, Bijapūra, Karpuia, Aguu, Bimba, Pratibimba, Santānaka, Vitānaka, Guggula, Hintāla, Iksu (of white color), Karavīha (without thorns), Chakramarda (relieving pain), Pilu, Dhātakī, Chiribilva, Tintidika, Lodha, Viḍāṅga, Kṣīṇikā, Aśmantaka, Jambīa, Svetaka, Bhallātaka, Indiayava, Valguja, Nāgakesaīa, Karamaīda, Kāsamaīda, Ariṣṭaka, Variṣṭaka, Rudrākṣa, Putrajīvaka (having seven synonyms), Kamkolaka, Lavaṅga, Pārijātaka, Pippali, Nāgavalli, Maricha, Navamallikā, Mrīdvikā, Atimuktaka, Tiapusa, Nartikapratāna (Creepers), Kuṣmāṇḍa, Alābu, Chirbhūṭa, Patolikāra, Karkotāki, Vātaka, Brīhati, Kapṭaka, Mūlaka, and various kinds of edible roots Kallāras, Viḍārī, Rurūṭa, (having tasteful thorns), Bhāndīa, Viḍūṣāra, Rājajaṅbuka, Baluka, Suvarchala, Sarsapa, Kātkoli, Kṣirakākoli, Chhattia, Atichhatra, Kāsamardi, Kṣirāśaka, Kālaśaka, Simbīdhanya and various other kinds of grain, and medicinal herbs which prolong life, procure fame, give strength, and remove the fear of old age, death and hunger, and give every kind of happiness. There are also Venulatā, Kīchaka Venu, Kāśa, Śāra clusters, Kuśa, Kārpāsa of various species, Kadāli groves, as well as grassy plots (lawns) known as Marakata. There are also flowers of Irā, Kumkuma, Tagara, Atīviśa, Māṃsa-granthi, Suragada, Suvarna, Bhūsimipuspā. There are also Jambīra, Bhustrīna and Saśuka, Śringaveīa, Ajamoda, Kuveraka, Priyālaka, as well as sweet smelling lotuses of various colors —3-39

Some of the blooming lotuses looked like the rising sun, some like the moon and the sun. Some looked like bright gold, and some resembled the San [hemp, or Crotalaria juncea] flower —40

The place was full of growing lotuses, of which some looked like the leaf of a Sirīśa (Sūka), some having five colours, others many.—41

There were Kumuda flowers, too, pleasing to the sight of the observer and looking like the moon lotuses, resembling the glow of fire, and like mouth of an elephant were there also —42

The species of blue lotus, Kahlāras, the Gunjātaka berry, Kaserū, Śringātaka, Mrīṇāla (a species of lotus), Rājotpala (a kind of lotus),

various kinds of fruits, flowers and roots thriving in water as well as on land, various species of rice fit for the use of the Rishis, abounded on that mountain —43-44

King! There is no such grain, grass, pot-herb, fruit, berry, and herb that did not thrive on that mountain —45

The varieties of berries and fruits, grown in the world of the serpents, in the world of men, and the products of water and of forest, all flourished on that mountain —46

The King of Madra, Pururavâ, by virtue of his asceticism, thus saw all those fruits and flowers of the season there —47

He also saw the following birds and animals living there —The peacock, the wood-pecker, the sparrow, the cuckoo, the goose, the swan, the lapwing, the wagtail, the osprey, the Kâlakûta, the civet cat, the gokṣavaidaka, the kumbha, the parrot, the crane, the Dhâtuka, the ruddy-goose, the Katuka, the Titibba, the Bhata, the Putra-priya, the heron, the Gocharma, the Gîrivartaka, the pigeon, the Kamala, the Sârikâ, the Chikora, the quail, the duck, the Raktavartina, the Prabhadraka, the cock, the blue jay, the fowl, the Kumkumchurâka, the large bee, the porpoise, the Bhulinga, the Dindima, the crow, the gallinule, the Dâtyâha, the sky lark, the bees, and several other birds, etc —48-54

The king also beheld the following wild beasts —The dog, the deer, the leopard, the lion, the tiger, the elephant, the rhinoceros, the wolf, the bear, the ape, the monkey, the rabbit, the agile cat, the buffalo, the cow, the bull, the Chamara, the Sriwaia (a species of deer), the white mule, the Urabha, the ram, the antelope, the blue ox, the doe, the dambara, the wild boar, the horse, the ass, the donkey. Besides them, he also saw the beasts, which are naturally hostile to one another, living in mutual friendship. He was very much amazed to see this. Sometime ago, the sage Atri had his hermitage there —55-61

On account of the glory of that sage, the place was full of plants, and animals which, though naturally hostile, did not exercise hostility to one another—men and Rakshasas —62

There all carnivorous beasts lived on fruits and milk. In such ways their character was built up by the influence of the Great sage Atri.—63.

King Pururavâ himself passed several days on the slopes of those mountains, where cow-buffaloes and she-goats gave out milk, and where even the thorns had the flavour of ambrosia. Everywhere, O king, the rocks are full of streams of milk and curds.—64-65.

The King Puruavā was charmed to see that mountain There also he saw the beautiful rivers and streams —66

There were hot and cold water springs and cosy caves at every turn, worth being made use of —67

Snow did not fall within a radius of (five yojanas), and valleys were not visible near the peaks, for the thick clouds incessantly pour forth perpetual snows there —68-69

Close to it, on a different peak, thick clouds pour out diurnal showers of rain Its rocks are extremely beautiful The land of this enchanting hermitage (of Atri), was the giver of all desires and the trees of which place bore fruits successfully, for they were worthy of being eaten by the Devas —70-71

That mount is, indeed, the dispeller of all sins, and is adorned by the Devānganas and the buzzing bees —72

The spot shines white, like the rays of the moon, on account of heaps of ungathered ice , while, here and there, the frolicsome herd of the white monkeys played about —73

The hermitage of Atī is almost impassable to a human being, owing to the pile of snows and inaccessible mountains surrounding it —74

The King Puruavā, by virtue of his devotion and by the grace of God, reached the sacred hermitage —75

That Lord of Madra saw that exquisitely enchanting, blessed hermitage, which is beautified with hundreds of flowers, and which removes all fatigue, and which was built by Maharsi Atri himself —76

*Here ends the one hundred and eighteenth chapter describing the Hermitage (of Atri)*

### CHAPTER CXIX

Sūta said —There were two great snowclad peaks, shining with variegated colours, and in their midst was a huge summit, covered with perpetual snows, never warmed (by the sun's rays) and where there is no cloud Below on the west are trees also —1-2

The king entered the hermitage, his curiosity awakened on seeing a picturesque cave encircled by creepers —3

About 400 cubits (palva) of that cave was enveloped in darkness, and further off, it was full of light of its own, where there was a dome-like round place, very high and sombre The sun and the moon did not shine there —4-5

It was bright like the day time, all night and day (probably owing to the presence of radium there) and there was a beautiful lake, more than 2 miles in length —6

On all the four sides of the lake, there were charming rock beds, full of trees of gold and silver and coral (colour) —7

The flowers and leaves were glowing gems, and it was full of lotuses whose petals were of ruby, whose anthers were diamond, and endowed with sweet scents, whose leaves were of emeralds, sapphires and lapis-lazuli, and whose pericarps were of gold. Not only was the bed of the lake of diamond, but it was full of various gems. There were to be found shells (cowries, oysters and conches), terrible crocodiles, fishes and tortoises. There were to be found pieces of emerald slabs, thousands of diamonds, rubies, sapphires, topazes, karkotakas, pieces of Tuthaka stone (copper sulphate), pieces of ivory, diamonds of the first water as well as of inferior kind, yellow stone, Sūryakāntimani, Chandrakāntimani, Syamantaka, Surdra golaksha, crystal, Gomeda, Dhūlumarakata, Pittaka, lapis lazuli, Saugandhika (a kind of ruby), Rājamani, Brahmamani, Mukhyamani, and starry pearls of various kinds —8-18

Its water is also lukewarm, and removes all feelings of cold. The site of the lake, in the midst of lapis lazuli stone (Vaidūryamani), looked beautiful indeed —19

It is a beautiful square piece of land, measuring 800 cubits (200 Dhava), and has been formed by the asceticism of the sage Atri —20

King! The entire locality was full of gold (or looked like gold), as the entrance cave was. There was a certain place in that beautiful region, where, below the rock, flows a lovely pond of cool water adorned with lotus flowers —21-22

This pond, O King, was in shape a beautiful square and resembling the sky in clearness, the water of which is most delicious, cold and perfumed —23

Without injuring the throat and without overfilling the stomach (or belly), it gives pleasure to mind and body —24

In the centre of the pond, the sage Atri, by virtue of his austerities, has built a palace, which can be reached by a golden bridge, studded with precious stones —25

The palace was of silver, white like the rays of the moon, its stairs are of beautiful Vaidūryamani (lapis lazuli), its pillars of the coral and sapphire, its altars (or quadrangles) are studded with emeralds Markatamanī. The reflection of the diamonds made it very beautiful and pleasant to the sight. In this (enchanting) palace, the Lord of all, the serene

Janârdana, decorated with every ornament, reposed in the midst, all the luxuries of the luxurious, with one of his knees drawn up and the foot placed on the King of Serpents, the other (foot) resting on the lap of Lakshmi (the Goddess of wealth). While thus sleeping on the coils of Sesha, the Lord had one of His hands, adorned with bracelets, on the hood of the Snake, another, stretched out, supported His sacred head (laid) on the back of his fingers, the third one resting on the knee-cap of the half raised leg, touched his navel. Now hear how the fourth hand was placed. It held a celestial (santana) flower and was raising to the nose —26-33

(The graceful Deity of happiness)— Lakshmi—is devotedly shampooing Her Lord of the Universe in His Serene repose with Her lotus hands. He was adorned with the garland of santana (kalpa) flowers, and with necklace, bracelets, rings, &c (Hara, Keyura, Angada, Angulaka), while His head, glittering with the decorations of precious stones, rested on the hood of Sesha —34-35

King Pururavâ went in front of the God, and made his salutation to the One, who was of mysterious character, consecrated there by Atri, worshipped by the seers, adored by the ascetics, always offered the Kalpa santana flowers, covered with divine sandals, offered the incense, his right side covered with the best sappy fruits, offered by the anchorites (Siddhas) and having a bed of lotus flowers for His pillow —36-38

The king saluted the Sacred One with his knees and head touching the ground, and pleased the Lord by his recitations of the hymns in His praises, containing his thousand names, and repeatedly circumambulated Him. He rested a little in that hermitage. Then, taking his residence in a beautiful cavern, outside the entrance to the cave, commenced his austerities and worship of Madhusûdana —39-41

The king, in process of time, gave up every kind of food, engaging himself only in the worship of Fire to whom he offered various kinds of fruits, flowers, incense roots and cow's milk, after bathing thrice a day and sustaining himself on the water of the pond —42-43

He slept, without any bedding, on the bare floor in the cavern, and lived only on water, having discarded all the eatables —44

The king did not experience any ailment in course of that period of life and most marvellously carried on his devotion of Viñu by residing in that hermitage for sometime —45

*Here ends the One hundred and nineteenth chapter describing the  
Himalayan cave (Ayatana )*

## CHAPTER CXX

Sûta said --Then that king, giving up all food and the use of raiments, saw the pastimes of the Gandharvas and the nymphs (apsarâs) —1

He, after offering the garlands made of various flowers to Viśnu, presented them to the Gandharvas, and he saw, but did not take any notice of the pastimes of, the nymphs (apsarâs), while gathering flowers in the gladness of the heart —3-4

Some of the nymphs, while gathering flowers, became entangled in the creepers and were forsaken and left behind by their companions and lords —4

Some of them, exhaling lotus-scent, had their faces surrounded by the buzzing black bees and were freed of them by their lovers, while others had their eyes moistened with the juice of flowers which was removed by the breath of their lords —5-6

Some offered the heap of flowers collected by them to their husbands, and some decorated their hair with the garlands of flowers woven by their lords —7

Some apsarâs (the very sight of whom produces love in men) collected the flowers and wove garlands of them, and then by their lords had their tresses of hair decorated with them, and considered themselves very fortunate —8

Some were called away by their lords to dabble into amorous pastimes with them, to a solitary bower, full of beautiful flowers —9

Some culled the flowers out of the branch bent by their lords and looked upon themselves exceedingly fortunate and happy —10

Some, while enjoying the company of their lords, undisturbed in the grove of lotuses, cast sidelong glances towards the King Pururavâ —11

Some of the nymphs overpowered their lords by sprinkling water on them, and then became pleased when they, in their turn, were overcome by their lords —12

When the maidens ran down, their lords became sad, and it was seen that as they heaved sighs, their breasts rose and fell —13

Some looked as handsome as the lotus surrounded by black bees, as their tresses of long hair streamed on their faces after being loosened by their lords in course of the pastime —14

Some of them became concealed in the lotus groves that resembled their eyes, and were found out by their lords after a long search —15

Some kept their lords in a close embrace for a long time, on the pretext of feeling cold after their bath —16.

Some, of an enchanting smile, thrilled the observer (lord) with amorous feeling by wearing the finest wet garment on her person —17

Some apsara was laughing at her lord, who fell down into the water as the garland was torn which he was pulling —18.

With their knees having been scratched by their companions, some bent low and modestly took shelter for a long time in the company of their lords —19

Some began to dry her wet hair by turning her back on the sun and was seen from a rock by her lord with eyes full of love and desire —20.

At that time the lake with its water full of garlands of the nymphs fallen in it and mixed with the saffron washed out of their breasts, looked beautiful like a maiden after amorous enjoyment with her lover —21

Pururavā saw the group of Devas, Gandharvas and the consorts of the Devas worshipping Viṣṇu after their bath —22

He also saw some of the nymphs sitting in the bowers of the creepers and dressing and decorating themselves, their minds being engrossed with (the thoughts of) their lords —23

Some while looking at the mirror heard the news of their lords through their maids with rapt attention —24

Some at the hint of the maid began to put on their ornaments hurriedly without being conscious that they put them wrongly, their mind was so engrossed with passionate desire —25

Pururavā also saw some of the nymphs sitting on the blue grass amidst nicely smelling flowers and drinking wine there, some of these beautiful nymphs made their lovers drink from their own hands, while others drank the wine offered by their lords —26-27

Some whilst drinking water saw the reflection of her lotus eyes in it and afterwards began to enquire from her lord where her two lotuses disappeared, and on being told by him that they were undoubtedly drunk by herself became bashful as she realised with pleasure his meaning —28-29

Some of them (with beautiful eyebrows) drank with great relish the desire producing wine offered by their lords after they had drank of them —30

The king also heard in that drinking place the songs of the nymphs with stringed accompaniments —31

Those nymphs, O King, dance on music before Lord Viṣṇu in the evenings —32.

And as the night advanced they coming out of that cave began to retire into their beautiful caves where they pass the night in the pleasant company of their husbands, reclining on the plushy mattresses strewn with various kinds of sweet flowers and decorated with lovely sweet scented creepers —33-34.

King Pururavā thus saw all the pastimes of those nymphs on that mountain, went on with his devotion, his mind firmly fixed on Viṣṇu.—35

The train of the Gandharvas in company of their consorts went to the king, and said —“King! You have come to this region resembling the heaven, we shall grant you the boons of your desire after which it would be left to your pleasure either to stay here or to go back to your country”—36-37

The King Pururavā said —“All of you have superhuman powers, your presence is never in vain I therefore beseech you to give me the boon that I may please Viṣṇu”—38

They all unanimously gave the desired boon and the king stayed there for another month, worshipping Janārdana in a happy mind —39

He became a great favourite of the Gandharvas and their consorts, who were pleased with his firm devotion (to Viṣṇu) —40

After a month, that king entered a lovely hermitage, decorated with innumerable gems, where he lived on water alone till the end of the bright fortnight in the month of Phālguna, when he heard the following words of Viṣṇu in a dream —“At the close of the night you will find the Sage Attri, in whose company you will get your desire”—41-43

That king, powerful as Indra, having thus dreamt, got up early in the morning and with his senses under control, had his bath, and having performed daily duties worshipped Janārdana, after which he came across the great sage Attri —44-45

He then told him of his dream and heard the following words of the Devas —46

“King! It is just what it should be, there is not the least doubt about it” Thus getting the boons of his desire from Lord Viṣṇu, he worshipped the Lord and poured his oblations in the Fire and attained his object —47-48

*Here ends the One hundred and twentieth chapter dealing with the description of Aila hermitage*

---

## CHAPTER CXXI

Sūta said —To the north of that hermitage, on the back of the Hūmālāya, in the centre, stands the Mount Kailāsa the residence of Śiva which is full of Kalpa trees and the peaks of which are studded with gems Kuvera also resides there with his Guhyakas —1-2

*Note* —Guhyaka = A class of demigods who are the attendants of Kuvera and the guardians of his untold treasures.

Kuvera the Lord of Alakāpuri enjoys the company of the nymphs there Here is a lake shining like the Devas and is covered with the aroma of Mandāra flowers, and watered by the cold and sweet springs of Kailāsa From this source runs the sacred Mandākīni On it stands the picturesque Nandana forest of vast dimensions To the N E of Kailāsa is the Chandrapriyabhā Mountain shining like gems and full of metal ores and thickets of sweet smelling flowers —3-6

The famous Achhoda lake is situated near it from which flows the sacred river Achchhodā on whose banks is the Chaitraratha forest Manibhadra resides on that mountain with his attendants —7-8

Manibhadra is the formidable general of the army of the Yaksas and is always followed by his retinue of Guhyakas The sacred Mandākīni as well as the Achchhoda flowing through the earthly plains enters the sea Towards the S E of the Kailāsa is the Sarvauṣadhi (full of every kind of herbs) Mount of red arsenic (manahśilā) facing the Chandraprabhā Mountain The Mountain Hemaśringa (near it) shines red like the sun, below which there is a large lake of red water out of which comes a big river called the Lauhitya on the banks of which is the great heavenly forest known as Viṣoka Manidhara Yaksā resides there —9-13

*Note* —Lauhitya = The Brahmaputra

He remains with his well-behaved and pious attendants To the N W of Kailāsa is the Mount Kakudmān where the herbs are plentiful (so called) because of the birth of the great bull of Rudra there In front of this Trikakuda Mount is the mount of Añjana of three peaks —14-15

There is the Mount Vaidyuta, full of all kinds of ores, below which is the most lovely Mānasarovara lake which is resorted to by the siddhus. The sacred Sarayū runs from that lake and purifies the people On its bank is the Vaibhīṣaṇa forest —16-17

In that forest resides the most valiant demon (Raksas), Brahma-dhāta, the attendant of Kuvera and the son of Prehita —18.

The Aruna Mountain to the West of Kailâsa is the most important one. It is full of efficacious herbs and gold and shines red —19

Mount Srimân, of golden colour, is the favourite of Sîva and is covered with lines of gold quartz —20

Next comes the great inaccessible Sringavîn (full of peaks) Mount Hundreds of its lofty golden peaks touch the sky. It is the abode of Dhûmrâlochana lord of the mountain and below it is the lake Sailoda.—21-22.

Out of which flows the sacred river Sailodakâ which is also known as Chakravati and flowing between these two mountains falls into the Western Sea —23

To the North of Kailâsa is the blessed Mount Sarvâusadha near which is a majestic snow clad mountain full of yellow orpiment (Haritâla) —24

There is a mountain with golden peaks teeming with herbs below which is the lake of golden (coloured) sand and known as beautiful Bindu lake Here King Bhagiratha remained for a long time for the advent of the Ganges —25-26

He said —“ May my ancestors attain heaven, their bones being drenched with the Ganges water ” The Ganges which goes three ways made her first appearance on that very spot —27

The Ganges coming out of Somapâda divided Herself into seven streams There are sacrificial posts (yûpa) of precious stones and vimânas (heavenly cars) of gold —28

Indra attained bliss by performing sacrifices on that spot along with the Devas Here is the milky way of heaven, the centre of the starry nebulae The Ganges appears to shed splendid lustre there at night She has descended on the earth, having purified the Heaven and sky (Antariksha) —29-30

She first descended on the head of the mighty Lord Sîva, Who curbed Her force by His glory Her waters falling on the Earth, owing to Sîva's anger, formed the Bindu lake When she was thus suddenly stopped by Sîva, she became angry as she understood his unkind motive and made an attempt to force Herself into the lower regions, having engulfed Sîva in her tumultuous current —31-33

Realising this proud attitude of the Ganges, the Lord thought of absorbing Her within Himself —34 .

But, at the same moment, He perceived King Bhagiratha standing in front of Him He appeared lean, his veins becoming visible, troubled and hungry —35

The Lord then remembered that the king had first pleased Him by his austerities to get the sacred river—Ganges—which boon He had already granted to him He therefore suppressed His wrath —36

Moreover, as He was absorbing the sacred stream, He heard the entreaties of Brahma He, therefore, freed the current from His hold.—37.

Being pleased with the devotion of Bhagiratha, the Lord, for his sake, let the river loose into seven branches, three of which went to the East, three to the West (and one near Himself), thus the three-wayed Ganges become flowed in seven streams—38-39

Nalini, Hladini and Pavani flow in the East, Sita, Sindhu and Chaksu in the West, and the seventh followed the King Bhagiratha to the South Hence the name Bhagirathi which falls into the Dakṣina Samudra (southern waters) washing the Himavarta Seven holy rivers trace their origin from the Bindu Sarovara —40-42

Those seven rivers having pierced through the Himalayas fall into the Dakṣina Samudra (southern waters) after flowing through the Mleccha countries of the mountains, viz., Kukur, Randhra, Barbara, Yavana, Khasa Pulika, Kulattha and Angalokya —43-44

*Note*—Kukur=Darāha

Khasa or Khasa=A mountainous country in the North of India

The Chakṣu stream of the Ganges before entering the sea waters the following countries—Vira (China?), Maru, Kūlīka, Sulīka, (Chulaka?), Tuṣāra, Barbara, Pahlava, Pārada, and Saka, while Darada, Urja, Guda, Gandhāra, Aśrasa, Kuhū, Śivapaura, Indramaru, Vasati, Samtaijā, Sindha, Urvaśa, Barva, Kulatha, Bhūnaramaka, Śunāmukha, and Urdhamai form the basin of the Sindhu stream The abodes of the Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Yakṣas, the Rākṣasas, Vidyādhara, Saṅgas, the countries of Kimpuruṣa Naras, Kiratas, and Pulindas, Kuru, (Bhārava), Pañchālas, Kauśikas, Matsya, Māgadha, Anga, Brahmostara, Banga (Bengal) and Tāmralipta, these Aryan janapadas are watered by the sacred Ganges, which striking against the Vindhya Hills falls in the Southern Waters —45-51.

The Hladini Ganges runs eastward into the sea after passing through the following countries—the countries of Upaka, Nisadha, Dhivara, Riṣika, Nilamukha, Kekara, Ekakarṇa, Kirāta, Kālanjara, Vikarna, Kuśika and Svargabhaumaka —52-54

The Nalini stream, too, runs to the east to the sea through the following countries—Kupatha, Indradyumna Sarovara, Kharpatha, Ketra Saukupatha, Ujjānaka, Maru, Kutha, Pravārana —55-57

The swift running Pavani Ganges passes eastward through Tomara, Hansamārga, Samābhaka, various mountains and other eastern countries;

and then through Kāraṇa, Pravāraṇa, Asvamukha, Sumeru Mountain, the land of the Vydyādharas, whence the mighty stream has entered the Saṁśimandala Koṣṭha a big lake —58-59

Thousands of tributaries and rivulets spring from the main streams  
The God of rain—Indra—draws out His store of rainwater from there —60

The Surabhi forest stands on the banks of the river Vanśankasāra  
There resides Hiranyakṣiṅga the most powerful and learned follower of  
Kuvera who has been forbidden to take any part in the sacrifices. Sur-  
rounded by the learned (progeny of Attri) and the Brāhmaṇarakṣasas, the  
four attendants of Kuvera reside there. The residents of the hills and  
the mountains attain double powers (by practice, as compared to other  
folks) —6-164

At the back of the Hemakūta is the lake of the snakes (sarpa) out of  
which flow the two rivers, Sarasiṇati and Jyotiṣmati falling to the eastern  
and western seas respectively —65

A little further on is the lake Viṣṇupada on the Nisadha Mount Both  
these lakes (Nāya and Viṣṇupada) are the favourite resorts of the Gandhar-  
vas —66

The lake Chandraprabha and the sacred Jambū river,—the bed of  
Jamvanada gold, have their source in the Sumeru Mount. The two blue  
water lakes, the Payōda and the sacred Pundarika, are the mothers of two  
sister lakes one of which is called the Uttara Minasa from which the rivers  
Mrigya and Mrigakānta trace their origin. In the Kuru country there are  
twelve lakes under the name of Vaijaya that are full of lotus beds and fish,  
&c. They are all like the ocean (in extent?) The rivers Śanti and  
Mādhvi spring from them. There is no rainfall in the eight lakes  
Kīmpuruṣa, &c. They are full of water and (aquatic) vegetables —67-72

The Mounts Valāhaka, Rishabha, Chakra, Maināka pervading in all  
directions merge into the sea —73

The Mounts Chandrakānta, Drona and Sumahān are spreading in  
the North till they have merged into the Great Northern ocean —74

The Mounts Chakra, Vadhirkā and Nāśa spread in the West till  
they have also merged into the Great Western Ocean —75

The Mounts Jimūta, Diāvana, Maināka and Chandra are spreading  
towards the South till they have submerged in the Dakshīna Samudra —76

Between the Mounts Chakra and Maināka in the southern portion of  
the heaven is the Samvartaka Agni (volcanic mountain) which drinks the  
water of the seas. The Agni (volcanic) mountains Aurva, Baṇavā mukha  
too are submerged into the Lavana Samudra. These four mountains merged  
into the ocean (for safety) when Indra began to destroy their wings

(by His thunderbolt) and they are still visible on particular days in the bright and dark fortnights —77 79.

The divisions of the Bhāratavarṣa are thus described Those named within the limits of Bhāratavarsa are visible there and the rest are described elsewhere —80

The more northern (one of those mountains) the region, the better it is. The people residing there are healthy, pious, longlived and possessed of the sterling qualities (Dharma, Artha, Kāma, &c.) Various classes of people live in those khandas. The universe thus holding the various regions on her is known as Prithvī or Jagat (Earth) —81-82

*Here ends the one hundred and twenty-first chapter describing  
the Jambūdvīpa*

## CHAPTER CXXII

Sūta Said -- Now hear from me, O, holy twice born ! the description of Śākadvīpa. Its width is twice that of the Jambudvīpa, while its perimeter is thrice its breadth. The Kṣāra Samudra is surrounded by this Dvīpa. It has many sacred janapadas and the people live for a long number of years. The people are full of power and forbearance. How can there be any famine then. There are seven white mountains full of precious stones. Other three Dvīpas have each seven mountains. These Ratnākara mounts are broad, extend in all directions and have most lofty peaks. All the mountains maintain a sort of uniform length in each direction. Śākadvīpa has Kṣāra Samudra and Khira Samudra on its either sides respectively. Now I shall tell you something about the seven mountains of Śākadvīpa —1-7

The first of them is the Mount Meru inhabited by the Devarṣis and the Gandharvas. It stretches out long in the East and has a mine of gold and is called the Udaya Mountain there. Clouds gather there to give rain and then disappear. Parallel to it stands the Mount Jaladhāra which is described like the moon and is full of various kinds of herb and the God of rain draws out his store of rain from it in plenty —8-10

Further to it is the inaccessible Nārada Mountain where were in ancient times the two hills of Nārada and Parvata —11

Beyond it is the Mount Syāma the inhabitants of which were dark in complexion —12

(Not far from it) is the Dundubhi Mountain similar to Syāma Mountain and here the Devas first placed a Dundubhi (drum), whose sound brought about death —13

The mighty Mount Sahnala is full of precious stones and near it is the big mountain of silver which is known as Somaka, on account of the Devas first drinking the draught of ambrosia there It was there where Garuda stole the nectar for his mother —14-15

Adjacent to it stands the Mount Ambikeya, also known as Sumanā, where the demon Hiranyakṣa was killed by the Lord Varāha Near it stands the Crystal Mountain, Vibhrāja, which is full of herbs and gems. It is a volcano, that is why it is called Vibhrāja (fire agitator), it is also called Keśava The wind there is very strong —16-18

I shall now name the mountains with the divisions, O, holy twice borns ! and hear it attentively —19

Those khandas have double names like the mountains The mountain as well as Varsa of Udaya is known as Udaya and Jaladhāra —20

Udayakhanḍa is called the Gatabhayakhanḍa and the Jaladhara khanḍa is known as the Sukumāra —21

That is called the (Sāmīra) Sitala khanḍa, and Kaumārakhanda is in the Nārada Mountain which is also known as Sukhodaya —22

Anīchaka is the name of the khanḍa on which is the Śyāma Mountain which has also been called the Ānandaka by the sages —23

Kusumotakara is the khanḍa on which lies the Somaka Mountain which is also known as Asrita —24

Mainaka is the khanḍa of the Mount Ambikeya It is also called Kṣemaka The khanḍa of the Vibhrāja Mountain is called Dhruva as well as Vibhrāja —25

Of the same dimensions as Jambudvīpa is the huge Śaka tree in the centre of the Dvīpa itself, frequented by the people Those regions were frequented by the Devas, the Gandharvas, the Bards (chāranas), and the Siddhas (anchorites), who freely enjoy the beauty of the place It contains many janapadas peopled by the four varṇas —26-28

There are seven rivers in each one of these mountains which fall into the sea and each one has a duplicate name, of which the Ganges is an exception, being sevenfold —29

First one is the Sukumāri Ganges whose waters are clear and blessed It is also called the Munitaptā —30

The second one is called the Sukumāri-Tapsidhbā and Sati, the third one is the Nanda which is also known as Pāvani —31

The fourth one is called the Śibika and Dvividhbā, the fifth one is known as Ikṣu and Kuhū —32

The sixth one is known as Venukā and Amritā and the seventh one is called the Sukritā and Gabhasti —33

Of the above-mentioned seven rivers one flows in each sub-division of the Śākadvīpa, and they all purify the people of those regions with their sacred waters —34

There are myriads of other rivers, and rivulets as well as lakes, formed by copious supply of rain water let fall by Vāsava (Indra) into these —35

It is very difficult to enumerate and give proper measurements of all those rivers and rivulets. They are all sacred. The people of the janapadas who drink their waters get happiness. Śāntabhaya, Pramāda, Śiva, Ānanda, Sukha, Kṣemaka, and Nava, such are the seven janapadas situated there, where all the rules and customs (Āchāra) of Varna and Ācāra are observed —36-38

The people are healthy, robust, and free from the clutches of death, neither are they prone to growth and decay. There the four ages do not prevail in succession. The age of Tretā is eternal there —39-40

Almost similar is the condition of age in the other five Dvīpas, regard being had to the superiority and otherwise of the khandas. There is no confusion in the varnas there, and the people of that place are happy, as they seldom deviate from the path of virtue. There are no such things as fraud, greed, jealousy, fear and malicious fault finding. The country is free from vices and is truly natural. There is none to inflict punishment there, nor on whom punishment should be inflicted. The people being virtuous, get mutual protection from their own virtuous deeds.—41-44

### *Kuśa Dvīpa*

The Kuśadvīpa is very great in circumference. It is full of rivers, lakes, and snowclad mountains, in which are to be found various kinds of minerals, gems, trees and countries (janapadas) —45-46

The flowers, fruits, various varieties of trees, grains and wealth are in plenty there. The trees are always full of flowers and fruits gems of every kind are there —47

It is also full of domestic and wild animals. Now, hear, by degrees, a brief description of the Kuśa Dvīpa. I am going to give you an entire description of the third Varsa,—Kuśa Dvīpa. It is surrounded on all sides by the Kṣirasamudra —49

It is double, in its dimensions, of Śākadvīpa and there are seven mountains containing various kinds of precious stones —50

The number of rivers—the home of innumerable gems,—is also seven and the mountains have double names as in Śākadvīpa, one —51

The first is the Mount Kumuda, shining like the Sun and is also called the Vîdrumochchaya —52

The second mountain, containing all the metals and rocky peaks, is known as the Unnata or Hema and is covered with the yellow ornament. The third is the Valâhaka or the Dyutumân, full of black pigment or antimony —53-55

The fourth is the Drona Mountain, also known as the Puspavân, on the summit of which there are medicinal herbs efficacious in curing the wounds caused by the arrows (Vidalyakarâni), as well as the herbs that give new life (Mritasanjivani). The fifth one is the Kanka or the Kudamaya Mountain. It is also full of choice herbs, fruits, flowers and creepers —56-58

The sixth one is the Mahîsa or the Hari. It is black like the clouds; and Mahîsa Agni (volcano?) begotten from the water (rising from the sea?) lives there (in the form of fire). And the seventh one is the Kukudmâna also known as the Mandâra. It is full of all kinds of minerals and precious stones, guarded by Indra Himself. The root 'manda' means water and since it scatters water, it is called Mandâra, in company of Bishma, for the good of the people. The internal dimensions of these mountains are double —60-63

These are the seven mountains of Kuśadvipa and now their subdivisions will be enumerated —64

Svetadvipa is the name of the region where lies the Kumuda Mountain. It is also known as Unnata. The second one is the Lohitabhandâ also called the Venumandala, where lies the Unnata Mountain. Jimûta or Svairathâkâra is the khanda of the Valâhvaka Mountain. Harika or Lavana is the khanda of the Drona Mountain. Kakuda or Dhritimat is the khanda of the Kanka Mountain —65-67

Mahiâ or Prabhâkara is the khanda of the Mahîsa Mountain and Kakkudmâna or Kapila is the khanda of the Mountain Kakudmân —68

Thus in every dvipa there are seven khandas with an equal number of rivers and mountains —69

There are seven rivers in each khanda. Their waters are pure and sacred and each one has a duplicate name. The first one is Dhûtappâ which is also known as Yoni. Sitâ or Nîla is the second. The third one is Pavitrâ also called Vîtriñâ. The fourth one is Hlâdini or Chandramâ. The fifth one is Vidyuta or Suklâ, the sixth one is Pundrâ or Vibhavast. The seventh one is Mahati also called Dhriti. There are thousands of their branches that run where Indra pours down rains. Thus I have described the Kusa Dvipa. Its measurement has been described while

describing the measurement of Śakadvīpa It is surrounded by the Ghritā Manda Samudra —70-76

This huge dvīpa, thus surrounded, looks like the moon and is twice as great as the Kṣīra Samudra in its magnitude —77

### *Krauñcha Dvīpa*

Now I shall speak of the Krauñchadvīpa which is double the size of Kuśadvīpa —78

It surrounds the Ghritoda sea like the tyre of a wheel —79

The people of this Dvīpa are of a superior class Devana is the first mountain beyond which stands the Govinda —80.

Further on, from Govinda is the beautiful Krauncha Mountain, after which is the Pāvanaka and beyond it is the Andhakāraka —81

Next to Andhakāraka is the Devavrīta Mountain, after which comes the mighty Pundarīka All these seven mountains of the Krauñcha Dvīpa are full of gems, each being twice the size of that preceding it —82-83

The sub-divisions of that dvīpa are, viz—Kuśala, Manonuga Vāmana, Usna, Pāvanaka, Andhakāraka, Munidesa and Dundubhīsvana —84-86

Dundubhīsvana Khanda is full of fair complexioned men, and peopled by holy persons, and siddhas and chāranas There is a sacred river in each khaṇda —87

They are —Gaurī, Kumudvatī, Sandhyā, Rātri, Manojavā, Khyāti, Pundarīkā They are known as the seven Ganges —88

Thousands of rivers arising out of them flow close by All of them are very deep Nobody, even in course of centuries, would be able to describe fully all the countries through which these rivers pass, with the rise, growth and decay of the people inhabiting them —89-90

I shall now describe to you the Sālmaladvīpa, which is double the size of Krauñcha, and is surrounded by the Dadhi Ocean —91-92

### *Sālmala Dvīpa*

The people residing in the sacred janapadas of that region are very long-lived There are no visitations of famine there, and the inhabitants of that place are very forbearing, merciful, and illustrious —93

The following are the mountains of that region —The Sumanā, shining like the sun, and of yellow colour Kumbhamaya, the central one is also called Sarvasukha It is full of herbs The third is the great Rohita, of red hue (like that of Bhringa patra) and full of gold The Kuśala is the Varṣa of the Sumanā Mountain, while Sukhōdaya is that of Kumbhamaya

and Röhine of the Röhita Mountain, the precious stones of which are under the direct watch and ward of Indra, who, with Prajāpati, gladly performs his duty there. Clouds do not rain there, there is neither summer nor winter. There is no prevalence of the Varna or Āśrama in those regions. No stars, planets or the moon shine there, nor is there any such thing as jealousy, hatred or fear —93-99.

There are fountains in the mountains, other sources of water, as well as the vegetable world. The people of this region obtain the best victuals of all the six flavours, without making any efforts on their part —100

The people there are all of equal rank, neither high nor low, they are not greedy, nor do they store things. They are all healthy, powerful and happy, attaining all siddhis of the mind, for a period of 30,000 years. The next three Dvīpas enjoy the same happiness, life, beauty, virtue and prosperity. Thus I have described all the sacred Dvīpas up to Salmala (*i.e.*, five). The Salmaladvīpa is encircled by the Suīa Ocean, which is twice its size —101-104

*Here ends the one hundred and twenty second chapter describing the Dvīpas (of Śāka, Kusa, Krauñcha and Śalmala )*

### CHAPTER CXXIII

#### *Gomedā Dvīpa*

Sūta said —Riśis! Now hear about the sixth dvīpa, known as the Gomedā. It surrounds the Surodaka Ocean. Its size is double that of the Salmaladvīpa. It has two beautiful mountains —1-2

The first one is Saumana, full of antimony (Āñjana), and the second one is the Kamada, full of all kinds of herbs. It is very lofty and full of gold. The Gomedadvīpa is surrounded by the sixth ocean, Ikṣurasoda, which is double the size of the Suroda Ocean. The Mountains Dhātaki (or Sumanā) and Kumuda are the sons of Havya. They are of vast dimensions. The first sub-division is Saumana, also known as Dhātaki Khanda, after Dhātaki, the first mountain. Gomedā Khanda is also called Sarvasukha. The Khanda of the Kumuda Mountain is called under the same name—Kumudā —3-7

Both the mountains are round in shape, spreading from one end to the other, and are very lofty. To the east of the dvīpa, stands the Mount Sumanā, while Mount Kumuda is on the west; both extending to the sea by means of offshoots, stretching from the east to the west. —8-9.

That region is divided into two parts by the feet of these mountains. Half of the southern portion is known as the Dhātakī Khanda, while the northern half is called the Kumuda Khanda. Both these countries (janapadas) belong to the Gomedadvipa, and they are of gigantic dimensions --10-11.

*Puṣkara Dvīpa*

I shall now speak of the seventh dvīpa, the Great Puskara, which surrounds the Iksurasoda Sea, which is double of Gomeda. It is itself surrounded by the Puṣkaras (lakes or lotuses?) Chitrāśanu is the chief mountain, and it is full of lotuses and adorned with the rocks of wonderful gems. The Mount Chitrāśanu stands on the eastern half. Its circumference is 27,000 yojanas, and height is 24,000 yojanas. The western half is covered by the Mānasa Mountain, which looks like a full moon rising near the sea coast. Its height is 5,500 yojanas. The Mount Mahāvita is its son which guards the western portion of this region. The half of the region lying east of this mountain is divided into two parts. The Puskaradvīpa is surrounded by the sea, the water of which is tasteful. Its dimensions are double of the Gomedadvīpa. The people of this dvīpa live up to 30,000 years. There are no exceptional changes there to this natural rule and the people are healthy, happy and have attained perfection in all the qualities of the mind. The people of the three superior dvīpas are all equal in happiness, life, beauty and bravery. There is no air of superiority or inferiority in them. Besides this, there is none to kill or be killed there, and there is a total absence of hatred, envy, fear, greed, pride, hypocrisy, enmity, &c. They are free from the differentiation of truth and untruth, virtue and vice. The order of Varna and Āśrama, the practice of rearing up domestic animals, trade, husbandry are also not in existence there.—12-23

The three kinds of knowledge, criminal laws and punishments are also not known there. It does not rain there, neither there are rivers in that region. The climate is also not influenced by heat or cold. The water supply and plant life of the country depends on the hill waterfalls. The seasons are the same as in Uttara Kuru. Happiness pervades all round. The troubles of old age are also unknown there. Such is the life in the Dhātakī and Mahāvita Khandas —24-26

Thus the seven dvīpas are surrounded by the seven oceans. The dimensions of a dvīpa tally with the dimensions of the sea preceding it (*i.e.*, surrounded by it). Both the dvīpas and the oceans have thus gradually grown in magnitude, a vast store of waters being called the ocean.—27-28.

The root 'Risi' means to wander about in happiness, hence in these Varsas all the four classes of people live happily —29

*The Tides*

When the moon rises in the East, the sea begins to swell. The sea becomes less when the moon wanes. When the sea swells, it does so with its own waters (and not with additional water), and when it subsides, its swelling is lost in its own water (and does not actually lose any water). On the rising of the moon, the sea increases as if its waters have really increased. During the bright and dark fortnights, the sea heaves at the waxing of the moon and becomes placid at the wane of it, but the store of the water remains the same. The sea rises and falls, according to the phases of the moon, and 150 angulās (three-fourths of inches, or  $11\frac{1}{4}$  inches) is the measure of its rise and fall, on the two parva days (*i.e.*, full moon and new moon days respectively). The place between two seas is called a dvipa. The sea is called Udadhi, on account of its containing water —30-34

The mountains are called Giri because they swallow (*i.e.*, hide everything Nigirna), and because they fill up (space), therefore they are called Parvata —35

The Mount Sāka is in Śākadvipa, and is named as such —36

Thus is Kusastamba in the midst of the janapada in Kusadvipa. The Mount Krauñcha stands in Krauñchadvipa, and is named after it —37

A gigantic Sālmali tree stands in Salmalidvipa and there is the Mount Gomeda in the dvipa of that name —38

There is a banyan tree in the shape of a lotus in Puṣkaradvipa. The banyan tree has sprung up from the potency of Brahmā, and is adored by all the Devas, but really its origin is hidden in mystery. Prajāpati Brahmā resides in Puṣkaradvipa in company of the Sādhyas. He is adored by the 33 Devas, along with the Brahmarṣis —39-40

Thus all the great Risiś and the Devas worship Brahmā there. Various kinds of jewels are produced in Jambūdvipa, and circulated therefrom to other dvipas. The people of these dvipas, in order of their precedence, excel one another twofold in simplicity, chastity, truthfulness, self-control, health, and long life. In all the sub-divisions of those dvipas the inhabitants are protected by their own natural learning. They all get their food without any care to obtain it —41-44

They eat the wholesome food, of the six flavours. Beyond Puṣkaradvipa is the sea of sweet water surrounding it, behind which is the

Mount Lokaloka, both dark and bright, and at some part it is lighted up, while the other part beyond it is full of darkness It takes up the outer half of the populated land and is surrounded on all sides by the sea.—45-48.

The water is ten times land and it protects the earth from all directions The fire is ten times water which is upheld by the former everywhere —49

The air is ten times fire which it holds It spreads itself at an angle in the space where it encircles and holds the beings —50

The Akâsa which is ten times the air, holds all beings , and ten times greater is Bhutâdi (Ahatkâra) which surrounds the Akâsa, and ten times the Bhutâdi is Mahâkâsa which stands holding them in turn, while it is itself held by the Unmanifested eternal The mahatattva, &c., are called vikâra and vikâri (producer of change and that in which the change is produced) in turn in relation to the support each gives and takes from the other —51-53

The Vikâras, such as earth, &c , are circumscribed and limited, and each is greater than one preceding it which it permeates each is produced from the other and is upheld by it They are held together by their mutual attraction They are really separate (molecules), but by mutual contact look welded into one homogenous whole —54-55

Of these, the elements, earth, water, fire and air, are well defined and limited The higher elements are only seen as lights —56

These lights, i.e., Akâsa and other elements, too, are well defined But, like smaller leaves which, though separate are not separately seen, being concealed in a larger vessel, these higher light-like elements, though separate and each supporting the other, are not visualized as such They too excel each other, in the order of their precedence The creation of the universe depends on their existence The origin of life is in these Taitvas , hence without them there can be no life and action —57-60

Thus we understand that these elements, Mahat, &c , partake of two-fold characters, viz , cause and effect —61

The position of the Earth and its circumference, with seven Dvîpas and their extent, circumference and other measurements have thus been described Such is the situation of only one part of the universal Pradhâna Tattva, O King ! this much is to be heard of the position, &c , of the Earth. I shall next tell you about the movements of the Sun and the Moon —62-65

*Here ends the one hundred and twenty third chapter dealing with the position of the seven Dvîpas in Bhuvanakosa.*

## CHAPTER CXXIV.

Sūta said —I shall now tell you, O Rishi! something about the movements of the sun and the moon and the area illuminated by these two moving bodies, viz. (the sun and the moon) This includes the space occupied by the seven dvipas and the seven oceans, comprising (at a time) the half of the Earth, as well as many parts of the universe outside the Earth —1-2.

The sun and the moon shed their lights on the circumference of the Earth. The learned believe the heaven to have a similar circumference. The sun ordinarily lifts up the three worlds in a moment. He is called Ravi, for giving instantaneous (=at once) light and thereby protecting (=protect) the creation.—3-4.

I shall again and again impress on you the vast magnitude of the sun and the moon. On account of the vastness of their magnitude, the expression mahat (Great) has been used in their connection. The circumference of the sun is equal to the diameter of the Bhāratavarṣa (?) It is 9,000 yojnas in diameter and three times as much in circumference —5-7

The moon is twice as much bigger in circumference and diameter than the sun (?) I shall now repeat the measurements in yōjanas of the terrestrial globe, comprising the seven dvipas and the seven oceans, as enumerated in the Purāṇas. I shall now speak of the Sampratas and the Abhimantis (?) The abhimant Devas of past ages are equal (in number ?) to the Sampratas, in form and name. Therefore I shall describe the surface of the Earth and the Samprata (present ?) Devas —8-11.

The Divyas are similar to the Sampratas in their entire distribution. The complete magnitude of the earth is 50 crore (yōjanas) —12

The half of the terrestrial globe lies north of the Mount Meru, while inside the Meru every direction extends to a crore of yōjanas. The extent of the half terrestrial orb is 89,50,000 (yōjanas ?). The extent of the world is 3,79,00,000 yōjanas. This is the length of the seven dvipas and the seven oceans.—13-16

The magnitude of the interior orb is thrice of its whole extent, and is 11 crores and 37 lacs (yōjanas ?). This is the internal magnitude —17-18.

The space in the firmament studded with the stars is equal in circumference to the magnitude of the entire earth below. In other words, the Earth has the same measurement as the Heaven. To the east of Meru, on the Mānasottara Mountain, is Sāstveka-Sārā, the city of Mahendra. It is full of gold. To the south of Meru is the city of Dharmarāja, called the Sampyamana, on the back of the Mānasa Mountain. Vāivasvata Dharmarāja

rearedes there. To the west of Sumeru, on the top of the Mānasa Mountain, is the fair city of Varuna named Suṣā. North of the Meru, on the top of the Mānāsa Mountain, is the Vibhavari city of Moon (Sirnea). It is like the city of Mahendra. To the north of the Mānāsa Mountain, are the Lokapālas in the four directions, for the propagation of virtue and the protection of the universe. At the time of the Dakṣināyana, the sun travels over the Lokapāles. Now hear about it. This sun, with the Jyotis̄chakra (circle of light?) travels south-wards, at the speed of a swift arrow let loose from the bow—19-26

*Note.—Dakṣināyana—The sun's progress south of the equator*

When He reaches the centre of Amarāvati then He is seen to be rising in the Dharmarāja's Samyammapuri, to be setting in Vibhābari. That is the midnight time in Suṣāpuri—27-28.

When it is midday in Dharmara'jā's city of Samyāminā, it is dawn in the Suṣāpuri of Varuna. When there is midnight in Vibhābari, it is sunset in the city of Indra. When it is midday in the Suṣāpuri of Varuna, the sun rises in Vibhābari. When the sun rises in the Amaravati of Indra, it is midnight in the Samyamana of Dharmarāja and sunset in the city of Varuna. Thus, like a fiery wheel, the sun moves with great rapidity and even visits the plieades (the Great Bear). He thus goes round the (Mānas) on four sides—29-33

The sun goes regularly to his two abodes, Udaya (rising) and Astamaya (setting), and his rays fall on three cities of the Devas, in the morning, at noon, and in the afternoon respectively. The rays of the rising sun grow stronger and stronger until at noon they reach their greatest intensity. After noon time He trudges along with subdued rays until He sets down. The sunrise and the sunset create east and west respectively—34-36

The sun gives out heat equally in all directions, in the front, sideways and backward. He is said to rise at a place where He is first seen and set where He (finally) disappears. The Mount Meru is northernmost place, though south of the Lokaloka Mountain. He is at a vast distance from the Earth and His rays too in their passage here (are obstructed by) go to other things, consequently, He is not visible at night.—37-39.

The sun appears high (on the horizon) when He reaches the centre of Puṣkaradvipa. He travels over the  $\frac{1}{50}$ th of the world in one muhūrta (a period of 48 minutes). That is to say, the speed of the sun in one muhūrta (48 minutes) is 31,50,000 yōjanas ( $\frac{1}{50}$  of 9,45,00,000). Thus gradually He marches to the south. In His southward course (Dakṣināyana), He

travels in the space between Mānasottara and Meru thrice as much as in the centre of Puskara. Now hear of his southward course. He covers the whole circumference of the earth, 9,45,00,000 yōjanas, in course of a day and night. After finishing his southward course when he comes at the equator (Viśava rekha), he travels over (lights up) the north of the Kṣitigarbha, as well as the Viśvamandala, whose extent all of you now hear. It is 3,21,00,000 yōjanas. In the month of Srāvana the sun in his northern course travels over Puskaradvipa, which is beyond the Gomedadvipa. The extent of the northern, southern and the middle of this journey should be noted as below. Jaradgava is in the middle, Aīravata in the north and Vaiśvānara in the south. Nāgavithi is the Uttaravithi (i.e., northern course begins with Nagavithi?). Ajavithi is the Dakṣināvithi, with Ajavithi begins the southward course? The asterisms P Asādha and U Asādha, as well as the Mūla, Asvini, Bharani, and Kṛittikā form the Nāgavithi. Rohini, Ārdra and Mrigasīra are also Nāgavithi (or Gajavithi).

In the text quoted by Mr. Wilson, this should read Gajavithi instead of Nāgavithi.

The two Āśadhās and the Mūla (constituting the vithi called Vaiśvānara, along with the two vithis west of it, namely,) beginning with Ajavithi (that is, Ajavithi and Mrigavithi) or the two vithis, East of Abhijit and ending with Svāti are the three vithis north of the Nāgavithi.

Note.—In other words, the three vithis of which Abhijit is the East, namely, Ajavithi, Mrigavithi and Vaiśvānaravithi form the southern course. While the three vithis beginning with Nāgavithi form the Northern course. This is repeated later on. The present verses 58 and 59a are evidently corrupt readings. The translation of the above two verses is tentative only.

And when the sun passes on to the asterisms Puṣya, Asleṣā and Punarvasu, then He is said to be on the Aīravatīvithi. These three Vithis comprise the Uttaramārga (northern course). When the sun is in Pūrvā and Uttaraphalgunā and Maghā, the Vithi is called Ārṣabhi. Pūrvā and Uttarapiṭṭhapada and Revati are the Govithi, while Śravana, Dhaniṣṭhā and Vāruṇī are the Jaradgavavithi. These three Vithis form the middle course of the sun. Hastā, Svāti and Chitrā are the Ajavithi, Jyeṣṭhā, Viśākhā and Maitra are the Mrigavithi, Mūla, Pūrvā and Uttara Āśadhā are the Vaiśvānaravithi. These three Vithis form the southern route of the sun, now the (chordal) distance between the extreme points of these (Vithis), each should be noted—40-60.

This is 31,03,300 yōjanas. Now hear of this distance along the course, south and north of the equator. Such distance between the ecliptics and the equators in the centre is 1,025 yōjanas (i.e., between the solstices and the equator). The sun travelling north and south of the (equatorial) line

has a course of 8,000 mandalas during Uttarāyana, but its southern course, called also the outerward course, is similarly traversed by the sun —61-66.

Now hear of the magnitude of these mandalas. Each mandala is 18,058 yôjanas in extent, being obliquely inclined to the equator.—67-68.

In the nave (or centre) of the mandala, the sun completes one rotation in a day, like the potter's wheel, such is the case with the moon also —69

In His Dakṣināyana march, the sun travels very fast, like a wheel, and that is why he traverses over a vast area within such a short duration —70

In other words, the sun in his southward course rapidly goes over thirteen and a half asterisms in 12 muhûrtas (in day time?), and in 18 muhûrtas at night, in travelling comparatively at a slower speed, like the lump of clay in the centre of the potter's wheel —71-72

In His Uttarāyana course, the sun moves on slowly, and consequently, He is only able to cover a short distance during a long time —73

Then He goes over only 13 (and a half?) asterisms in 18 muhûrtas in day time, and at night He goes over the same number of asterisms in 12 muhûrtas —74

Note —In other words, the total length of the day and night being 30 muhûrtas, a muhûrta is equal to  $\frac{1}{3}$  of an hour. The longest day, i.e., 21st June, is said to be of 18 muhûrtas, or 14 hours, 24 minutes, when the shortest night will be of 12 muhûrtas, or, 9 hours, and 36 minutes. The longest night will be 14 hours, 24 minutes on 21st December, and when the day will be the shortest, i.e., of 9 hours and 36 minutes. This is true for the latitude of 35°N. Looking to the map of India, it is, somewhere in Kâmrî. This portion, or the original from which this was copied, must have been composed near the region of modern Gilgit or Chitral, where the longest day and night is of 18 muhûrtas

Like the mound of clay on potter's wheel, the pole star moves more slowly than either of them —75

The pole star completes one day and night of 30 muhûrtas in revolving on the orbit between the two extremes —76

When the sun is on His Uttarāyana course, His movement in the day is slower and in the night it is faster —77

And in His Dakṣināyana course, His movement in the day is faster and in the night it is slower —78

With this different speed, the sun creates day and night (of different length) in Ajavithi in the south and on the north the Lokâloka mountain.—79

Outside the Vaiśvânara path (the Solstice of Cancer), the light comes on the world from the Loka mountain. It is day time when the light of the sun spreads from the Puṣkara —80

The Mount Lokaloka is 10,000 yôjanas high and extends sideways and outwards. The Mountain is partly illuminated and partly dark, and is round in shape, the inner portions of the Lokaloka Mountain are illuminated by the sun, the moon and the stars. This is the Aloka Mountain, and the Mount Nirâloka is beyond it —81-83

The verb (लोक) lôka means to see, alôka (अलोक) is opposite of lôka. The sun in his journey creates this lôka (light) and alôka (darkness), hence this time is called sandhyâ (joining light and darkness), i.e., twilight. Uṣa is the night and Vyâstî is the day according to the wise —84-85

One muhûrtâ consists of 30 kalâs, and a day has 15 muhûrtas. The day increases or decreases as the twilight muhûrtas increase or decrease, owing to difference of three muhûrtas in the course of sun's journey through the line (equatorial), etc. (The day is divided into five parts, each of three muhûrtas). The first three muhûrtas is Prâtah (morning), the next three muhûrtas, is known as Sampava. Three muhûrtas after that is called the Madhyâhna (noon) and a similar number of muhûrtas after it bring about the afternoon called aparâ by the sages, this is followed by evening (Sâyam) of the last three muhûrtas. The day is of fifteen muhûrtas on the equator —84-91

The days vary in duration when the sun is travelling south or north of the equator. When the days are long the nights are short (i.e., in Dakshinâyana), and when the nights are long the days are short (in Uttarâyana) —92

The equinoxes (Visuva) come in the autumn and spring, i.e., the days and nights are of equal duration at the autumn and vernal equinoxes. Beyond darkness is light, and beyond light is darkness —93

The Lokapâlas are located in the centre of the Lokaloka Mountain. Of these Mahâtmâs, four are there till the annihilation of the world —94

The first is Vairâja Sudhâmî, the second one is the Prajâpati Kardama, the third one is the Hiaranyarôma Parjanya, the fourth one is Rajâ Ketumâna. These four are free from the feeling of opposites (e.g., pleasure and pain, etc.), of conceit, sloth, of grasping. Each one of the four quarters is occupied by each of them on the Mount Lokaloka —95-96

The Northern peak of the Agastya Mountain which is inhabited by the Devarâis and which lies outside the Vaisvânara path, is the way of the Pitris —97

On this pitriyâna reside the 'Agnihotri' Rishis, desirous of progeny and procreators of the people of the universe —98

O King, these Rishis, who originate progeny, begin the works of creation and uplift humanity. They move about in Daksinâpatha —99.

They establish the order of duty in each yuga (Dharma), when it is disturbed, with their learning, piety and asceticism —100

The previous Lokapālas are born in the house of their late compeers. In their absence, the latter take their place in this way, by mutual succession they continue till the destruction of the world 88000 of these Rishis, who live the life of a householder, remain on the Daksina (south) path of the sun till the end of the world I have thus enumerated those Rishis whose funeral ceremonies have been performed According to the usages of the world (to stand as examples) these Rishis (Siddhas) have passed through the experience of birth, feelings of like and dislike, lustful passions, sexual and other worldly enjoyment, and death. —101-105

The seven Rishis desiring progeny took birth in the age of Dwāpara and conquered death, as they despised the work of propagating children 88000 Rishis have gone into the path of those seven Rishis by becoming Urdhbarēta (perpetual celebates) They will live till the destruction of the world on the northern path of the sun They became immortal as by their example they taught the people the sacrifice of lust, passion, likes and dislikes, abstaining from procreation, and other worldly enjoyment, by showing their worthlessness Those who remain till the end of the universe are called immortals They exist so long as the three worlds exist Not so the mortals who follow the path of the Māra, such as lust, great sins like the slaying of embryonic cells and great virtues like the performance of Aśwamedha yajña (Horse sacrifice) The immortals or the Urdharetas go into unconsciousness at the time of the dissolution of the universe, and not before —106-110

*Note*—The three lights of the world are first, the light of the Fathers (Pitrīs), second, the light of the Urdharetas (solitaries) and third, the light of Viṣṇu or the Bhaktas, who perform duties for the sake of duty.

Dhruva (pole-star) is north of, or, above the region of the seven Rishis It is the illustrious foot of Viṣṇu It is third Lightgiver of the world —111

Those who reach that highest seat of Viṣṇu, transcend all sorrows, so, all those who desire to reach the world of Dhruva, remain in the path of virtue —112

*Here ends the one hundred and twenty fourth chapter dealing with extension of sun, moon and the world in Bhuvanakoga*

## NOTE

The following extracts from Colebrooke's essays will show that the Hindus knew the true dimensions, etc., of the earth and so the description in the above chapter must be taken in allegorical sense in several places.

It appears also from a passage of Brahmagupta's refutation of the supposed errors of that author, and from his commentator's quotation of Āryabhaṭṭa's text, that this ancient astronomer maintained the doctrine of the earth's diurnal revolution round its axis. 'The sphere of the stars,' he affirms, 'is stationary, and the earth, making a revolution, produces the daily rising and setting of stars and planets.' Brahmagupta answers, 'If the earth move a minute in a prāṇa, then whence and what route does it proceed? If it revolve, why do not lofty objects fall?' But his commentator, Prīthūdaka-svāmī, replies, 'Āryabhaṭṭa's opinion appears nevertheless satisfactory, since planets cannot have two motions at once and the objection, that lofty things would fall, is contradicted, for, every way, the under part of the earth is also the upper, since, wherever the spectator stands on the earth's surface, even that spot is the uppermost point.'

We here find both an ancient astronomer and a later commentator maintaining, against the sense of their countrymen, the rational doctrine which Heraclides of Pontus, the Pythagorean Epeorus, and a few others among the Greeks, had affirmed of old, but which was abandoned by the astronomers both of the east and of the west, until revived and demonstrated in comparatively modern times.

Brahmagupta is more fortunate in his reasoning where he refutes another theory of the alternation of day and night imagined by the Jains, who account for the diurnal change by the passage of two suns, and as many moons, and a double set of stars and minor planets, round a pyramidal mountain, at the foot of which is this habitable earth. His confutation of that absurdity is copied by Bhāskara, who has added to it from Prīthūdaka's gloss on a different passage of Brahmagupta, a refutation of another notion ascribed by him to the same sect, respecting the translation of the earth in space.

This idea has no other origin than the notion, that the earth, being heavy and without support, must perpetually descend and has, therefore, no relation whatever to the modern opinion of a proper motion of the sun and stars.

Part of the passage of Bhāskara has been quoted in a former essay.<sup>1</sup> What regards the further subject now noticed is here subjoined.

'The earth stands firm, by its own power, without other support in space.'

'If there be a material support to the earth, and another upholder of that, and again another of this, and so on, there is no limit. If finally self-support must be assumed, why not assume it in the first instance? Why not recognize it in this multi-form earth?

<sup>1</sup> Āryabhaṭṭa cited by Prīthūdaka.

भएङ्गारः स्थिरो भूरेवावृत्याकृत्य प्रातिवैष्टिको उदयास्तमयो लंपादयति नक्षत्र  
प्रह्लादाम् ।

'प्रातीनैति कला भूर्यादि तत्कुतो वजेत्कमच्चानम् । आर्दतेनमवाक्येच पतन्ति समु-  
च्छायाः कस्यात् । Brahma-sphuta-siddhānta

'The commentator wrote at least seven centuries ago, for he is quoted by Bhāskara in the text and notes of the Śiromani.'

'For an outline of Āryabhaṭṭa's system of astronomy, see a note at the close of this Essay.'

'As heat is in the sun and fire, coldness in the moon, fluidity in water, hardness in iron, so mobility is in air, and immobility in the earth, by nature. How wonderful are the implanted faculties !'

'The earth, possessing an attractive force,' draws towards itself any heavy substance situated in the surrounding atmosphere, and that substance appears as if it fell. But whither can the earth fall in ethereal space which is equal and alike on every side ?

'Observing the revolution of the stars, the Buddhas' acknowledge, that the earth has no support, but as nothing heavy is seen to remain in the atmosphere, they thence conclude that it falls in ethereal space.'

'Whence dost thou deduce, O Buddha, this idle notion, that, because any heavy substance thrown into the air, falls to the earth, therefore the earth itself descends ?'

He adds this further explanation in his notes 'For, if the earth were falling, an arrow shot into the air would not return to it when the projectile force was expended, since both would descend. Nor can it be said that it moves slower, and is overtaken by the arrow, for heaviest bodies fall quickest, and the earth is heaviest.'

From the quotations of writers on astronomy, and particularly of Brahmagupta, who, in many instances, cites Āryabhatta to controvert his positions (and is in general contradicted in his censure by his own scholiast Prithidaka, either correcting his quotations, or vindicating the doctrine of the earlier author), it appears that Āryabhatta affirmed the diurnal revolution of the earth on its axis, and that he accounted for it by a wind or current of aerial fluid, the extent of which, according to the orbit assigned to it by him, corresponds to an elevation of little more than a hundred miles from the surface of the earth that he possessed the true theory of the causes of lunar and solar eclipses, and disregarded the imaginary dark planets of the mythologists and astrologers, affirming the moon and primary planets (and even the stars) to be essentially dark, and only illumined by the sun that he noticed the motion of the solstitial and equinoctial points, but restricted it to a regular oscillation, of which he assigned the limit and the period that he ascribed to the epicycles, by which the motion of a planet is represented, a form varying from the circle and nearly elliptic that he recognized a motion of the nodes and apsides of all the primary planets, as well as of the moon, though in this instance, as in some others, his censorer imputes to him variance of doctrine.

The magnitude of the earth, and extent of the encompassing wind, is among the instances wherein he is reproached by Brahmagupta with versatility, as not having adhered to the same position throughout his writings, but he is vindicated on this, as on most occasions, by the scholiast of his censorer. Particulars of this question, leading to rather curious matter, deserve notice.

Āryabhatta's text specifies the earth's diameter, 1050 yojanas, and the orbit or circumference of the earth's wind [spiritus vector] 3898 yojanas, which, as the scholiast rightly argues, is no discrepancy. The diameter of this orbit, according to the remark of Brahmagupta, is 1080.

<sup>1</sup> As Res, vol. ix p 822

<sup>2</sup> Like the attraction of the loadstone for iron Mārichi on Bhāskara

<sup>3</sup> Meaning the Jainas, as appears from the author's own annotation on this passage

<sup>4</sup> Sivamati, Golādhyāya, c. i v 2, 4, 7 and 9

## CHAPTER CXXV

The Rishis after hearing such an interesting narration about the sun, moon and the planets asked the Sage Sûta How do the planets move about in the Solar system ? Are they connected with one another or do they move about independently ? What causes them to move on ? If they move about by themselves, how do they do so ? We wish to hear all about these things. Pray explain these to us —1-3

Sûta said —I shall tell you about these deceptive things People are deceived about them even when they see them with their own eyes —4.

Among the fourteen stars is the planetary porpoise (Sisumâra). The son of Uttâmapâda has taken this shape of a sacrificial post (Medhi) in the sky and is known as Dhruva It revolves and causes the sun, moon and planets to revolve also The stars, too, follow it in its wheel-like motion These luminaries revolve owing to the will force of Dhruva being tied to it by the aerial chord Their separation and union period, rising and setting, disturbances, journey southwards, northward, and in the central region, and eclipse, are directed by Dhruva —5-9.

The clouds Jimuta beget life Those clouds remain suspended on the air Abahana They change shape (*i.e* condensed), and on going up a Yojana from there form into rain hence they are called the source of rain The clouds Puškarâbartaka have been born from the wings (of the mountains) These wings are named Puškara and hold a huge volume of water hence these clouds are known as Puškarâvarta The valiant Indra cut down the wings of the mountains that used to fly at their will and cause ruin and destruction to the rising generation (of the universe) These clouds assume various forms, give out thundering noise, produce deluge of rains at the end of the kalpa and quench the destructive blaze of fire at the same time They support the air, are full of immortality and causes the end of the Kalpa The bursting of the Brahma's egg out of which came forth the four headed Brahmâ Himself, produced other clouds, they are the outer crust of egg, and, are called Megha (clouds) Without distinction their chief source of nourishment is smoke' The most important of them is Parjanya —10-17.

There are four elephants too, (Diggajâ) There are two divisions of elephants (Hasti), mountains (Parvata), clouds (Megha), and serpents

(Bhog!) They originally sprang from the same common stock. Their origin lies in water. The Parjanya clouds and Hasti wax during Hemsuta season and pour out showers of snow born of cold, to promote the growth of grain —18-19

The sixth air Pañivaha is their chief support. The same air holds the Akasa Ganges, whose waters are holy, nectarlike and pass in three directions. The elephants hold down (Diggajas) her sacred waters in their bulky trunks and throw them diffused by the air and the same is styled dew. The Mount Hemakuta is in the south (of Meiu?), to the north and south of the snow clad Mounts (Himavata) is the Pundra cloud which greatly increases the stock of rain. All the rain formed there converts itself into the snow. The wind on the Himavata draws by its own force these snow flakes and pours them on the great mountains. Beyond the Himavata there is little rain —20 25

Next to it is another cloud named Ivâ that helps the growth of beings. These two clouds enhance the amount of rains —26

Thus I have described to you the clouds and how they are fed. The Sun is said to be producer of rain —27

Rain, heat and cold, night, evening and day, prosperity and adversity, all originate from Dhruva —28

The sun from his position draws water of Dhruva in molecular form, remains in the bodies of various beings, and goes out in every direction in the form of smoke when they burn the Sthâvara (immoveables) and the Jangamas (moveables) —29-30

This (smoke) forms itself into clouds. The sun is the centre of clouds. He absorbs the water by His bright rays. His rays with the help of air draw out water from the ocean. But by means of white rays he obtains rain from the clouds in due seasons. The waters from the (vapours) of the clouds when brought into contact of the wind fall in the shape of rain. Such rain falls for six months for the good of the creation. Wind roars and electricity is produced. Fire is said to be the source of lightning —31-34

Meghas are called so on account of their sprinkling the landscape (with water). This expression is formed from the root Miha (to sprinkle). That which does not throw down water is called Abhra. Hence Abhra is stationary. The sun established by Dhruva is the creator of rain —35

The air from Dhruva drives away the rain. The circle of stars comes out of the sun and the planets and moves away from them, in

the end, it re-enters the sun established in Dhruva Hence the chariot of the sun is seen near —36-37

It rests on a wheel with five spokes and three naves (or triple nave) It has eight wheels under the same circumference They have a common axle dotted with the particles of gold The sun moves in such a glorious chariot It extends to a lac of yojanas The pole (Iṣādanda) of the chariot is double in its longitude\* —38-39

That chariot of the sun has been created by Brahmā for necessity It is made of gold, pure and unmixed drawn by most handsome horses that run with the speed of wind The vedic metres are the steed to whom the wheel is attached The chariot resembles the vehicle of Varuna in all details —40-41

The sun moves about in the heaven every day on that chariot. Now the various parts of the sun as well as of his chariot denote the various parts of the year —42

Day is one of the naves of His chariot's wheel Years are the spokes of the wheels The six seasons are its peripheries —43

Night is its fender, Dharma is the high banner, the yugas of the axle and pins, the kalās (parts) which carry the ārtas (?) [This line seems to be a corrupt reading] Kusthās are the nostrils of the horses, moments (ksanīs) are their row of teeth, Nimesa is the (anukarsa) floor, Kāla, the pole (Iṣā) Artha and Kāma are the pins of the yoke and axle The vedic metres are the seven horses that like the air swiftly glide with the chariot Gāyatrī, Trisṭupa, Jagatī, Anastupa, Pankti, Vrihatī, Usnīk the seventh —44-47

The wheel is attached to the axle and the axle to Dhruva The axle revolves with the wheel and Dhruva revolves with the axle The

\* We are to understand, here, both in the axle and yoke, two levers, one horizontal, the other, perpendicular The horizontal arm of the axle has a wheel at one end; the other extremity is connected with the perpendicular arm To the horizontal arm of the yoke are harnessed the horses, and its inner or right extremity is secured to the perpendicular The upper ends of both perpendiculars are supposed to be attached to Dhruva, the polestar, by two aerial cords, which are lengthened in the sun's southern course, and shortened in his northern, and, retained by which to Dhruva, as to a pivot, the wheel of the car traverses the summit of the Mānasottara mountain, on Pushkardwipa, which runs, like a ring, round the several continents and oceans. The contrivance is commonly compared to an oil-mill, and was, probably, suggested by that machine, as constructed in India. As the Mānasottara mountain is but 50 000 leagues high, and Meru, 84 000, whilst Dhruva is 1 500 000, both levers are inclined at obtuse angles to the nave of the wheel and each other In images of the sun, two equal and semi-circular axes connect a central wheel with the sides of the ear Wilson's Vignu Parāna. Vol II p. 239 (2nd Edition)

axle moves along with the wheel propelled by Dhruva. The chariot has been thus designed owing to some special reason —48-49

The success of the sun's chariot is due to the conjunction (with Dhruva). Thus this divine solar chariot moves about in the heaven. The pins of the yoke and axle are on its south. The pair of reins of the yoke and the wheel of this aerial chariot revolve round and round in all directions like the potter's wheel. The pins of the yoke and the axle traversing about the four quarters revolve round Dhruva by the force of the wind. The reins of that travelling chariot shorten on the Northern orbit and lengthened on the Southern. The pair of reins are fastened to the pins of the yoke and axle and are held by Dhruva, who thus attracts the sun. When the reins are drawn in by Dhruva the sun covers on either side of the line (diameter) 8000 yojanas. When the reins are released by Dhruva the sun begins to move on most swiftly the outer orbits.

—50-58

*Here ends the one hundred and twenty fifth chapter describing the motion of the sun and moon in Bhuvanakosa*

Sûta said —The chariot of the Sun is occupied by the several (1) Devas month after month, by turns, in regular succession, they carry Him on in His path together with a host of (2) Rishis, (3) Gandharbas, (4) Apsarâs, (5) Nâgas, serpents, (6, charioteers and (7) Râkshasas. These Rishis, etc., dwell there in the solar orb for a couple of months, turn by turn, and then make room for others —1-2

During the months of Chaitra and Vâsâkha, Brahmâ and Aryamâ, the two Devas, Pulastya and Pulaha, the two Prajâpatis, Vâsuki and Sankirna, the two Nagas, the chief singers—Tumvaru and Nârada,—the two Gandharvas, Kritasthalâ and Punjikasthalî, the two nymphs, the two charioteers, Rathakrit and Rathaujâ, the two demons, Heti and Prabeti, resort to the solar region. During the two months Jyaiṣṭha and Āśâdha, in the summer, Mitra and Varuna, the two Devas, go to live there —3-6

Besides them, the following others also go there during the two months in the summer —Atri and Vasîṣṭha, the two Risis, Taksaka, Rambhaka, the two Nâgas, Menakâ and Sahadhanîyâ, the two Apsarâs, Hâhâ and Hûbhû, the two singers, Rathantaia and Rathakrit, the two charioteers, Puruṣâda and Vadha, the two Demons. Then the other Devas come in. During the months of Śrâvna and Bhâdrapada, the following

live there —The Devas Indra, Vivasvân, the Risis Angirâ, Bhrigu, the Nâgas Elâpattra, Sankhapâla, the Gandharvas, Visvârasu, Suṣena; the chariooteers Prâta and Ratha, the nymphs Pramlochâ, Nîmlochâ and the demons Heti and Vyâghra —7-12

The Devas Paijanya and Pûṣâ, the sages Bharadvâja and Gautama reside there for two months in autumn The Gandharvas Chitrâsena and Suruchi, the beautiful nymphs Visvavâchi and Ghritâchi, the serpents Airâvata and Dhananjaya, the two chariooteers Senajit and Suṣena, the demons Châra and Vâta reside in the sun during the months of Aśvina and Kârtika For the two months of the dewy season, Agraḥâyana and Pauṣa, the Devas Aṇuṣa and Bhaga, the Risis Kasyapa and Kratu, reside there As well, the serpents Mahâpadma and Karkotaka, the Gandharvas Chitrâsena and Pûrṇayu, the nymphs Pûrvachitti and Uivasi, the chariooteers Takṣa and Arîstanemi, and the terrible demons Vidyut and Sûrya During the two winter months of Mâgha and Phâlguna, the Devas Taṣṭa and Viṣnu, the Risis Yamadagni and Viśvâmitra, the two sons of the serpent Kadru, viz., Kamvala and Aśvatara, the Gandharvas Dhritaiāṣṭra and Sûryavarchâ, the nymphs Tilottamâ, and Rambha, the chariooteers Ritaṣjita and Satyajita, the demons Brahmopeta and Yajnopeta live there In this way the Devas, etc., inhabit the solar realm for the two months in their respective turn —13-24

The groups of the seven couples (1) Devas, (2) Risis, (3) Gandharvas, (4) Apsarâs, (5) Nâgas, '6, chariooteers and (7) Rûkshasas, that reside there for two months in their turn, are called the Sthânâbhûmânîs (the occupants of the place for the time) Of these, the twelve Devas (six couples for six seasons) lend their fiery lustre to the Sun The Risis adore Him by reciting pleasant hymns of praise, the Gandharvas and the Apsarâs show their devotion by their singing and dancing —25-26

The chariooteers hold the reins of the horses, the serpents move to and fro, and the demons follow Him in His track —27

Besides these, the Vâlakhillya Risis salute the Sun and accompany Him from His rise till He sets The Sun shines and sheds heat and lustre with increased brilliancy with the powerful blaze of the gigantic bonfire of the potency, asceticism, Yoga, Dharma, knowledge, power and valour of these Devas —28-29

**Note.**—The Vâlakhillyas are a class of divine personages of the size of a thumb and produced from the Creator's body and said to precede the Sun's chariot (their number is said to be sixty thousand)

The Sun drives away all the troubles of the beings by His radiance The sins of men are reduced to ashes by His fire He also takes away the

sins of those whose conduct is good , and they roam about in the heavens along with Hīm Those Devas out of mercy, protect all the beings in their every walk of life, and make them perform asceticism, mutter jāpams and fill their hearts with joy During the several manvantaras, the seats of the Abhimani Devas are thus changed This order is always the same ; whether in the future, or in the past, or at present —30-33

Thus the seven sets of two dwell respectively in the fourteen manvantaras respectively They all are fourteen in number and change their places thus in course of 14 manvantaras —34

The Sun in His diurnal course as He moves on, sheds His strong heating rays during the summer, causes cold during the winter and rains during the monsoon He brings about night and day and spreads His rays far and wide as He travels Thus by His rays, He brings in peace and satisfaction to all, the Devas, Pṛitīs, and human beings alike. The days and nights, as they revolve, cause the bright and dark fortnights The Sun stores up nectar every month in His rays This nectar, pure and agreeable, the Devas drink in their appropriate fortnightly seasons The Devas, the Pṛitīs, the Saumyas and the Kāvyas, after having drunk this nectar in the shape of the Sun's rays, and replenished themselves, cause thereby good rain on this earth and make the plants, ordinary and medicinal, grow and satisfy the hunger of all beings —35-37

The Devas are satisfied with ambrosia by the sacrificial oblations once offered into the Fire every fortnight and poured after the recitation of the prescribed formulæ suffixed by svāhā The Pṛitīs are satisfied by the libations of water offered to them once every month (*i.e.*, monthly oblations are offered and they get satisfied for one month) The men live day and night on these grains and herbs The Sun is the sustainer of all beings and He nourishes them by His rays —38

Thus the Sun moves on in His one-wheeled chariot swiftly drawn by His horses and at the end of a day returns to His abode He always has (tawny) greenish yellow horses yoked to His chariot He drinks water through thousands of His rays and ceases to draw it when it passes the point of saturation Then He discharges them again in the form of rain —39-40.

The Sun in course of one single day and night goes swiftly over the world consisting of the seven oceans and the seven islands, seated in His one-wheeled chariot and drawn by seven horses The seven horses yoked to the Sun's chariot are no other than the seven chandas (metres), they can assume forms at their will, they go as they like, their speed is swift as wind , their colour is tawny , and being once yoked they go on

## THE MATSYA PURANAM.

constantly; they never get tired a bit. They are the gods declating the glory of Brahma. Ascending on such a chariot the Sun travels the earth in course of one day (24 hours). The horses were yoked at the beginning of Kalpa and carry on the Sun till the end of the Great Dissolution (Maha Pralaya). Thus He goes on round and round, day and night, surrounded by the Vâlakhilya Munis. The great Rishis recite praises to Him in the chosen words composed by them, the Gandarbas and Apsaras sing and dance round Him. Thus the Sun is carried on by the horses flying like buds. Similarly, the Moon moves on in the several asterisms that are divided into several vithis — 41-46

The Moon has also been described to wax and wane according to His positions with respect to the Sun. There are three wheels in the chariot of the Moon and the horses are yoked at both the ends — 47

The Moon has been born from waters along with His chariot, horses and the charioteer. That chariot is decorated with fine garlands and yoked with excellent white horses, rests on three wheels — 48

The swift running divine horses yoked to the Moon's chariot are ten in number, they run as swift as wind and they are without any attachment, once yoked, they carry the car till the end of the Great Dissolution — 49

The fair Chakṣuśravâ is the charioteer, and the horses looking white like shells and of one colour, draw the chariot. — 50

Aja, Tripatha, Vrîsa, Vâjt, Nara, Haya, Amshumâna, Saptadhâtu, Hamsa, and Vyomamriga are the names of the ten horses attached to the chariot of the Moon. Thus He goes on surrounded by the Devas and the Pitris — 51-52

In the bright fortnight the Moon gets ahead of the Sun and whatever of Him waned during the dark fortnight becomes filled up again, digit by digit, by the Solar ray, day after day. Thus He becomes nourished by the one seed-ray of the Sun named Suṣumnâ when He becomes full and circular on the full-moon night. Similarly in the dark fortnight, the Moon wanes daily from the second day till the Chaturdasi tithi (the fourteenth day after the full-Moon) when the Devas drink up the soft and excellent nectar of the Moon, sweet like honey and consisting of the essence of the watery juice. For half the month the nectar becomes stored up in the Moon by the Sun's ray, so that the Devas would be able to drink it, and the quantity of this nectar becomes maximum on the full-moon night when the Devas adore the Moon for another supply of the same, gathered from the Sun's radiance in course of a fortnight — 53-60

Note.—Suṣumnâ=A principal ray of the Sun

For one night the Devas, the Pitrîs and the Eights worship the Moon. From the beginning of the dark fortnight the Moon turns back, wanes and becomes dull, His digits decline owing to His nectar being drunk up day by day 33330 Devas drink the lunar ambrosia. The Moon thus declines during the dark fortnight and waxes until He becomes complete in the bright fortnight. Thus, drinking the nectar, the Devas, at the end of the fortnight, go away elsewhere on the Amâvasyâ (dark) night when the Pitrîs come to Him. When the still small portion of the 15th part of the Moon is left, they drink that in the afternoon on the next day for a brief period of two kalâs and go away after the completion of this dark fortnight. The Saumyâs, Vahriśadas, Agniśvâtîs and Kâvyâs, are the Pitrîs. Those who preside over the year are known also as Kâvyas. So also the Dvîjas performing good works can become Kâvyas. The Saumya-pitrîs are rigid ascetics. Vahriśada, Saumya and Agniśvâtîs are the well-known threefold Pitrî creation who are recognised as twice-born (Brahmanas) —61-70

The 15th portion of the nectar of the moon is drunk by the Pitrîs. The sixteenth part of the Moon is recognised as the junction of the two (dark and bright) fortnights, when the final waning takes place and fresh waxing begins. Thus the waxing and waning of the Moon under the influence of the Sun have been described —71-72

Note —It is highly probable that the car festival of Sri Sri Jagannath in Puri, Orissa, might have its origin on the movements of the chariot of the Sun which are again the reflections of the Soul residing in the body.

*Here ends the one hundred and twenty-sixth chapter on the courses of the Sun and the Moon*

## CHAPTER CXXVII

Sûta said —I shall now relate to you about the chariots of the stars and planets and Râhu (the ascending node). The chariot of Budha (Mercury, the son of Moon) is brilliant and white —1

It is drawn by ten horses as swift as wind. The horses are of the following colours, respectively, viz—White, reddish brown, spotted, dark blue, black, purple, white, greenish, dark, and of variegated colours. The horses are noble and excellent and born of wind —2-3

The huge chariot of Mars is made of gold. It is eight wheeled. It is drawn by eight red horses born of fire, with flags and banners.—4

Young Mars moves on in this car, his motions are direct, and retrograde and very retrograde. Vrihaspati (Jupiter), the son of Angirâ and the

learned preceptor of the Devas, moves in a golden chariot with flags on it. The chariot is drawn by 8 fair coloured horses born of fire. Jupiter remains for one year in each of the twelve signs of the zodiac, thus He moves on in his chariot and goes to his destination. The chariot of Venus (Sukra) is brilliant like fire and decorated with flags, He goes on in this swift-going chariot. Next comes Saturn. His chariot is made of iron. Ascending on this chariot drawn by horses as swift as wind, Saturn moves on —5-8

The dark coloured chariot of Rāhu is drawn by 8 swift horses of smoke-colour. The horses move as swift as wind, and they are well covered. He dwells close to the Sun, but He travels on in the dark fortnight towards the Moon, and returns to the Sun after that fortnight. The 8 horses of Ketu (the descending node) are slender and thin, of the colour of smoke, but they are hideous, very fiery and as swift as wind —9-11

Thus I have described to you about the chariots and horses of the planets. These are all attached to the Pole by ropes of wind (air). These cords are invisible and made of air. These moving duly make the several chariots move —12-13

All these stars are tied to Dhruva, and they move on propelled by the wind. The Moon and the Sun move on in the celestial firmament, prompted by currents of strong wind. They glide on tied to the Dhruva. Their motions round the pole are brought about by these ropes made of wind —14

These stars and luminous spheres, studded in the firmament, are the abodes of the Devas (Devagrihas). They float in the celestial atmosphere as boats float in rivers —15

The rays of the Pole star extend to the farthest limit where the stars are visible and they all move on tied to the Pole and thus cause others to move on —16

The stars and planets tied to the Dhruva (Pole) revolve and make others revolve as oil mill while revolving itself makes others revolve. The air that causes them to move and makes them look like a fiery circle (made by a fire-brand being waved round in the air) is known as Pravaha. In this way the stars move on, attached to the Pole. These stars are situated on the body of Śiśumāra, who lies (sleeps as it were) on the celestial firmament —17-19

N.B.—Śiśumāra is known as the zodiac personified and is no other than the child Viṣṇu.

The sins committed in the day are swept away by the sight of this Sisumâra chakra in the night. The man who sees the stars fixed on the Sisumâra chakra lives for as many number of years more than his proper life period as the stars he sees, and one should know therefore the form and the location of the different limbs of this Sisumâra chakra fully —20-21

Thus is His form —Uttâna-pada is the chin of Sisumâra, Sacrifice is the lower lip, Dharma is the forehead Nârâyana and the Sâdhyas are enshrined in the heart, the Asvins form the two feet on the eastern side (the right foot) Varuna and Âryamâ form the two legs towards the west (the left foot) —22-23

The Devas, Sam-varsha and Mitra, form respectively the fore and hind private parts, and Agni, Indra, Marichi, Kashyapa, and Dhruva form His tail. There is no rising nor setting of these stars. They remain fixed at one place. The Moon, the Sun, and other stars and planets are situated in the form of a circle facing this Sisumâra chakra in the firmament. All the stars are presided over by Dhruva and circumbulate Him. This Pole star is the support and sacrificial pillar of these stars. The Dhruva is the best amongst the Agnidbras and Kashyapas. He moves singly above the summit of Sumeru with His head downwards round the summit of Sumeru, as if looking at it, dragging at the same time along with Him the zodiac and the cluster of stars —24-29

*Here ends the one hundred and twenty-seventh chapter on the praises of the Pole star*

## CHAPTER CXXVIII

The Rishi said —We have heard what you have explained, O, Sûta! But what are those abodes of the Devas? Kindly explain more at length on the luminous spheres (the stars, etc) —1

Sûta spoke —I shall now tell you about them, about the motions of the Sun and Moon, about the abodes of the Devas, the Sun and the Moon. In the beginning of the Kalpa, there was neither day nor night in this Universe, it was all covered over by darkness. Brahmâ, born from Avyakta, the Unmanifested, did not, till then, manifest any elements. Four elements were left, and Brahmâ presided over them. Then Bhagavân Svayambhu desired to create the different Lokas (worlds) and assumed Himself the form of a fire-fly and wandered about. He then thought within himself and came to know

that Agni (fire) had hidden himself, in the beginning of Kalpa, in waters and in the earth —2-5

He collected water and earth in the hope of getting fire out of them, and He ultimately obtained three kinds of fires of equal amount, viz—the Pâchâgñi, employed in cooking things, was begotten from the earth, the Sûcha Agni, or the heat dominant in the sun, and the Jatharâgni or fire of the belly, in the shape of beautiful electricity and not produced by the combustion of any fuel, &c. Some electrical fire is increased by fire residing in itself, whereas some others kindle even without any fuel. The fire produced by rubbing two pieces of wood together, is called Nirmathyâ Agni and is quenched by water —6-8

The electrical fire in the belly is resplendent, with no flames, and beautiful, this is the light in the white disc of the sun, it is devoid of heat and not manifest. When the sun sets, one-fourth of his lustre enters into fire. Therefore fire looks so bright in the night —9-10

When the sun rises, one-fourth of the heat of fire enters into Him, therefore He imparts heat in the day. The mutual infusion of the heat and lustre of the Fire and Sun into each other causes the days and nights to have their above mentioned properties —11-12

When the sun rises on the northern half and south of the world, the night merges into the waters, therefore water looks of a copper colour during the day —13

When the sun sets, the day merges in the waters, hence the waters look bright in the night, in this way owing to the rising and setting of the sun, the night and day merge in the waters respectively. The fire in the Sun is like a red-coloured jar and it has thousand legs. When the sun shines, He draws water by the rays of this fire. It is this fire that draws in waters of the rivers, wells, oceans, tanks, lakes, etc through His thousand rays —14-18

These thousand rays cause heat, rains and cold, of these, four hundred rays look like nâdis (tubular veins and arteries) and are of variegated forms, these cause rain. Chandanâ, Medhyâ, Ketanâ, Chetanâ, Amritâ and Jivanaâ are all rain-producing rays. Three hundred rays produce cold, and they are drunk (absorbed) by the moon, stars and planets. These are the middle rays —19-20

The other rays are all white and gladden the hearts of beings. They cause heat. They are three hundred in number and known by the names Kukubh, Go, Visvasit, Sukla and others. They sustain and protect the Devas, Peters, and human beings —21-22

The sun always satisfies men by producing herbs, the Pitrîs through the libations of water svadhâ and the Devas through the sacrificial offerings svâhâ —23

During spring and hot weather the sun imparts heat by his three hundred rays, during the rainy season and autumn causes rain by his four hundred rays, during the dewy and winter season imparts cold by his three hundred rays —24-25

He imparts strength in the herbs and plants, bestows nectar to svadhâ, and imbues immortality in the nectars of the Devas Thus He benefits the three worlds by His this three-fold action His thousand rays thus perform different functions in the different seasons, causing good to half the Lokas —26

Such is the white shining solar orb known in the worlds From Him emanate the stars, planets and the moon, and they are preserved by Him 27-28

It is by the Susumna ray of the Sun that the Moon waxes again, day by day The stars are born from the eastern ray of the Sun, named Hari-kesa —29

The Viśvakarman ray of the sun is in the south, He is the sustainer of the planet Mercury The Viśvavasu ray of the Sun is in the west, and He is the originator of the planet Venus —30

The Samvardhan ray is the originator of Mangala (Mars), the Asvabha ray, the sixth one, is the producer of Jupiter --31

The Surâta ray nourishes Saturn Because these never fade, therefore they are called Naksatras (stars) —32

These are the fields, the regions of the sun, their rays fall incessantly unto Him, and the Sun accepts them also as His, hence they are named Nakshattras (The Sun pervades all these by His rays) —33

Those persons who perform good and meritorious works in this world, go to these planets and stars (the Nakshattras) after they leave their mortal coils and these are saved, hence these Naksatras are called Târakâs And as they are white in colour, they are named Suklikas —34

The Sun is called Aditya on account of His having the lustre of the fire and asceticism of the holy kings of this earth as well as those of Heaven The root 'Srav' means "to pour out, to ooze" and the Sun is called "Savitâ" because he sheds, pours out tejas, fire —35-36

The root 'chand' has various meanings , it connotes whiteness, nectar, cold and pleasure The word Chandramā (the moon) has come out of this root —37

The shining mandalas of the sun and the moon in the divine firmament are luminous, white, full of water and fire They look handsome like white pitchers —38

All those Rishis who attained Devahood by their karmas in the several Manvantaras have become the above luminous spheres Their abodes in the firmament are termed "Devagrihas" The Sun has got his abode as the Sun , so the Moon has got his "Saumya" abode , the planet Venus has got his Saukra abode This Saukra abode is shining and has sixteen spokes (16 petalled lotus) Jupiter has attained his "Vrihat" (big) abode Mars has got his red abode —39-41

Saturn enters into the "Saturn" mandala , the Budha into the Budha and the Rāhu (ascending node) into the solar abodes All the stars enter into their mandalas respectively , so these luminous spheres in the firmament are known as Devagrihas of those persons who performed highly meritorious works in this world —42-43

The Devagrihas, mentioned before, exist in every Manvantara till the time of dissolution —44

The Devas occupy these Devagrihas again and again by their "Abhimāna" (presiding) capacities , the past Devas occupied their places along with others with their past presiding capacities , the present ones with their present presiding capacities , the future ones will reign with their future presiding capacities (But all of them preserve their respective characteristic features of their different abodes) Vivasvān the Sun, is the eighth son of Aditi —44-46

The luminous Moon is known as Vasu , He is qualified with Dharma. Śukra or Bhārgava is the priest of the demons —47

Vrihaspati, of great fiery asceticism, is the priest of the Devas and is the son of Angirā , the handsome Budha is the son of the Moon —48

The ugly Satruu was born of the womb of Samgyā by the Sun Mangala was born of the womb of Viśeṣi by Fire —49

All these stars are born from the womb (of the firmament and are the progeny of Daksha Rāhu, the destroyer of beings, is the demon born of Sīphikā —50

These are the Abhimani Devas (the Masters , the presiding Deities)

in the spheres of the moon, the sun, the stars and the planets Thus the above abodes of the Devas are described —51

The abode of the thousand-rayed Sun is divine, fiery and of white colour The abode of the Moon is thousand-rayed, bright, energetic, and full of waters —52

Budha (Mercury) lives with the Sun The abode of Śukra (Venus) is sixteen-rayed and watery —53

The abode of Mangala (Mars) consists of nine rays and is red in appearance, water is also there Vṛihaspati (Jupiter) has 12 rays and the colour is turmeric yellow, His abode is big —54

The abode of Saturn is eight-rayed, black, and is made of iron Rādhū's abode is also made of iron and He causes pain to all beings —55

All the asterisms are the refuge of the virtuous Their rays are silvery and as they are the redeemers of all the beings, they are called Tārakās, also called Śiklikās on account of their white colour —56

The diameter of the Sun is nine thousand yojanas and its circumference is three times that (27000 yojanas) —57

N.B.—According to Surya Siddhanta the diameter of the Sun is 6500 yojanas and the diameter of the Moon is 480 yojanas

The diameter of the Moon is twice the diameter of the Sun, its circumference is thrice its diameter —58

The stars are situated above all and their diameter is one-half yojana —59

The size of Rīhu is the same with the stars, He travels below them. His place is made up of the shadow of the earth by Brahmā, it is full of Tamas (darkness) Rīhus enters into the Sun in the bright fortnight, in the dark fortnight it emerges from the Sun and enters into the Moon It is named Svar-bhānu, because He urges forward by His own rays —60-62.

The diameter and the circumference of Venus are one-sixteenth ( $\frac{1}{16}$ ) of those of the Moon in yojanas (63)

Sukra is the 16th part of the Moon The diameters and circumferences are measured all in Yojanas —63

The diameter and the circumference of Jupiter are one-fourth less than those of Venus, Mars and Ketu are one-fourth less than those of Jupiter Rāhri and Mercury's dimensions are one-fourth less than those of Mars and Ketu (the descending node) - 64-65

The diameter and circumference of each of the stars are the same as those of Mercury Some stars also have dimensions of five hundred,

four hundred, three hundred, two hundred, one hundred yojanas, there are some also having dimensions of one-half yojanas No stars exist less than these Now I will describe those malefic and benefic planets that are situated above them —66-68

Saturn, Jupiter, and Mars are slow-going planets (superior planets.) Below them the Moon, Sun, Mercury, and Venus are the quick-moving planets (inferior planets) There are as many crores of Tārakās as there Rikṣas (asterisms) —69-70

The Sun moves lowest down of all the planets Above Him the Moon travels —71.

The stars travel above the Moon, above Moon, travels Mercury, above Mercury, travels Venus, above Venus, travels Mars, above Mars, travels Jupiter, above Jupiter, travels Saturn —72-73

The Saptarśis (the great Bear) exist above Saturn, and above the great Bear exists the Pole (Dhruva) The three worlds are tied on to this Dhruva —74

The stars in the firmament are two lakh (200,000) yojanas apart from each other The planets above them are also placed similarly apart The Sun, Moon, and the planets run towards the stars and get merged in them They remain in their Uchcha and Nicha houses (aphelion and perihelion), and while entering into or coming out of them, they look on the beings So these are situated with regard to each other —75-78

The learned should know exactly their various conjunctions Thus have been described all about this earth, Dvipas, oceans, mountains, years, rivers, and the inhabitants thereof —79-80

The several locations of the luminous spheres of the firmament are brought on by the influence of the Sun In its central part, there exists the wind termed Āvarta. This pervades, in the form of a circle all the Nakshattra mandalas This has been so ordained by the Almighty God for the use of His several beings —81-82

The stars, the earth, etc, were located thus by Brahmā in their proper places at the beginning of the Kalpa —83

All these locations are assigned by the Supreme Being, no one can exactly describe the vastness of the infinite nature of this Universe No human being with his fleshy eyes can know exactly its true nature —84

*Here ends the one-hundred and twenty eighth chapter on the description of the Devagrūhas (the bright spheres of the firmament )*

## APPENDIX I

### THE CHARACTER AND THE ORIGIN OF THE PURÂNAS\*

The word 'Purâna' means 'old' in all the Sanskritic languages of India. In its use as a noun this word means the branch of religious literature which records, or rather once recorded, the deeds of gods and men of very olden days. The name 'Purâna' as a special branch of the sacred literature, occurs in the Atharva-veda. The very Riks in which we meet with the word 'Purâna,' should be discussed to get a clear conception of the character of the Purâpa-literature of the Vedic times. In translation, the 24th Rik of the 7th Sukta of the XI Kânda of the Atharva-veda stands as follows "From the residuum (uchchhîsta) of the Riks, the Sâmas, the Yajus and the Purâna (the ancient), the gods and the pitris were born." I have followed here the remarks of Prof. Deussen in adopting the translation of it by Prof. Lanman. Prof. Denssen rightly remarks that 'uchchhîsta' does not mean 'remnant of the offering', but it means such a residuum or remainder that one may think that one can get after subtracting from the universe all the forms of the world of phenomena. The learned editor of the Harvard Oriental Series is not correct, when he translates the word Purâna by the phrase 'the ancient'. The use of this word here being in conjunction with the three Vedas, it must mean a specific branch of the sacred literature. The 4th Rik of the 6th Paryâya of the XV Kânda of the Atharva-veda may be referred to to clear up the misconception. The Rik says

"He (the Prajâpata) moved out, etc., After him moved out both the Itihâsa (the narrative) \*\*\* and the Purâna (the story of old) and the Gathas (songs) and the Narasansis (eulogies). Verily both of the Itihâsa and of the Purâna and of the Gathas and of the Narasansis doth he become the dear abode who knoweth thus."

I give here also the translation of Prof. Lanman. The learned professor has translated the word 'Purâpa' by 'story of the old' though in the previous Rik referred to he has translated it by the vague phrase 'the ancient'. That this 'story of old' had a sacred character in the eyes of the Bard of the Sukta, has not been noticed by the great American scholar. But we shall presently see that the Purâna, as a branch of the Vedic literature, is as old and as sacred as the Vedic mantras themselves are, in their Samhitâ form.

\* We reproduce this article on the Purânas which was written as an introduction to the proposed translation of the Vâyu Purâna by Mr. B. C. Mazumdar of Sambalpur.—Editor

If we refer those post-Vedic treatises such as the Brāhmaṇas, which were composed with the distinct object of explaining the spiritual significance and utility of the Vedic ritual, we get many practical directions as to how the sacrificial rites should be performed in order to secure the highest spiritual benefit. Generally speaking, the Sāma-Veda, the Rigveda and the Atharvaveda Samhitās contained only the *mantras* which have to be recited at the *Yajñas*. The Yajur-veda Sambitā takes partly the character of Brāhmaṇa, in that, the directions regarding the sacrificial ceremonial have been given in it in some detail. But the post-Vedic literature devoted mainly to furnish explanations and to point out the religious importance of the Vedic *mantras* gives us clearer ideas as to how and for what object the *Yajñas* should be performed. It has been elaborately given in the Brihaddevatā as well as in other works of similar nature, that in order to perform a *Yajña*, the sacrificee must know (1) which *devatā* is to be invoked on what occasion, (2) what *mantra* has to be uttered to suit the occasion, (3) the name of the Rishi who saw or discovered the *mantra*, (4) the circumstances under which the *mantras* having been uttered, a special object was secured and (5) the ritualistic method or form in which the *mantras* have to be uttered (See Brihaddevata Prof Macdonell's edition). The collection of the *mantras* in the Samhitā form is of no use even to the learned priests, if they do not know (1) the proper god (2) the proper *mantra* and (3) the proper ritual suiting each particular occasion. I am inclined to suppose that the Brāhmaṇa priests were called 'Trayi,' or 'Tebijja' (Pali form,) because they had to learn the three things mentioned above, to be able to perform the priestly functions\*. There were details under each head of the above knowledge, and there were many practical directions or *Vidhi* regarding the forms of sacrificial ceremonial.

Leaving many details out, I can state on the authority of such works as the Brāhmaṇas and the Brihaddevatā that on every ceremonial occasion it had to be narrated by a special priest, that the particular *mantra*, which was being chanted by another priest to invoke a god, once proved efficacious, when in olden times a certain Rishi uttered the self-same *mantra*. It was absolutely necessary for a priest to know the history of the origin of *mantra*, and the success which the *mantra* once attained in obviating worldly damages and difficulties. As to the fitting occasions of the man-

\* It is not the place where I can discuss the question that the appellation 'Trayi' had originally no reference to the three collections of the Vedic *mantras*, but referred wholly to the three *vidyas* the Brāhmaṇas had to acquire, to perform a *Yajna*, be it according to Sama or Rik or Yajuh or Atharvana rites.

tras, there are detailed directions in the Brhmaṇas. The readers may refer to the excellent edition of the Atharva-veda Saṁhitā by Professor Lanman wherein the special purpose for which a Sukta is to be chanted, has been prefixed to each and every Sukta. As to the practical utility or phalaśruti, a particular successful case of olden times had to be cited and sung. The Brihaddevatā abounds with these examples. I cite here only one example. How Dīrgatama was born blind, has been stated in a story form in the 4th Chapter (verses 11–15). It has then been stated (verse 16) that some hymns or *mantras* (viz., Rigveda I, 140–56) were revealed to Dīrgatama, and he got back the use of his eyes. Thus it is very clear that at the time of the performance of the *yajñas*, recitation of the history of the *mantras* was an inseparable part of the ceremony. The stories that had to be cited in connection with the Rig-veda *mantras*, have all been related in the Brihaddevatā. This story-literature, absolutely necessary for the performance of the *yajñas*, was designated as Purāna or Purānetīkā.\*

We get it even in the introductory chapter of the Mahābhārata that the custom of reciting Purāna to the priests, who were initiated and ready to perform a holy sacrifice, was not forgotten, for, the Paurāṇika Ugrasraṇi asks the Rsis in the following words to ascertain whether they were in a fit state to listen to the narration —

“ Kritabhiṣekāḥ suchayah kritajapyā hutāgnayah  
Bhavantah āsane svasthā bīavīme kimaham dvijāḥ ? (15)

As to the fact that the Vedas have to be explained by the Ithāsā and the Purāna, a line occurs in the very introductory chapter of the Mahābhārata, namely, “ Itihāsapurāṇābhyām Vedam samupabrimhayet ” (267).

We can thus see that the Purāna literature is as old as the collection of the *mantras* themselves. The orthodox tradition is, that Vyāsa divided the Veda in the early years of the Kali *yuga*, and became the progenitor of the Purāna literature. We need not concern ourselves here with the question as to when and under what circumstances the different Vedic Saṁhitās were compiled. But there can be no doubt that once it became necessary to divide the Veda, or more properly to classify the Vedic *mantras* and rites from the ritualistic standpoint of view. When this division or classification had to be made, Purānetīkā could not but form

---

\* The custom of the present day, that at the time of the Sraddha or other ceremonies a Paurāṇika has to sit apart and recite some Purāna text, is after the oldest tradition of the Vedic ritual. Now the Purānas are not read to explain or glorify the *mantras*, but merely because it is a long standing custom to do so.

a separate branch under the Vedas. The account we get by tradition is therefore not wrong that the Purāṇa as a literature arose out of the work of classification or division of the Vedas, no matter whether the author of that work of classification or division be called Vyāsa or not. Since the word 'vyas' means in Sanskrit (to divide into parts or to arrange), the sage of the olden times who was principally instrumental in bringing about the aforesaid distribution and arrangement, can be safely said to be the progenitor of the Purāṇa as a special branch of the sacred literature.

That the Purāṇa as a sacred literature was both taught and learnt by the Brāhmaṇas along with the Vedic *mantras* and the other correlated sciences, is distinctly mentioned in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa (XI V 7 1, XIV V 4 10). There is similar mention also in the Taittiriya Aranyaka (II 9-10). The Upaniṣads have referred to Itihāsa Purāṇam as a subject studied by the orthodox Vedic scholars. The old Chāndogya Upaniṣad of the Sāma-veda school states that the Itihāsa-Purāṇam is the Fifth Veda in the division of the Vedas "Rig-veda Yajurvedah Sāmaveda Atharvanschaturtha Itihāsa Purāṇah panchamo vedānām vedah", Ch VII 1 4.

From the remarks made before regarding the Purāṇa-literature, it is clear beyond any doubt that the Purāṇa-literature was bound to be recognised as the Fifth Veda, when the Atharvana collection was recognised as the fourth division of the Veda. When the Mahābhārata was compiled as a Sambitā with the nucleus of the Bhāsiat-kathā, all the stories that existed at the time of the compilation in the name of Purāṇetibhāsa were included in, or intertwined with, the Kuru Pāṇḍava story. It is for that reason that Mahābhārata Sambitā claimed for itself the title 'the Panchama Veda', and that the people considered that title to be quite legitimate.

We have noticed that the Purāṇa has been in association with the Itihāsa from a remote past. There are many instances in the Mahābhārata, where the Purāṇa has been spoken of as a depository of Vedic Śruti (Nāṇāśrutiśamāyuktam). We meet also with such passages in the Mahābhārata where in narrating some legends or 'Vamśānucharitam' it has been stated by way of an introductory remark, that "Mayā Śrutam idam pūrvam Purāne puruṣarāshba," or "Atrāpyudāharantimam Itihāśam purāṇanam," or "Śruyatēhi Purāṇe pi Jatila-nāma Gautami," etc. These instances show that the Purāṇa handed down the 'Vamśānucharitam' and other historical accounts from generation to generation and its character as the history not only of the gods, but also of men, was established even in the days of the later Atharvana Sūktas. Being the history of the gods and the Risis, the Purāṇa-literature had to deal with the original or

primary creation, the secondary creation or the creation of the world men were living in and the Manvantara revolutions. Again, as associated with Itihāsa, it had to narrate the stories of the ideal epoch-making rulers and to maintain the records of many Raj families of note. In this combined character, the Purāna of the olden times did not much differ from the modern Purāṇas, since, for the definition of the Purāna we get it in almost all the Purāṇas that the subjects referred to above must be delineated in a Purāna. I quote the definition here of the Vāyu Purāṇa which has a special significance in this introduction.—

Kīrtanam

Svargascha pratisvargasca vamso manvantarānicha  
Vamsanucharitam cheti Purāṇam pancha laksavam

—(Ch IV 10-11).

Though I could not cite any proof from the oldest Vedic literature in support of the statement that Purāṇa, as associated with Itihāsa, had the character of a history, as we now understand it, I think the evidence of the Mahābhārata goes to some extent to establish my view. That the history of the mighty kings from the remotest antiquity was maintained in the very work in which the history of the creation was preserved, is pretty clear from the accounts of Megasthenes. We get it recorded in the fragments of the accounts of Megasthenes that when he came to India, the Indians narrated to him their previous history as well as the history of the creation of the world. Arrian records in his *Indica* that Megasthenes reported that the Hindus reckoned 6,042 years from the earliest day to the time of Chandra Gupta. It must also be noticed that Arrian has remarked in his *Indica* that it was a matter of wonder with him how Megasthenes could give an accurate account of 118 tribes and 58 rivers of India without visiting most parts of that country. This points to the fact, as has been noticed by Mr A M T Jackson in his instructive essay —The Epic and the Puranic Notes [J R A S (Bom) Extra 1905 and p 67], that Megasthenes must have got before him a regular catalogue of rivers and tribes. Non-mention of the character of the Purāṇa and Itihāsa in the oldest literature, does not prove that the Purāṇa did not assume the character of a history. It is curious to note that though Purāṇa is found mentioned in the Atharva-veda and in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, this word does not occur in any Sūtra of Pāṇini. It may however be mentioned that the Vārtika and the Mahābhāṣya mention it in association with the Itihāsa. The readers can easily see how unsafe it is to establish any proposition on the evidence of Pāṇini's mentioning or not mentioning any word in his work.

**garbham kuksistha sa vipadyate Jatovē na chiram jīvet, jīvedva, durvalendriya**

Tasmāt atyanta bālāyam garbhādhānam na kārayet (X 13)

The mention of the 18 Purāṇas in the last two chapters of the very last Parva is quite singular, for, the Mahābhārata Saṁhitā does not disclose this knowledge elsewhere, even where there has been special enumeration of different branches of knowledge and of different Śāstriks treatises. The last or the sixth chapter may be easily disregarded, as the Mahābhārata is said to have ended with the fifth chapter. The fifth chapter also seems to be a late addition, for, in the first place the "svargārohana" concluded with the fourth chapter, and in the second place the fifth chapter has been improved by quotations from other previous chapters of the book. For example, the slokas 68 and 69 are the same as 395 and 396 of Chapter II of the Adi Parva. From the very fact that many Purāṇas, including the Vāyu, name the Mahābhārata Saṁhitā, it is proved conclusively that neither the group of the 18 modern Purāṇas nor the Vāyu Purāṇa could exist at the time of the compilation of the Mahābhārata.

I have shown that (1) the Purāṇa as a branch of sacred literature did exist in the Vedic days bearing exactly that character which is attributed to it in the extant Purāṇas, and (2) that till the time of the compilation of the Mahābhārata as the Fifth Veda Saṁhitā, the extant Purāṇas were not in existence at least in their present shape and form. Again on reference to the mythology of the Hindus as it was by about 140 B C, it can be stated that the modern Purāṇas with their pantheon of new gods could not come into existence in the second century B C. Gods like Durgā, Ganesa and the Paurāṇika Siva were not known to Mahābhāṣya of 140 B C, or to modern Manusamhitā which has not got a greater antiquity. Of my essays on Siva-pujā, Ganesa and Durgā, I may refer the readers only to the last essay (J R A S, 1906, p 365) and my paper on 'Phallus worship in the Mahābhārata' (J R A S, 1907, p 337). The other essays having been published in Bengali magazines, I could not refer the readers to them.

Besides setting up the above highest limit, no definite chronology can be fixed in respect of the extant 18 Mahā-Purāṇas. On comparing with the Paurāṇika stories of the Vedic days, it may be asserted without any fear of contradiction that many stories in the modern Purāṇas, though based on Vedic basis, have not only been changed, but have been given quite new and inconsistent forms. New stories unknown to the Vedic literature are often met with. The scope and the character of the

Purāna or the Purāpas made it inevitable that new lists of kings should be introduced with the progress of time. As the Purāpas had to be recited to the people throughout all ages to communicate to them the glory of the gods and the noble deeds of the ideal sages and kings, the language of the Purāna of one age could not but change at a subsequent time. With the expansion of Aryan influence in India, the new geographical names of countries, rivers and mountains were required to be introduced. When we notice such changes wrought at a particular time, we cannot say that such and such a book bearing evidence of such a time was really composed at such a late date.

Since the modern Purānas radically differ from the Vedic Purānas, both in mythology and in the narration of the stories, they may be said to be altogether new in their origin and compiled long after the second century B C. But the modern Purāpas having once been compiled, do not seem to have much changed in essential matters, in subsequent times. The additions or accretions of subsequent ages are to be regarded merely as additions and accretions. The old lists of kings handed down from the Vedic times must have been preserved in the new Purānas. When giving a genealogy of the Iksaku Rajas, the Matsya Purāna states —

Atrānu vamśa slokoyam vīpraigatih purātanaḥ

Iksākunāmayam vamśah Sumitrānto bhavisyati

Similar statements occur in all the Purāpas, wherein old genealogies have been given. That the Paurānika lists of kings of very olden times are not fanciful, and that old chronology can be roughly established with their help have been very ably shown by Mr F E Pargiter (Retired Puisne Judge of the Calcutta High Court) in his masterly paper on the "Ancient Indian Genealogies and Chronology" (J R A S, 1910, pp 1-56). I cannot resist the temptation of quoting the remark of Mr Pargiter that "these old genealogies, with their incidental stories, are not to be looked upon as legends or fables, devoid of basis or substance, but contain genuine historical tradition, and may well be considered and dealt with from a common-sense point of view."

Those who are in favour of the opinion that the principal modern Purānas were compiled during the time of the Imperial Guptas because of the fact that the Royal genealogies do not go far beyond the limit of their time, ignore the fact that when after the Huna invasion the Gupta Empire was practically dissolved towards the end of the fifth century A D, the bards or chroniclers could not get any particular Royal House which could be designated as Imperial. The downfall of Hindu India commences from this date. Petty kingdoms commenced to grow all

ever India like mushrooms. In olden days when the Indian Empire was not established under one overlord, the kingdoms and principalities of Northern India had such interrelation amongst themselves that dynastical genealogies and ballads of Royal exploits could be inserted in the time-honoured Purānetīkā.

But when after the fall of the Imperial Guptas, a considerably large number of small kingdoms were established, no unity could be preserved, and no interrelation could exist. I cannot deal with this political question elaborately here beyond mentioning what actually took place. Every Raja had his own bard, and he never failed to keep a fairly accurate Royal genealogical list of his master's house, as is known to all scholars who deal with the epigraphic literature.

In this dark period of Hindu India, the Purānas, nay even the Mahābhārata Samhitā, received interpolations to record the glory of the new tribal gods and the new local *tirthas*. At different centres of importance several Purāpas received additional books of considerable bulk. Thus it was that the Brahma Purāna swelled in bulk in Orissa, the Agni Purāna obtained some new chapters at Gaya and the Padma Purāna besides singing the glory of Puskara followed the poet Kalidāsa of his own country in narrating the stories of Sakuntalā and of Raghu's progeny.

Beyond noticing these local additions or changes necessitated by the change of time, we cannot say, unless proved otherwise, that the Purāpas have not retained their general form and character since their compilation. This time must be, as I have already stated, long after the second or even first century B C.

I have stated it above that the Purānas originated when the Vedas were classified or divided to secure ritualistic convenience. This does not imply that Vyāsa was the author of the Purānetīkā-literature. The Mahābhārata also does not assert it. It has been only stated in the Mahābhārata that Vyāsa taught the Purāṇa to some disciples of his, and in the hands of those disciples the Purānas were developed. But if we separate the Bhāratī-kathā from the Purānas, we find that the Mahābhārata favours this opinion that the Purānas owed their origin to Romaharsana (XII, 319 21), while the Bhāratī-kathā was promulgated by the other disciples of Vyāsa (I 1 *et seq.*) The name 'Romaharsana' is extremely interesting. A very good derivation of this name has been given in the Vāyu Purāna itself (I 16) —

Lomani haryam chakre srotrinam yat subhagital  
Karmans prathitastena loka smriti Lomaharsanah

This shows clearly that it was not a particular person to whom the authorship of the Purānas is to be attributed. Lomaharsana is a class name to represent those persons, who, by reciting some wonderful and exciting stories to the people, made the hair to stand on the bodies of the audience. That the 18 Purānas were composed at different times by different sages, has been clearly stated in many Purānas. The order in which the Purānas were compiled is also given generally in the Purānas. This order is as follows—(1) Brahme, (2) Padma, (3) Viṣṇu, (4) Vāyu or Śiva, (5) Bhāgavata, (6) Nāradīya, (7) Mārkandeyū, (8) Agni, (9) Bhavisyā, (10) Brahmavaivarta, (11) Liṅga, (12) Varāha, (13) Skanda, (14) Vāmana, (15) Kūrma, (16) Matsya, (17) Garuḍa, (18) Brāhmaṇḍa. That this list was inserted after the compilation of the Purānas is apparent on the face of it, for, all the Purānas could not manage to copy one another.

The narrators of the Purānas have been designated generally by the class-name 'Sūta'. The Sūtas and Māgadhas are held to be of low origin in the modern Smṛitis. In the Vāyu Purāna also (I. 32 *et seq.*) a Sūta is said to have no right or 'adhaiśra' to study the Vedas. Some passages of the Mahābhārata Saṃhitā also support this view. It is however to be noted that the solemn introduction of 'Sauti' in the 'Naimisāranya' as described in the introduction of the Mahābhārata, shows that the narrator of the Purānetīhāsa, was not a member of any degraded caste, but was one who could be honoured by the Brāhmaṇas. Many Purānas also show that venerable 'Munis' like Mārkandeya and Nārada were the narrators of the Purānas. That in the Vedic times very respectable Brāhmaṇas recited the Purānas, cannot be doubted. It may be owing to the fact that the Paurāṇikas commenced to earn money by singing the ballads to the common people that they lowered themselves in the estimation of others. Another reason for this degradation may be supposed. It may be that when the kings of Magadha became supreme in India, men other than Brāhmaṇas were employed as chroniclers and ballad-singers, and as such the Paurāṇikas were regarded to belong to a non-priestly class, though in reality they discharged some functions of the priests on ceremonial occasions."

It is not difficult to understand how once long after the Vedic times and previous to the time of the compilation of the Mahābhārata and the modern Purānas, the Purāna literature became non-Brahmanical in the

---

\* Now-a-days there are many degraded Brāhmaṇas who have to discharge some important functions in connection with the Sraddha ceremony of the high class Hindus. It must be mentioned, however, that very respectable Brāhmaṇas now-a-days recite Purānas in India on ceremonial occasions, and no one is degraded because of this profession of his.

strict sense of the word. When the true Vedic priests extolled the Rajas, they chose only the ideal kings from the priestly point of view. For this reason many Rajas of real note were not included in the old Brahmanical lists of the kings, and many otherwise insignificant rulers were lauded in the Brâhmaṇas. Many instances of it will be pointed out in my notes on the genealogical sections of the Vâyu Purâna. This is what led the powerful kings to employ their own bards to sing their glorious exploits, and to record their family history. This Kshatriya-Purânetibhâsa was bound to be incorporated in the modern Brahmanic Purânas when the Brâhmaṇas had to depend upon the favour of the Royal houses. In his paper referred to above, Mr Pargiter has made the following remark touching this point —

"This Kshatriya literature grew up in virtual independence of Brahmanical literature, and only when it had developed into an imposing mass and had attained great popular appreciation was it taken over by the Brahmanas as a not unworthy branch of knowledge. It was then that it was arranged and augmented with stories and discourses fashioned after Brahmanical ideas."

B C MAZUMDAR.

## APPENDIX II

### THE DATE OF THE MAHABHARATA WAR.

(*Various Views*)

I The most important question, in Indian Pauranic Chronology is, as to the period of the Great Bhārata War, for, if that period is fixed, the chronology of other kings who reigned before and after that war, can be easily determined from the materials to be found in this Purāna and to which alone, we shall confine our attention at present. The reign of Chandra Gupta Maurya has been the great landmark in Indian History. He has been identified with the Sandracottus of the Greeks. "His accession to the throne of Magadha may be dated with practical certainty in 322 B C," says Mr V Smith. "The fixed point from which to reckon backwards is the year 322 B C the date for the accession of Chandra Gupta Maurya, which is certainly correct, with the possible error not exceeding three years" (*Early History of India* 3rd Ed., 44).

There are two fixed points from either of which chronological calculations in ancient Indian History may be made. Both of these methods have been employed in the Purānas.

#### I Nanda's Installation

The first starting point taken in all the Purānas is the date of the installation of Mahāpadma Nanda. This date is fixed at 422 B C. And the interval from that point backwards to the birth of Parīkṣit, who was born in the year of the Great War, and forward upto the modern times is calculated. This may be called the Nanda Era.

#### II The Cycle of 2700 years or Saptarsi Era

The second method of calculation, or rather of checking the first method by the second, is the cycle of 2700 years in which period the Great Bear is supposed to make one complete circle. One complete cycle of 2700 years elapsed between the time of King Pratipa in the Paurava line, (No. 88 App., Table of Mr Pargiter) and the end of the Andhra dynasty. This may be called the cyclic era or Saptarsi era. From Mahāpadma Nanda to the last Andhra King Pulomāvi the interval which elapsed was 836 years according to the Purānas. From Mahāpadma Nanda to the birth of Parīkṣit in the year of the Great War was 1015

years (or rather 1050 according to the printed text of the Matsya) 836 together with 1050 when taken from 2700 give us 836 Pratipa, the Paurava King, reigned therefore 814 years before the Muhabharata War If we take 1015 as the years elapsed between Nanda and Parikṣit, then Pratipa reigned 849 years before the birth of Parikṣit

This period is calculated thus — "The Great Bear was situated equally with regard to the lunar constellation Puṣya while Pratipa was king At the end of the Andhras, who will be in the 27th century afterwards, the cycle repeats itself In the circle of the lunar constellations, where in the Great Bear revolves and which contains 27 constellations in its circumference, the Great Bear remains 100 years in (i.e., conjoined with) each in turn This is the cycle of the Great Bear, and is remembered as being, according to divine reckoning, 6 divine months and 7 divine years According to those constellations divine time proceeds by means of the Great Bear The two front stars of the Great Bear, which are seen when risen at night, the lunar constellation which is seen situated equally between them in the sky, the Great Bear is to be known as conjoined with that constellation 100 years in the sky This is the exposition of the conjunction of the lunar constellations and the Great Bear The Great Bear was conjoined with the Magha's in Parikṣit's time 100 years It will be in (i.e., conjoined with) the 24th constellations 100 years at the termination of the Andhras" (Pargiter)

*An Extract from "Kings of Magadha" by Col Wilford in the Asiatic Researches  
Vol 9, (1805 A D)*

The Hindus have thought proper to connect their chronology with an astronomical period of a most strange nature It is that of the seven Rishis, or seven stars of the wain, which are supposed to go through the Zodiac, in a retrograde (?) motion in the space of 2700 years They are at present in the Lunar mansion of Śvatika, according to the most famous astrologers of Benares, who cautioned me against the erroneous opinion of other astronomers, in various parts of India, who insist that they are now in Anurādhā

I requested an able astronomer to give me, in writing an account of this wonderful revolution This period, says he, is not obvious to the sight, but it does however, really exist, being mentioned in old Sāstras, and by holy Munis, and certainly the seven Rishis preside in every Lunar mansion, for a hundred years, and their presence, or rather influence, over it is sufficiently obvious and according to Śākalya Muni, their yearly motion is of eight liptas, or minutes

In the Vārṣhi Samhitā, the Viṣṇu-Purāṇa, and also in the Bhāgavata, I believe it is declared, that, at the birth of Parikṣit, the seven Rishis had been in Maghā for four years, or 4005 years ago, and they were in Purvāśāḍa in the time of Nanda.

But in the Brahma-Siddhānta, it is declared, that they were then in Śravāṇī, which makes a difference of fifteen Lunar mansions, or 1500 years so that, according to that author, the Kaliyuga began 2405 years ago, or 1600 years BC, supposing the seven Rishis to be now in Śvatika, in which they are to remain ten years more, but, if they are in Anurādhā, the Kaliyuga began 1400 years BC The author of the Gārgī-Samhitā, according to Bhāttoṭpala in his commentary, seems to be of that opinion, when he says, that the seven Rishis were in Maghā, in the twilight between the Dvāpara and the Kaliyuga In the Lalitakādhal-vriddhi, it is declared, that they were then in Abhijit, or in the first of Śravāṇī

The names of the seven Rishis, shining in the wain, are Pulaha, Kratu, Atri, Pulastya, Angiras, Vasistha, and, close to it is a small star, representing Arundhati his wife, the seventh is Marichi My friends insist that their motion is perceptible,

and they shewed them plainly to me in Swatika. Of this they wanted to convince me, by drawing a line, from that mansion through the stars B and A of the Great Bear. When they are in Maghā then the line passes through this asterism and the stars D and A. By these means they could see them in every part of the starry heavens. When Nanda was born, they were then in Purvasadha, or about 400 years BC, and he died 327 before the Christian era. Astrologers watch carefully their motion, because their influence is variously modified through every mansion, and whatever new married couple see them in a fortunate moment, they are sure to live happy together for a hundred years. Hence, says the ingenious Mr. Bailly, we may safely conclude, that nobody ever saw them in that propitious moment.

The period of the seven Rishis begins to be neglected in the more northern parts of India, because they are not always to be seen at the lucky moment, and, in their stead, use Dhruva, or the polar star. This star is often mentioned in the sacred books of the Hindus, and it is connected with their mythology, but has not long been near enough to the pole, to be thus denominated after it, and for a long series of years, before, there was no Dhruva or immovable star. Be this as it may, Dhruva with his relations, shines in the Lesser Bear. In the Yantra-ratna-valyam, this constellation is called the fish of Dhruva-Brahmanad'hikara. It consists of thirteen stars. Dhruva is in the mouth, and Uttanapada his father in the tail. The mouth is turned towards Bharani, and its revolution is the same.

The method of calculation, adopted by the Purānas, however, is to take Nanda as the starting point. The last of the Śīdunāga was Mahānundin, who had a son by a Śūdra woman. He was known as Mahāpadma or the famous Nanda, whose eight sons succeeded him. This Nanda family was brought to an end by the Indian Machiavelli, Kautilya or Chānakya. Chandra Gupta was placed on the throne of the Nandas by this king-maker Chānakya. About this event Mr. V. Smith says —

"Mahānundin, the last of the dynasty, is said to have had, by a Śūdra or low caste woman, a son, named Mahāpadma Nanda who usurped the throne, and so established the Nanda family or dynasty. This event may be dated in or about 372 B.C. \*\*\*"

"The Greek or Roman historians \*\*\* ranking as contemporaries witnesses throw a light on real history. When Alexander was stopped in his advance at the Hyphasis, in 326 B.C. he was informed \*\*\* that the king of the Prachhei &c \*\*\* was Xandrames or Agramis."

The reference to this king is evidently to one of the Nandas.

The date of the accession of Nanda is calculated from that of Chandra Gupta Maurya, who ascended the throne in 322 B.C. The Nanda dynasty, according to Mr. Vincent Smith, lasted for 50 years, when it was replaced by the Maurya. So adding 50 to 322, the above figure 372 B.C. is arrived at by Mr. V. Smith as the date of the accession of Mahāpadma Nanda. But all the Purānas are unanimous in stating that the nine Nandas reigned for 100 years, and we have taken that in our calculations.

The date of accession of Mahāpadma Nanda would, therefore, be 422 B C. instead of 372 B C

*This 422 B C is the starting point backwards and forwards in Puranic calculations*

Chandra Gupta Maurya displaced the Nanda family. The nine Nandas reigned for 100 years. Before that, there was the Sisunāga dynasty, and before which was the Pradyota dynasty and before that the Brihadrathas. The following table shows the periods of the reigns of these dynasties —

(1) Chandra Gupta's accessions	822 B C
(2) Nanda dynasty	. 100
(3) Sisunāga	860
(4) Pradyotas	152
(5) Brihadrathas from the time of Chāndyauparichara	1000
<b>Total</b>	<b>1612</b>
Deduct from Chāndya to Sahadeva	
	171
Balance adding	1441, and 822 "
	= 1763 B C, the year of the Great War

The Māhābhārata war took place when Sahadeva of Bāhradratha family was king. From Vasu Chāndya Uparichar upto Sahadeva there were 13 kings namely, (1) Vasu Chāndyauparichara, (2) Brihadratha, (3) Kusāgra, (4) Vṛigabha, (5) Punyavān or, Puṣpavān, (6) Punya or Puṣya, (7) Satyadhriti, (8) Dhanusa, (9) Saīva, (10) Sambhava, (11) Brihadratha, (12) Jarāsandha, (13) Sahadeva. After Sahadeva there were 19 or 32 kings (or 22 according to Mr Pargiter) upto Rūpuñjaya, the last. The Great War, therefore, took place, on the above assumption, *one thousand four hundred and forty-one years before the accession of Chandra Gupta in 322 B C or in other words that the Great War took place in or about 1763 B C*

II But says a Western writer — “Duncker in his History of Antiquity (Vol iv, pp 74-7) gives four calculations for the beginning of the Kali age, that is, approximately for the date of the great battle, viz., 1300, 1175, 1200, and 1418 B C” (as quoted by Mr Pargiter in J R A S for January 1910)

Our figure does not correspond with the figures of Duncker. But the last figure of Duncker corresponds with the following verse of the

Matsya Purāna (Chapter 273, verse 36) as we find it in ordinary printed text —

“महापद्माभिषेकात् यावत्जन्मपरीक्षितः ।  
एवं वर्षसहस्रं तु लोयं पञ्चाशतुरम् ॥”

“Now from Mahāpadma's inauguration to Parīkṣit's birth, this interval is known as 1050 years”

Now Mahāpadma, called also Nanda, the founder of the Nanda dynasty was crowned one hundred years before Chandra Gupta, according to the reading of all the Purāṇas. Consequently, the coronation of Mahāpadma took place in 422 B C or 100 years before the accession of Chandra Gupta Maurya in 322 B C. Adding this figure 422 to 1050 we get 1472. That was the time when Parīkṣit was born (during the Mahābhārata war) as the posthumous son of Abhimanyu who was killed in that war, if we take the above verse as correct, which it is not as will be proved later on. According to this calculation the Great War took place 1472 years before Christ. Our previous calculation gave us 1763 B C as the year of the Great War, while this gives us 1472 B C as the year of that war. Thus there is a difference of 291 years.

III But in the Viṣṇu P also occurs a similar verse (Book IV. ch 24 v 32)

“यावत् परीक्षितो जन्म यावत्नन्दाभिषेचनस् ।  
एतद्वर्षसहस्रान्तु लोयं पञ्चदशोत्तरम् ॥”

“From the birth of Parīkṣit up to the inauguration of Nanda the interval is 1015 years” Adding 1015 to 422 we get 1437, which is similar to the figure just obtained. The Great War took place in 1437 B C.

Shall we, therefore, take 1437 B C as the year of the Great war in preference to 1763 B C a figure arrived at by adding the periods of reigns from Somādhi up to Chandra Gupta's 322 B C? This is the question that we have to consider next.

IV The next question that naturally arises is what kings reigned after this Great War. Some of the Purāṇas contain list of kings that reigned in various parts of India, at the time of the Mahābhārata war. Three such dynasties are important, though only one of them is useful, as fixing the date of the Great War. The first dynasty is that of the Pauravas, whose capital was Indraprastha, subsequently removed to Kausambi, on the banks of the Yamuna, thirty miles to the west of Allahabad. The second dynasty is that of the Ikṣvākus, whose capital was Ajodhya and in later times Kāśī.

was also included in its sphere. The third dynasty is that of the Bârahadrathas of Magadha, and their successors the Pradyotas and Sisunâgas. This last is the dynasty, the historical existence of which is put beyond all reasonable doubt, by the rise of Buddhism at a time when Bimbisâra a Sisunâga king was reigning in Magadha.

The Matsya Purâna gives a somewhat complete list of these kings of Magadha in chapter 271. Thus, it says —

"When the Bhîrata's battle took place and Sahadeva, the king of Magadha, was slain, his heir, Somâdhi, became king in Girivraja."

He and his successors are named below together with their periods of reign.

Name.	Period of reign.
1. Somâdhi	58 years
2. Srutâravas	64 "
3. Ayutayus or Apratipî	26 "
4. Niramittra	40 "
5. Sukshatra (or Puraksha)	58 "
6. Brihatkarma	28 "
7. Senâjit	28 "
	—
	290 years

The Vâyu Purâna then adds to the above list "Senâjit Sâmpratam chapi, etâ vai bhokṣyate samâh." "Senâjit is now enjoying the earth the same number of years." It was thus in the reign of this Senajit, that the Great sacrificial session took place in Naimisâranya. At that time, Adhisima Kriṣṇa of the Paurava dynasty was reigning in Indraprastha. About him, the Matsya Purâna in chapter 50 says —

"Adhisima Kriṣṇa dharmâtma Sâmpratam yo mahâyaśah" that is Adhisima Kriṣṇa was the reigning king, when this original of the Matsya Purâna was recited by Sûta.

Thus this Adhisima Kriṣṇa of the Paurava dynasty, and Senâjit of Bârahadratha dynasty, were contemporaries, and they flourished several years after the Great War.

Next arises the question — When these two kings were reigning in Indraprastha and Girivraja (Magadha,) respectively, who was their contemporary in Ayodhya? The answer is that Divâkara of the Ikṣwâku family was the contemporary of Senajit and Adhisima Kriṣṇa. About this Divâkara, the Matsya Purâna, in chapter 271 says —

"Tasyaśa Madhyadeśetu  
Ayodyhâ nagari Śubhâ  
Divâkarasya sahitâ"

and Vāyu Purāna makes it clearer, by saying.—

“ Yaścha śāmpratam adhyāste.

Ayodhām nagarim nripath”

Thus these three kings, Adhisīma Kṛiṣṇa in Hastināpur of the Paurava dynasty, Dīvikara at Ayodhyā, of the Ikṣvāku dynasty, and Senājīt in Girivrajā of the Bṛihadrathas were contemporaries

The list of the successors of Senājīt with the periods of their reign as given in the Matsya Purāna, chapter 271 may now be resumed, viz —

		... 40 years of reign.
1	Śrutanjaya	26
2	Vibhu	58
3	Suchi	28
4	Kṣema	64
5	Suvrata	35
6	Sunetra	58
7	Nirvṛiti	28
8	Trinetra	48
9.	Dridasena	33
10	Mahinetra	60
11.	Suchala	83
12	Sunetra	32
13	Matsajīt	25
14.	Vievajīt	50
15	Ripuñjaya	650 or 502 } Not in our text. excluding the three not men- tioned in our text.

The Matsya Purāna according to one text, then adds that these sixteen kings including Senājīt are to be known as the future Bṛihadrathas, sixteen others had preceded him and their kingdom will last 723 years. But there is another reading which says that these 32 kings reigned for 1000 years. That reading is in harmony with the text of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa

In the Matsya Purāṇa chapter 271, verses 29 and 30 say that these 32 kings will be the future Bṛihadrathas and they will reign for full 1000 years. The list given, however, enumerates only 22 kings. The word “Dvātrimdat” is perhaps a mistake for “Dvavimśat” which appears to be the correct reading as given in the Brahmānda Purāṇa. Both readings are given below —

“द्वाचिंशतु त्रया होते भवितारो बृहद्रथाः ।

पृथ्वे वर्षाद्वयं तु सेवा रात्र्यं भविष्यति ॥”

“ And these 32 kings will be the future Bṛihadrathas. Their kingdom will last full 1000 years ”

But the Brahmananda Purâna reading is —

द्वादशिंशत नृपा होते भवितारो बृहद्रथाः ।  
तृष्णं वर्षसहकं तु तेषां राज्यं भविष्यति ॥”

“These 22 kings are the future Brihadrathas. Their kingdom will last for full 1000 years.”

This latter reading appears correct, because it corresponds with the reading of the Viñânu Purâna and the total of the reigns of these 22 kings comes up very nearly to 1000 years. Or the fact may be that there were really 32 kings who ruled for 1000 years, though only 22 have been enumerated by name, the names of other ten forgotten as being insignificant.

The Viñânu text is —

“द्वादशान्धसुतात् सहदेवात् सोमापि:, तस्मात् भुत्त-  
पान्, तस्याप्यगुलायुः, ततश्च निरमित्रः, तत्तव्यः सुखशस्तस्मादपि बृहकर्मा, ततश्च  
सेनाजित्, तस्माच्च भ्रुतङ्गयः, ततो विप्रः, तस्य च पुत्रः शुचिनामा भविष्यति । तस्यापि  
क्षेम्यः, ततश्च सुव्रतात् धर्मः, ततः सुध्रमः, ततो द्रीढसेनः, ततः सुमतिः, तस्मात्  
सुबलः, तस्य सुनीतो भविता । ततः सत्यजित्, सत्यजितो विश्वजित्, तस्यापि रिपुञ्जयः  
पुत्रः, इत्येते बाह्यद्रथाः भूपतयो वर्षसहके भविष्यन्ति ॥

“Jarâsandha's son was Sahadeva, his son was (1) Somaþpi, his son will be (2) Srutavat, his son will be (3) Ayutayus, his son will be (4) Niramitra, his son will be (5) Sukeattrâ, his son will be (6) Brihatkarman, his son will be (7) Senâjît, his son will be (8) Srutanjaya, his son will be (9) Vipra, his son will be (10) Suchi, his son will be (11) Kshemya, his son will be (12) Suvrata, his son will be (13) Dbarina, his son will be (14) Suðrama, his son will be (15) Drîghasena, his son will be (16) Sunati, his son will be (17) Subala, his son will be (18) Sunita, his son will be (19) Satyajit, his son will be (20) Visvajit, his son will be (21) Rîpuñjaya. These are the Barahadrathas, who will reign for a thousand years.”

*Note* —The opinion of Mr Pargitter that from the accession of Senâjît to the end of this dynasty there were 16 kings who ruled for 723 years does not seem to be borne out by our text. If thirty-two kings ruled for 1000 years, then 16 kings before Senâjît ruled for 1000-723 or 277 years. This would give an average reign of 17 years, a very much shorter period than the average of forty-five years per reign according to the previous reading. The total figures of the reigns of the 16 kings from Senâjît to Rîpuñjaya does amount, however, to full 700 years. The verse “trayo-vims-adhikam teṣām rajyam cha sata-saptakam” may be a

wrong reading. The Barhadratha dynasty was founded by the father of king Brihadratha.

"This dynasty was founded by Brihadratha, son of Vasu Chaidyoparichara, and he and his nine successors reigned down to the great battle. From the battle to Senājīt 6 kings are named, excluding Senājīt who is spoken of as the then reigning king, and from and including him to the end 16 kings are mentioned. There were thus 82 kings altogether, 10 before the battle and twenty-two after, or from the standpoint of Senājīt's reign 16 past and 16 future. Lines "Sodas-alte nrīpa jneya &c" of Matsya Purāna take the stand point of his reign and speak of him and his successors as the 16 future kings, and say *prīmī facie* their total duration was 728 years.

Lines Dvātrimsac cha &c, of Matsya Purāna which are not in some manuscripts of Matsya Purāna reckon (in a way) from the beginning and speak of all the thirty-two kings as future since most of them were posterior to the Battle, and thus they say the whole dynasty lasted 1000 years. These two statements are not contradictory but are hardly compatible, because taken together they assign 728 years to the last 16 kings and only 277 to the first 16. The total of 1000 years for 82 kings is excessive, and that of 728 years for 16 kings is absurd. But if we can read lines "Sodas-alte nrīpa jneya &c", as two independent sentences, and treat *tesam* as applying, not merely to those 16 future kings but to the Brihadrathas generally, their purport stands thus—"These 16 kings are to be known as the future Brihadrathas—and their kingdom (that is, the kingdom of the Brihadrathas) lasts 728 years." The total duration, then 728 years, would be within possibility, for the average reign would be about 2½ years. This rendering would of course discredit lines Dvātrimsac cha nrīpa &c. If we read Vāyu according to another manuscript of Matsya Purāna with that construction, the total period would be 700 years and would give an average reign of just under 22 years which would be *vims-adhikam*."

This opinion of Mr Pargiter is however not borne out by our text of the Matsya Purāna Anandāram series. In chapter 50 of that Purāṇa we find the dynasty of Brihadrathas given in verses 26-33 namely, (1) Vasu Chaidyaparichara, (2) Brihadratha (3) Kuśāgra, (4) Viśabha, (5) Punyavān or Puṣpavān, (6) Punya or Pusya, (7) Satyadhrīti,

*Note.—According to some manuscript there was no king like Punya or Pusya.*

(8) Dhanuṣa, (9) Sarva, (10) Sambhava, (11) Brihadratha, (12) Jara-sandha, (13) Sahadeva

*Note.—This was the king who was killed in the great war mentioned in this chapter*

(14) Somadhi, (15) Srutasarvas, (16) Ayutayus or Apratipī, (17) Nirāmitra, (18) Suksatra or Puraksa, (19) Brihatkarma, (20) Senājīt, (21) Sru-tanjaya, (22) Vibhu, (23) Suchī, (24) Ksema, (25) Suvrata, (26) Sunetra, (27) Nirvriti, (28) Trinetra, (29) Dridasena, (30) Mahinetra, (31) Suchala, (32) Rūpunjaya

Thus from Senājīt up to Rūpunjaya there are only 19 kings, (and not 16 as held by Mr Pargiter), while from Vasu Chaidya Uparichara there are 19 kings up to Senājīt, and not sixteen kings as mentioned by Mr Pargiter. This arose very likely from an oversight of the learned author. Excluding the three kings (Sunetra 40 years, Satyajit 83 years, and Viśvajit 25 years or altogether 148 years), we find that Senājīt to Rūpunjaya there ruled 16

kings for 502 years, while from Chaidya Uparichara to Brihatkarma the predecessor of Senajit, there ruled 19 kings for the remaining period of 1000 years, namely, for 498 years. We, however, think that the text giving 1000 years to 32 Bihadratha kings, from Somadhi to Ripunjaya is preferable as consistent with chapter 50 of this Purâna. Though it gives the average period of 31 years for each reign, yet that period is not excessive, remembering that men were longer-lived then than now or that the names of some insignificant kings have dropped out, though the total regnal period 1000 years has been correctly remembered and repeated.

Pulika—a minister of Ripunjaya assassinated his master and installed his son as king, which gave rise to the Pradyota family. There were five kings in this family, viz.—

1. Pradyota	.	23 years of reign.
2 Pâlaka	.	28 " "
3 Viśâkhayupa	.	58 " "
4 Ajaka (or Suryaka)	.	21 " "
5 Nandivardhana	.	30 " "
<hr/>		
	182	" "

This dynasty, however, lasted 152 years, according to other texts.

The Pradyotas were followed by the Sisunâga family. Sisunâga put an end to the last Pradyota king and was succeeded by nine kings mentioned below—

1. Sisunâga	.	40 years of reign
2 Kâkavarma	.	26 " "
3 Kṣemadharman	.	38 " "
4 Kṣatrâjña or Kṣemajit	.	24 " "
5 Vimbisra or Vindhyaśena	.	28 " "
6a Kanvâyâna	.	9 " "
5b Bhumitra	.	14 " "
6 Ajâta satru	.	27 " "
7 Darsaka (or Vanâka)	.	24 " "
8. Udâsin	.	38 " "
9 Nandivardhan	.	40 " "
10 Mahânandin	.	48 " "
<hr/>		
	844	" "

Our Purâna, however, gives the total period as 360 years. If however we take the above reigns, as given by Mr Pargiter, and other Purânas, viz. as  $40+36+38+40+28+27+25+33+42+43$  the total comes to 350, still a deficiency of ten years. The Matsya wrongly inserts two Kanvâyâna kings, viz., Kanvâyâna 9 years and Bhumimitra 14 years in the above list, between Vindhyaśena and Ajâtasatru. Even then the figures of the Matsya will come up to  $344+23=367$  years and not 360.

With these kings we come upon solid historical names. It was in the reigns of Vimbisara, the fifth king in the above list and of his son, Ajatasatru, that the great Founder of Buddhism flourished. From the date of Buddha's preaching in Magadha, in the court of Vimbisara and Ajatasatru up to the Great War, the period that elapsed can be easily calculated from the figures above given

Namely from Somadhi up to Senjit	.	827 years.
Srutanjaya up to Rupunjaya	.	502 "
Pradyota family	.	132 "
Sisunaga "	.	821 "
		-----
		1262 "

This however does not tally with the statement that 1050 or 1015 years elapsed between Nanda and the Great War. There is a difference of more than two hundred years

If, however, we take the figures from Mr Pargiter's dynasties of the Kali age, as given below, we find that from Somadi to Rupunjaya, there were 22 kings who reigned for 920 years. The Pradyotas after Rupunjaya were 5 kings who reigned for 138 years. The Sisunagas who came after the Pradyotas were 10 kings and reigned for 330 years, the text however says that the reign of the Sisunagas was for 360 years. Adding up the above-mentioned three figures, viz., 920 plus 138 plus 330, (or 360) we get the sum 1388 years or 1418. Thus, 1388 or 1418 years was the interval between the installation of Mahāpadma Nanda and the birth of Parikṣit or the Great War. Adding 422 B C the year of the installation of Mahāpadma Nanda, we come to the figures 1810 or 1840 B C as the date of the Mahābhārata War. Thus there is difference between 1810 B C or 1840 and 1472 B C of 388 years or 418

Whether we take Mr Pargiter's figures which gives a difference of 388 years, or the figures based on the Matsya Purāna, which gives the date of the war as 1736 B C and according to which, the difference is 291, it is, no doubt, a large one. How are we to reconcile this? The printed text of all the Purānas gives the interval between the inauguration of Mahāpadma Nanda and the birth of Parikṣit as 1050 years (with the variants 1015 or 1115), while the total of the reigns given in detail makes this figure, 1741 in our case, and, 1388 in that of Mr Pargiter. What figure are we to take? Is there any mode of reconciling the difference of about 300 years? What is the more reasonable alternative to take? Is it the aggregate arrived at, by adding the reigns of different kings or the total given in the printed texts of the Purānas? Or, does this verse of

the Purânas refer to some other Parîksit than Parîksit, the son of Abhimanyu? Or, is Parîksit a misreading for some other king who reigned about 300 years after the Great War? It is a curious fact worth noting, that when the Purâna was recited in the Naimisâranya by the Sûta, Senâjît was the reigning king in the Baradratha family and from Somadi to Senâjît, six kings reigned for a period of 267 years, or, according to our figures 277 years. If, instead of calculating from the period of the birth of Parîksit, the Purânas calculated from the time of Senâjît, or, his contemporary Adhisima Kriśna, in whose reign the Purâna was composed, then the above figure of 1050 years becomes reasonable, but this is merely conjectural, and there is no authority as yet discovered by us, for holding that the Parîksit of the above verse is not the Parîksit, son of Abhimanyu, or that Parîksit is a misreading for Senâjît or Adhisima Kriśna.

V Varâha Mihira, quoting Garga, fixes the date of the Great War at 2526 before Sâka era, which commenced in 78 A D According to him the date of the Great War is 2448 B C (Brihat Saṁhitâ, Ch XLII, v 3) But he or rather Garga gives no clue how this figure was arrived at

VI It may also be noted here that though the Viṣṇu Purâna repeats the traditional verse that 1050 years was the interval between the inauguration of Nanda and the birth of Parîksit yet, the total given by it, are approximately, the same as those given by the Matsya Purâna It says the Baradrathas reigned for 1000 years from Somadi (our figure is 920 years from Somadi to Râpuñjaya) It then gives the reign of Pradyotas as 138 years which coincides with our figure The Sisunagas reigned for 362 years, according to the Viṣṇu Purâna Thus the total of these three figures, is (1000 plus 138 plus 362) 1500 years This would give the year of the Mahâbhârata war as 1922 B C Thus whether we take 1922 B C of the Viṣṇu Purâna or 1763 B C according to one calculation, or 1810 B C, according to Mr Pargiter, we can fairly say, that the figure 1477 B C, given in the datum of the above verse, is untenable Therefore, we repeat that for the present, we take 1922 B C, as the year of the Great War

Another method of reconciling the discrepancy is, that, instead of reading the verse as given in printed text, if we read it as वृक्षतोर्क्षुर् then it would mean, that the interval between Nanda and Parîksit was, in round numbers, 1500 years, instead of 1050 or 1015 years. This appears a more reasonable reading, and in this view the figure of Mr Pargiter, namely, 1388 (the interval between Nanda and Parîksit) is nearer the figure of the Viṣṇu Purâna, with a difference of 112 years As a

matter of strange coincidence, there is such a reading, as is evident from Mr Pargiter's footnote given on page 58 of his *Dynasties of the Kali Age*. He says on verse एवं पञ्चादृतम् तु शब्दं पञ्चादृतम् in his note, No 21 on the word panchadaduttaram "So Matsya generally, VAyu, Brahmaṇa, Matsya, marked c, e, and j, the reading is panchadatottaram, In Meṣ marked l and m of Matsya and b and l of Viṣṇu, the reading is panchadatottaram."

This last reading removes all difficulties. According to it, the reading would be, "एव ( or एष ) वचं सर्वत्तु ज्ञेयं पञ्चादृतम्" and the verse would then mean "Now from Mahāpadma's inauguration to Parikṣit's birth, this interval is, indeed, known as 1500 years"

We shall take therefore, this reading of the verse and in all that we have said above, this is to be understood. Thus according to it, **the date of the Great War would be 1500 plus 422 equal to 1922 B.C.**

Here, in passing, we may mention a point noted by Mr Pargiter, regarding the two readings of the Matsya Chapter 271 verse 30. That verse according to one text is —

'That, 22, Brihadratha kings in future will enjoy the kingdom for full one thousand years' The other reading is that "sixteen Brihadratha kings in future will enjoy the kingdom for 723 years"

In the face of it, these two versions appear to be inconsistent, but, there is really no such inconsistency. The first verse takes its standpoint from the reign of king Parikṣit, who was contemporary of king Somādi and counts the future kings from that point, as the Viṣṇu Purāna has done. From Somādi upto Rūpiṇjaya, the aggregate of the reigns is 1,000 years and the number of kings is 22 (or rather 32) though ten names have dropped, three of whom however have been supplied by Mr Pargiter, and others may be found if further search be made. The second verse takes its standpoint from Senājit's reign, consistently with its assertion, that the Purāna was recited towards the end of the reign of Senājit, or, to use its own words "Senājit, had just passed away," and the total number of kings is really, sixteen, from that date and their aggregate period of reign is 723 years. Thus both the figures 1000 and 723 years are correct, the starting points of counting being different.

VII *The Siddhānta view, therefore, is that the Great War took place in 1920 B.C.* In this we are supported not only by Sridhara Svāmī the learned commentator on the Viṣṇu Bhāgavata Purāna but we are corroborated by the Saptarśi Era also. All the Puranas (as a rule,) say that the Saptarśis were in Maghā at the time of the birth of Parikṣit, some

of them say that they will be in the Krittikā or the twenty fourth from Magha at the end of the Andhra dynasty, see Vāyu, Vol II, (Bibliotheca Indica) Adhy 37, v 417, and Matsya Ch 273, v 44. That dynasty lasted for 460 years So deducting from 2400 (one hundred for each asterism) we get  $2400 - 460 = 1940$  That is to say, that there were 1900 years roughly between the birth of Parīkṣit and the rise of the Andras in 28 BC As the Saptarṣi calculation is in centuries, this gives also 19 centuries BC, for the year of the Great War.

SRI CHANDRA VIDYARNAVA

## APPENDIX III

---

[Note—Here we give the translation of three chapters, namely of 271-278 of the Matsya Purâna, which give an account of the Dynasties of the Kali Age after the War, in order, to complete the chronology of the Indian kings and to elucidate the points discussed in Appendix II.]

### CHAPTER CCLXXI

Rishi said —O Sûta, you have described to us the dynasty of Puru, along with the future kings in that dynasty. Now tell us about those kings who will be in the Solar (Sûrya) dynasty. So also tell us here about those illustrious kings in that Yâdava family, who will exist in the Kali-yuga. And when those dynasties (Sûrya and Yâdava) will come to an end, then, tell us briefly about those pious kings who were kinsmen of these families and who will obtain the kingdom after them, in due order as far as possible —1-3

Note—The future Kings of Paurava dynasty have been described in Chapter 50  
See p 188

Sûta said —Now, after this, I shall tell you, of the high-souled Ikshvâkus

---

#### *Post Mahâbhârata Aikshvâkus or Solar Dynasty*

(1) *Brihadbala's* heir [was (2) *Brihatksaya*, his heir] was the heroic king (3) *Urukshaya*. The son of Urukshaya was the famous (4) *Vatsadroha* (*Vatsavyuha*) —4

[According to Mr Pargiter, the verse ought to be “Brihadbala's heir was the warrior king Brihatksaya his son was Urukshaya ]

(5) *Prativyoma* was after Vatsadroha. His son is (6) *Divâkara* to whom in the Madhyadesa, belongs the beautiful city of Ayodhyâ —5

Note—According to Vâyu the reading is “who now rules the city of Ayodhyâ in Madhyadesa,” showing that Divâkara was the ruling prince, when this Purâna was recited.

Divâkara's (successor) will be the illustrious (7) *Sahadeva*, whose (successor) will be (8) *Dhruvadeva*, the high-minded —6

His (successor) will be the most lucky (9) *Bhâvya* (Bhanuratha or Bhâvyaratha). And his son will be (10) *Pratipâsiva*. The son of Pratipâsiva will be even, (11) *Supratipa* —7

(12) *Marudeva* will be his (Supratipa's) son, after whom was (13) *Sunakshatra*. After Sunakshatra will be (14) *Kinnarâsira*, the harasser of his foes —8

After Kinnarâdva will be the high-minded (15) *Antarikṣa*. After *Antarikṣa* will be (16) *Susena*, and (17) *Sumitra*, the conqueror of his enemies (*Amitrajit*) —9

*Note* — According to another reading, *Susena* was the son of *Antarikṣa*, whose son was *Sumitra-Amitrajit*. Or, after, *Antarikṣa* will be *Suparna* (*Susena*), and after him *Amitrajit*

(18) *Brihadrāja* will be the son of *Sumitra*. *Brihadrāja's* (son) will be (19) *Viryavān* (D' armavān). Again (20) *Kritanjaya*, by name, [will be] the virtuous (*Dharmika*) son of *Viryavān* —10

The son of *Kritanjaya*, will be the wise (21) *Ranejaya*, (22) *Sanjaya*, the warrior king will come after *Ranejaya* —11

[*Sahajna's* son will be (23) *Sākya*. After *Sākya* will be the king (24) *Sudhaudana*. The son of *Sudhaudana* will be (25) *Siddhārtha*, the eminent (26) *Pughalā* or *Rāhula* will be the son of *Siddhārtha*] —12

After him will be (27) *Pṛasenajit*. After him will be (28) *Kṣudraka*. After *Kṣudraka* will be (29) *Kulaka*. After *Kulaka* is remembered (30) *Suratha* —13

From *Suratha* was born (31) *Sumitra*. He will be the last king. These *Aksavākus* have been declared, who will exist in the *Kaliyuga* —14

These will be in the line of *Brihadbhala*, they will be the glory of their family. Here the following genealogical verse is sung by ancient poets —15

"This dynasty of the *Iksvākus* will end with *Sumitra*. On reaching King *Sumitra* it will come to its close in the *Kaliyuga* "—16

This is thus the dynasty of *Manu*, even as declared before. Hereafter I will relate the *Bāhradratha* (dynasty of *Magadha*) —17

---

#### Post *Mahābhārata* *Bāhradrathas*

Listen about the kings, those past, those present, and those to come in future, from (the stock of) *Jarāsandha* (and) in the line of *Sahadeva* —18

After (1) *Sahadeva* was killed, when the great war of *Bhārata* took place, (2) *Somādhi* succeeded him as his heir, and became king in *Girivajra* —19

He reigned for fifty-eight years and then (3) *Śrutārāma* in his line reigned for sixty-four years —20

(4) *Apīlatipī* reigned for thirty-six years and (5) *Nīramitra* after reigning for forty-years went to heaven —21

Afterwards (6) *Surakṣa* got the earth for fifty-six years and (7) *Bṛishakarma* reigned for twenty-three years —22

(8) *Senājit has just passed away after enjoying the earth for fifty years.*

*Note.—Another reading according to the Vāyu Purāna is "Senājit is now enjoying the earth, the same number (28) of years."*

*He will be succeeded by (9) Srutanjaya who will be for forty years.*

*Afterwards (10) Vāhu will obtain the earth and will reign for twenty-eight years, and then (11) Suchi will rule the kingdom for fifty-eight plus six years (i.e. 64)—23-24*

*The king (12) Kṛema will enjoy the earth for twenty-eight years. After whom the powerful (13) Anuvrata will reign for sixty-four years.—25*

*(14) Sunetra will enjoy the earth for twenty-five (another reading thirty-five) years (15, Nirvṛti will enjoy it for fifty-eight years—26.*

*After that (16) Trinetra will enjoy the kingdom for twenty-eight years (17) Dyumatsena (Dūḍhāsenā) will be for forty-eight years—27*

*(18) Mahanetra will be resplendent for thirty three years (19) Achala or (Suchala) will be king for thirty-two years—28*

*(20) Rīpuñjya will obtain the earth for fifty-years, and these 32 kings will be the future Brīhadrathas—29*

*Note—The following three lines are omitted in our text of the Matsya Purāna, but supplied by Mr Pargiter*

"Chatvarim sat samā rājā Sunetra bhokṣyate tataḥ  
Satyajit prithivim rājā try asitum bhokṣyate samah  
Prapyaemam Vi-vajichchāpi pañcāha vimsat bhavīgyati "

*King Sunetra will next enjoy the kingdom for forty years. King Satyajit will enjoy the earth for eighty three years, (eighty years). And Viśvajit will obtain this earth and be king for twenty-five years—29A*

*Note—Our reading is dvātrāṁsattu nriपा hyeta. Another reading is "Sodes-alte nriपा jīṣeyā bhavitārō Brīhadrathas". And then the verse will mean—"these sixteen kings are to be known as the future Brīhadrathas". Then there is further this line in the same manuscript—"Trayo-vimsatihikam teṣām rājyam cha sata-saptakam". And it means—"and their kingdom will last seven-hundred twenty-three years". According to this reading the sixteen future Brīhadrathas will reign for 728 years. Of course this includes Senājit also.*

*Their kingdom will last full 1000 years indeed. Then Bālaka (son of) Pulaka will be the conqueror of Kṣatriyas—30*

*Note—The translation is according to the reading*

द्वात्रिं दशू नना होते भवितारो षट्प्रथ्याः ।  
पूर्णं वर्षसहस्रं तु तेषां राज्यं भविष्यति ॥

*But the kings enumerated are 22 only. The reading of the Brāhmaṇa Purāna is शतिष्य एष चोते "These 22 Kings". This is more accurate.*

*Here ends chapter 271 dealing with the genealogies of future  
Ikṣvāku and Brīhadrathas*

## CHAPTER CCLXXII

*Pradyota or Bâlaka Dynasty*

Sûta said — When Brîhadrathas and Vîthotras and Avantis have passed away, Pulaka, after killing his master will instal his son (Pradyota or Bâlaka) as king — 1

He will instal, Bâlaka, born of Pulaka, in the very sight of the Kshatriyas (by assassinating his master, Rîpunjaya) That son of Pulaka will subjugate the neighbouring kings by force and not by right, and will be devoid of royal policy — 2

That (Pulaka) the best of men will reign for 23 years, (2) Pâlaka or Bâlaka will be king for 28 years (or 24 according to the Vâyu) — 3

(3) King Viśvâkhaṇpa will reign for 53 years (50 according to Vâyu) (4) and Sâryaka will be king for 21 years (5) Nandivardhana, his son, will be king for 30 years (20 years another reading) These five kings, after enjoying the earth, for 52 years (evidently a mistake for 155 or 152) will perish — 4-5

Note — The Vîṣṇu as well as the Bhagavata Purâna gives the aggregate as 188 years

*Śisunâka Dynasty*

Then Śisunâka destroying all their glory will place his son in Benares and himself go to Girivraja The King Śisunâka will reign for 40 years — 6.

His son Kâkavarna will obtain the earth for 26 years, Kshemadharma will be king for 36 years — 7

Kshemajit will obtain the earth for 24 years, Vindhya sena will be king for 28 years — 8

Kânrvâya will be king for 9 years, his son, Bhûmîmitra will be king for 14 years — 9

Note — This verse 9 is evidently misplaced here Its proper place is in the Kârva line

Ajñatasatru will be king for 27 years, Vamîsaka will be king for 24 years — 10

His son Uddâsi will be king for 33 years, Nandivardhana will be king for 40 years — 11

Mahânandî will be king for 43 years These will be the kings in the Śisunâka dynasty — 12

The Śisunâkas will be kings for full 360 years, and the kings will be low born Kshatriyas (Kshatrabanhu) — 13

Note.—According to the Vîṣṇu and Vâyu the aggregate is 802 years But adding the above figures we get 821 only

*Early Contemporary Dynasties*

Contemporaneous with all these kings will flourish in Kaliyuga other kings also, and they will endure an equal time. There will be 24 Ikṣvāku kings, 27 Panchalas, 24 kings of Kāśī and 28 Haihayas kings. —14-15

Then there will be 32 Kalinga kings, 25 Asmaka, 36 Kurava, 28 Maithila, 23 Surasenas, and 20 Vitahotra kings. All these kings will endure the same time and will be contemporaries.

*The Nandas 422 B C —322 B C*

Then, as an incarnation of Kali, will be born Mahāpadma, a son of Mahānandi from a Sūdra woman and he will be the exterminator of the Kṣatriya kings —16-18

Afterwards all the kings will be of the Sūdra origin. That Mahāpadma will be sole monarch and a universal Emperor. He will reign for 88 years on this earth. He will uproot all Kṣatriyas, through his ambition. His eight sons, beginning with Sukalpa will be kings for 12 years. They will be kings in succession to Mahāpadma one after another. Kauṭilya will uproot all these sons, during the course of 12 years. Then the empire will pass on to the Mauryas, after being enjoyed by (Kauṭilya ?) for a hundred years (or then Kauṭilya, after enjoying the earth for hundred years, will go to heaven) —19-22

*The Mauryas*

His son Satadhanva will be the king for 6 years. His son Brihadratha will reign for 70 years —23

For 36 years Asaka will be king. His grandson will then be king for 70 years —24

His son Daśaratha will be king for 8 years. His son Saptati will reign for 9 years (or his son will be for 79 years) --25.

These are the ten Mauryas who will enjoy the earth for full 137 years, from whom she (the Earth) will pass to the Sungas.

NOTE — The text says that there are ten Maurya kings, but its enumeration is short of that number. The following note from Mr. Pargiter is appropriate — "This dynasty is given by all five Purāṇas, but the account of it has suffered more than that of any other dynasty. Three versions exist here, the earliest in the Matsya, the second in e Vāyu, and the third in the Vāyu generally and the Brahmanāda. They agree in general purport, but have many differences. The second forms a stage of recension intermediate between the first and the third, and is the only copy that has preserved the names of all the kings. The Matsya version in all copies is incomplete and has one of its verses misplaced, thus only 5 MSS mention Chandragupta, the second king always omitted, and the account

generally begins with that verse 28, putting the two kings first, and then mentions only four kings, Asoka and his three successors "

[Though the Matsya mentions only seven kings, and that also in a confused manner, the full list of ten kings is given in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa (Book IV Chap 24 verses 78)

The years of accession noted against their names are taken from Mr V A Smith's *History* page 197

	Date of ascension
(1) Chandra Gupta	522 B.C.
(2) Bindusāra Amitraghāṭa	298 B.C.
(3) Asoka	273 B.C.
Asoka died	232 B.C.
(4) Suyasas	232 B.C.
(5) Dasaratha	224 B.C.
(6) Sangata	216 B.C.
(7) Śālikuka	206 B.C.
(8) Somasāman	190 B.C.
(9) Satadhanva	180 B.C.
(10) Brihadratha	181-185 B.C.

### Sungas.

Pusyamitra the commander-in-chief will uproot Brihadratha and will rule the kingdom as king 36 years — 27

After him Vasujyestha will be king for seven years After him Vasumitra will be for ten years — 28.

Note — Our text omits Agnimitra who was the immediate successor of Pusyamitra and who reigned for 8 years, as in the Vāyu P

Then his son Antaka will be (reign) for 2 years Then Pulindaka will be (reign) for 3 years — 29

Then Vajramitra will be king for 9 years Then Samabhaga will reign for 32 years Then after him his son Devabhumi will reign for 10 years These ten petty kings will enjoy this earth for full 112 years And then the earth will go to the Kanvas — 30-32

Note — The Purāṇa enumerates only 8 kings while there ought to be ten This omission is supplied by the names of Agnimitra and Ghosavasu as given in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa The ten kings, therefore, are the following —

(1) Pusyamitra	... 185 B.C. (36 years).
(2) Agnimitra	149 B.C. (8 years).
(3) Sujyestha or Vasujyestha	141 B.C. (7 years).
(4) Vasumitra	134 B.C. (10 years).
(5) Antaka	124 B.C. (2 years).
(6) Pulindaka	122 B.C. (8 years).
(7) Ghosavasu	119 B.C. (3 years).
(8) Vajramitra	118 B.C. (9 years).
(9) Bhāgavata or Samabhaga	107 B.C. (32 years).
(10) Devabhūti or Devabhumi	75 B.C. (10 years)

Assassinated in 65 B.C.

Total . . . 120 years.

[The aggregate of the reigns is, however, 120 years and not 112, but all the Purānas agree in giving 112 years as the duration of Sunga dynasty. This discrepancy might be explained by omitting Agnimitra from the list. He perhaps never reigned as a king apart from his father Puṣyamitra, who though *de facto* king always styled himself Senapati or Commander-in-chief and so Agnimitra's name is not mentioned by the Matsya Purāna. There is much uncertainty about his reign as pointed out by Mr Pargiter. Or may it be that Agnimitra was practically a king during the life-time of his father on certain parts of the vast empire. And the verse "tat-suto' gnimiti-aṣṭau bhavīṣyatī samā nrīph" may be read as "tat-suto' ganimitiastu bhavīṣyatī samā nrīph". According to this calculation Sunga dynasty would appear to have come to an end not in 65 B C but in 73. The Matsya Purana verse 32 is rather inaccurate. It says —

कौते कुप्राजाने भेष्यन्तीन् वसुधराम् । शतं पूर्णं शते द्वे च ततः शुक्लान्मिष्यति ॥ अमात्यो वसुदेवस्तु प्रसदा हवनां नृपः । देवभूमिमयोत्साध शैक्षस्तु भविता नृपः ।

"These ten Kṣudra kings will enjoy this earth full 100 and 200 (total 300) years. Then it will go to the Sungas." This is evidently a mistake. The earth could not have gone to the Sungas after the Sungas. Nor did the Sungas reign for 300 years. Instead of tataḥ Sungān gamīṣyatī, another reading is tataḥ svārgam gamīṣyatī, which may refer to the last king namely, Devabhūmi who will go to heaven. This reading is more appropriate than Sungān gamīṣyatī. Moreover who are these petty kings Kṣudra-rājanah which the text mentions? It only mentions 8 kings and not 10 for it does not mention Agnimitra and Ghosavasū. We have therefore adopted Mr Pargiter's reading — Dasaite Sunga-rājāno bhokṣyant-imām vasundharām Śatam pūrnam daśa dve cha tataḥ Kanvān gamīṣyatī". This is in accordance with Viṣṇu purāna also which in IV 24 11 says

इत्येते वष्टि शुक्ला छादशोत्तरं वर्षशतं पृथिवीं भेष्यन्ति । ततः कण्वानेष्ट भूर्त्यस्यति ।]

### *The Kanvāyanas*

The minister Vasudeva forcibly overthrowing the dissolute king Debhābūmi will become king among the Sungas. He the Kanvāyana, will be king for 9 years — 33

His son Bhūmitra will reign 14 years. His son Nārāyaṇa will be for 12 years — 34

Susarma, his son, will be for 10 years only These are recorded as Sungabhrityas, or Kānvāyana kings — 35

These 40 (four) Kanvas are Brāhmaṇas and they will enjoy the earth for 45 years — 36

They will have the neighbouring kings respect them and will be virtuous At the time of their period of reign coming to an end the earth will go to the Andhras — 27

Note.—The four Kānvāyana kings are shown in the following tabular form .—

(1) Vasudeva Kanya	(9 years) 78 B C
(2) Bhdmimitra	(14 years) 59 B C.
(3) Nārvāya	(12 years) 47 B C
(4) Susarma	(10 years) 37 B C

Total                          45 years

[The last king Susarma was slain by the king Śisuka about 27 or 28 B C ]

Here ends chapter 272 describing the Pradyota, Sisundga, the Nanda, the Maurya, the Sungas and the Kānvāyana dynasties.

### CHAPTER CCLXXIII

#### *Andhras*

The Andhra Simuka (Śisuka) with his fellow tribesmen, the servants of Susarman, will assail the Kānvāyanas and him (Susarman,) and destroy the remains of the Sungas' power and will obtain this earth —1-2

Note —The above translation is according to Mr Pargiter's text. According to our text the reading is —

“काण्वायनास्ततो भूपा: सुशर्माकः प्रसाद ताप् ।

गुद्धानां षेष यच्छेषं क्षपित्वा तु जलीयतः ॥

This would mean —“Then Kānvāyana nobles of Susarma having assailed her (Earth) and putting to an end what remained of the Sungas will become powerful ” This shows that the chieftains of the last Kanya King, Susarman, revolted against him and put an end to the Sunga power

Their tribesman (a kinsman of these Kānvāyana chieftains (bhūpās) who had revolted against Sudarman) called (1) Śisuka Andhra will get this earth For 23 years Śisuka will be the king —2

His younger brother (2) Kṛiṣṇa will be 18 years His son (3) Sri-mallakarni (Sri Śātakarni) will be 10 years Then (4) Pūrnotsanga will be king 18 years —3

Note.—Mr Pargiter inserts (5) “Skandhastambhi will be king 18 years” after Purnotsanga.

(6) Sāntakarṇi will be 56 years. His son (7) Lambodara 18 years —4.

His son (8) Āpitaka (Āpilaka) will be 12 years. Then (9) Meghasvāti will be 18 years —5

Then (10) Svāti will be king 18 years (11) Skandhasvāti will then be king 7 years —6

Then (12) Mrigendra Svātikarṇa will be 3 years Then (13) Kuntala Svātikarṇa will be king 8 years Then (14) Svātivarṇa will be king for one year.—7-8

Then (16) Arīktavarṇa will be 25 years After him (17) Hāla will be king for 5 years —9.

*Note.*—Before this verse and as part of verse 8 Mr Pargiter inserts " षष्ठिमासेवा वर्गात् पुलोमावि भविष्यति," which means then (15) Pulomāvi will reign 36 years. Instead of Arīktavarṇa another reading is Arīṣṭakarna

Then (18) Mandulaka will be king 5 years (another reading Manta-laka) Then (19) Purindrasena (Purikasena) will be king After him (20) Saumya will be king —10

*Note.*—The number of years of the reigns of Purindrasena and Saumya are not given in our edition Moreover, it is doubtful whether Saumya is the name of a king Mr. Pargiter says—"Saumyo cannot well be a king, though the line says so on its face, because in this dynasty two kings are never put together in a single line without any mention of their reigns 'Saumyo bhavīṣyati' is probably a corruption Mr Pargiter also points out that instead of the above the following verse is in the Vāyu—"Pancha Pāttalako rājā bhavīṣyati mahābalāḥ " Bhāvyāḥ Purikasenas tu saṁhā so'py eka-vimśatim" Thus according to this reading Purikasena will reign 21 years

Then (21) Sundara Sāntikarṇa (Sātakarṇi) will reign 1 year Then (22) Chakora Svātikarṇa (Sātakarṇi) will reign for 6 months —11

Then (23) Śivasvāti will be 28 years Then (24) King Gautamiputra will be king next 21 years —12

His son (25) Pulomā will be king 28 years

[Then (26) Sātakarṇi will be king 29 years ]

This is a very doubtful line as pointed out by Mr Pargiter and it is not in our text.

After Pulomā (27) Śivadri-Pulomā will be king 7 years —13

Then (28) Śiva skandha after Sāntikarna will be king as his son for (?) years

*Note.*—Our text is शिवस्कन्धः सांतिकर्णोऽप्यविजात्यत्वं एव : But Mr Pargiter would amend it thus — शिवी स्कन्धः सांतिकर्णोऽप्यविजात्यत्वं एव :

*Note.*—No number is given. Mr Pargiter would read it—"Bhavitāsmāt trayo saṁhā," and then the verse would mean "Śivaskandha-sāntikarna will be king 8 years"

Then (29) Yajñāśrī Sāntikarnika will be 29 years —14.

Then after him (30) Vijaya will be king 6 years Then (31) Chandaśrī Śantikarpa, his son will be 10 years —15

Then (32) Pulomā, another of them, (viz., Pulomā II) will reign 7 years.—(16a)

These 19 Andhras will enjoy the earth for 460 years On the kingdom of the Andhras coming to an end, there will be kings belonging to the lineage of their servants —16-17

Note.—The Purāna mentions at the end that the number of kings will be 19, but as a matter of fact, it enumerates 30 kings, and the number would rise to 33 if the kings inserted by Mr Pargiter be taken into account.

[We give in a tabular form the list of the names of the kings with their reigns —

(1) Śīluka Andhra	. 28 years	(17) Hāla	5 years
(2) Kṛiṣṇa	18 "	(18) Mandulaka	5 "
(3) Śrimallakarni	19 "	(19) Purindresena	21 "
(4) Pūrnotsanga	18 "	(20) Saumya(a wrong name with no years).	
(5) Skandhastambhi	18 ..]	(21) Sundara	1 "
(6) Śātakarni	56 "	(22) Chakora	6 months.
(7) Lambodara	18 "	(23) Śivasvāti	28 years.
(8) Āpitaka	12 "	(24) Gautamiputra	21 "
(9) Meghasvāti	18 "	(25) Pulomā	28 "
(10) Svāti	18 "	(16) Śātakarni	[29(doubtful).]
(11) Skandhasvāti	7 "	(27) Śīvaari	7 "
(12) Mṛigendra	8 "	(28) Śivaskandha	8 "
(13) Kuntala	.. 8 "	(29) Yajñāserī	29 "
(14) Svātivarna	. 1 "	(30) Vijaya	6 "
(15) Pulomāvi	86 ..]	(31) Chandaśrī	10 "
(16) Arkitavarna	25 "	(32) Paloma II	7 ..]

#### Various Local Dynasties

On the kingdom of the Andhras coming to an end, there will be kings in the lineage of their servants who would be called Sriपārvatiya Andhras —17

There will be 7 (kings in the line of the servants of) Andhras, 10 Abhira kings, also 7 Gardabhalas and 18 Sakas —18

There will be 8 Yavana kings, and 14 Tusāra kings and 13 Gurupūda kings and 19 (or 11 Mauna) Hūna kings —19

The 8 Yavana kings will reign for 87 years The 7 Gardabhalas will enjoy this earth again (no years given 72 according to Vāyu)—20

The earth is recorded to have belonged to the Tuṣāras for 7000 years And 18 kings for 183 years as well [printed text corrupt. Ought to be —"Eighteen Sakas for 183 years."]—21.

For half four hundred years there will reign the 13 Gurundas of Mlechchha origin along with Sādra kings (Or, the 13 future Gurupdas along with low caste men, all of Mlechchha origin, will enjoy it half four hundred years, i.e., 200 years —22

For 103 years the 11 kings will enjoy the earth (no name) (The word Hūna should be supplied to complete the verse, and it would then mean "the 11 Hūnas will enjoy the earth for 103 years") The (seven) Śripārvatiya Āndhras will endure 52 years —23

The 10 Ābhira kings will be for 67 years. When they are overthrown by time, then there will be Kīlakila kings —24

Note.—These local dynasties, with their periods of reign, may be thus shown in a tabular form —

<i>Dynasties</i>	<i>Periods of Reign</i>	<i>No. of Kings.</i>
(1) Andhra-Bhrityas (Śri-pārvatiyas)	52 years or twice 50 or 100 years .	7
(2) Ābhiras	67 years	10
(3) Gardabhilas	72 years (as in Vāyu)	7
(4) Śakas	188 years .	18
(5) Yavanas	87 years .	8
(6) Tuṣras	7000 years (107?)	14
(7) Gurundas	200 years ..	18
(8) Hūnas	108 years	11 or 19
(9) Kīlakilas		

Note.—The account of these dynasties consists of three parts, the first of which summarizes the number of kings in each dynasty, and the second states its duration, while the third adds certain subsequent kings. In the first part, the Matsya, Vāyu, and Brāhmaṇa agree generally, but in the second, the Matsya has one version and the two others another. Here the dynastic matter in the Matsya ends.

"These local dynasties are all classed together as more or less contemporaneous. The number of years assigned to them must be considered according to the remarks in Introduction Sec. 42 ff., and with reference to the middle of the 3rd century A.D. When the account was first compiled as preserved in the Mt, for the revised versions in Vā and Bd did not revise the periods. If those remarks be sound, the Śripārvatiya Andhrabhrityas had at that time reigned 52 years, or (if we read dvipanchasatam) possibly 100 roundly, according to Mt, while the Vā. and Bd reading is no doubt corrupt and should perhaps be 112 or 107 years. The Ābhiras had then reigned 67 years, the Gardabhilas 72 years, the Śakas 188 years, the Yavanas 87 or 82 years, and the Tuṣras 7,000 or 500 according to the proper construction of the sentences but perhaps 107 or 105 is really meant. The 18 Gurundas or Murundas had then reigned half of the quadruple of 100 years, that is 200, according to Mt, or 350 according to Vā and Bd, but the latter is probably a corruption of the former reading, for Vā and Bh say precisely 199 years. The 11 Hūnas or Maunas had then lasted 108 years.

"Mention of these races is found in the inscriptions, thus Ābhiras in Luders' List of Brāhmaṇa Inscriptions, Nos. 968, 1187 (Epig. Ind. x, Appendix) and Fleet's Gupta Inscriptions, p. 14, Śakas, Luder's list, Nos. 1123, 1135, 1187, 1148, 1149, 1162, and perhaps 1001-2, and

PGI p. 14, Yevanas. Linder's list, Nos 662, 945, 1003, 1123, 1140, 1154, 1155, Merundas in PGI, p. 14, and Marundadevi, id., pp. 128, 183, 188 Hunas. PGI, pp. 56, 148, 290, A Vakataka, prince Vindhyaasakti is mentioned in Kielhorn's Inscriptions of Northern India, No. 623 (Epic. Ind. v, Appendix) " (Pargiter's Kali Dynasty p 44)

### THE EVILS OF KALI AGE.

There will be Yavanas here for the sake of religious feeling (pilgrimage or propaganda) or pleasure or profit The Aryas and the Mlechchhas (will dwell) mixed up in all provinces (janapadas) —25

The people will steadily deteriorate by adopting a contrary course of life, so also the kings will be greedy and speakers of untruth —26

All will be overpowered (killed) everywhere by Kalki whether they be Aryas or Mlechchhas They will be irreligious, avaricious, and heretical and cruel hypocrites everywhere —27

When the royal family will be destroyed, and the close of the Kali Age will come and righteousness will perish, there will remain few good people not given to coveteousness.—28

The people will be unholy, unrighteous and oppressed with disease and sorrow, and goaded by failure of rain they will be eager to destroy each other —29

Unprotected by anyone, always living in terror, surrounded by deep difficulties, the entire population will begin to live on (the top of) mountains and on the banks of rivers —30

When the royal families will be destroyed, the people, will desert their homes, and devoid of affection they will abandon their brothers and friends, and will have no one to protect them.—31.

They will not observe the rules of caste and order of life, and be addicted to unrighteousness. They will subsist on fruits, roots and leaves of trees, and will be clothed in tattered garments, barks and skins, and thus they will wander over the earth in search of livelihood —32

Thus the people having suffered (innumerable) miseries during the close of the Kali Age will become totally extinct, along with the extinction of the Kali Age —33.

When the Kali Age will be exhausted, after having been on earth for full 1000 divine years together with the Sandhi periods, then on its end, the Krita Age will come —34

### *Chronological Particulars*

Thus have I declared in due order the entire series of genealogy—

the kings who have passed away, and those who exist now and those who have not yet come to existence —35

Now from Mahāpadma's inauguration up till the birth of Parīkṣit, this interval is indeed known as 1050 years (1015 according to Viṣṇu, and 1508 according to our reading) —36

Note—In manuscripts of Matsya Purāna marked o, e, j the reading is Sat-otteram. Similarly in Mss 1, n of Matsya and V, 1, of Viṣṇu the reading is Pancha-sat-otteram, meaning 1500. This period of 1500 is the true interval obtained by adding up the periods of reigns of the Bṛhadrathas, Pradyotas and Śīunāgas as given in the Viṣṇu Purāna and other Purāṇas. Thus —

Bṛhadrathas from Somāpi to Rūpuñjaya	.	1000 years.
Pradyotas	188	"
Śīunāgas	... 862	"
	1500	"

Therefore the Mss of the Matsya referred to by Mr Pargiter are more correct than the printed text. This verse, therefore, should read

महापद्माभिषेकत्वं यावद्यन्तं परीक्षितः । एवं चर्चसहस्रं तु हेयं पञ्चाशतासरम् ॥

This is the reading we prefer to adopt as being in harmony with the text of Viṣṇu Purāna. Mahāpadma Nanda was anointed in 422 B.C. Therefore, Parīkṣit was born in 1922 B.C which was the year of the Great War.

Now from Mahāpadma's inauguration to Parīkṣit's birth, this interval is indeed known as 1500 years —36

Moreover in the interval which elapsed from the last Andhra King Pulomāvī to Mahāpadma—that interval was 836 years —37.

#### *The Cycle of 2700 years or Saptarśi or Laukiha Era*

The same future interval of time, beginning from Parīkṣit till the end of the Andhras, is thus expressed in the Bhavisya (Purāṇa) regarding those (kings) enumerated by the Śrutarśis who know the ancient stories (in these terms) —38

"When again (there will be end) of 27 future Andhras, (the Great Bear) will be in a line with the towering brilliant Agni (the presiding deity of Kṛtikā asterism)" —39

An equal space of time is still future, subsequent kings beginning from the end of the Andhras (till Parīkṣit) are declared therein. They have been enumerated in the Bhavisya Purāṇa by Śrutarśis who knew the ancient stories —38 (Pargiter).

Note.—The reading in the Anandākara edition of the verse 39 is :—

सप्तर्षयस्तदा प्राणुप्रदीप्तेनास्तिना यावाः । सप्तर्षि॑शस्तिभाव्यानामान्ध्रार्था तु यदा पुनः ॥

It is evidently corrupt according to Mr. Pargiter. Pradīptena in the above he would

amend into Pratipena and samāt should become samām. The verse therefore should read —

**सप्तर्षयस्तदा प्राणुप्रतीपेनादिना समम् । सप्तर्षिं शतिभाव्यानामाप्नावां तु यदा पुनः ॥**

Another reading is —

**सप्तर्षयस्तेथा ले स्युः प्रदीपेनादिना समम् ।**

as given by the editor of Viṣṇu Purāṇa in Bk IV, Ch 24, p 285

The Seven Rishis were then (at the time of the birth of Parīkṣit) on a line with the towering brilliant Agni (the presiding deity of Kṛttikā). At the end of the future twenty-seven Andhras the cycle repeats itself (Pargiter.)

Note.—This Saptarshi or Lankika Era appears to be a contrivance of historians and is still in use in Kāsmir as first pointed out by the late Dr. Böhler, as will appear from the following extracts from the Encyclopedia Britannica—Article—"Hindu Chronology," and Dr. Böhler's Kāsmir Reports pp 59 et seq.

"The Saptarshi reckoning is used in Kashmir, and in the Kangra district and some of the Saptarshi reckons—the Hill states on the south-east of Kashmir; some nine centuries ago it was also in use in the Punjab, and apparently in Sind. In addition to being cited by such expressions as Saptarshi-samvat, "the year (so-and-so) of the Saptarshis," and Sastra-samvatsara, "the year (so-and-so) of the scriptures," it is found mentioned as Lokakāla, "the time or era of the people," and by other terms which mark it as a vulgar reckoning. And it appears that modern popular names for it are Pahāpi-samvat and Kachchā samvat, which we may render by "the Hill era," and "the crude era." The years of this reckoning are lunar, Chaitrādi, and the months are pūrṇimānta (ending with the full moon). As matters stand now, the reckoning has a theoretical initial point in 8077 B.C.; and the year 6976, more usually called simply 76, began in A.D. 1900, but there are some indications that the initial point was originally placed one year earlier.

The idea at the bottom of this reckoning is a belief that the Saptarshis, "the Seven Rishis or Saints," Marichi and others, were translated to heaven, and became the stars of the constellation Ursa Major, in 8076 B.C. (or 8077), and that these stars possess an independent movement of their own, which, referred to the ecliptic, carries them round at the rate of 110 years for each nākhatra or twenty-seventh division of the circle. Theoretically, therefore, the Saptarshi reckoning consists of cycles of 2700 years and the numbering of the years should run from 1 to 2700, and then commence afresh. In practice, however, it has been treated quite differently. According to the general custom, which has distinctly prevailed in Kashmir from the earliest use of the reckoning for chronological purposes, and is illustrated by Kalhana in his history of Kasmir the Rājatarangini, written in A.D. 1148–1150, the numeration of the years has been centennial, whenever a century has been completed, the numbering has not run on 101, 102, 103, &c., but has begun again with 1, 2, 3, &c. Almanacs, indeed show both the figures of the century and the full figures of the entire reckoning, which is treated as running from 8076 B.C., not from 876 B.C. as the commencement of a new cycle, the second, thus, an almanac for the year beginning in A.D. 1798 describes that year as 'the year 4800 according to the course of the Seven Rishis, and similarly the year 69'. And elsewhere sometimes the full figures are found, sometimes the abbreviated ones; thus, while a manuscript written in A.D. 1648 is dated in "the year 24" (for 4724), another, written in A.D. 1234 is dated in "the year 4800". But,

as in the *Rājatarangini*, so also in inscriptions, which range from A.D. 1204 onwards, only the abbreviated figures have hitherto been found. Essentially, therefore, the Saptarshi reckoning is a centennial reckoning, by suppressed or omitted hundreds, with its earlier centuries commencing in 8076, 2976 B.C., and so on, and its later centuries commencing in A.D. 25, 125, 225, &c.; on precisely the same lines with those according to which we may use, e.g. 98 to mean A.D. 1798 and 57 to mean A.D. 1857, and 8 to mean A.D. 1908. And the practical difficulties attending the use of such a system for chronological purposes are obvious; isolated dates recorded in such a fashion cannot be allocated without some explicit clue to the centuries to which they belong. Fortunately, however, as regards Kashmir, we have the necessary guide in the facts that Kalhana recorded his own date in the Saka era as well as in this reckoning, and gave full historical details which enable us to determine unmistakeably the equivalent of the first date in this reckoning cited by him, and to arrange with certainty the chronology presented by him from that time.

The belief underlying this reckoning according to the course of the Seven Rishis is traced back in India, as an astrological detail, to at least 6th century A.D. But the reckoning was first adopted for chronological purposes in Kashmir and at sometimes about A.D. 800, the first recorded date in it is one of "the year 89," meaning 8889 = A.D. 818-814, given by Kalhana. It was introduced into India between A.D. 925 and 1025 (Encyclopædia Britannica, Eleventh Edition, Vol. 13, pp. 499-500).

"The beginning of the Saptarshi era is placed by the Kasmirians on Chaitra sudi 1 of the twenty-fifth year of the Kaliyuga, and the twenty-fourth year, in which Kalhana wrote, is consequently the Saptarshi year 4224. For

The distance between Kali 25 and the beginning of the Saka era is	. 3,154
The distance between Saka samvat 1 and Kalhan's time	1,070
Hence results a total of Saptarshī years	4,224

My authorities for placing the beginning of the Saptarshi era in Kali 25 are the following. First, P. Dayārām Jotē gave me the subjoined verse, the origin of which he did not know —

Kaler gataih sāyakanetravarshaih saptarshivaryāś tridivam prayātāḥ  
Lokehi samvatsarapattrikāyām saptarshimānam pravaḍanti sañṭah

"When the years of the Kaliyuga marked by the 'arrows and the eyes' (i.e. the five and the two, or, as Indian dates have to be read backwards, 25) had elapsed, the most excellent Seven Rishis ascended to heaven. For in the calendar (used) in the world\* the virtuous declare the computation of the Saptarshi, (years to begin from that point)"

Pandit Dāmodar explained the verse as I have done in the above translation, and added that each Saptarshi year began on Chaitra sudi 1, and that its length was regulated by the customary mixing of the chandra and saura mānas.

The correctness of his statement is confirmed by a passage in P. Śāhebrām's *Rājataranginisamgraha* (No. 176), where the author says that the Saka year 1786 (A.D. 1864), in which he writes, corresponds to Kali 4965 and to Saptarshi or Laukika samvat 4940 †. One of the copyists, too, who copied the *Dhvanyātaka* (No. 255) for me in September 1875, gives in the colophon, as the date of his copy, the Saptarshi year 4961. These facts are sufficient to prove that P. Dāmodar's statement regarding the beginning of the

\* The word loke, 'in the world,' alludes to the appellation Lokakāla, Laukika samvatsara.

† *Rājataranginisamgraha*, fol. 4b, 1, 7 tatrādyā sāka 1786 kaligato 4965 saptarshīchānumatena samvat 4940.

Saptarsi era is not an invention of his own, but based on the general tradition of the country I do not doubt for a moment that the calculation which throws the beginning of the Saptarsi era back to 8076 B C is worth no more than that which fixes the beginning of the Kaliyuga in 8101 B C. But it seems to me certain that it is much older than Kalhana's time, because his equation 44=1078 agrees with it † It may therefore be safely used for reducing with exactness the Saptarsi years, months, and days mentioned in his work to years of the Christian era. The results which will be thus obtained will always closely agree with those gained by General Cunningham, who did use the right key " Dr Buhler's Kashmir Report pp '59 and 60.

Note—Mr Pargiter, reads " saptarṣayāś tada Puṣya Pratipe rūjīl vai saṃmā " and he translates it thus —The Great Bear was situated equally with regard to the lunar constellation Puṣya while Pratipa was king At the end of the Andhras, who will be in the 27th century afterwards, the cycle repeats itself "

" In the circle of the lunar constellations, wherein the Great Bear revolves, and which contains 27 constellations in its circumference, the Great Bear remains 100 years in (conjoined with) each in turn " (40), (according to Pargiter)

This is the cycle of the Great Bear, and is remembered as being, according to divine reckoning, 6 divine months and 7 divine years According to those constellations divine time proceeds by means of the Great Bear (41a) (Pargiter)

The two front stars of the Great Bear, which are seen when risen at night, the lunar constellation which is seen situated equally between them in the sky, the Great Bear is to be known as conjoined with that constellation 100 years in the sky —42-43 (Pargiter)

This is the exposition of the conjunction of the lunar constellations and the Great Bear The Great Bear was conjoined with the Maghās in Parikṣit's time 100 years —44 (Pargiter)

The Brāhmaṇas (the Seven Seers) will be in the 24th constellation 100 years (when) at the termination of the Andhras Pargiter —45

Note—The 24th constellation from Maghā counting retrograde is Chitrā According to this calculation the interval between Parikṣit and the termination of Andhras is 2400 years Subtracting 886, we get 1514, or the interval between Nanda and Parikṣit Or in round number the Great War took place 1500 years before Nanda's time

If, however, the 24th No in the order of reckoning the nakṣatras be taken, then the line of the Saptarsi's will be in Śatabhiṣa or 1,400 years Deducting 886 we get 514 the interval between Nanda and Parikṣit—evidently incorrect. But 890 is the interval between Nanda and the termination of the Andhras If however we read Andhrāñuṣe instead of Andhrānta, and this is the reading of Brahmānda then it will mean, "at the commencement of the Andhras" The Andhra dynasty lasted for 460 years or the interval

† The use of the Saptarsi era in Kasimir and the adjacent hill states, which continues even in the present day, has first been pointed out by General Cunningham.

between Nanda and the commencement of the Andhras was  $886 - 400 = 376$  years. Deducting 376 (instead of 886) from 1,400 we get 1,024 years, the interval between Parikṣit and Nanda. This figure is approximately correct, according to some texts.

### *The Evils of the Kali Age (Resumed)*

Thenceforward all this world will fall upon very bad times. Men will be liars, greedy, and destitute of righteousness, affection and wealth. The religion of Śrutiś and Smṛitiś will become very lax, and so also will be destroyed the orders and castes—46

The people will be of mixed origin, weak in body and will be led astray and deluded. Brāhmaṇas will sacrifice for Śūdras (or will study under Śūdras) and Śūdras will take to teaching Mantras—47

Those Brāhmaṇas will adore such Śūdras anxious to acquire wealth from them (or anxious to get the meaning of the Mantras from them). And gradually there will be seen all the causes which go towards the removing a man from his own caste—48

Thus towards the end of the age, the few weaklings that will remain on earth will also go to extinction—49a

### *The duration of Kali*

On that very day and in that very moment when Krisṇa went to heaven, the Kali Yuga arrived on earth. Now listen to its duration from me. The wise say that its duration is 400,000 years—50

Together with four times eight (32) thousand years according to human calculation (*i.e.*,  $400,000 + 32,000 = 432,000$ ). Or in other words its duration is 1000 divine years together with the twilights (*i.e.*,  $1000 + 200 = 1200$  divine years  $= 1200 \times 360 = 432,000$ )—51

When the Kali Yuga comes to an end the Kṛita Yuga will again come—52a

The Aila and the Ikṣvāku dynasties have been described along with their branches. The dynasty of the Ikṣvākus (the Sūryavamsa) is remembered to have come to an end with Sumatra when Ikṣvāku Kṣatriyas will cease. The Aila Kṣatriyas (Chandras-vāṁśa) were contemporary with these (or the last of the Aila Kṣatriyas was Kṣemaka—Vāyu,) so the knowers of the Somavamsa understand it—53.

*Note* —The text in verse 52 b is

रेत्वरेत्वाकुत्परप एवेष प्रकीर्तिः ॥

It apparently gives no meaning. The translation follows the reading of the Vāyu :—

रेत्वरेत्वाकुत्परप एव चेति प्रकीर्तिः ॥

All these are declared to be the glorious descendants of Vivasvat those who are passed, those who exist now and those who will be in the future —54

The Brâhmaṇas, the Kṣatriyas, the Vaishyas and the Sûdras are remembered to exist in this Vaivasvata manvantara i.e., all are sons of Vâivasvata Munu) Thus ends the genealogy of dynasties —55

#### *A Prophecy*

Devâpi the Paurava king, and Maru, a king of Iksvâku dynasty, are both existing in the village, Kalâpa, through the force of their great Yoga —56

In the 29th Mahâyuga these two will be the leaders of Kṣatriyas and will restore Kṣatriyhood Suvarchas the son of Manu (Mara?) will be the founder of the (future) Aîkshvâku line —57

In the 29th Mahâyuga he will be the first founder of that dynasty. Similarly Satya, the son of Devâpi, will be the (first) king (and the founder) of the Aîla dynasty —58

These two (Devâpi and Maru) will be the restorers of Kṣatriya chivalry, in the beginning of that Mahâyuga Thus should be understood the characteristics of the dynasties in all the Yugas —59

Even after the close of the Kali Yuga, the Seven Sages who continue to exist along with these two throughout the Krîta Yuga, then will incarnate in the middle of the (future) Tretâ Yuga They will take birth in order to be the seeds of Brâhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas (of Brahmanic parentage) again Thus at the end of the Puṣya asterism (when the Great Bear is in a line with that asterism) the Seven Sages, along with those kings (take birth on earth) for the sake of procreating children in every Yuga Thus the Brâhmaṇas know the close relationship of the Kṣatriyas with the Brâhmaṇas (and how several Kṣatriya dynasties had Brâhmaṇ paternity) —62

Thus at the close of each Manvantara, these (two) immortal Kṣatriyas and (seven) Brâhmaṇas, who cross over from one Yuga to another (in their full consciousness), are called Santânas in the Sruti or founders of future human races They become the origins of (the future) Brâhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas —63

The Seven Sages know thus the rise, and fall, and the longevity of these founders of dynasties, as well as the decline and rise of the dynasties.—64

Thus in their due order the Ailā and the Ikṣvāku kings take their birth in the Tretā and come to an end in the Kali age—65

*Note*—Thus in the Kṛita or Satya Yuga and upto the middle of Tretā there exists no four fold caste, or only one caste that of the fighters or warriors (Kṣatriyas) who are the pioneers of emigration and open up new lands. It takes  $4,900 + 1,500 = 5,500$  years to settle fully and completely for a new race. After that the four-fold division takes place

These kings will follow in due succession (through Tretā and Dvāpara and Kali according to the characteristics of the age till the Manvantara comes to an end)—66a

When Parāśurāma, the son of Jamadagnī, annihilated the Kṣatriyas, then the whole world became destitute of Kṣatriya-born world-rulers. They all belonged to mixed dynasties (Brāhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas or Ilā-and—Ikṣvāku kings). All the kings owed their origin to double paternity, Brāhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas. I shall declare that now the cause of double dynastic paternity. Hear it from me—67

The dynasties of Aila and Aikṣvāku are said to be the origin of all kings who belonged to a certain class (who ruled in dynastic succession), as well as other Kṣatriyas on earth who were not rulers—68

The descendants of the Aila family were numerous, not so however the kings of the Aikṣvāku dynasty. They gave rise to full 100 famous dynasties—69

Similarly the extent of the Bhoja dynasty was double that of the above, and double of the Bhojas were the other Kṣatriya dynasties, who spread on all quarters, and the Bhoja clan became divided into four branches—70

Now those who are past and those who were their contemporaries together with their names I shall declare. Listen to me—71a

There will be 100 kings of the dynasty of Prativindhya, 100 Nagas, 100 Hayas, 101 Dhārtarastras and 80 Janamejayas. 100 in the family of Brahmadattas and 100 hero kings in the Kaurava family (or 100 Siri and Viri kings or Siri and Karna kings)—72

Then 100 were Pāñchāla kings, 100 Kasi-kusa kings, then 2000 Nipas and Saśavindus—73

All these were performers of sacrifices and all of them were givers of myriads of gold coins in feasts to the Brāhmaṇas. Thus hundreds and thousands of royal Risi kings have passed away. They belonged to the family of Lord Vaivasvata Manu and they exist in the present day also. Their births and deaths are for the sake of the maintenance of the world—74-75

Even in one hundred years I cannot finish the recital of the descendants of these kings and the mutual co-relationship to each other.—76.

In the Vaivasvata Manvantara 27 Mahâyugas have passed away and the current one is the 28th Mâhâyuga. Those Sîstas (the Holy Seeds) along with the Devas who are their companions are now to be declared. Listen to that —77.

In the remaining portion of the Mahâyuga of the Vaivasvatamanvantara there will be (or there are existing) 43 Mahâtmâs —78

Thus have I declared to you fully and briefly the whole history and I cannot repeat it in its entirety on account of its being too large —79.

I have declared all the Râjarâgs who have passed away along with the passing away of the Yugas, as well as the kings belonging to the dynasty of Yayâti and those belonging to the dynasties of the Lord of the Vîgas —80

All these illustrious ones have been declared to you. He who hears the recital of this history obtains all the five worldly-blessings, so difficult of attainment here —81

He gets long life, fame, wealth, heaven and progeny. By hearing and committing to memory this genealogy of kings, one verily goes to the highest heaven —82

*Here ends Chapter 273 dealing with the chronology of future kings*

#### NOTE

##### *Brahmanda III —74, Verses 225, et seq*

When the moon and the sun and the (constellation) Tîrâya and Brihaspati shall come together in the same zodiacal sign, then may the Krita age be.—225.

This is the entire series of dynasties which has been declared to you in due order—the dynasties which have passed away, and those which exist now, and those which are in future.—226

From the birth of Parikshit up to the end of the inauguration of Mahânanda—this period is to be known as 1050 years —227

Similarly to speak of the duration which (elapsed) after Mahâpadma, eight hundred and thirty six years are remembered to be the interval —228

This future interval of time is declared to be the year beginning with the end of the Andhras, and enumerated in the Bhavîshya, by the Śrutarsi (versed in the Vedas) knowers of the Purânas —229

Note—836 years is therefore the interval beginning from the end of the Andhras to Mahâpadma reckoning backward.

(At the time of the birth) of Parikshit the Seven Risis had obtained (entered) them (into the beginning of) the hundred years in the constellation sacred to the Pitrîs (*i.e.*, Maghâ). (And after finishing their cycle) by 2700 years with the end of the Andhras,

they (the Seven Rasis) commence again their future revolution—280.

In the entire circle consisting of the 27 lunar constellations, the Seven Seers remain for 100 years in each in turn.—281

This is the Cycle of the Seven Seers (consisting of 2700 human years). And reckoned in the terms of Divine years (360 human years equal to 1 Divine year), this period is equal to 6 divine 'months' together with 7 divine years (i.e., 2700 divided by 360 equal to 15 divided by 2 equal to  $7\frac{1}{2}$ ).—282.

According to those (constellations) Divine time proceeds by means of the Seven Seers—282a.

The two front stars of the Seven Seers, which are seen in the northern region, the lunar constellation which is seen situated equally between them in the sky, the Seven Seers are to be known as conjoined with that constellation 100 years in the sky.—283b-284.

This is the length of the period of enjoyment of the (Seven) Seers with each lunar constellation.—285a.

The Seven seers then yet disunited, after enjoying for 100 years in the epoch of Parikṣit, (and moving on) they will be for hundred years in the 24th (lunar constellation) at the beginning of the epoch of the Andhra.—285b-286a.

Nota.—The Andhra epoch commenced when the line of the Great Bear was in the 24th Nakṣatra or Satabhiṣā.

#### Bhāgavata Purāna, XII , II , 26-32

"From your birth (Parikṣit is addressed by Suka) to the inauguration of Nanda, 1115 years will elapse.

Of the Seven Rasis two are first perceived rising in the sky, and the asterism which is observed to be, at night, even with the middle of those two stars is that with which the Rasis are united, and they remain so during a hundred years of men. In your time, and at this moment, they are situated in Magha.

When the splendour of Viṣṇu, named Kṛṣṇa departed for heaven, then did the Kali age during which men delight in sin, invade the world. So long as he continued to touch the earth with his holy feet, so long the Kali age was unable to subdue the world.

When the Seven Rasis were in Magha, the Kali age, comprising 1200 (divine) years (432,000 common years), began, and, when, from Magha, they shall reach Pūrvāśādha, then will this Kali age attain its growth, under Nanda and his successors."

#### Viṣṇu Purāna, Book IV , Chap. XXIV.

As it is said—"When the sun and moon, and (the lunar asterism) Tilōya, and the planet Jupiter are in one mansion, the Kṛita age shall return."

Thus, most excellent Muṇi, the kings who are past, who are present, and who are to be, have been enumerated. From the birth of Parikṣit to the coronation of Nanda it is to be known that 1015 years have elapsed. When the two first stars of the seven Rasis (the great Bear) rise in heavens, and some lunar asterism is seen at night at an equal distance between them, then the seven Rasis continue stationary, in that conjunction, for a hundred years of men. At the birth of Parikṣit, they were in Magha, and the Kali age then commenced, which consists of 1200 (divine) years. When the portion of Viṣṇu (that had been born from Vāsudeva) returned to heaven, then the Kali age commenced. As long as the earth was touched by his sacred feet, the Kali age could not affect it. As soon as the incarnation of the eternal Viṣṇu had departed, the son of Dharmo, Yudhiṣṭhīr, —with his brethren,

abdicated the sovereignty Observing unpropitious portents, consequent upon Kṛṣṇa's disappearance, he placed Parīkṣit upon the throne When the seven Rājās are in Pūrvāśādha, then Nanda will begin to reign, and thenceforward the influence of the Kali will augment.

The day that Kṛṣṇa shall have departed from the earth will be the first of the Kali age, the duration of which you shall hear It will continue for 360,000 years of mortals After twelve hundred divine years shall have elapsed, the Kṛita age shall be renewed

Note — Interval between the Birth of Parīkṣit and the Accession of Nanda.

We have mentioned above that this important period the interval between Parīkṣit and Nanda is absolutely necessary to determine accurately the chronology of Indian History The Purāṇas are not absolutely unanimous on this point They, the most of them mention that this interval was 1015 years or 1050 years, and the Viṣṇu-Bhāgavata says that it was 1115 years But most of these Purāṇas give also the aggregate periods of reigns of the dynasties But the sum of these aggregates does not generally coincide with the figures given above Thus the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, Bk IV, Ch 24, verse 82, says that from the birth of Parīkṣit to the coronation of Nanda 1015 years have elapsed Yet according to the duration of the different intermediate dynasties as enumerated by it in Chs 23 and 24 the duration comes to 1500 years, namely

Magadha kings	.	1000 years
Pradyota, &c	.	188 years
Sisunāga, &c	.	862 years
		— — — 1500 years

Similarly though the Bhāgavata in Bk 12 Ch 2, verse 26, says that this interval is 1115 years, yet in the dynasties given by it the total comes up to a larger figure This point struck the commentator, Śridharavāmī, and he says —“ Vastutas-tu Parīkṣit-Nandayor-antaram dvābhyaṁ nyūnam varṣānām sārdha-sahasram bhavati Yataḥ Parīkṣit samakālam Māgadham Mārjāriṁ-Ārabhya Rīpuṇjayānta viṁśatī rājānāḥ sahasrasamvatsaram bhokṣyanti-ityuktam Navamaskandhe Ye Barhadraṭhabhūpāla bhāvyāḥ sahasrasvataaram-iti Tataḥ param pañcha Pradyotanā asaṭātrīmottara Śatam Sisunāgas-cha ṣaṣṭhuyttara-asaṭ-trayam bhyokṣyanti prīthivīm-it atra-eva-uktatvāt ”

As a matter of fact the interval between Parīkṣit and Nanda is 1500 years less 2 years, that is, 1498 years Because beginning with Marjari, king of Magadha, who was contemporary of Parīkṣit, up to the end of Rīpuṇjaya 20 kings will enjoy the earth for 1000 years has already been mentioned in the Purāṇa in its 9th Book in the following verse —“ These Bahadratha kings of the future will endure for 1000 years, and after them the five Pradyotas will enjoy the earth for 188 years after whom the Sisunagas will enjoy it for 360 years ”

Thus we have then the authority of Śridharavāmī for holding that 1500 years, or more accurately, 1498 years is the interval between Parīkṣit and Nanda The great war therefore took place 1498 plus 422 years in all 1920 years B C according to Śridharavāmī

## APPENDIX VI.

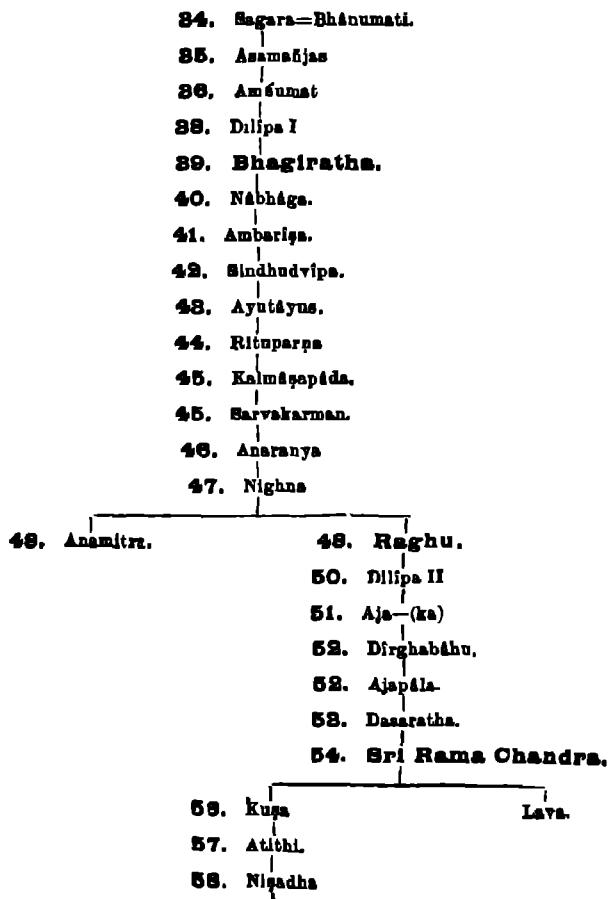
### TABLE No 1

#### THE SŪRYA VAMŚA OR THE SOLAR DYNASTY.

(Pre-Mahābhārata War)

1. Kasyapa=Aditi				
2. Sūrya (Vivasvat)				
3. Vaivasvata Manu				
4. Ikavaku				
5. Vikukṣi (Śasāda)				
6. Kakutstha				
7. Suyodhana (Ānenas)				
8. Pṛithu				
9. Visvaga (Āsva)				
10. Indu (Ārdra)				
11. Juvalāsva I.				
12. Śrāvasta				
13. Brihadāsva				
14. Kuvalāsva (Dhundhumāra)				
15. Dhṛidhasva	Danda		Kapilāsva	
16. Pramoda				
17. Haryāsva				
18. Nikumbha				
19. Samhatāsva				
20. Akṛitāsva (Kṛisāsva)	Rāṇasva			
21. Yuvanāsva II (married Gaurī of the Paurava family)				
22. Māndhātpi				
23. Purukutsa.	Dharmesena	Muchukunda	Satrujit	
24. Vasuda (Trasadasyn)				
25. Sambhuti				

26. Tridhanvan  
 27. Trayyirupa.  
 28. Satyavrata.  
 29. Satyavratha (Trishaku).  
 30. Harischandra.  
 31. Rohita.  
 32. Vriska.  
 33. Bahn.  
 34. Sagara two wives Bhānumati and Prabhā (d. of Yadu ?) Prabhā produced 60,000 sons.



- 
59. Nala.  
 60. Nabhas.  
 61. Pundarika  
 62. Kṣemadhanvan.  
 63. Devānika.  
 64. Ahinagu.  
 65. Saheśāva  
 66. Chandrāvaloka  
 67. Tarapida  
 68. Chandragiri.  
 69. Bhīnuśchandra  
 70. Śrutayu (killed in the Bharata War).

(several generations omitted by the Matsya).

75. Brihadbala.  
 (killed in the Bharata War according to some).

TABLE No. II  
THE CHANDRA VAMSA or THE LUNAR DYNASTY—Matsya, Chap. 24

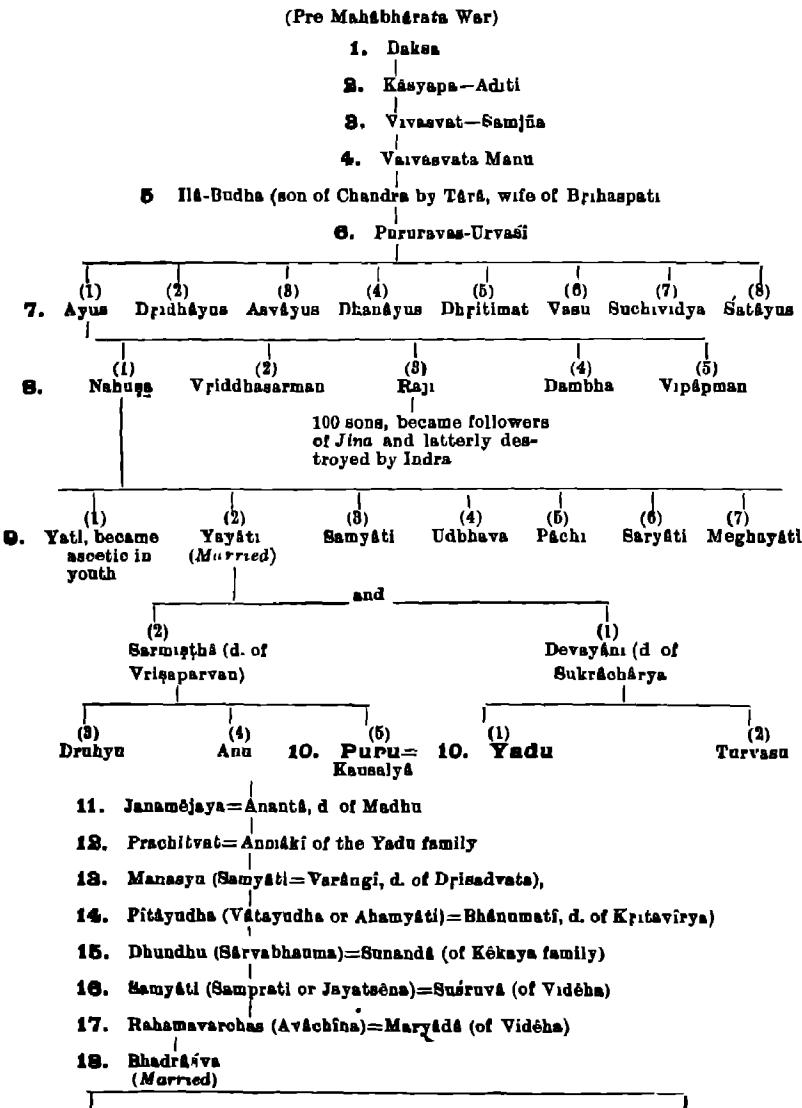
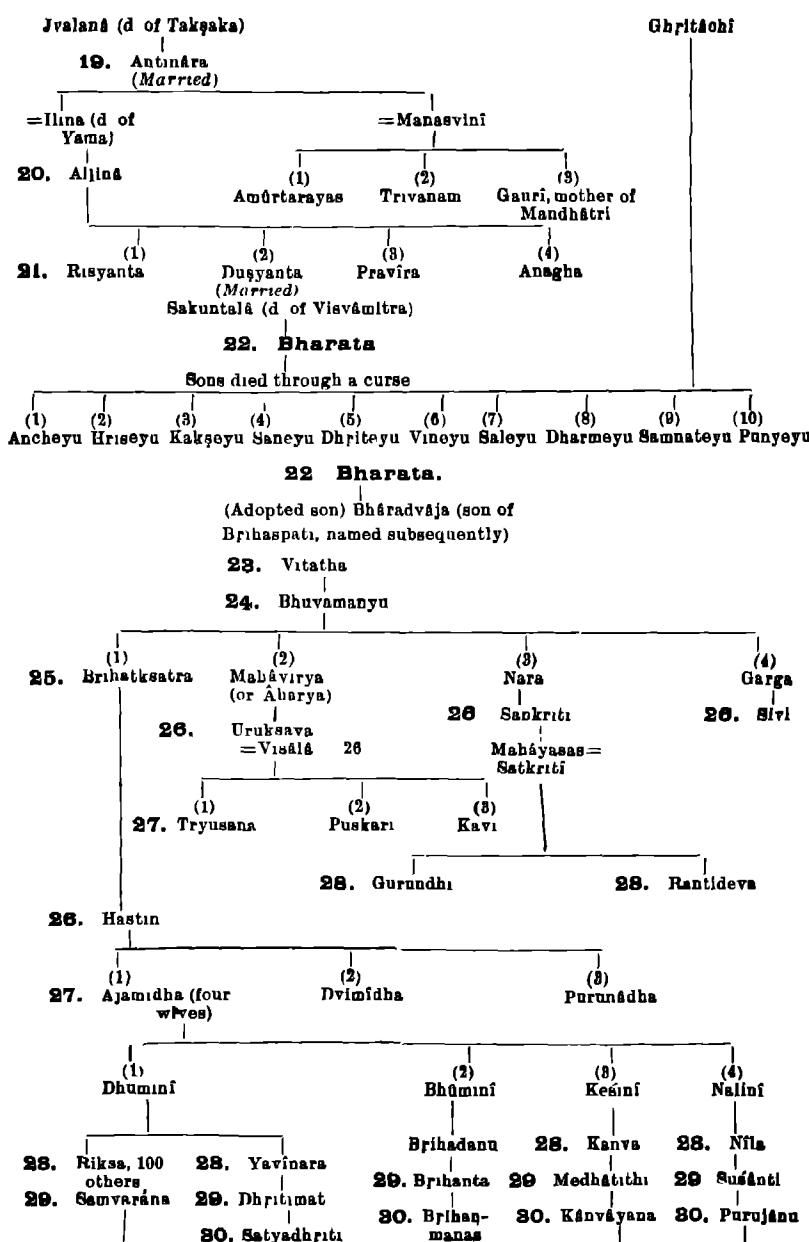


TABLE No II

lvii



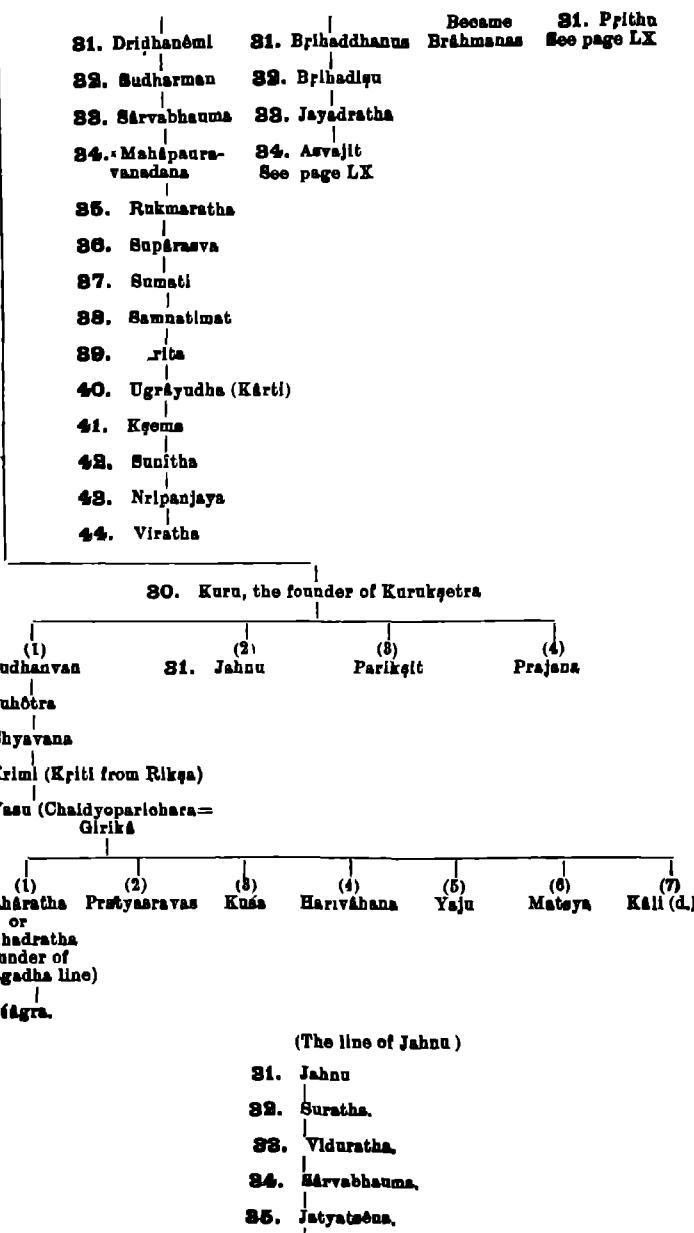
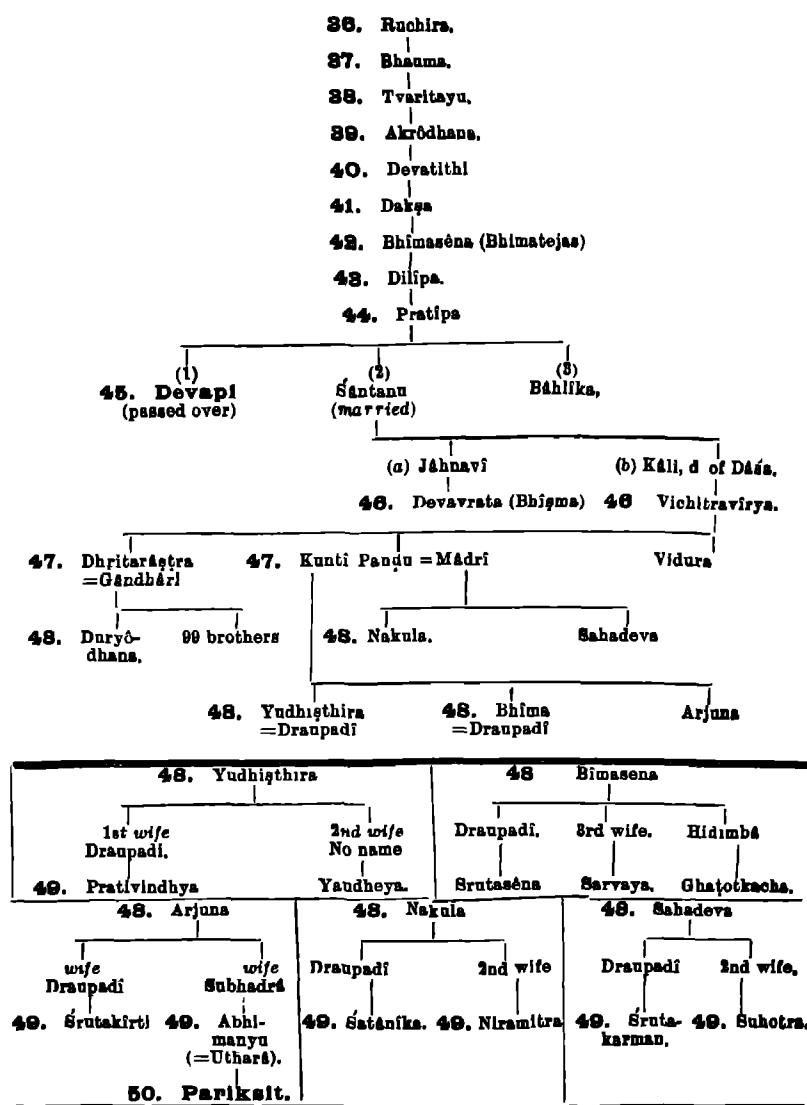
**APPENDIX VI**

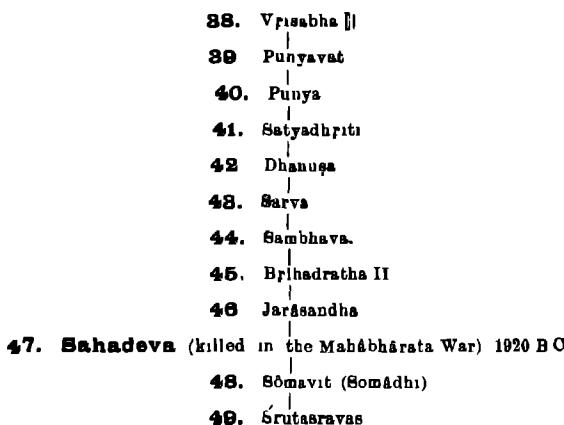
TABLE No II

lix

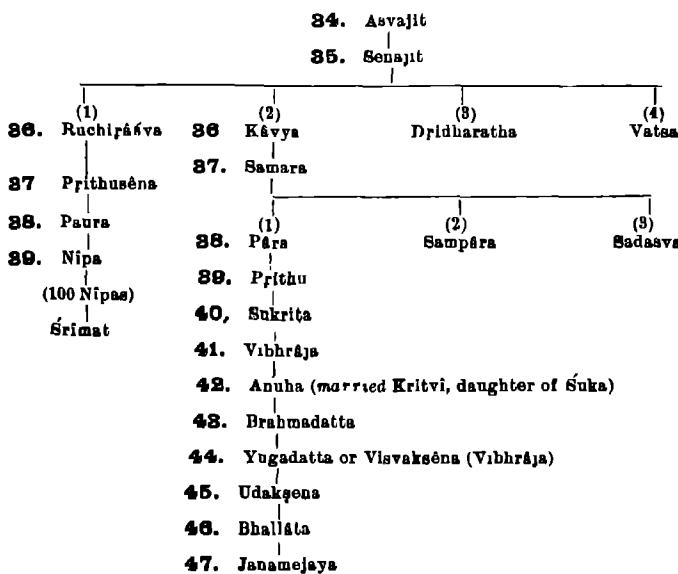


## BARHADRATHAS.

**36. Maháratha (Brihadratha of Magadha).****37. Kusigra**



## THE LINE OF ASVAJIT



## THE LINE OF PRITHU

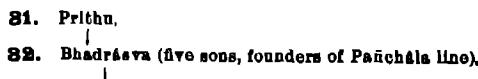
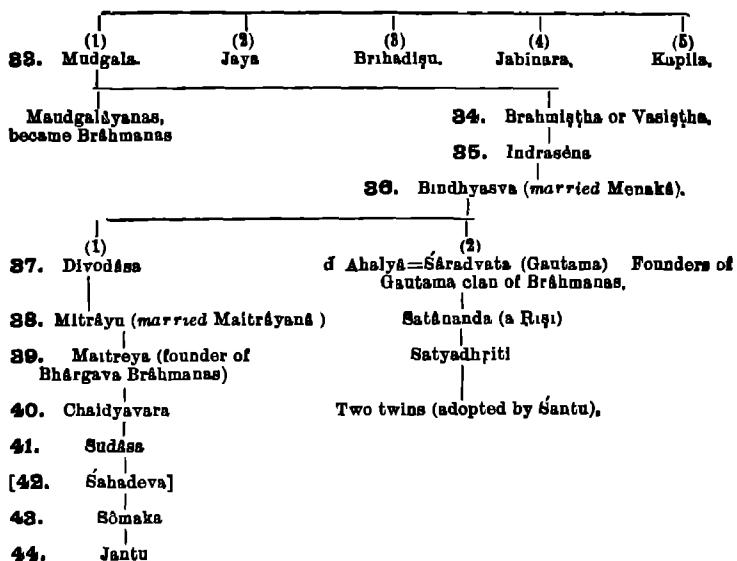


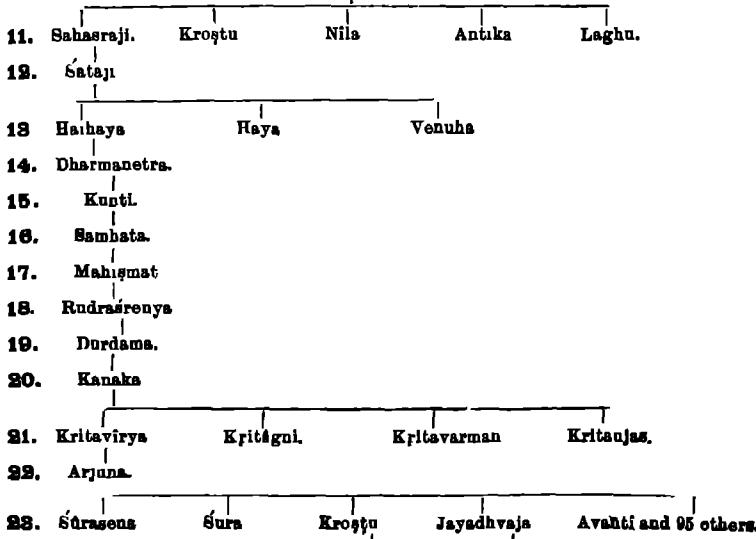
TABLE No. II

lxii



## LINE OF YĀDAVAS

10. Yadu (son of Yayāti)



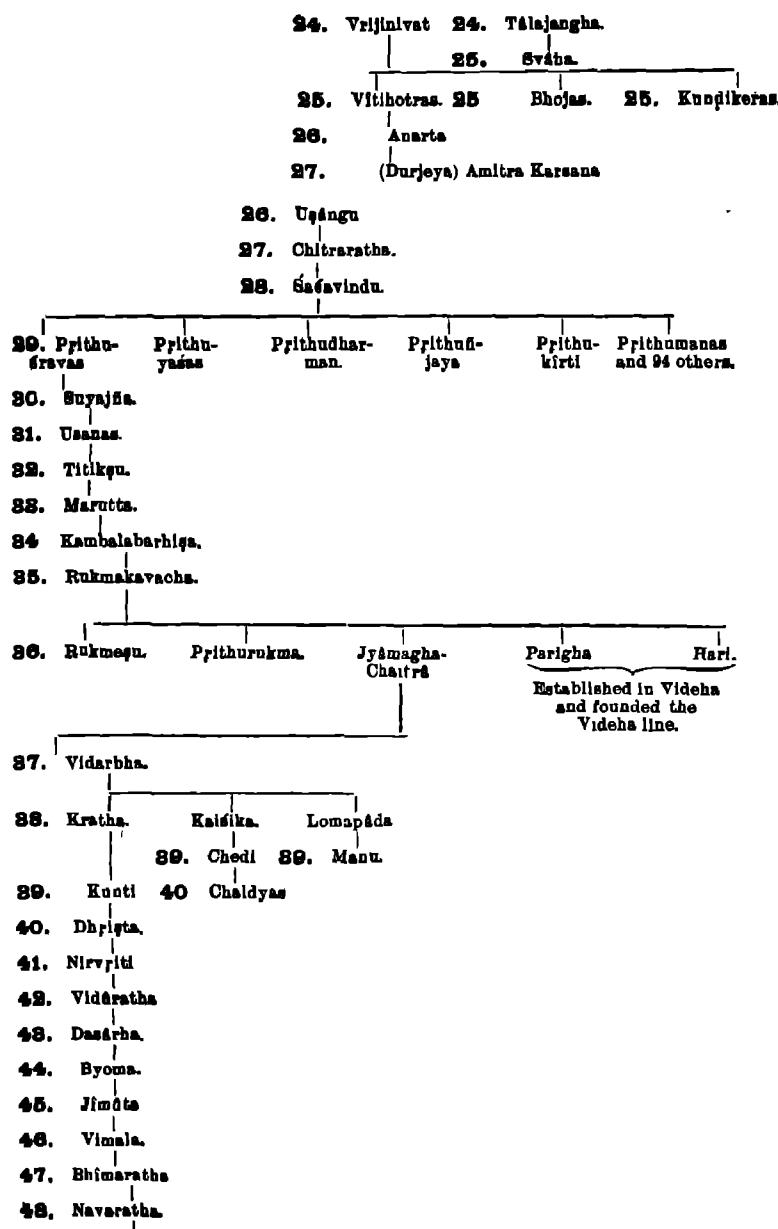
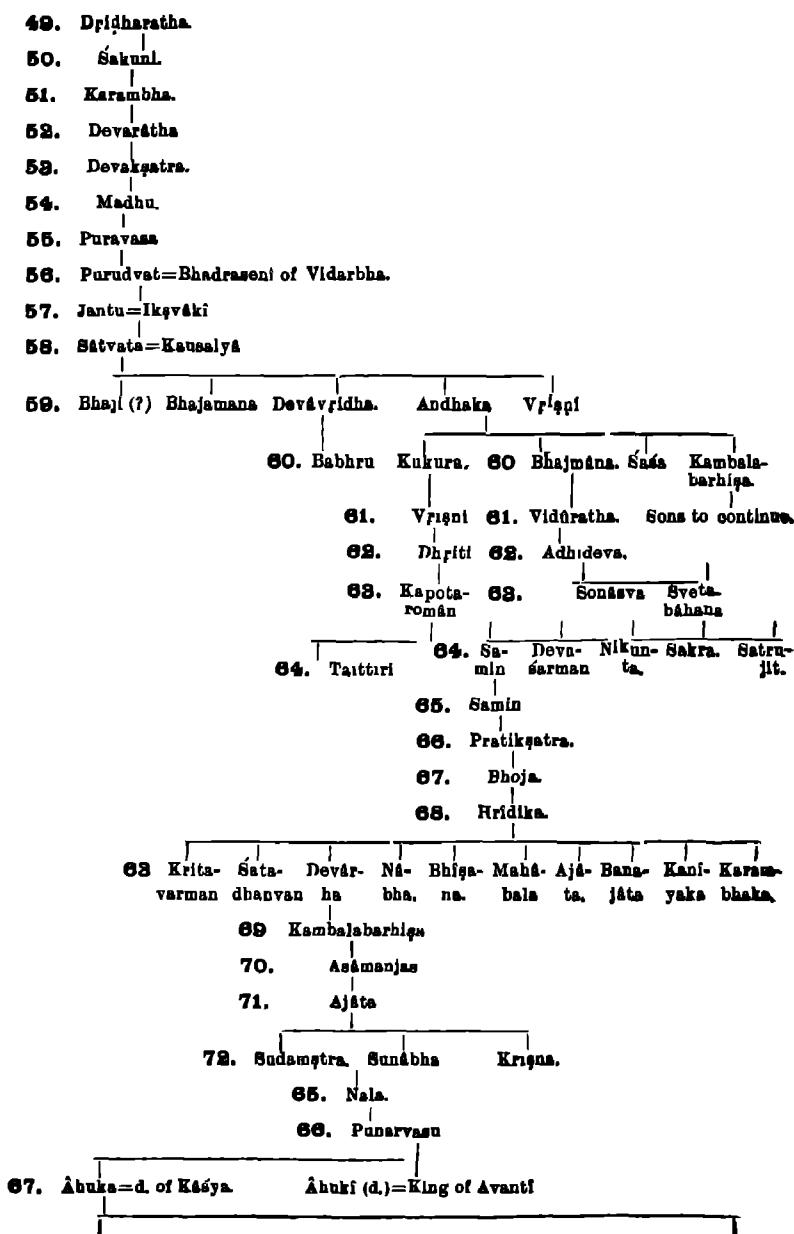


TABLE No. II.



<b>68. Devaka.</b>						<b>68. Ugrasena.</b>
<b>69. Devavat.</b>	Upadeva	Sudeva.	Devarakṣita	Devakī	Śrutadevī	
<b>70. Sri Krisna.</b>						
Mitradevī	Yaśodhara	Sudevi	Satyadevi	Sutapā		
<b>69. Kamsa.</b>	Nyagrodha	Sunāman	Kanka.	Samku	Ajabhū	Rāṣtrapāla
Yudhamuṣṭi. Sumuṣṭida	Kamsa	Kamsavati	Sunantū	Rāṣtrapāli	Kamkā.	

**Post Mahabharata.****TABLE No III***Post-Mahâbhârata Aikyavâkus Matsya Purâna (Ch 271. v 4-17)*

- (a) Brihadbala (killed in the Great Battle in 1920 B C)  
 1 Brihatksaya  
 2 Uruksaya  
 3 Vatsadroha (or Vatsavyâha)  
 4 Prativyoma  
 5 Divâkara (contemporary of Adhîstâma Krispa of Pauravas, and  
 of Senâjît of Magadha, 1640 B C to 1590 B C)  
 6 Sahadeva  
 7 Dhruvâsava (or Brihadâsava)  
 8 Bhânuratha  
 9 Pratitâsava or Pratipâsava  
 10 Supratipa  
 11 Marudeva or Sahadeva  
 12 Sunaksatra  
 13 Kinnarâsava or Puskara  
 14 Antariksha  
 15 Susena (Suparna or Suvarna or Sutapas)  
 16 Sumitra (or Amîtrajit)  
 17 Brihadrâja (bhrâja, or Bharadvâja)  
 18 Dharma (or Viryavân)  
 19 Kritañjaya  
 19a Vrâta  
 20 Raneñjaya (Dhanastraya)  
 21 Sañjaya  
 22 Śâkyâ  
 23 Sudhaudana (Kruddhodana)  
 24 Siddhârtha  
 25 Râhula (or Râtula, Bâhula, Langala, Puskala)  
 26 Prasenajit (or Senajit)  
 27 Kṣudraka  
 28 Kulaka (Kṣulika, Kundaka, Kuḍava, Ranaka)  
 29 Suratha  
 30 Sumitra

*Note.—The last king apparently killed in the Great Revolution of Mahâpadma Nanda in 422 B C The Purâna says there were 24 Aikyavakus ch 272, (verse 15), but it enumerates 30*

## TABLE IV

*Post-Mahābhārata Paurava Matsya Purāṇa* (Ch 50 v 57, 65, 66, 78-89)  
 (Abhimanyu, son of Arjuna killed in the Great Battle in 1920 B C)

Yudhiṣṭhīra 1920 B C — 1884 B C (36 yrs)

1. Parīkṣit, son of Abhimanyu 1884 B C — 1860 B C (24 yrs Died at the age of 60)
2. Janamejaya
3. Śatānika (II)
4. Advamedhadatta
5. Adhisomakriṣṇa or Asimakriṣṇa (In whose reign the Purāṇa was recited Contemporary of Senajit 1640 B C to 1590 B C)
6. Ničakṣu (or) Vivakṣu (Va Nirvaktra Bh Nemichakra)
7. (Uṣpa or) Bhūri
8. Chitraratha
9. Suchidratha or ° rava (or Bh Kaviratha).
10. Vṛisipīmat (or Vṛistīmat Dhṛitīmat)
11. Suṣeṇa
12. Sunītha (or Sutīrtha)
13. Rucha Not in Mt
14. Ničhakṣus (or Trichakṣa)
15. Sukhibala (or Vs Sukhabala Sukhinala)
16. (Pariplava or Paripluta or) Parīṣṇava
17. (Sunaya or) Sutapas
18. Medhāvin
19. (Nrīpañjaya) Purañjaya
20. (Durva or) Urva (Mṛidu Hari)
21. Tigmātman
22. Brīhadratha
23. (Vasudāna) Vasudāman (Sudānaka Sudāsa)
24. Śatānika III
25. Udayana (or Udāna Durdamana)
26. Vahīnara (or Mahīnara Ahīnara)
27. Dandapāni (or Khaṇḍapāni)
28. Nirāmitra (or Naramitra)
29. Kṣemaka

Note.—The last king, Kṣemaka, was probably killed in the great revolution of Mahāpadma Nanda in 422 B C The Purāṇas give the number as 25 Kings, but they are here 29

## TABLE No. V

*Post-Mahâbhârata Magadha Kings*

**I Barhadhratha Dynasty** (1920 B.C. to 920 B.C.). Sahadeva killed in the Great Battle in 1920 B.C.

- 1 Somâdhi (Mârjâri) 58 d 1862 B.C.
- 2 Srutañras 67 d 1795
- 3 Apratipin (Ayutâyus) 36 d 1759 B.C.
- 4 Niramitra, 40 d 1719 B.C.
- 5 Suraksa (Suksattra) 56 d 1663 B.C.
- 6 Brihatkarman (Brhatsena), 23 d 1640 B.C.

Total six kings, 280 years

7 Senâjit, 50 d 1590 B.C. In his reign the Purâna was recited  
Contemporary of Divâkara and Adhîsomakṛiṣna

- 8 Srutañjaya, 40, d 1550 B.C.
- 9 Vibhu (Vipra) 28, d 1522 B.C.
- 10 Suchi, 58 d 1464 B.C.
- 11 Keema, 28 d 1436 B.C.
- 12 Anuvrata (Suvrata), 64 d 1372 B.C.
- 13 Sunetra (or, Dharmanetra 5), 35, d 1337 B.C.
- 14 Nirvritti, 58 d 1279 B.C.
- 15 Trinetra (or Sudrâma) 38, d 1241 B.C.
- 16 Dyumatseña (Drîdhasena), 48, d 1193 B.C.
- 17 Mahînetra (or, Sumati) 33 d 1160 B.C.
- 18 Achala (Suchala), 32, d 1128 B.C.
- 19 Sunetra (Sunîtha) 40 d 1038 B.C.
- 20 Satyajit, 83, d 1005 B.C.
- 21 Viśvajit (or, Virajit), 35, d 970 B.C.
- 22 Rîpuñjaya (Ariñjaya or Isuñjaya), 50 d 920 B.C.

Note.—The last 16 kings ruled for 720 years. Or, the entire 22 kings, 1000 years. The dynasty ended in 920 B.C. The reading in one text of Mt. is that the reign of these sixteen kings lasted for 720 years.—

"Vayovimsâdhi kam teṣām râjyam cha data-saptakam", which means—(These 16 kings are to be known as the future Barhadhrathas) and their kingdom will last 720 years

We take the reading 'vayo' instead of trayo, as suggested by Mr Pargiter, because the aggregate period of the reigns, from Senâjit to Rîpuñjaya, comes up to 720 years, and thus corroborates this reading. Thus there is no reason to change वयोऽपि the reading given in MSS J to वयोऽपि. The manuscript appears to be correct. The reign did not last 723

years, but 720 years only. The periods of reign, where they differ from Matsya, are taken from other Purânas or MSS as in Mr Pargiter's Book "The Kings of Kali age"

**II. Pradyota Dynasty.** Began in 920 B C when Pradyota killed Rîpuñjeya in that year and ended in 782 B C

1 Pradyota 23 d. 897 B C.

2. Pâlaka 24 d 73 B C

3 Viśâkhyâdipa 50 d 823 B C

4 Ajaka (or Bh. Rajaka or Vs Janaka Or Mt Suryaka) 21 d. 802 B C.

5 Nandîvardhana (or Va Vartîvardhana) 20 d 782 B C.

Note.—5 kings Total reign 188 years. Ended in 782 B C

**III. Sisunaga Dynasty (782 B C—422 B C)**

1 Sisunâga 40 d 742 B C

2. Kakavarna or V Sakavarna 36 d 706 B C

3 Kṣemadharman 36 d 670 B C

4 Kṣatrujas (or Bh Kṣetrajna Or Mt Kṣemajit) 40 d 630

B C

5 Vimbisara Bd 38 d 592 B C

6 Ajâtaśatru Mt, 27 d 565 B C

7 Darâsaka (or Bd, Vs, Bh Darbhaka, or Vamâsaka) 25 d 540

B C

8 Udayin (or Vs Udayasva Or Mt, Udâsin Or Bh. Ajaya) 33

Founder of Kusumpura d 507 B C

9 Nandîvardhana Va, 42 d 465 B C

10 Mahânandin (Bd Sahânandi) 43 d 422 B C

Note.—10 Sisunâgas 860 years, or 862, according to Vâyu and Visnu This dynasty ended in 422 B C, when Mahâpadma Nanda killed Mahânandin that year

	Years
Bârhadrathas	1,000
Pradyotas	188
Sisunâgas	860

The grand total ... 1,498

Nanda's abhiṣeka or inauguration took place in 1,498 or roughly 1,500 years after the birth of Parîksit.

#### *Post-NANDA Magadha Dynasties*

**I Nanda Dynasty** commenced in 422 B C

1 Mahâpadma Nanda 88 (28) d 334 B C

2 Sukalpa (Sahalya or, Vs Sumatyâ, or, Bh Sumalya and 7 others) 12 d 322 B C

Note.—9 Nandas 100 years. Exterminated by Chandragupta Maurya in 322 B C.

(1) **Maurya Dynasty** (according to *Vāyu*)

- 1 Chandragupta 24 Ascended 322 B C d 298 B C.
- 2 Vindusāra 25 asc 298 B C died 273 B C
- 3 Aśoka 36 (26) asc 273 B C died 247 B C.
- 4 Kunāla (or Daśaratha Vs Suyaas) 8
- 5 Bandhupālita (or Sangata) 8 (Va B d 10).
- 6 Daśona 7 (10).
- 7 Daśaratha 8.
- 8 Samprati 9
- 9 Śaliśuka 13
- 10 Devadharman 7
- 11 Satadhanvan or (e Va Śatamhanus) Mt 6, 8
- 12 Brihadratha e Va 87 70 (B d 7)

*Note.—* 10 Mauryas 137 years Ended in 185 B. C. But the regnal periods added together are 160

**The Maurya Dynasty.**

*Note.—* The Matsya Purāna gives a very mutilated list of this family, as shown below —

- 1 Satadhanvan, 6
- 2 Brihadratha, 7
- 3 Aśoka, 36
- 4 His grandson, 70
- 5 Daśaratha, 8
- 6 Samprati or Saptati, 9

Then it adds “These ten Mauryas will enjoy the earth for 137 years” It names only 6 kings, and the total of their reigns comes to only 136

(2) The *Vāyu*, Bibliotheca Indica Edition, gives, however, the following list in Ch 37, v 425 et seq —

- 1 Chandragupta, 24 years
- 2 Bhadrasāra, 25 years
- 3 Aśoka, 26 years
- 4 Kunāla, 8 years
- 5 Bandhupālita, 8 years
- 6 Indrapālita, 10 years
- 7 Devavarmā, 7 years
- 8 Satadhara, 8 years
- 9 Brihadāśva, 7 years

Then it adds “these nine kings should enjoy the earth for full 137 years,” but the total comes to 123

Mr Vincent Smith, in his chronological table of the Maurya dynasty, gives the same list, and then adds, "The names of the successors of Aśoka are taken from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, omitting Suyādhas, for the reasons given in the text. Other names are given in Jain books and the Buddhist Aśokavadāna. The Vāyu, which is one of the oldest of the Purāṇas, gives only nine names for the dynasty, as in brackets, and also states the duration of each reign. The approximate dates given are assigned accordingly, on the assumption that the reign of Aśoka lasted for about forty or forty-one years. Its duration, according to the Vāyu Purāṇa, was thirty-six, and, according to the Mahāvamsa, thirty-seven, years, both of which periods probably should be reckoned from the coronation. The Purāṇas agree in assigning 137 years to the Maurya dynasty, but the total of the lengths of reigns according to the Vāyu Purāṇa, is only 133. The difference of four years may be accounted for by the interval between the accession and coronation of Aśoka. For further details see Pargiter, "Dynasties of the Kali Age." The variant readings are numerous."

The Matsya Purāṇa, however, is incomplete and, moreover, it has misplaced verse 23, which ought to come after verse 24 and not before it. Therefore the Matsya list should stand thus —

- 1 Aśoka
- 2 His grandson
- 3 Dasaratha
- 4 Samprati
- 5 Śatadhanvā
- 6 Brihadratha

The names in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa are —

- 1 Chandragupta 24 years.
- 2 Bindusāra 25 ..
- 3 Aśokavardhana 26 ..
- 4 Suyādhas (Kunāla) 8 ..
- 5 Daśaratha (Bṛhadupalita) 8 years
- 6 Sangata (Indrapalita) 10 ..
- 7 Śālikuka 13 ..
- 8 Somadarman (Devavarman) 7 ..
- 9 Satadhanvan (Satadhara) 8 ..
- 10 Brihadratha (or Brihadaśva) 7 ..

The names within brackets and the regnal periods given above are taken from the Vāyu P. The Viṣṇu Purāṇa ends by saying "these ten

Mauryas will reign for 137 years" It is the only Purana that gives the correct ten names neither more nor less The total of reigns (taken from Vāyu), comes up to 136 years

Comparative Table of Maurya Kings

	Visnu	Brahmānda	Vāyu Mas marked <sup>e</sup>	Vāyu generally
1	Chandragupta	Chandragupta 24	Chandragupta 24	Chandragupta 24
2	Bindusāra	Bhadrásras 25	Nandasāra 25	Bhadrásra 25
3	Aśokavardhana	Asoka 36	Asoka 36	Asoka 36
4	Suyases	Kunāla 8	Kulāla 8	Kunāla 8
5	Dasaratha	Bandhupálitas of Kunāla 8	Dasaratha 8	Bandhupálita 8
6	Sangata	Indrapálita 10	Sampratip 9	Indrapálita 10
7	Śálisūka		Śálisūka 18	
8	Somasarmī	Devavarman 7	Devadharma 7	Devavarma 7
9	Śatadhanya	Śatadhanus 8	Śatamdhanyu 8	Śatadhara 8
10	Bṛihadratha	Bṛihadratha 7	Bṛihadratha 7	Bṛihadaśva 7
	Total 10 Kings 187	9 Kings actual 183 years	187 actual 145 years	187 actual total 123 yrs

The above comparative table requires a little explanation The Visnu Purāna gives the names of ten kings, but not their separate regnal periods It gives the total as ten kings, who ruled for 137 years The Bhāgavata Purāna agrees with the Visnu, generally, but omits Dasaratha It says at the end that there were 10 kings who ruled for 137 years As it is exactly like Viṣṇu it has not been shown in the above table Brah-mānda gives 9 kings, omitting Śálisūka It says at the end that these 9 kings ruled for 137 years But the aggregate of the actual regnal periods comes up to 133 years The Vāyu E names all the 10 kings, with two more, as given by Mr Pargiter, but which are really misreadings It gives the last king Bṛihadratha's reign as 87 years, which is evidently a mistake for 7 years The table is given with these emendations It also says at the end that these 9 kings reigned for 137 years, though the actual total comes up to 145 years The "Vāyu generally" requires no explanation The actual total here is 123 years

Now, all the Purānas agree in giving 137 years as the total period of this dynasty They agree also in giving the same regnal periods for the first three kings and the last three kings It is only with regard to

the middle three or four kings, that there is a difference of opinion among them To reconcile this is not very easy One may take it, however, as a fact that Asoka really reigned for 40 years and not 36 The difference is due to the fact that the 4 years between his coronation and accession have been omitted Or, it may be explained on another ground, that Kunāla or Suyāśas, the son of Asoka, never actually reigned on account of his blindness If 8 years of his alleged reign be deducted from 145 years, then the text of the Vāyu becomes harmonized, and then the revised list would stand as follows —

- 1 Chandragupta 24 years (322-298 B C)
- 2 Bindusāra 25 years (298-273 B C)
- 3 Asoka 36 years (273-237 B C)
4. Dadaratha 8 years (237-229 B C)  
(Bandhupālita)
- 5 Sampratipa 9 years (229-220 B C)  
(Sangata or  
Indrapālita)
- 6 Śaliśuka 13 years (220-207 B C)
- 7 Devadharma (Devavarma or Somādarma) 7 years (207-200 B C)
- 8 Śatadhanva 8 years (200-192 B C)
- 9 Bṛihadratha 7 years (192-185 B C)

This last king was killed by Puṣyamitra, who ascended the throne in 185 B C

---

#### Sunga Dynasty.

- 1 Puṣyamitra 36 yrs (Va., Bd., 60) (185 B C -149 B C)
- 2 (Agnimitra 8 years)
- 3 Vasujyeśha (or Va. Bd., Va., Bh., Sujeśha) 7 years (149 B C -142 B C)
- 4 Vasunītra 10 years (142 B C -132 B C)
5. Andhraka (Antaka), or Bd., Bh., Bhadraka or Va. Ardraka) 2 years (132 BC -130 B C)
- 6 Pulindaka 3 years (127 B C -124 B.C.)
- 7 Ghoṣa (or Ghosavasu, or Mt crp Yomegha) 3 years
- 8 Vajramitra 9 years (Bd., 7 years) 124 B C -115 B C)
- 9 Samshāga or Bhagavata Mt 32 years (115 B C -83 B C)
- 10 Devabhūmi (or Va Kṣemabhūmi) 10 years (83 B C -73 B C.)

*Note.—10 Sungas for 112 years. Ended in 73 B.C.*

**Kanvayana (Sungabhritya) Dynasty.**

- 1 Vasudeva 9 years (Bd 5) (73 B C -64 B C)
- 2 Bhumiimitra 14 years (Va, Bd, 5 years) (64 B C -50 B.C)
- 3 Nārāyaṇa 12 years (50 B C -38 B C)
- 4 Suśarman 10 years (Bd, 5 years) (38 B C -28 B C)

*Note* — 4 Kings for 45 years, from 78 B C to 28 B C

**Andhras.**

- 1 Śīuka, or Simuka, (Va, Bd Sindhuka Vs Sipraka), 23
- 2 Kuśna, 10 (Mt, 18)
- 3 Sri-Śatakarnī, 10.
- 4 Pūrnotsanga, 18.
- 5 Skandhastambhi, 18
- 6 Śatakarnī, 56
- 7 Lambodara, 18
- 8 Apilaka, 12
- 9 Meghaśvāti, 18
- 10 Svāti (or Ati), 18 (or 12)
- 11 Skandasvāti, 7
- 12 Mrigendra Svātikarṇa, 3
- 13 Kuntala Svātikarna, 8
- 14 Svātivarna, 1
- 15 Pulomāvi, 36 (Va, Bd, 24)
- 16 Ariṣṭakarṇa, 25
- 17 Hāla, 5 (Va, Bd, 1)
- 18 Mantalaka (or Pattalaka, Bh Talaka, Va Saptaka), 5
- 19 Purikseṇa (Mt Purindiasena), 21
- 20 Sundara Śatakarṇi, 1
- 21 Chakrōra Śatkararnī, 6 mo.
- 22 Śivasvāti, 23
- 23 King Gautamiputra, 21
- 24 Puloma (Pulomavi), 28
- 25 (Śatakarnī, 29)
- 26 Śivāśri Puloma, 7
- 27 Śivaskandha Śatakarṇi, 3
- 28 Yajñāśri Śatakarṇika, 29 (Va, Bd, 19)
- 29 Vijaya, 6
- 30 Chandaśri Śatakarnī (Va, Bd Dandasri), 10 (3).
- 31 Pulomāvi, 7

*Note* — These thirty Andhra kings will enjoy the earth 460 years (Bd, 456). Or from 38 B.C to 483 A.D

It may be mentioned here that the *Purâpa* states that Sisuka (Simuka) was the first Andhra king, who was the slayer of Sunarman, the last of the Kanvas, in 28 B C. But from the evidence of coins it appears that Simuka reigned long before that period, not of course in Magadha, but in Andhra. The slayer of the last Kanya was very likely one of the three kings, nos 11, 12, or 13 in the list of the Andhras. The reasons for differing from the Paurânic accounts may be found in Mr Vincent Smith's *The Early History of India*, 3rd edition, pp 206-208.

We make only this short extract from page 207—"The Udayagiri or Hathigumpha inscription of Kharvela, the Jain king of Kalinga, has been the subject of much discussion, and archaeologists used to believe erroneously that it was dated in the year 105 of the Maurya era. The latest and most authoritative account of the mutilated document is the abstract translation published by Prof. Luders in Ep. Ind., vol. I, App., p. 160. We learn that Kharvela, surnamed Maha Moghavahana, the third of the Cheta dynasty of Kalinga, was anointed as Maharaj when twenty-four years of age, having been already Crown Prince (Yuvaraja) for nine years. In his second year he defeated Satakarni, by sending an army to the west. In his fifth year he repaired an aqueduct which had not been used for 108 years from the time of king Nanda, and in the same year harassed the king of Râjagrîha i.e., of Magadha. In his twelfth year he watered his elephants in the Ganges, and compelled the king of Magadha to bow at his feet. In his thirteenth year he erected certain pillars.

"The reference to king Nanda gives the approximate date. The latest date for the last Nanda king, according to my chronology, is 822 B C. Deducting 108 we get 210 B C for the fifth year of Kharvela, and consequently 223 B C for his accession, some nine years after the close of Asoka's reign. The Andhra king alluded to can only be Sri Satakarni, No. 8 of the Puranic list, who is commemorated by a defaced, but happily inscribed, relief image at Nanaghat, a pass leading from the Konkan to the ancient town of Junnar in the Poona District, Bombay (A. S. W. I., vol. V, p. 59).

"The synchronism of Satakarni I with Kharvela proves conclusively that the Andhra dynasty cannot have begun with the death of the last Kanya king. The date assigned to Satakarni I is in full accord with the script of the Nanaghat inscriptions, which include similar records of the first and second Andhra kings, Simuka and Krishna (Luders, op. cit., Nos. 1113, 1114, 1144). The king of Magadha whom Kharvela defeated was one of the later Mauryas, probably Salsuka (c. 228-211), in or about 212 B C."

SRISA CHANDRA VIDYARNAVA  
LALIT MOHAN KÂVYATIRTHA, M.A., B.L.

## APPENDIX VII.

*(Pre Mahabharata War Kings (Extract from Mr Pargiter's paper in J R A S January 1910)*

I YADAVAS	II. RAJAYAS	III. PAURAVAS	V KANYAKUBJA.
1 Manu		Manu	
2 Ilā		Ilā	
3 Purūravas		Purūravas	
4 Ayus		Ayus	Amāvasu
5 Nahusa		Nahusa	
6 Yayāti*		Yayāti*	
7 Yādu		Puru	
8 Kroṣṭu	Sahasrajit	Jambujaya I	Bhīma
9		Prachinvat	
10 Vṛijinivat	Catejit	Pravira	
11		Manasyu	
12		Abhayada	
13 Svāhi	Haihaya	Sudhanvan	Kāñchana-pra- bha
14		Bahugava	
15		Samyati	
16 Ruśadgu	Dharma	Aksamyati	
17		Raudrāsva	
18		Richeyu	
19 Chitraratha	Kunti	Suhotra	
20		Mattrāra	
21 Śasavīndu*	Sāhañji	Tamṣu	
22 Prīthuyasas			Jahnu
23 Prīthukarmān	Mehiṣmat		Sumautu
24 Prīthujaya			Ajaka
25 Prīthukirti			Balukāsava
26 Prīthudāna			Kusa
27 Prīthusravas	Bhadraśrenya		Kusāsava
28 Prīthusattama	Durduma		Kusika
29			Gādhī
30 Antara	Kanake		
31 Suyañjia	Kṛitavirya		Richīka
32 Uññas	Arjuna*		Jamadagni
33 Sineyu	Jayadhvaja		
34 Marutte	Tālāyangha		
35 Kambalabharus	Vīthotra		
36 Rukmavaccha	Vṛiṣa		
37 Parāvriti	Madhu		
38 Jyāmagha	Vṛiṣṇi		
39		"	
40 Vīdarbha	Allina		
41 Kratha			
42 Kunti		Duryanta	
43 Dhṛiṇi		Bharata*	
44 Nirvṛiti			
45 Vīdūratha	Vitatha		
46 Dasārtha	Bhūmanyu		
47 Vyoman	Bṛhatkṛatrā		
48 Jimūta	Suhotra		
49 Vīkriti	Hastin		
50 Bhīmaratha			

VI KASY LINE.	VII. SOLAR LINE.	VIII VIDHVA LINE.	IX DISTA'S LINE	X. ANU'S LINE	
Manu Ilā Purūrvas	Manu Ikṣvaku		Manu Dīṣṭa	Manu Ilā Purūrvas	1 2 3
Ayus Nabuṣa Kṛatravṛdhā	Śākāda Kakuttha Āmenas Prithu	Nimi Mithi-Janaka	Nābhāga Bhelandana	Ayus Nabuṣa Yagātī* Anu	4 5 6 7
Su(na)hotra	Vievagaśva		Vatsapri	Sabhānara	8
Kāśa	Adra	Udāvasu		9	
	Yuvanśava I			Kālāṇīla	10
Kāśipā	Śrāvasta		Prāmēṇ		11
Dīrghatapas	Bṛihadassva	Nandivardhana			12
Dhanva	Kuvalāśva				13
Dhanvantari	Dridhāśva		Prajānl	Sṛījaya	14
	Prawoda	Suketu			15
	Haryasva I				16
	Nikumbha			Puraśjaya	17
	Samhatāśva				18
	Kṛīasva	Devarāta		Janamejaya	19
	Prasenajit				20
Ketumat	Yuvanśava II		Kṣupa	Mahāsāla	21
	Māndhātī*	Bṛihaduktha			22
	Purukutsa				23
	Trasasadya		Vimēśa		24
	Sambhūta			Mahāmanas	25
Bhimaratha	Anaranya				26
	Priśadasva			Uśinara	27
Divodasa I (Aṣṭāratha)	Haryasva II	Sudhṛiti		Titikṣu	28
	Vasumanas			Sīvi*	29
	Tridhanvan			Kekaya	30
	Trayyigrupa	Dhṛiṣṭaketu	Karandhama	Ruśadratha	31
	Trūṣṇku				32
	Hariśchandra				33
	Rohita			Hema	34
	Harita				35
(Haryasva)	Chanchu				36
	Vijaya	Maru	Nariṣyanta		37
(Sudeva)	Roruka		Dama		38
	Vṛika			Sutapas	39
Divodasa II	Bōlu	Pratindhaka	Rājyavardhana		40
Pratardana	Sogoru*		Sudhṛiti		41
Vatas	Asamadajas			Bali	42
Alarka	Amsumat	Kṛitiratha	Nara		43
Gannati	Dilipa I		Kevale		44
	Bhagiratha*			Anga	45
	Srota	Devamidha	Baudhumat		46
Sunitha	Nābhāga		Vegavat		47
	Amberīga*		Budha	Dadhuśhāna	48
Kṣema	Sindhudvipa	Vibudha			49
	Ayatāyus		Tṛīṇavīndu		50

*APPENDIX VII*

*lxxvii*

	I YADAVAS	II DVIMIDHAS.	III PAURAVAS	IV. N PANOALA	V S PANOALA.
51	Navaratha			Vikunṭhabana ?	
52	Dasaartha	Dvimidha	Ajamidha		
53	Sakuni	Yavinaṇa		Nila	Bṛhadīṣu
54	Karambha			Sānti	
55	Devarata	Dhritimat		Susanti	Bṛhadvassu
56	Devakṣatra			Purnjätī	
57	Madhu	Satyadhr̥iti		Arka	Bṛihadhanus
58	Kuruvasa			Bṛhmaṇyāśva	
59	Anu	Dridhanemi		Mudgala	
60	Purudvat			Brahmīṣha	
61	Puruhotra	Sudhanvan		Vadhryasava	Bṛhatkarmān
62	Ameu		Rikṣa I	Dvividāsa	
63	Satvat	Sārvabhauma		Mitravu	Jayadratha
64	Sāttvata			(Devavātā)	
65				Sriñcaya	Visvajit
66					
67	Andhaka			Obyavasa	Senajit
68				Somadatta	
69	Kukura			(Pijavasa)	Rochirāvva
70				Sudāsa	
71	Vṛgnī		Sathwaraṇa	Sabadeva	Prithuṣepa
72				Somaṇa	
73	Dṛḍti			Jantu	Pāra I
74					
75	Kapotaroman	Mahat Paurava	Kuru		Nipa
76			Parīkṣit I		
77	Viloman	Rukmaratha	Janamejaya II		
78			Suratha		
79	Tittiri	Supārṣva	Vidūratha		
80	Tsittiri		Sārvabhauma		
81			Jayatsena		
82	Nala	Sumati	Ārduḥi		
83			Mahāsattva		
84			Ayutāyus		
85		Sannati	Akrodhana		
86			Devatithi		
87	Abhijit	Kṛita	Hṛīta II		
88			Bhimasena		
89	Punarvasu		Dilipa		
90			Pratipa		
91	Āhuka		(Rātiṣeṇa)	Nipa (Nila)	
92			Santana		
93	Ugrāsena	Ugrāyudha	[Bhūma]		
94	Karṇa	Kṛemya	Vichitravirya	Prītata	
95	Kṛṣṇa	Suvira	Dhṛitarāṣṭra		
96		Nṛpañjaya	Pāṇḍavas	Drupada	
		Bahuratha	Abhimanyu	Dhṛīṣadyumna	
				Dhṛīṣakeśu	
			THE	BATTLE	BETWEEN THE
			Parīkṣit II		
			Jansmejaya III		
			etc		

## APPENDIX VII

VI KANI LINE	VII. SOLAR LINE	VIII. VIDHVA LINE	IX. DISTA'S LINE	X. ĀNU'S LINE.	
Ketumat	Rituparna Sarvakāma	Mahādṛḍī	Vitāla Hemachandra	Anapāna	51 52
Suketu	Sudāsa Kalmāṣapāda	Kṛtirāta	Suchandra Dhūmrāva	Diviratha	53 54 55 56
Dharmaketu	Aśmaka Mūlaka				
Satyaketu	Bataratha Vṛiddhaśārmāna	Mahāroman	Sṛījaya Sahadeva	"	57 58
Vibhu	Vīśvavāha I Dilipa II*	Uvarnaroman	Kṛisāya	Chitraratha	59 60
Suvibhu	Dirghabāhu	Hrasvaroman	Somadatta		61
Sukemāra	Aja Daśaratha	Sīradhvaja	Janamejaya Pramati	Lomapāda	62 63
Dhṛīstaketu	Rama*	Uññāmat		Chaturanga	64 65
Vepuhotra	Kuśa	Satadyumna			
Bharga	Añjili	Suchi		Prithulikṣa	66 67
	Nigadha	Urjavaha			
	Nala	Sanadvaja			
	Nabhas	Kuni			
MAGADHA LINE	Pundarika	Añjana			
Kuru	Kṣemadhanvan	Kulajit			
Sudhanvan	Devānika	Ariṣṭanemi			
Suhotra	Añinagu	Sṛītāyus			
Chayavana	Paripatra	Upaparāva			
Kṛita	Dala	Kañjaya			
Vasu Chādiya	Sala	Kṣemāri			
	Uktha	Añenās			
	Vajranābha	Samaratha			
Bṛihadratha	Sankhana	Satyaratha			
	Vyuṣitāsva	Sātyarathi			
Kuśagra	Vīśvavāha II	Upaguru			
Riṣabha	Hiro-yunubha	Upagupta			
	Puṣya	Svāgata			
Puspavat	Dhruvasandhi	Svanara			
Satyahita	Sudarsana	Suvrachas			
	Agnivarma	Subhāṣa			
Urja	Sighra	Subrūta			
Jahnu	Maru	Jaya			
	Prasuruta	Vijaya			
Sambhava	Śāsandhi	Rita			
Jardesandha	Amarāṇa	Sunaya			
	Mahasvat	Vitabavya			
Sukadeva	Vīśrotavat	Dṛiti			
	Bṛhadbala	Bahūlavā			
	etc.	Kṛiti			
PĀNDVAS AND	KAURAVAS.				
Somādhī	Bṛhatkṣapa				
Brutāravas	Urakṣapa				
etc.	etc				

## APPENDIX VIII.

### PAURĀNIK CHRONOLOGY

It is said that Indians have no history, and that they do not possess any historical instinct. This erroneous opinion about the Hindus, owes its origin to the fact, that the first literature to which the West came in contact was either the poetical or sacerdotal literature of India, in which one would not naturally expect much of historical knowledge. Though the Purāṇas were also before the public, yet, owing to their popular character, they never attracted much attention to the historical treasures buried in them. The literature of the Brāhmaṇas was always supplemented from the earliest times by the literature of the Kṣatriya Kings or the Court literature. Every prince, worth the name, had his court bard or Sūta or Māgadha, to commemorate the events of his reign and of his ancestors. These were compiled in Vamsābalis, which were popular with the public, though not of much interest to the sacerdotal class. The existence of these Vamsābalis or chronicles is proved, beyond doubt, by Kalhana in his Introduction to Rājataraṅgini, wherein he says that he drew his materials from the Vamsābalis of Kāshmirian Kings extending over a period of 3,000 years. Now, where historic periods were of such great lengths as thousands of years, it was necessary to fix an epoch in which calculation would proceed not by years or decades, but by centuries. One such fixed epoch was already in existence in the astronomical era, called the beginning of the Kali age, which was fixed on astronomical grounds at a point 3,100 years B C. It was, however, not convenient for historical purposes, as it was used mostly by astronomers and by sacerdotal classes. Moreover, it was not an historical era, because its starting point was not any memorable historical event. Its epoch depended on an event which took place in the heaven, in the conjunction of certain planets observable only by the initiates in astronomy. It was, therefore, necessary to fix the popular epoch in some historical event, which was well-known to the public and even to the ignorant masses, and which was preserved in legends and traditions of all Hindu nations throughout India. That memorable event was the battle of Mahābhārata, between the Kauravas and Pāndavas which lasted for eighteen days. After the end of this battle, which was short but sharp, Yudhiṣṭhīra was appointed as King. And, it was during this battle, that, Uttara, the wife of Abhimanyu, son of Arjuna, gave birth to a still-born child after six months'

gestation, owing to the shock she received on hearing the sad news of her husband's death who had been killed by foul means, by the combination of seven chiefs against him. This tragic death of Abhimanyu was the subject of popular legend with the Hindus. Thus, these two important events—the still-born birth of Parikṣit—who was resuscitated by the divine powers of Śrī Kṛiṣṇa, and the coronation of Yudhiṣṭhīra, were naturally most appropriate for fixing the starting point of the historical epoch. This epoch, is, therefore, called the Laukika or the secular epoch, to distinguish it from the religious or astronomical epoch. This starting point is, indifferently, called the epoch of the birth of Parikṣit, or the epoch of the coronation of Yudhiṣṭhīra.

When was this epoch really started, it is not easy to determine, and Varāhamihira, who flourished in the sixth century, A D., in his Br̥hat Saṃhitā says, that this Saptarsi or Laukika era was noted by an astronomer before him, called Garga. This conventional era supposed that Saptarsi were in the Maghā asterism, on the date of the coronation of Yudhiṣṭhīra which coincided with the birth of Parikṣit. The theory is that the Saptarsi slowly move through the asterisms at the rate of 8 minutes of the arc of a circle in one year, thus completing one asterism in a century, or, the total circle of the 27 asterisms in 2,700 years. Thus, in this conventional method, was started a convenient mode of indicating large times. The asterisms being 27 in number—each 27th part of a circle represented a century. Thus,  $\frac{8}{27}$ , or,  $\frac{40}{9}$ , degrees, or,  $\frac{40}{9} \times 60$  minutes = 800 minutes. An asterism being equal to a hundred years, thus, a part of a circle measuring 8 minutes becomes equal to one year. This was a brief and convenient method of indicating years in an abbreviated way. Each hundredth part of an asterism, called an amśa, or a part, represented a year. So, if one said, 24th amśa of Purva Phālguni, it would mean that the full asterism of Maghā was passed, and 24th year in Pūrvā Phālguni was the time indicated, or, in other words, 124 S E (Saptarsi or secular era). Similarly, 24th amśa of Revati, will mean 1,724 secular era. This Saptarsi era is the historical era of the Hindus. The commentator of Vaiāhamihira, named, Bhaṭṭotpala, quoting Garga, gives the following rule for converting any Śāka era into Saptarsi era. He says—

"Add 2,526 to the Śāka era, and divide it by 100, the quotient will represent the number of asterisms fully crossed by the Saptarsi, and the remainder will be the number of years spent in the asterism in that century. This remainder, deducting from 100, will represent the number of years still remaining up to the end of the century."

A want of knowledge of this rule led to curious interpretation of the following verse of the Vâyu Purâna —

सहस्रै भवायुराः कावे पर्वतिते यत्ते ।  
अन्नाशो स चतुर्थिंशो भविष्यति मर्ते मम ॥

(Bibliotheca Indica Series Vol II, Ch 37 V 417)

One such curious explanation is, that it means that in the 24th year of the century, in the commencement of which the Andhra dynasty was found reigning, that dynasty will come to an end, and, after finishing that century, a new cycle of 2,700 years will commence. Remembering that the Saptarsi cycle begins with the first point or Arpha of Advinî and ends with the last point or Arpha of Revati, which is the last of the 27th asterisms, for Abhijit is never counted, it means that the Andhra dynasty came to an end when the line of the Saptarsi was in the 24th Arpha of Revati. Therefore, from the date of the coronation of Yudhishtira or the birth of Parikshit, both referring to the same epoch or time, upto the end of the Andhra reign, the Saptarsi travelled through the following asterisms in their due order Magha, Pûrva Phâlguni, Uttara Phâlguni, &c., up to Revati, 24 points or Arphas, or 1,724 years, after the birth of Parikshit, which we have previously fixed at 1,920 B C. This Saptarsi calculation, therefore, is a check on that calculation, for, according to it, 1,724 years elapsed after Parikshit's birth. According to our calculation, the Andhra dynasty came to an end in 414 A D or  $1920 + 414 = 2,334$  years after Parikshit's birth. The difference, between these two calculations, is, therefore, a very large one. How is this to be reconciled?

This can be done by applying the rule given above. The Andhra dynasty came to an end in 414 A D, corresponding to 414—78=336 Saka Era. Add to this 2,526, and we get 2,862, which means that one complete circle of 27 asterisms was made, and the first asterism, namely, Advinî, was also crossed, and the Saptarsi were in the second asterism, where they had passed 62 years already, for 2,862 means one full revolution of 2,700 years, and 162 years over and above it. The correct interpretation of this verse, therefore, is that at the time of the end of the Andhra dynasty, the line of the Saptarsi was in the 24th asterism calculated from Magha. In other words, that 24 centuries had elapsed between the birth of Parikshit and the end of the Andhras in 414 A D. This would thus give the date of the birth of Parikshit as 19 centuries before Christ.

*Kṣatriyas, the progenitors of the Brāhmaṇas*—Another startling statement made by the Matsya Purāṇa (Ch 273 V 57 et seq) is that in the next cycle (Mahāyuga) the progenitors of the human race will be the two great yogis—both Kṣatriyas—named Devāpi and Maru, who are still existing in their physical bodies in the village, Kalīpa. From them will arise the future Solar and Lunar dynasties. Throughout the Satya Yuga, all the people of the earth will be Kṣatriyas, (or fighters and warriors). In other words, the beginning of every new race, is with Kṣatriyas who go to a new country, colonise it, and, settling there, start a new civilization. It is in the middle of the Tretā Yuga, that the seven Rishis take their birth in these Kṣatriya families, and start the Brāhmaṇa class, when, theocracy begins. Something like this happened in the present cycle also. The history of the Pauravas, given in this Purāṇa, as well as in others, shows clearly that many Brāhmaṇa clans had Kṣatriya origin. This will appear clear from the genealogical table of the Pauravas given in a separate appendix. The Matsya Purāṇa uses the term Brahmas—Kṣatriya generally in this sense of Brāhmaṇas having a Kṣatriya origin, and not that of Brāhmaṇas who have become Kṣatriyas as given by Mr V Smith in his history 3rd Ed., pages 419—420.

As a matter of fact, most of the Brāhmaṇas are the spiritual descendants of Kṣatriyas. They learnt the Brahma Vidyā (Theosophy) from the Kṣatriyas, as the Upaṇiṣads distinctly declare it. The daily prayer which they recite—the noble Gāyatrī—owes its enunciation to the Kṣatriya prince, Viśvāmitra. The Matsya Purāṇa, therefore, states a natural law of the growth of civilization, namely, that new races begin with warriors, and that the intellectuals, that is Brāhmaṇas, come after the age of the warriors, namely, in the middle of the Tretā. It is hinted in the Māndukya Upaniṣad II 1, also that the Brāhmaṇism arose in the Tretā Yuga.

In this connection, it should be remembered that the four Yugas, for historical purposes, should not be confounded with the astronomical Yugas. The four historical Yugas are—

1. The Kṣatriya Yuga, or the Warrior age
2. The Brāhmaṇa Yuga, or the Intellectual age
3. The Vaishya Yuga, or the Commercial or the Capitalist's age.
4. The Sūdra Yuga, or the age of Laborers.

These distinct ages may have definite periods during which they flourish, but about the length of which we have found no distinct statement in the Purāṇas. As the astronomical ages are based upon divine

years, one year being equal to 360 human years, so, by analogy, we may come to the following periods —

- 1 The Labour Age, 1,200 years
  - 2 The Capitalist's Age 2,400 years
  - 3 The Intellectual Age, 3,600 years
  - 4 The Military Age, 4,800 years
- Total life of a race, 12,000 years

If this surmise of ours be correct, the Aryan civilization will come to an end after it has flourished on Earth for twelve thousand years, and the post-Aryan civilization, the seed of which has already been sown, will last the same number of years

That the four ages were not always astronomical, even in our Hindu books, will be found borne out from the statement as quoted by Mr. Bentley in the Asiatic Researches, and as is reproduced in this Appendix, and which shows considerably smaller number of years for each Yuga, than the astronomical figure 4,32,000 and its multiples

#### Manus and Manvantaras

Constant Reference is made in the Purāṇas to Manus and Manvantaras. It is desirable, therefore, to have a general idea about Indian cosmic chronology. A universe comes to an existence by the birth of a Brahmā, from the cosmic egg, called Brahmanḍa. Our present universe came into existence from our Brahmā, called the Chaturmukha, or the four-faced. There are other universes which owe their life to other Brahmās, having larger number of faces. The life of a Brahmā consists of a hundred years. 50 such years of his life have passed. We are in the 1st day of his fifty-first year. The year consists of 360 days or 12 months. Each month consists of 30 days. Each day is called a Kalpa. Thus a month consists of 30 Kalpas. A different name is given for every one of these 30 Kalpas, or days of a month of Brahmā. They are given below —

1	Śveta kalpa.	16	Nārasimha
2	Nilalohita	17	Sāmāna
3	Vāmadeva	18	Āgneyah
4	Rathantara	19	Sōma.
5	Raurava	20	Mānava
6	Prāna or Deva	21	Pūrnā.
7.	Bṛihat kalpa	22	Vaikunṭha
8	Kandarpa	23	Lakṣmi
9	Sadya.	24	Savitri
10	Yāma.	25	Ghora
11	Tamah or Vyāma.	26	Varāh.
12	Saravata	27	Valrāja
13	Udāna	28	Gaurī
14	Gāruda	29	Bṛiheśvara
15	Kaurma.	30	Pitri kalpa

Each Kalpa consists of 1,000 chaturyugas or Mahāyugas, and each Mahāyuga consists of 4 minor yugas, called—

1. Kṛita or Satya yuga consisting of 4n		
2. Tretā.	"	" 8n.
3. Dvāpara.	"	" 2n.
4. Kali.		1n
	Total	10n—

where n is equal to 432,000 human years Thus a Mahāyuga consists of the following human years —

1. Satya yuga	.	.	1,728,000
2. Tretā yuga	.	.	1,296,000
3. Dvāpara yuga	-	-	864,000
4. Kali yuga	.	.	432,000.
			—————
Total		-	4,820,000,
			Or 432 × 100

A kalpa has 1000 such Mahāyugas, or  $432 \times 100$

A kalpa is also divided into 14 Manvantaras Each Manvantara, therefore, consists of 1000 divided by 14 Mahayugas Each Manvantara therefore has 713 Mahāyugas

The names of these 14 Manus are —

1. Svayambhu.	8. Savarnya
2. Svarochisha.	9. Rauchaya.
3. Autiṣṭamiya.	10. Bhautya
4. Tamasa.	11. Merusavarnya.
5. Raivat.	12. Rita.
6. Chakṣusa	13. Rītadhāma.
7. Vaivasvata.	14. Visvakēsna.

We are in the 7th or Vaivasvata Manvantara Of the 71 odd Mahāyugas, of which each Manvantara consists, we are in the 28th Mahāyuga We are, therefore, in the 28th Kaliyuga When this Kaliyuga will expire, the 29th Mahāyuga of Vaivasvata Manvantara will commence A different system of yugas prevailed before this as mentioned by Mr Bentley, as given below

The Ten Avatāras. See also p 126 of the English translation of the Matsya Purāṇa

The Matsya Purāṇa gives a different list of the ten Avatāras See p 138 Each Avatāra or king is always accompanied by the Avatāra of a priest The king and his priest are thus the two founders of

a race and the rulers of the world. This is shown in a tabular form below —

<i>The King or the Avatāra</i>	<i>The Priest or the Teacher.</i>	
Avatars in deva evolution	(1) Dharmā (2) Nṛsiṃha. (3) Vāmana (4) Dattatreyā. (5) Māndhātri. (6) Paraśu Rāma (7) Sri Rāma Chandra (8) Veda Vyāsa. (9) Buddha (10) Kalki	(1) Brahmā (2) Rudra. (3) Dharmā (4) Mārkandeya. (5) Uttánga. (6) Viśvāmitra (7) Vasistha (8) Jātakarṇya (9) Dvaipāyana Vyāsa (10) Pārāsarya (Maitréya ?)
Avatars in evolution		

In addition to these, there were others, as at page 126, viz., (1,) Varāha, (2) Indra, (3 again Indra, (4) Śiva, (5) Śiva, (6) Vṛitrāri, etc,

We have mentioned above that a kalpa or a day of Brahmā consists of 1,000 Mahāyugas. We are in the Varāha Kalpa, which is the 26th day of the month of Brahmā. In this Varāha Kalpa, six Manvantaras have already passed away and seven more are in future, when this Kalpa will come to an end, and the next Kalpa called, Vairāja, will commence. In chapter 9, verse 37 of the Matsya Purāna we find that 994 yugas have already elapsed

#### *Two ancient systems of Yugas Asiatic Researches Vol VIII (Bentley)*

Most of the Eastern nations, and the Hindus in particular, appear to have employed, from time immemorial, artificial systems, not only in astronomy, but also for chronological purposes. Therefore, to form a just idea of the Hindu history and its antiquity, a knowledge of these systems, and of the various changes that have taken place from time to time, is absolutely necessary.

Two of the most ancient Hindu systems now known, and which in early times were applied to the purposes of chronology, are contained in an astronomical work entitled the *Graha Mūjari*. This work is extremely valuable, as it enables us to fix, with precision, the real periods of Hindu history, with their respective durations, and to shew from thence the alterations that have since taken place by the introduction of new systems.

The first system mentioned in this work consisted of 240000 years, which was called the *Kalpa*.—This period was divided into *Manwantaras* and *Yugas*\*, as follows

A Satya Yuga consisted of	960 years,
A Trēta,	720
A Dwāpara,	480
A Kali, . . .	240
A Mahā Yuga, . . .	2400
71 Mahā Yugas, with a Satya Yuga	170400
A Manwantara,	960
14 Manwantaras, which, with a Satya at beginning, . . .	171360
Form the whole Kalpa,	2399040
	960
	2400000

\* The Kalpa is also divided into 1006 Mahā Yugas, of 2400 years each.

The years expired of the above system, at the era of Vikramāditya, were 1190627; which being reduced into Manwantaras and Yugas, we shall have

A Satya at the beginning,	=	960
6 Manwantaras complete,	=	1028160
67 Mahā Yugas of the 7th Manwantara,	=	160800
Thence to the era of Vikramāditya ..	=	707
Total years expired, . . . . .	=	1190627

Hence it appears that the Kali Yuga, of the 67th Mahā Yuga, of the 7th Manwantara of this system, ended 707 years before the era of Vikramāditya, or 704 years before Christ—Therefore

The Satya Yuga, or golden age, began B. C	=	8164
The Trēta Yuga, or silver age,	=	2204
The Dwāpar Yuga, or brazen age, . . . . .	=	1484
The Kali Yuga, or iron age,	=	1004
And ended,	=	764
Making in all 3400 years		

During the first period of 960 years, called the golden age, the Hindus have no real history, the whole being fabulous, except what relates to the flood, which is allegorically represented by the fish incarnation

With the second period, or silver age, the Hindu empire commences, under the Solar and Lunar dynasties, and from Budha, the son of Sōma, the first of the Lunar line, they reckon about fifty reigns down to the end of the Dwāpars, which make, at an average, twenty-four years to a reign\*

Towards the close of the fourth period, this system appears to have been laid aside, as the repeating the same names over again, would, in time, cause a confusion in history

The next system mentioned in the Graha Munjari, consisted of 387600000 years, which was called the term of Brahma's life This period is divided and subdivided in the following manner

A Kalpa is called a day of Brahma, which in this system contains,	=	5000 years.
And his night is of the same length,	=	5000
A day and night therefore,	=	10000
80 of such days and nights make a month,	=	800000
And 12 such months a year,	=	8600000
And 107 such years and eight months make the full period of Brahma's life,	=	88760000

The Kalpa, or day of Brahma, is divided into Manwantaras and Yugas, in the following manner †

	Years	Months,
A Satya contains,	2	0
A Trēta,	1	6
A Dwāpar,	1	0
A Kali,	0	6
A Mahā Yuga,	-	5 0*
71 Mahā Yugas,		3855 years
With a Satya of,		2
Make a Manwantara of,		357

\* The Trēta and Dwāpar together make 1200 years, which, divided by 50, give 24 years to a reign It is somewhat remarkable, that the principal Eastern nations date the commencement of their empires from nearly the same time Thus we find the Chinese empire began under the dynasty of Hia, according to Playfair,

The kingdom of Egypt, . . . . . B C 2207

The kingdom of Assyria, . . . . . 2221

The empire of India under the solar and lunar lines, . . . . .

† This Yuga of five years is to be met with in many books, . . . . . 2204

16 such Manwantaras,	..	4998
Which with a Satya at the beginning,	..	2
Make a Kalpa, or day of Brahma,	..	5000 years
The years expired of this system, at the beginning of the Satya, or golden age of the former system, were,	..	212560000
Add thence to the Christian era	..	8164
Total years expired at the Christian era,	..	212568164
After 198799280 years had been expired of Brahma's life, he, for the first time, created the Earth, and ordained that, at the end of every Kalpa, or 5000 years, it should be destroyed, and again reproduced		
Therefore, from the years elapsed,	..	212568164
Take the years at the first creation,	..	= 198799280
Remain,	..	- 18769878
The years from the first creation to the Christian era— which being divided by 5000, the quotient will be the number of times the world has been destroyed and created, and the remainder will shew the years expired since the last creation		
Thus $\frac{18769878}{5000}$ = 3752 times destroyed and created, and 8878 years from the last creation to the Christian era—Now since there are 887 years in each Manwantara, we have the date of the commencement of each as follow		

	B C	8878 years
The first Manwantara		
The second	"	8521 "
The third,	"	8164 "
The fourth,	"	2807 "
The fifth,	"	2450 "
The sixth,	"	2098 "
The seventh,	"	1736 "
The eighth,	"	1379 "
The ninth,	"	1022 "
The tenth,	"	665 "
The eleventh,	"	308 "
The twelfth,	A C	49 "
The thirteenth,	"	406 "
The fourteenth,	"	768 "
and ended,	"	1120 "

Making in all about 5000 years, with the Sandhi of two years

Having thus exhibited the periods of ancient history, according to both systems, the annexed table will now shew, at one view, the commencement of each period, by which the corresponding times in each system may be more easily seen and understood

By this table it will appear, that the Satya, or golden age, as we may call it, of the first system, began on the same year that the third Manwantara of the second system did, that is, the year before CHRIST 8164 And that the ninth Manwantara, of the second system, began the year B C 1022, only eighteen years after the commencement of the Kali, or iron age, of the first system

#### *The Saptarsi-Era (Colebrooke, As Re, Vol IX)*

I have purposely reserved for separate consideration the seven Rishi, who give name to seven stars in Ursa Major, not only because their positions are not stated by Brahmagupta, Bhaskara, and the Suryasiddhanta but also because the authors, who give their positions, ascribe to them a particular motion, or variation of longitude,

different from other stars, and apparently unconnected with the procession of the equinoxes

Varsha Mihira has a chapter in the Vārghīsanhitā expressly on the subject of this supposed motion of the Rishis. He begins by announcing the intention of stating their revolution conformably with the doctrine of Vridhīha Garga, and proceeds as follows "when king Yudhiṣṭhīra ruled the earth, the Manis were in Maghā, and the period of the era of that king is 2526 years. They remain for a hundred years in each asterism, being connected with that particular Nakṣatra, to which, when it rises in the east, the line of their rising is directed."

The commentator, Bhātṭotpala, supports the text of his author by quotations from Vridhīha Garga and Kāsyapa "At the junction of the Kali and Dvāpara" ages, says Garga, "the virtuous sages, who delight in protecting the people, stood at the asterism, over which the Pitris preside." That is at Maghā "The mighty sages," says Kāsyapa, "abide during a hundred years in each asterism, attended by the virtuous Arund'hatī."

The author next states the relative situation of the seven Rishis, with Arund'hatī near her husband, Vasiṣṭha and the remainder of the Chapter is devoted to astrology

The revolution of the seven Rishis, and its periods, are noticed in Purāṇas. The following passage is from the Sri Bhāgavata †

"From your birth (Parīkṣit is addressed by Śūka) to the inauguration of Nanda, 1115 years will elapse

"Of the seven Rishis, two are first perceived, rising in the sky, and the asterism, which is observed to be at night even with the middle of those stars, is that, with which the Rishis are united, and they remain so during a hundred years of men. In your time, and at this moment, they are situated in Maghā

"When the splendour of Viṣṇu, named Kṛiṣṇa, departed for heaven, then did the Kali age, during which men delight in sin, invade the world. So long as he continued to touch the earth with his holy feet, so long the Kali age was unable to subdue the world

"When the seven Rishis were in Maghā, the Kali age, comprising 1200 [divine] years‡ began, and when, from Maghā, they shall reach Purvāśadha, then will this Kali age attain its growth under Nanda and his successors"

The commentator Śrīdhara Swāmī remarks, that the constellation, consisting of seven stars, is in the form of a wheeled carriage. Marichi, he observes, is at the extremity, and next to him, Vasiṣṭha, in the arched part of the yoke, and beyond him Angiras next to whom are four stars in a quadrangle. Atri at the northeast corner, south of him, Pulastya, next to whom is Pulaha, and Kratu is north of the last. Such being their relative position, the two stars, which rise first, are Pulaha and Kratu, and whichever asterism, is in a line south from the middle of those stars, is that with which the seven Rishis are united, and they so remain for 100 years

\* आसन् मध्यासु मुनयः शासति पृथ्वीं सुधिष्ठिरे नृपतौ ॥

पद्मिकपंचद्वितीयुतः शककालस्तस्य राज्यस्य ॥

पैरोक्तिमन् ऋक्षे शतं शतं ते चरन्ति वर्षाणाम् ॥

प्रागुदयते उत्तिविवराह उदयत च संयुक्ताः ॥

According to a different reading noticed by the commentator, the concluding hemistich signifies "they constantly rise in the north-east, together with Arund'hatī."

प्रागुचरतपैते सदैषयते संसाध्याकाः ।

† Book 12. C 2.

‡ 43200 common years.

A similar passage is found in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa,\* and a similar exposition of it is given by the commentator, Ratnagarbha but the period, there stated to elapse between the birth of Parīkṣit and the inauguration of Nanda, is 1015 years only.

The Matsya Purāṇa contains a passage to the like effect, but allows 1050 years from the birth of Parīkṣit to the inauguration of Mahāpadma, and the seven Rishis are stated as being in a line with the constellation sacred to fire (that is Kṛttika), 800 years later, in the time of the Andhra kings.

In the Brahma siddhānta of Śākalya, denominated from its reputed author, Śākalya sanhita, the supposed motion of the seven Rishis is thus noticed † "At the commencement of the yuga, Kratu was near the star sacred to Viṣṇu (Sravasti), at the beginning of the asterism Three degrees east of him, was Pulaha, and Pūlastya, at ten degrees from this, Atri followed at three degrees from the last, and Angirasa, at eight degrees from him, next came Vasistha, at the distance of seven degrees, and lastly Marichi at ten. Their motion is eight liptas (minutes) in a year. Their distances from the ecliptic, north, were respectively 55°, 50°, 50°, 58°, 57°, 60° and 60°. For, moving in the north into different positions, the sages employ 2700 years in revolving through the assemblage of asterisms and hence their positions may be easily known at any particular time."

Lalla, cited by Munisvara in his gloss on the Śiromani, says "If the number of years of the Kali age, less fourteen, be divided by 100, the quotient, as the wise declare, shows the asterisms traversed by Marichi and other celestial sages, beginning from the asterism of Virchini (Brahma).

Here Lalla is generally understood to mean Rohini, which is sacred to Prajāpati (or Brahma). But Munisvara has remarked, in another place, that Lalla may intend Abhijit which is sacred to Vīdhī or Brahma, and consequently may mean Śravasti, of which Abhijit forms a part and thus Lalla and Śākalya may be reconciled.

Most of the commentators on the Surya siddhānta and Śiromani are silent on the subject of the seven Rishis. But Nrīśinha, in his Vārtika to the Vāsāṅga Bhāṣya, or gloss on the Śiromani, quotes and expounds the Śākalya Sanhita, and rejects Varāhamihira's rule of computation, as disagreeing with Purāṇas. Munisvara, in his commentary on the Śiromani, cites some of the passages above noticed, and remarks, that Bhāskara has omitted this topic on account of contradictory opinions concerning it, and because it is of no great use.

The same author, in his own compilation entitled Siddhānta Sarvabhauma, has entered more fully into this subject. He observes, that the seven Rishis are not, like other stars, attached by spikes to the solid ring of the ecliptick, but revolve in small circles round the northern pole of the ecliptic, moving by their own power in the ethereal sphere above Saturn, but below the sphere of the stars. He places the Rishis in the same relative positions, which Śākalya had assigned to them, states in other terms the same distances from the ecliptic, and the same annual motion; and directs their place to be computed by deducting 800 from the years of the Kali age, doubling the remainder and dividing by fifteen—the quotient, in degrees, is divided by 30, to reduce it into signs. Munisvara supports this mode of calculation on the authority of Śākalya, against Varāhamihira and Lalla, and affirms, that it agrees with the phenomena, as observable at the period of his compilation. It appears, however, to be a correction of Śākalya's rule.

Kamalākara, in the Tatwaviveka, notices the opinion delivered in the Siddhānta Sarvabhauma, but observes, that no such motion of the stars is perceptible. Remarking,

\* Part 4 Ch 23 v 82 &c

† Prasna 3 ch 2

however, that the authority of the Purânas and Sânhitâs, which affirm their revolution, is incontrovertible, he reconciles faith and experience by saying, that the stars themselves are fixed; but the seven Rishis are invisible deities, who perform the stated revolution in the period specified.

If Camalâkara's notion be adopted, no difficulty remains yet it can hardly be supposed, that Varâhamihira and Lalla intended to describe revolutions of invisible beings. If then it be allowed, that they have attributed to the stars themselves an imaginary revolution grounded on an erroneous theory, a probable inference may be thence drawn as to the period when those authors lived, provided one position be conceded namely, that the rules, stated by them, gave a result not grossly wrong at the respective periods when they wrote. Indeed, it can scarcely be supposed, that authors, who, like the celebrated astronomers in question, were not mere compilers and transcribers, should have exhibited rules of computation, which did not approach to the truth, at the very period when they were proposed.

If this reasoning be admitted, it would follow, that Varâhamihira composed the Varâhi sâhita about 2800 years after the period assigned by him to the commencement of the reign of Yud'hiṣṭhîra, or near the close of the third century after the expiration of Yud'hiṣṭhîra's era, as defined by him. For the circle of declination passing between Kratu and Pukha (the two first of the seven Rishis), and cutting the ecliptic only  $2^{\circ}$  short of the beginning of Magha, was the solstitial colure, when the equinox was near the beginning of Krittikâ, and such probably was the reason of that line being noticed by ancient Hindu astronomers. It agrees with the solstitial colure on the sphere of Eudoxus, as described by Hipparchus\*. A similar circle of declination, passing between the same stars, intersected the ecliptic at the beginning of Magha when the solstitial colure was at the middle of Aslesha, and a like circle passed through the next asterism, when the equinox corresponded with the first point of Magha. An astronomer of that period, if he were apprized of the position assigned to the same stars by Garga reputed to have been the priest of Krishna and the Pandus, might conclude with Varâhamihira, that one revolution had been completed, and that the stars had passed through one Nakshatra of the second revolution. In corroboration of this inference respecting the age of Varâhamihira's astrological treatise, it may be added, that he is cited by name in the Panchatantra, the original of the fables of Pilpay, which were translated for Nushîrvân more than 1200 years ago†.

The theory being wholly unfounded, Varâhamihira's rule of computation soon ceased to agree with the phenomena, and other rules have been successively introduced by different authors, as Lalla, Mâkalya and, lastly, Munisvara, whose rule, devised less than two hundred years ago, does not yet grossly betray its insufficiency.

This pretended revolution of the stars of Ursa Major is connected with two remarkable epochs in Indian chronology the commencement of the Kali yuga, or sinful,

\* Hipparchus tells us, that Eudoxus drew the colure of the solstices, through the middle of the Great Bear, and the middle of Cancer, and the neck of Hydrus, and the star between the poop and mast of Argo, and the tail of the South Fish, and through the middle of Capricorn, and of Sagitta, and through the neck and right-wing of the Swan, and the left-hand of Cepheus and that he drew the equinoctial colure through the left-hand of Arctophylax, and along the middle of his body, and cross the middle of Chelæ, and through the right-hand and fore-knee of the Centaur; and through the figure of Bridanus and head of Cetus, and the back of Aries across, and through the head and right hand of Perseus." Sir I. Newton's Chronology, §. 29. Hipparch. ad Phinom in Petavi. Uranologia, pp. 207, 208. Bailly, Ast. Ans p 506 Costard, p. 186

† Preface to the Sanscrit edition of the Hâtopadeśa, p. xl.

age, in the reign of Yud'hist'hira, and its prevalence, on the failure of the succession of Kshatria princes, and establishment of a different dynasty, 1015 years after the birth of Parosahit, according to the Viṣṇu Purana, or 1118 years, according to the Bhāgavata; but 1498 years, if a correction, which has been proposed by Srid'hara Svāmi and some other commentators, be admitted. The subject has been already noticed by Capt. Wilford in his essay on Vikramāditya, and it is, therefore, unnecessary to enlarge upon it in this place.

ŚRĪŚĀ CHANDRA VIDYĀRNAVA.

## APPENDIX IX.

### PAURÂNIK GEOGRAPHY

Another subject, which the present part treats of, is about geography and cosmography or Bhuvanakôda. The last few chapters of this part treat exclusively of this subject. If the literal sense of the verses be taken, the whole subject is open to the strictures passed upon it by unfriendly critics of Hindu scriptures. There are certainly no seas of "milk" or of "honey" and "wine" on this earth, as explored by the labours of the geographers. No more are there lions and eagles, bears and porpoises, chairs and tables in the starry firmament, as revealed by the telescope. But astronomers are never confounded with mythologists when they speak of the constellations of the ram and the bull, the crab and the goat, of the fish and the water-jar. May not therefore the Hindu Pauraniks be credited with common-sense, when they speak of the seas of milk and honey, of sugar and wine? May not these be merely technical names of certain seas and oceans, like the Red Sea and Black Sea of the modern geographers? The latter are certainly not flowing with blood or with ink. Taking this rational view of the Pauranik geography, Col. Wilford tried to identify the seas and rivers, more than a hundred years ago. No doubt some of his identifications may appear to be fanciful, but a large mass of them were based upon traditions preserved by the Pandits of Benares, who communicated them to him. Some of his maps published in the volumes of the Asiatic Researches are reproduced here.

It may be objected, and rightly objected, that the figures dealing with the size of the earth are preposterous. The Hindu astronomers certainly knew the true size of the earth, and its diurnal motion on its axis, and on its being suspended in space by its own force and that it does not rest on some mythological tortoise or elephants of quarters, as will appear from the extract from Mr Colebrooke's essays given elsewhere.

But are these figures really preposterous? Does the word "Earth" really mean this earth only, or is it not a symbol for the whole solar system, and do not the vast figures given in the Purânas represent the distances between the earth and the other planets? or, may it not be that the seven dvîpas mentioned in the Purânas are, what the Modern Mystics profess to have seen, the seven spheres which surround this earth as a nucleus? One such sphere we know, namely, the atmosphere. The other spheres consist of still more rarified matters, represented by the words "milk"

and " honey " " sugar " and " wine," &c. The spiritualists and mystics affirm the existence of such spheres surrounding our earth, in which dwell beings of different orders of existence, than those on earth. These beings are certainly not incarnate, like terrestrial beings, but their existence cannot now be denied, after the researches of the Psychical Society, and the writings of scientific men like Crookes and Lodge. Man passes a very large portion of his disincarnate life in these spheres or dvipas, before his re-birth on earth.

Whenever the Purānas speak of the earth in general terms, it is not always to be taken as co-extensive with the physical earth. The latter they always denote by the word Bhāratavarsa or the region of gravity ("Bhārata" the same word etymologically as the English word burthen or weight). The other Varṣas are spiritual and beyond the region of Bhārata of gravity. It is only Bhāratavarsa where souls do acquire good or bad karma, and therefore it is called karmabhumi or the land of responsible actions. The other "lands" are not karmabhumi but bhogabhumi or the land of enjoyment and suffering, where the soul, after death, as a general rule, reaps the fruits of its actions done on earth, and where it does not generate any new karmas. When the force of the accumulated karmas is exhausted, the soul falls down from the higher regions to gather a fresh store of karmas on earth. In this mystic view, the svetadvipa or the White Island is the highest sphere, or the seventh heaven, where the Lord himself dwells, and which the purest souls only can reach.

As regards the ordinary Bhāratavarsa, it certainly means India, and its mountains and rivers, as given in the Purānas have been ably identified, to a very large extent, in his edition of the Markaṇḍeya Purāna, by Mr Pargiter to whom the Hindu community is deeply indebted for his sympathetic treatment of the Purānas.

The attention of the readers may also be drawn to the Theory of Great Men as expounded by the Purānas and Hindu law-books as Yājnavalkya Smṛti. The modern view is that great men and geniuses are products of their age, but opposed to this is the Pauranic theory that these are the creators of their age. All great men have been divided by the Purānas into two great classes, men of actions and men of contemplation, grihamedhins and urddharetas, men who look upon their family life as a sacred duty done for the sake of humanity, and the celibates who devote the whole of their physical life to the uplift of humanity in different sphere of activity. The number of these souls, whether householders or celibates, is limited. They are 88,000 in number in each class. They

ordinarily dwell in higher planes, but a stream of them, without any break, flows down on this earth and incarnates as kings, warriors, statesmen, poets, artists, sages and saints. When the first class of soul comes down on earth, they act like ordinary men, with all human weaknesses and frailties, but with extraordinary powers in some particular department of human activity. The second class of souls, the celibate souls are born as great spiritual teachers, the Bhaktas and the Bhāgavatas. The same idea is expressed in the verses 186 et seq of the Yājñavalka, Prāyashchitta Adhyāya, with the commentary of Vījñānesvara which elucidate the somewhat brief account of these two classes of souls, as given in the Matsya Ch 124.

#### EXPLANATION OF FIGURES 1 to 10 \*

Colonel Wilford published in the Asiatic Researches a series of papers on the Sacred Isles in the West. These were illustrated with maps which are reproduced on the plate facing this page. Regarding the map-making of the Hindus, he wrote —

" Besides geographical tracts, the *Hindus* have also maps of the world, both according to the system of the *Pauraniks*, and of the astronomers the latter are very common. They have also maps of *India*, and of particular districts, in which latitudes and longitudes are entirely out of question, and they never make use of a scale of equal parts. The sea shores, rivers, and ranges of mountains, are represented in general by straight lines. The best map of this sort I ever saw, was one of the kingdom of *Nepal*, presented to Mr HASTINGS. It was about four feet long, and two and a half broad, of paste board, and the mountains raised about an inch above the surface, with trees painted all round. The roads were represented by a red line, and the rivers with a blue one. The various ranges were very distinct, with the narrow passes through them in short, it wanted but a scale. The valley of *Nepal* was accurately delineated but toward the borders of the map, every thing was crowded, and in confusion."

Colonel Wilford's explanation of the figures on the plate is reproduced below

No 1, represents the worldly *Lotos*, floating upon the waters of the Ocean, which is surrounded, and its waters prevented from falling into the vacuum by the *Suvarna-bhūmi*, or land of gold, and the mountains of *Lokālokas*

\* N.B.—In these figures, the letter C should be pronounced as K.

No 2, represents the globe of the Earth, according to the *Hindu* astronomers It is projected upon the plane of the equator, and the Southern hemisphere expanded in such a manner, that the South pole, instead of a point, becomes the largest circle of this projection They also represent the two hemispheres, separately upon the plane of the equator

No. 3, represents the same, projected upon the plane of a meridian These two projections are against the tenor of the context of the *Purānas*, a Southern hemisphere being then absolutely unknown

Here I have placed the three ranges of mountains, according to the documents of *Hindu* astronomers but not according to their usual delineations for, according to these, the three ranges should be represented by three concentric half circles, parallel to the meridians of the projection It is acknowledged, that these ranges are in the direction of as many parallels of latitude In that case the outermost ranges must be the longest and this is the opinion of the *Jainas*, as I observed before, in the sixth paragraph of the first chapter of *an Essay on the Sacred Isles in the West* in the Asiatic Researches, Vol VIII

No 4, exhibits the old Continent, projected upon an imaginary circle passing through the North pole, and just grazing the equator in the South Instead of a circle, it should be an oval, with the longest diameter East and West But as the tracing of an oval would be attended with some difficulty, the indolent *Paurāniks* have adopted the circle in its room, and seldom use the other As such a delineation would be useless, I have, of course, omitted it

The chasm in the North-West, through the mountains surrounding the world, was made by KRISNA, when he went to see his prototype VISNU, or the great spirit, the *Paramātma* of the world, whose abode is among waters, in the land of darkness Several heroes have passed since through this chasm

No 5, explains the true system of the known world, according to the *Purānas*, and the *Jainas*, reconciled with that of the astronomers of *India*

Here the *Mēru* of the *Paurāniks* is brought back to its proper place, whilst the *Meru* of the astronomers remains under the North pole The zones between *Jambu* or *India*, and the *Mēru* of the astronomers, are obviously our seven climates, and the points where the astronomical zones intersect the zones of the *Paurāniks* round their respective centres equally called *Mēru*, shew the true situation of the *dwīpas* or countries, from which these zones, according to the system either of the astronomers

or of the *Paurāṇiks*, are equally denominated, whether they are reckoned relatively to the North pole, or to a centrical point in the elevated plains of *Tartary*

No 6, is a delineation of the country of *Bhārata*, in the fullest acceptation of that denomination. Its nine divisions with *Kuru*, or *Siberia*, and the Northern parts of *Europe*, making in all ten districts, were all destroyed by a violent storm, and inundation, except one. Thus the ten divisions of the *Atlantis* were all destroyed by a flood, except one, called *Gades*, which probably included *Spain*.

Some also are of opinion, that, out of the seven *dvīpas*, six were likewise overwhelmed by a flood. This circumstance is also noticed in the third volume of the *Ayīni-Akbari*. But I believe that this notion originated with the *Paurāṇiks*, who, unable to point out these wonderful countries, described in so extravagant a manner in their sacred books, found that the best way was to swear, that they had disappeared.

In the figures 7, 8 and 9, the map of *Jambu* is represented under three different projections. The first is according to the ideas of the *Paurāṇiks*, in which one half of the equator is obviously combined with another half of the meridian, on the plain of which the map is projected. I have marked the degrees of longitude upon the equator, and the degrees of latitude north, upon an arch of the first meridian. No notice is ever taken of these particulars by the *Paurāṇiks*, but a little reflection will show the original design of this diagram, though the projection be ever so disfigured.

The true projection of it should be in the shape of what the ancients called the bottom part of a sling, and this was admitted by Dionysius Periegetes Posidonius before him admitted of it also; but he insisted, that the greatest length of this projection was in a north and south direction. This sort of projection is represented in the figure 9. Number 8 represents the same portion of the globe, that is to say, the northern part of the old continent, as projected in the usual form, upon the plain of the first meridian.

In the seventh and eighth numbers, the two *Tri-kūṭādris*, or islands, abounding with *Kirṇa* or resplendence, are represented diametrically opposite, with all due symmetrical arrangement in every part, to which the Hindus will always sacrifice truth. There are, however, some general outlines, which are strictly true. There are really three islands, or *dvīpas* in the south east and as many in the north west quarter of the old continent, corresponding exactly, or nearly so, to each other, and they have also the same names. The rest of the superstructure owes its origin to the fertile

and inventive genius of the *Hindus*. The idea, however, is by no means a modern one, nor was it confined to *India* for ancient writers in the west acknowledged two islands, called *Cerne*, one in the east, and the other in the west the latter, called also *Cyrene*, was placed near the straits of *Hercules*, and was said to consist equally of three islands. The eastern *Cerne*, it is true, was said to be near the eastern shores of *Africa*. This mistaken notion arose, through the information of the *Hindus*, who will have it that the *dvipa* of *Lanka* really joins the shores of *Sankha*, *Zeng*, or *Africa*. The Nubian geographer adopted this idea, as well as Arabian writers in general.

In explaining the figure 10, Colonel Wilford quoted the following from the *Hari Vamsa* —

"Viṣṇu for the good of mankind, having assumed the shape of a boar, rescued the earth from the waters, and secured it on all sides. Upon it he made *Meru* of solid gold towards the east he placed the *Udaya* mountain, with others. He then went towards the south, and there framed beautiful mountains of gold and silver these are the gold and silver peaks or islands of *Lanka*, *Malaya*, and *Sumatra*. In the west he made a mountain 100 *yōjanas* high, quite beautiful, with large and variegated peaks, abounding with gold, with golden caves, with trees beautiful and resplendent like the sun (that is to say, they were of gold) there are the *Tri-Vēdika*, or the three mountains, with seats for the three gods. There, in the west, is *Varāha-dvīpa* there *Varāha*, or the Boar, made 60,000 mountains, like *Mēru*, of gold, and dreadful to behold. Among them is another *Mēru*, from which flow a thousand streams. There are all sorts of *Tirthas*, or holy places. This mountain, called *Varāha*, is 60 *yōjanas*, long and high, or about 300 miles, and it is like Varāha himself. He made also *Vaidurya* (*Scotland*), *Rajata* (*England*), *Kāñchana* (*Ireland*), high and divine mountains. He then made the *Chakravān*, or *Chakramān*, a very high mountain (this is *Puṣkara*, or *Iceland*, like a ring, or quoit, as implied by the apī Nation of *Chakra*). Like a shell, and abounding with shells, with a thousand peaks, is *Rajata*, or the silver peak, hence it is called *Sankha-parnata*, or the mountain of shells. The trees there are all white the juice of the *Pārijāta* tree is like liquid gold. There is the *Ghṛītadharā* river its waters are like clarified butter. *Prabhu*, or *Viṣṇu*, made many rivers, called *Varāhasarita*, or the streams of the boar, and these are most holy. Thus he made a mountain, the name of which is omitted, but it is obviously *Śweta*, with a thousand peaks, abounding with jewels, the *Tāmra*, or *Vaidurya*, peak of copper, and a mountain of gold, *Kāñchana*, according to rule. Thus in the north he made the

*Saumya-giri* (*Sôma* or *Chandra*), towering to the skies the mountain of gold, *Kânchana*, has a thousand peaks, with many places of worship. Thus he made the *Trîkûlam*, or mountain with three peaks, and the *Pukara* mountain, with many rivers, producing everything good and desirable." The north quarter is again omitted, because, as my learned friends inform me, the north pole is inaccessible, and by no means a place of delight. The word, *north*, mentioned in this legend, relates to the situation of *Soma-giri*, or the *White Island*, in the northern parts of the *White Sea*. an expression very common in the *Purânas* every legend relating to the *White Island*, and adjacent parts, generally beginning thus, *Kshîrâdi-uttara-tîramé*, in the north of the *White Sea*, &c."

#### MAHISMATI

In ancient India Mâhismati was said to have been an important town and so its identification has taxed the ingenuity of many Sanskrit scholars and Indian antiquarians. The first European to study the Paurânik history and geography was Colonel Wilford. According to him, it was to be identified with Chauli Maheswara\* on the Narmada (Asiatic Researches Vol IX p 105)

General Cunningham, in his Ancient Geography of India (pp 488-489) is inclined to identify it with Mahesmatipura on the Upper Narbada.

Mr Pargiter (Introduction to his translation of the Mârkañdeya Purâna, p IX) writes —

"The modern town of Mahesar, some fifty miles lower down the river, claims to be the ancient Mâhismati, but does not satisfy the allusions. Mâhismati was situated on an island in the river and the palace looked out on the rushing stream (Raghu V vi 43). This description agrees only with Mândhâtâ."

There would have been little difficulty experienced by scholars and antiquarians in identifying this place, had they turned their attention to the description of Mâhismati as given in the Matsya Purâna, Chapter XLIII verses 26-36 (see the translation pp 113-114). There it is stated that Kartavirya Arjuna "founded the city of Mâhismati after conquering the Nâga King, son of Karkotaka: That city was laved by the waves of the

\* Dr Fitz Edward Hall says that he "ascertained on the spot, that the place is now invariably called Maheeswar simply" (Wilson's translation of the Vigya Purâna, Vol II. p 107)

*ocean during the rains wherein the king played in the waves, as it ebbed and flowed in the beach* \* \* \*

"He alone, with his thousand arms, swelled it (the river Narmadâ) by putting the water of the sea into it and increased it, as it increases in the monsoon, and the ocean being thus agitated by his thousand arms became subdued by him, and he extended his sea power, so that the residents in Pâtâla (antipodes) became inoffensive and quiet"

From the above description, there can be little doubt that the ancient Mâhismati was the modern town of Broach, where Arjuna built dockyards and by establishing his sea-power, was enabled to subdue Itâvana, the ruler of Lankâ and made his influence felt in the Pâtâla (antipodes) which some consider to be Australia.

The ancient name of Broach is Bhîgu-kachchha. This may be explained by the legend mentioned in the same Purâpa as Parâsu Râma, the descendant of Bhrigu defeating Arjuna and capturing his dominions. He seems to have changed the name of Mâhismati to Bhrigu-Kachchha to glorify his ancestry.

SRI SA CHANDRA VIDYÂRNAVA.

## APPENDIX X.

### THE DATE OF THE MATSYA PURĀNA.

#### *The Sacrificial Session*

THE Great War had come to an end and the militarism of India, too, came to a close with it. The legends say that out of the eighteen akṣauhinis or army corps, engaged in this internecine war, ten chieftains only survived—seven on one side and three on the other. The flower of Indian manhood perished in this war. Though the militarism was crushed for the time being, and the Kṣatriya lay prostrate at the feet of the Brāhmaṇa, another militarism, and that not of India, but of outsiders (bahischaras) or foreigners, soon made its appearance. India lay open to them as an easy prey. Barbarians, like Ābhīras and others, overran the country, and the Brāhmaṇas who had expected, that with the downfall of Kṣatriydom, intellectual classes would come to the front, were disappointed, and the servile Śūdras and the hated Mlechchhas were in power on all sides, the intellectual Brāhmaṇas retired from the courts of the Rajas and started a long sacrificial session in the holy places of India. After Yudhiṣṭhīra had abdicated his throne, to which he had ascended through the sanguinary war, Parīkṣit, the grandson of his brother, Arjuna, became king. He lost his life at the hands of the barbarian invaders of the Nāga race led by their chief, called Takṣaka, and the central power of the Pauravas at Hastinapura really passed to these Takṣaka-led Nāgas, and the kings of Delhi were merely nominal sovereigns, as were the Moghul emperors after Shah Alam. Long before Parīkṣit had ascended the throne, Yudhiṣṭhīra, in his lifetime, had the mortification to see his famous brother, Arjuna, defeated by the outsiders, Ābhīras, and to witness the delicately brought up ladies of the household of Kṛṣṇa taken away in captivity by these Ābhīras. The weak son of Parīkṣit, Janamejaya, tried to stem the tide of the Takṣaka invasion, whose totem was a snake. He killed many of them, but he had not the diplomacy or the wisdom to please the Brāhmaṇas. He quarrelled with the hereditary priest of his family, Vaishampāyana, and favoured a stranger, in the person of Yājñavalkya—a person who posed as a reformer and said that he had got a revelation from the Sun, and who promulgated a new recension of the Yajur Veda called the Vājasanēyi Samhitā. Seeing Janamejaya taking sides with this new reformer (Yājñavalkya), Vaishampāyana, with other Brāhmaṇas, left his court. But Janamejaya was not allowed to live in peace. Whether

it was through the fresh inroads of the Nāgas, helped by the intrigues of the Brāhmaṇas, or whether Janamejaya was disgusted with his kingdom, he, like his great grandfather, Yudhiṣṭhīra, abdicated his throne in favour of his son, Satān̄ka, and went to the forest. It was in the reign of his grandson, Adhisimakṛiṣṇa, that Brāhmaṇas started the great sacrificial congress, which was moving about from one seat of pilgrimage to another. Three years of the session of this congress were passed at Puṣkara, near Ujjain. Two sessions of this congress were held at Naimisāranya, in Sītāpur district. It was at the fifth or sixth of this session, when the Brāhmaṇas had finished the labours of their deliberations, in the long drawn sacrifice, that they relaxed their strain and asked the bard, Sūta, to rehearse the stories of the past kings. It was then that the original Purāṇa was recited which expanded into 18 Purāṇas, amongst which the Matsya Purāṇa is not the least.

*The original Purāṇa*—The original Purāṇa is one which exists in the Devaloka, and contains ten millions of stanzas, as mentioned in Chapter III. A portion of it is revealed from time to time, as necessity arises. In other words, the real Purāṇa, which would contain a full account of the cosmogony of the universe, and a history of all the rulers of the world, must be a very concisely written work to be finished within the scope of ten millions of stanzas. But we have not to deal with the history of the universe, but only of India and of Vaivasvata Manu, hence our Purāṇas are smaller in bulk.

*What is a Purāṇa?*—In the beginning, there was only one Purāṇa, which may be called the original Purāṇa. It treated of five subjects, viz.

- (i) Sarga, or Creation, or Evolution of the world, or Flux
- (ii) Pratisarga, or Destruction, or Involution of the world, or Reflux
- (iii) Vāmpā, or Genealogy of Devas, patriarchs and kings
- (iv) Manvantaras, or cosmic chronology, or history of Manus
- (v) Vampānucharita, or the chronicles of dynasties of rulers

*The Revealer of the Matsya Purāṇa*—This Purāṇa was revealed by the Lord Viṣṇu himself to Vaivasvata Manu. A great deluge was to destroy the whole creation, and the Lord wanted to save Manu for the future race. He assumed the form of a fish, and the story of the deluge—the original account of which is to be found in the Śātapatha Brāhmaṇa given below—is made the opening thesis of this Purāṇa.

"In the beginning, they brought to Manu water for washing, as men are in the habit of bringing it to wash with the hands. As he was thus washing, a fish came into his hands (which spake to him), 'Preserve me;

I shall save thee.' (Manu enquired) 'From what wilt thou save?' (The fish replied) 'A flood shall sweep away all these creatures, from it will I rescue thee' (Manu asked) 'How (shall) thy 'preservation be effected?' The fish said 'So long as we are small, we are in great peril, for fish devours fish, thou shalt preserve me first in a jar When I grow too large for the jar, then thou shalt dig a trench, and preserve me in that When I grow too large for the trench, then thou shalt carry me away to the Ocean I shall then be beyond the reach of danger' Straightway he became a large fish, for he waxes to the utmost (He said) 'Now in such and such a year, then the flood will come, thou shalt therefore, construct a ship, and resort to me, thou shalt embark in the ship when the flood rises, and I shall deliver thee from it' Having thus preserved the fish, Manu carried him away to the sea Then in the same year which the fish had enjoined, he constructed a ship, and resorted to him When the flood rose, Manu embarked in the ship. The fish swam towards him He fastened the cable of the ship to the fish's horn By this means he passed over this northern mountain The fish said, 'I have delivered thee, fasten the ship to a tree But lest the water should cut thee off whilst thou art on the mountain, as much as the water subsides, so much shalt thou descend after it' He accordingly descended after it as much (as it subsided) Wherefore also this, viz., 'Manu's descent' is (the name) of the northern mountain Now the flood had swept away all these creatures, so Manu alone was left here Desirous of offspring, he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites Among these he also sacrificed with the *paṭka* offering He cast clarified butter, thickened milk, whey and curds, as an oblation into the waters Thence in a year a woman was produced "

*The Chronological Periods*—The chronology of the Purāṇas may be conveniently studied under the following heads —

- 1 The period from Vaivasvata Manu up to the Mahābhārata War
- 2 The period from the Mahābhārata War up to the inauguration of Mahāpadma Nanda, i.e., 422 B C
- 3 From Mahāpadma Nanda up to the end of the Andhra dynasty, 836 years

4 The modern period, from the end of Andhra dynasty to the present age

The Matsya Purāṇa does not give a list of kings after the Andhra dynasty, and, therefore, it may be safely inferred that this Purāṇa, in its present form, could not have been composed after the Andhra dynasty

In this Purāṇa, the express statement made is that it was recited

by Sūta in Naimisāraṇya, in the reign of king Adhisimakṛiṣṇa of Magadha, who was contemporary of Divākara. That was the original Purāṇa. The present Purāṇa was composed much later. Very probably it was composed in the reign of king Yajñāśrī of Andhra dynasty, in about 193 A. D. We quote from the introduction, p XIII of Mr Parrot's valuable book "The Dynasties of the Kali Age" — "There is an apparent indication that a compilation was begun in the latter part of the 2nd century in the Andhra king, Yajñāśrī's reign, for 5 MSS of the Matsya (of which three appear to be independent, namely, b, c, and l) speak of him as reigning in his ninth or tenth year." In chapter 273, verse 14, there is found the following reading of the text, instead of the ordinary reading found in printed books. In Mt bcln, the line reads — "nava varṣāpi Yajñāśrī kurute Śātakarnikah," which means "Yajñāśrī is reigning for nine years." While the ordinary reading is "nava-vimati varṣāpi Yajñāśrī Śātakarnikah," which means "Yajñāśrī reigned for 29 years." The Andhra kingdom fell about A. D 236, and it may be said that the Matsya account brings the historical narrative down to about the middle of the third century A. D and no further." Yajñāśrī's reign commenced in 184 A. D., according to Mr V. Smith, and the first compilation of the dynastic account was made in 193 A. D., though it was carried up to the end of the Andhra Dynasty up to 236 A. D., or 43 years further. The Matsya makes no mention of the Guptas.

As the chronology of the Matsya Purāṇa does not go beyond the Andhra dynasty, so, in its present form, it cannot be posterior to the year 225 A. D., if that date be taken as the termination of the Andhra, according to Mr V. Smith. It would be 432 A. D., according to the Matsya Purāṇa. It is, therefore, one of the oldest, if *not the oldest*, of the Purāṇas. The Vāyu, the Viṣṇu and other Purāṇas mention the Guptas and other dynasties, that came into existence after the Andhras, and so they, in their present form, are later than the Matsya.

Albiruni saw a manuscript copy of the Matsya Purāṇa in his time, so it must have existed then.

*The date of the recital* — All Purāṇas (except the Viṣṇu) are said to have been recited by Sūta at the great sacrificial session, held by the priests and sages in the forest of Naimiṣā, during the reign of Adhisimakṛiṣṇa of Magadha, who was a contemporary of Divākara and Sēnajit. By calculating the date of the reign of Sēnajit, from the figures given before, it would appear that he flourished 277 years after the Great War.

Therefore, this Purāṇa, in its original form, was recited on or about 1160 B. C. According to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, it was in the reign of Parikṣit

that the Purānas were recited, and the future kings are taken from that date.

Regarding the Matsya Purāna, Professor H H Wilson writes —

Matsya Purāna "That in which, for the sake of promulgating the Vedas, Vishnu, in the beginning of a Kalpa, related to Manu the story of Narasimha and the events of seven Kalpas, that, O sages, know to be the Matsya Purāna, containing twenty thousand stanzas."

We might, it is to be supposed, admit the description which the Matsya gives of itself to be correct, and yet, as regards the number of verses, there seems to be a misstatement. Three very good copies—one in my possession, one in the Company's library, and one in the Radcliffe library—concur in all respects, and in containing more than between fourteen and fifteen thousand stanzas. In this case the Bhāgavata is nearer the truth, when it assigns to it fourteen thousand.

The first subject (in the Purāna) is the creation, which is that of Brahma and the patriarchs. Some of the details are the usual ones, others are peculiar, especially those relating to the Pitrīs or progenitors. The regal dynasties are next described, and then follow chapters on the duties of different orders. It is in relating those of the householder, in which the duty of making gifts to Brahmanas is comprehended, that we have the specification of the extent and subjects of the Purānas. It is meritorious to have copies made of them, and to give these away on particular occasions. Thus, it is said, of the Matsya "Whoever gives it away at either equinox, along with a golden fish and a milch cow, gives away the whole earth," that is, he reaps a like reward, in his next migration. Special duties of the householder—Vratas or occasional acts of piety—are then described at considerable length, with legendary illustrations. The account of the universe is given in the usual strain. Śālva legends ensue as the destruction of Tripurāsura, the war of the gods with Tāraka and the Daityas, and the consequent birth of Kārttikeya, with the various circumstances of Umā's birth and marriage, the burning of Kēmadeva, and other events involved in that narrative, the destruction of the Asuras Maya and Andhaka, the origin of the Mātṛis, and the like, interspersed with the Vaiṣṇava legends of the Avatāras. Some Māhātmyas are also introduced, one of which, the Narmadī Māhātmya, contains some interesting particulars. There are various chapters on law and morals, and one which furnishes directions for building houses and making images. We then have an account of the kings of future periods, and the Purāna concludes with a chapter on gifts.

The Matsya Purāna it will be seen, even from this brief sketch of its contents, is a miscellaneous compilation, but including, in its contents the elements of a genuine Purāna. At the same time, it is of too mixed a character to be considered as a genuine work of the Paurānik class, and, upon examining it carefully, it may be suspected that it is indebted to various works, not only for its matter, but for its words.

Although a Śālva work, it is not exclusively so, and it has not such sectarian absurdities as the Kūrma and Linga. It is a composition of considerable interest, but, if it has extracted its materials from the Padma,—which it also quotes on one occasion, the specification of the Upapurāṇas,—it is subsequent to that work, and, therefore, not very ancient.

But modern scholars consider this Purāna as one of the oldest,\* in fact, the Padma Purāna seems to have borrowed from the Matsya and not the reverse.

SRIŚA CHANDRA VIDYĀRNAYA

\* Vide Vincent Smith's Early History of India, 3rd Edition pp. 11, 21-22